

**xStack DES-7200**

**Configuration Guide**

**Version 10.3(3b19)**

---

**D-Link<sup>®</sup>**

---



---

## **DES-7200 Configuration Guide**

---

Revision No.: Version 10.3(3b19)

Date:

---

### **Copyright Statement**

D-Link Corporation. ©2009

All rights reserved.

Without our written permission, this document may not be excerpted, reproduced, transmitted, or otherwise in all or in part by any party in any means.

---



# Preface

## Version Description

This manual matches the firmware version 10.3(3b19).

## Target Readers

This manual is intended for the following readers:

- Network engineers
- Technical salespersons
- Network administrators

## Conventions in this Document

### 1. Universal Format Convention

**Arial:** Arial with the point size 10 is used for the body.

**Note:** A line is added respectively above and below the prompts such as caution and note to separate them from the body.

**Format of information displayed on the terminal:** Courier New, point size 8, indicating the screen output. User's entries among the information shall be indicated with bolded characters.

### 2. Command Line Format Convention

Arial is used as the font for the command line. The meanings of specific formats are described below:

****Bold:**** Key words in the command line, which shall be entered exactly as they are displayed, shall be indicated with bolded characters.

***Italic:*** Parameters in the command line, which must be replaced with actual values, shall be indicated with italic characters.

**[ ]:** The part enclosed with [ ] means optional in the command.

**{ x | y | ... }:** It means one shall be selected among two or more options.

**[ x | y | ... ]:** It means one or none shall be selected among two or more options.

**//:** Lines starting with an exclamation mark "/" are annotated.



---

### 3. Signs

Various striking identifiers are adopted in this manual to indicate the matters that special attention should be paid in the operation, as detailed below:



#### Caution

Warning, danger or alert in the operation.



#### Note

Descript, prompt, tip or any other necessary supplement or explanation for the operation.



#### Note

The port types mentioned in the examples of this manual may not be consistent with the actual ones. In real network environments, you need configure port types according to the support on various products.

The display information of some examples in this manual may include the information on other series products, like model and description. The details are subject to the used equipments.



---

# Contents

1	Command Line Interface Configuration .....	1-1
1.1	Command Mode .....	1-1
1.2	Getting Help .....	1-3
1.3	Abbreviating Commands .....	1-3
1.4	Using no and default Options .....	1-4
1.5	Understanding CLI Error Messages .....	1-4
1.6	Using Historical Commands .....	1-5
1.7	Using Editing Features.....	1-5
1.7.1	Editing Shortcut Keys.....	1-5
1.7.2	Sliding Window of Command Line .....	1-6
1.8	Filtering and Looking UP CLI Output Information .....	1-7
1.8.1	Filtering and Looking Up the Information Outputted by the Show Command .....	1-7
1.9	Using Command Alias.....	1-7
1.10	Accessing CLI .....	1-9
2	Basic Switch Management Configuration .....	2-1
2.1	Overview .....	2-1
2.2	Command Authorization-based Access Control .....	2-1
2.2.1	Overview .....	2-1
2.2.2	Configuring Default Password and Privileged Level .....	2-2
2.2.3	Configuring/Changing the Passwords at Different Levels.....	2-2
2.2.4	Configuring Multiple Privileged Levels .....	2-2
2.2.5	Configuring Line Password Protection .....	2-4
2.2.6	Supporting Session Locking.....	2-4
2.3	Logon Authentication Control.....	2-5
2.3.1	Overview .....	2-5
2.3.2	Configuring Local Users.....	2-5
2.3.3	Configuring Line Logon Authentication .....	2-5
2.4	System Time Configuration.....	2-6
2.4.1	Overview .....	2-6
2.4.2	Setting System Time and Date.....	2-6
2.4.3	Showing System Time and Date .....	2-7
2.4.4	Updating Hardware Clock .....	2-7
2.5	Scheduled Restart .....	2-7
2.5.1	Overview .....	2-7
2.5.2	Specifying the System to Restart at the Specified Time .....	2-8
2.5.3	Specifying the System to Restart after a Period of Time.....	2-9



---

2.5.4	Immediate Restart .....	2-9
2.5.5	Deleting the Configured Restart Scheme .....	2-9
2.6	Configuring a System Name and Prompt .....	2-10
2.6.1	Overview .....	2-10
2.6.2	Configuring a System Name .....	2-10
2.6.3	Configuring a Command Prompt.....	2-10
2.7	Banner Configuration .....	2-11
2.7.1	Overview .....	2-11
2.7.2	Configuring a Message-of-the-Day .....	2-11
2.7.3	Configuring a Login Banner .....	2-11
2.7.4	Displaying a Banner .....	2-12
2.8	Viewing System Information .....	2-12
2.8.1	Overview .....	2-12
2.8.2	Viewing System Information and Version .....	2-13
2.8.3	Viewing Hardware Entity Information .....	2-13
2.9	Setting Console Rate .....	2-13
2.9.1	Overview .....	2-13
2.9.2	Setting Console Rate .....	2-13
2.10	Configuring Telnet .....	2-14
2.10.1	Overview .....	2-14
2.10.2	Using Telnet Client .....	2-15
2.11	Setting Connection Timeout.....	2-15
2.11.1	Overview .....	2-15
2.11.2	Connection Timeout .....	2-15
2.11.3	Session Timeout.....	2-16
2.12	Executing the Commands in the Executable File in Batch .....	2-16
2.13	Setting Service Switch .....	2-17
3	LINE Mode Configuration.....	3-1
3.1	Overview .....	3-1
3.2	Configuring LINE Mode.....	3-1
3.2.1	Entering the LINE mode.....	3-1
3.2.2	Increasing/Decreasing LINE VTY .....	3-1
3.2.3	Configuring the Protocols to Communicate on the Line .....	3-2
3.2.4	Configuring the Access Control List on the Line .....	3-2
4	System Upgrade and Maintenance.....	4-1
4.1	Overview .....	4-1
4.2	Upgrade and Maintenance Method .....	4-1
4.2.1	Transferring Files by TFTP.....	4-1



---

4.2.2	Transferring Files by XMODEM .....	4-2
4.2.3	Upgrading System.....	4-4
4.2.4	Upgrading System by Upgrade Pack.....	4-4
5	Network Communication Detection Tools .....	5-1
5.1	Ping Connectivity Test.....	5-1
5.2	Traceroute Connectivity Test .....	5-2
5.3	Line Detection .....	5-3
6	Interface Configuration.....	6-1
6.1	Overview of Interface Types .....	6-1
6.1.1	L2 Interfaces.....	6-1
6.1.2	L3 Interfaces.....	6-3
6.2	Configuring Interfaces.....	6-5
6.2.1	Interface Numbering Rule .....	6-5
6.2.2	Using Interface Configuration Commands .....	6-5
6.2.3	Using the interface range Command .....	6-6
6.2.4	Selecting Interface Media Type.....	6-8
6.2.5	Setting Interface Description and Management Status.....	6-9
6.2.6	Setting Speed, Duplexing, and Flow Control for an Interface .....	6-10
6.2.7	Configuring Interface MTU .....	6-10
6.2.8	Configuring L2 Interfaces .....	6-11
6.2.9	Configuring L3 Interfaces .....	6-14
6.3	Showing Interface Configuration and Status.....	6-17
6.4	LinkTrap Policy Configuration .....	6-19
6.4.1	Configuration Command .....	6-19
6.4.2	Configuration Example.....	6-19
7	Aggregate Port Configuration .....	7-1
7.1	Overview .....	7-1
7.1.1	Understanding Aggregate Port.....	7-1
7.1.2	Understanding Traffic Balancing .....	7-2
7.2	Configuring Aggregate Port .....	7-3
7.2.1	Default Aggregate Port Configuration .....	7-3
7.2.2	Aggregate Port Configuration Guide .....	7-4
7.2.3	Configuring a Layer2 Aggregate Port.....	7-4
7.2.4	Configuring a Layer3 Aggregate Port.....	7-5
7.2.5	Configuring Traffic Balancing on an Aggregate Port .....	7-5
7.3	Showing an Aggregate Port .....	7-6
8	VLAN Configuration .....	8-1



---

8.1	Overview .....	8-1
8.1.2	Supported VLAN .....	8-2
8.1.3	VLAN Member Type .....	8-2
8.2	Configuring a VLAN .....	8-2
8.2.1	Saving the VLAN Configuration .....	8-2
8.2.2	Default VLAN Configuration .....	8-3
8.2.3	Creating/Modifying a VLAN .....	8-3
8.2.4	Deleting a VLAN .....	8-3
8.2.5	Assigning Access Ports to a VLAN .....	8-4
8.3	Configuring VLAN Trunks .....	8-4
8.3.1	Overview .....	8-4
8.3.2	Configuring a Trunk Port .....	8-6
8.3.3	Defining the Allowed VLAN List of a Trunk Port .....	8-6
8.3.4	Configuring a Native VLAN. ....	8-7
8.4	Showing VLAN Information .....	8-7
9	Super VLAN Configuration .....	9-1
9.1	Overview .....	9-1
9.2	Configuring a Super VLAN .....	9-2
9.3	Configuring the Sub VLANs of a Super VLAN .....	9-3
9.4	Setting an Address Range for a Sub VLAN .....	9-3
9.5	Setting a Virtual Interface for a Super VLAN .....	9-4
9.6	Setting ARP Proxy for a VLAN .....	9-4
9.7	Showing Super VLAN Setting .....	9-5
9.8	Configuration Example .....	9-5
10	Protocol VLAN Configuration .....	10-1
10.1	Protocol VLAN Technology .....	10-1
10.2	Configuring a Protocol VLAN .....	10-2
10.2.1	Default Protocol VLAN .....	10-2
10.2.2	Configuring IP Address-based VLAN Classification .....	10-2
10.2.3	Configuring Packet Type and Ethernet Type Profile .....	10-3
10.2.4	Applying a Profile .....	10-3
10.3	Showing a Protocol VLAN .....	10-4
11	Private VLAN Configuration .....	11-1
11.1	Private VLAN Technology .....	11-1
11.2	Configuring a Private VLAN .....	11-2
11.2.1	Default Private VLAN Configuration .....	11-2
11.2.2	Configuring a VLAN as a Private VLAN .....	11-2



---

11.2.3	Associating the Secondary VLANs with the Primary VLAN.....	11-3
11.2.4	Mapping Secondary VLANs to the Layer 3 Interface of the Primary VLAN.....	11-4
11.2.5	Configuring a Layer 2 Interface as the Host Port of a Private VLAN.....	11-4
11.2.6	Configuring a Layer 2 Interface as the Promiscuous Port of a Private VLAN .....	11-5
11.3	Showing a Private VLAN .....	11-6
11.3.1	Showing a Private VLAN.....	11-6
12	802.1Q Tunneling Configuration .....	12-1
12.1	Understanding 802.1Q Tunneling .....	12-1
12.2	Configuring 802.1Q tunneling .....	12-2
12.3	Default 802.1Q Tunneling Configurations.....	12-3
12.3.1	802.1Q Tunneling Configuration Guide.....	12-3
12.3.2	Restriction of 802.1Q Tunneling Configuration .....	12-3
12.3.3	Configuring an 802.1Q Tunneling Port.....	12-4
12.3.4	Configuring an Uplink Port .....	12-4
12.3.5	Configuring the TPID Value of the Vendor Tag .....	12-5
12.3.6	Configuring Priority Duplication of the User Tag .....	12-5
12.4	Configuring Transparent Transmission of L2 Protocol Message .....	12-6
12.4.1	Configuring Transparent Transmission of stp Protocol Message .....	12-7
12.4.2	Configuring Transparent Transmission of gvrp Protocol Message .....	12-8
12.5	Configuring Protocol-based vid Change Policy List.....	12-9
12.5.1	Configuring vid Add Policy List.....	12-9
12.5.2	Configuring vid Modify Policy List .....	12-10
12.6	Configuring Flow-based vid Change Policy List .....	12-11
12.6.1	Configuring vid Add Policy List.....	12-11
12.6.2	Configuring Modify Policy List of Outer vid .....	12-12
12.6.3	Configuring Modify Policy List of Inner vid .....	12-13
13	MAC Address Configuration.....	13-1
13.1	Managing the MAC Address table .....	13-1
13.1.1	Overview .....	13-1
13.1.2	Configuring a MAC Address.....	13-2
13.1.3	Viewing the MAC Address Table .....	13-6
13.2	Configuring MAC Address Change Notification .....	13-7
13.2.1	Overview .....	13-7
13.2.2	Configuring the MAC Address Change Notification Function .....	13-8
13.2.3	Viewing the MAC Address change Notification Information.....	13-9
13.3	IP Address and MAC Address Binding .....	13-10
13.3.1	Overview .....	13-10
13.3.2	Configuring IP Address and MAC address Binding .....	13-10



---

13.3.3	Viewing the IP Address and MAC Address Binding Table .....	13-10
13.3.4	Configuring the Exceptional Ports for the IP Address and MAC Address Binding .....	13-11
13.3.5	Viewing Exceptional Ports for the IP Address and MAC Address Binding.....	13-11
13.4	MAC Address Table Extension.....	13-12
13.4.1	Overview .....	13-12
13.4.2	Configuring Address Extension .....	13-12
13.4.3	Viewing Address Extension Configuration .....	13-12
14	DHCP Snooping Configuration .....	14-1
14.1	Overview .....	14-1
14.1.1	Understanding DHCP.....	14-1
14.1.2	Understanding DHCP Snooping .....	14-2
14.1.3	Understanding DHCP Snooping Information Option.....	14-3
14.1.4	DHCP Snooping Related Security Functions.....	14-4
14.1.5	Relationship between DHCP Snooping and ARP Inspection.....	14-4
14.1.6	Other Precautions on DHCP Snooping Configuration .....	14-5
14.2	DHCP Snooping Configuration .....	14-5
14.2.1	Enabling and Disabling DHCP Snooping.....	14-5
14.2.2	Configuring Enabled DHCP Snooping VLAN.....	14-5
14.2.3	Configuring DHCP Source MAC Address Check Function .....	14-6
14.2.4	Configuring Static DHCP Snooping Information Option.....	14-7
14.2.5	Writing the DHCP Snooping Database to Flash Periodically.....	14-7
14.2.6	Writing DHCP Snooping Database to Flash Manually .....	14-8
14.2.7	Configuring a Port as a TRUST Port.....	14-8
14.2.8	Configuring Rate of Receiving DHCP Packet .....	14-9
14.2.9	Clearing Dynamic User Information from the DHCP Snooping Binding Database.....	14-10
14.3	Showing DHCP Snooping Configuration .....	14-10
14.3.1	Showing DHCP Snooping .....	14-10
14.3.2	Showing the DHCP Snooping Binding Database .....	14-11
15	IGMP Snooping Configuration .....	15-1
15.1	Overview .....	15-1
15.1.1	Understanding IGMP .....	15-1
15.1.2	Understanding IGMP Snooping .....	15-4
15.1.3	Understanding the Router Connection Interface.....	15-4
15.1.4	Understanding IGMP Snooping Operation Modes.....	15-6
15.1.5	Understanding Source Port Check.....	15-8
15.1.6	Understanding fast-leave .....	15-8
15.1.7	Understanding IGMP Snooping Suppression .....	15-8
15.1.8	Typical Application.....	15-8



---

15.2	Configuring IGMP Snooping .....	15-9
15.2.1	IGMP Snooping Default Configuration .....	15-10
15.2.2	Configuring IGMP Profiles .....	15-10
15.2.3	Configuring the Router Interface .....	15-11
15.2.4	Configuring the Range of Multicast Frames Forwarded on the Router Interface ..	15-12
15.2.5	Configuring the Aging Time of the Router Interface Learned Dynamically .....	15-13
15.2.6	Configuring the IVGL Mode .....	15-14
15.2.7	Configuring the SVGL Mode .....	15-14
15.2.8	Configuring Coexistence of the IVGL Mode and the SVGL Mode .....	15-14
15.2.9	Configuring the DISABLE Mode .....	15-15
15.2.10	Configuring the Maximum Response Time of the IGMP Query Message ..	15-15
15.2.11	Configuring Source Port Check .....	15-16
15.2.12	Configuring Source IP Check .....	15-16
15.2.13	Configuring Fast-Leave .....	15-17
15.2.14	Configuring IGMP Snooping Suppression .....	15-17
15.2.15	Configuring Static Members of IGMP Snooping .....	15-18
15.2.16	Configuring IGMP Filtering .....	15-18
15.3	Viewing IGMP Snooping Information .....	15-19
15.3.1	Viewing Current Mode .....	15-19
15.3.2	Viewing and Clearing IGMP snooping Statistics .....	15-20
15.3.3	Viewing the Router Interface .....	15-20
15.3.4	Viewing Dynamic Forwarding Table .....	15-20
15.3.5	Viewing Source Port Check Status .....	15-21
15.3.6	Viewing IGMP Profile .....	15-21
15.3.7	Viewing IGMP Filtering .....	15-21
15.4	Configuring Other Restrictions of IGMP Snooping .....	15-22
16	PIM-Snooping Configuration .....	16-1
16.1	Understanding PIM Snooping Principle .....	16-1
16.2	PIM Snooping Default Configuration .....	16-2
16.3	PIM Snooping Configuration Guide and Limit .....	16-2
16.4	Configuring the PIM Snooping .....	16-3
16.4.1	Enable the PIM Snooping Globally .....	16-3
16.4.2	Configuring PIM Snooping on the Interface .....	16-3
16.5	Monitoring and Maintaining PIM-Snooping .....	16-4
16.5.1	Viewing PIM-Snooping .....	16-4
16.6	Examples of PIM-Snooping Configuration .....	16-4
16.6.1	Configuration requirement .....	16-4
16.6.2	Device configuration .....	16-5



---

17	MSTP Configuration.....	17-6
17.1	MSTP Overview .....	17-6
17.1.1	STP and RSTP .....	17-6
17.1.2	MSTP Overview .....	17-14
17.2	Overview of Optional Features of MSTP .....	17-20
17.2.1	Understanding Port Fast .....	17-20
17.2.2	Understanding BPDU Guard.....	17-21
17.2.3	Understanding BPDU Filter.....	17-21
17.2.4	Understanding Tc-protection .....	17-21
17.2.5	Understanding TC Guard .....	17-22
17.2.6	Understanding BPDU Source MAC Check.....	17-22
17.2.7	Understanding Invalid Length Filtering for BPDU .....	17-23
17.2.8	Understanding Automatic Identification of Edge Ports.....	17-23
17.2.9	Understanding ROOT Guard .....	17-23
17.2.10	Understanding LOOP Guard.....	17-24
17.3	Configuring MSTP.....	17-24
17.3.1	Default Spanning Tree Configuration .....	17-24
17.3.2	Enabling and Disabling the Spanning Tree Protocol.....	17-25
17.3.3	Configuring the Spanning Tree Mode .....	17-26
17.3.4	Configuring Switch Priority .....	17-26
17.3.5	Configuring Port Priority .....	17-27
17.3.6	Configuring Path Cost of a Port .....	17-28
17.3.7	Configuring the Default Calculation Method of Path Cost (path cost method) .....	17-29
17.3.8	Configuring Hello Time.....	17-30
17.3.9	Configuring Forward-Delay Time .....	17-30
17.3.10	Configuring Max-Age Time .....	17-31
17.3.11	Configuring Tx-Hold-Count .....	17-31
17.3.12	Configuring Link-type .....	17-32
17.3.13	Configuring Protocol Migration Processing.....	17-33
17.3.14	Configuring a MSTP Region .....	17-33
17.3.15	Configuring Maximum-Hop Count.....	17-34
17.3.16	Configuring Interface Compatibility Mode .....	17-35
17.4	Configuring Optional MSTP Features.....	17-36
17.4.1	Default Setting of Optional Spanning Tree Features.....	17-36
17.4.2	Enabling Port Fast.....	17-36
17.4.3	Enabling BPDU Guard .....	17-37
17.4.4	Enabling BPDU Filter .....	17-37
17.4.5	Enabling Tc_Protection .....	17-38



---

17.4.6	Enabling TC Guard.....	17-38
17.4.7	Enable BPDU Source MAC check .....	17-39
17.4.8	Disabling Automatic Recognition of Edge Ports.....	17-40
17.4.9	Enabling Root Guard .....	17-40
17.4.10	Enabling Loop Guard .....	17-41
17.4.11	Disabling Interface Guard .....	17-42
17.5	Showing MSTP Configuration and Status.....	17-43
18	SPAN Configuration .....	18-1
18.1	Overview .....	18-1
18.2	SPAN Concepts and Terms .....	18-2
18.2.1	SPAN Session .....	18-2
18.2.2	Frame Type .....	18-2
18.2.3	Source Port .....	18-3
18.2.4	Destination Port.....	18-3
18.2.5	SPAN Traffic .....	18-3
18.2.6	Interaction between the SPAN and Other Functions .....	18-4
18.3	Configuring SPAN .....	18-4
18.3.1	Configuring SPAN .....	18-4
18.3.2	SPAN Configuration Guide.....	18-4
18.3.3	Creating a SPAN Session and Specifying the Monitoring Port and Monitored Port.....	18-5
18.3.4	Deleting a Port from the SPAN Session.....	18-6
18.3.5	Configuring Flow-based Mirror.....	18-6
18.3.6	Configuring One-to-Many Mirror .....	18-6
18.4	Showing the SPAN Status.....	18-7
19	RSPAN Configuration.....	19-1
19.2	Configuring RSPAN Session.....	19-3
19.2.1	Configuration Preparation .....	19-3
19.2.2	Configuration Process on Source Switch.....	19-3
19.2.3	Configuration Process on Middle Switch .....	19-4
19.2.4	Configuration process on destination switch.....	19-5
19.2.5	Examples.....	19-5
19.3	Displaying RSPAN Session .....	19-7
20	IP Address and Service Configuration .....	20-8
20.1	IP Address Configuration .....	20-8
20.1.1	IP Address Overview .....	20-8
20.1.2	IP Address Configuration Task List .....	20-10
20.1.3	Monitoring and Maintaining IP Address.....	20-15



20.1.4 IP Address Configuration Examples.....	20-16
20.2 IP Service Configuration .....	20-17
20.2.1 IP Services Configuration Task List.....	20-17
20.2.2 Managing IP Connections .....	20-17
21 DHCP Configuration.....	21-1
21.1 Introduction to DHCP .....	21-1
21.2 Introduction to the DHCP Server .....	21-1
21.3 Introduction to the DHCP Client.....	21-3
21.4 Introduction to the DHCP Relay Agent .....	21-3
21.5 Configuring DHCP .....	21-3
21.5.1 Enabling the DHCP Server and the DHCP Relay Agent.....	21-4
21.5.2 Configuring DHCP Excluded Addresses .....	21-4
21.5.3 Configuring DHCP Address Pool .....	21-4
21.5.4 Manual Address Binding .....	21-9
21.5.5 Configuring Ping Times .....	21-9
21.5.6 Configuring Ping Packet Timeout.....	21-10
21.5.7 Configuring the DHCP Client on the Ethernet Interface.....	21-10
21.5.8 Configuring the DHCP Client on the PPP Encapsulated Link.....	21-10
21.5.9 Configuring the DHCP Client on the FR Encapsulated Link .....	21-11
21.5.10 Configuring the DHCP Client on the HDLC Encapsulated Link.....	21-11
21.6 Monitoring and Maintaining Information.....	21-11
21.6.1 Monitoring and Maintaining the DHCP Server .....	21-11
21.6.2 Monitoring and Maintaining the DHCP Client .....	21-12
21.7 Configuration Examples.....	21-13
21.7.1 Address Pool Configuration Example .....	21-13
21.7.2 Manual Binding Configuration.....	21-13
21.7.3 DHCP Client Configuration .....	21-14
22 DHCP Relay Configuration .....	22-1
22.1 Overview .....	22-1
22.1.1 Understanding DHCP.....	22-1
22.1.2 Understanding the DHCP Relay Agent .....	22-1
22.1.3 Understanding DHCP Relay Agent Information(option 82).....	22-2
22.1.4 Understanding DHCP relay Check Server-id Function .....	22-3
22.2 Configuring DHCP .....	22-4
22.2.1 Configuring the DHCP Relay Agent .....	22-4
22.2.2 Configuring the IP Address of the DHCP Server .....	22-4
22.2.3 Configuring DHCP option dot1x .....	22-5
22.2.4 Configuring DHCP option dot1x access-group .....	22-5



---

22.2.5	Configuring DHCP option 82.....	22-6
22.2.6	Configuring DHCP relay check server-id .....	22-7
22.2.7	Configuring DHCP Relay Suppression .....	22-7
22.2.8	DHCP Configuration Example.....	22-7
22.3	Other Precautions on DHCP Relay Configuration .....	22-8
22.3.1	Precautions on DHCP option dot1x Configuration.....	22-8
22.3.2	Precautions on DHCP option82 Configuration.....	22-8
22.4	Showing DHCP Configuration .....	22-8
23	DNS Configuration .....	23-1
23.1	DNS Overview .....	23-1
23.2	Configuring Domain Name Resolution .....	23-1
23.2.1	Default DNS Configuration.....	23-1
23.2.2	Enabling DNS Resolution Service.....	23-2
23.2.3	Configuring the DNS Server.....	23-2
23.2.4	Configuring the Host Name to IP Address Mapping Statically .....	23-2
23.2.5	Clearing the Dynamic Buffer Table of Host Names.....	23-3
23.2.6	Showing Domain Name Resolution Information .....	23-3
23.2.7	Application examples .....	23-3
24	NTP Configuration.....	24-1
24.1	Understanding NTP .....	24-1
24.2	Configuring NTP .....	24-1
24.2.1	Configuring the Global NTP Authentication Mechanism .....	24-2
24.2.2	Configuring the Global NTP Authentication Key .....	24-2
24.2.3	Configure the Global NTP Trusted key ID.....	24-3
24.2.4	Configuring the NTP Server .....	24-3
24.2.5	Disabling the Interface to Receiving the NTP Message.....	24-4
24.2.6	Enabling or Disabling NTP .....	24-5
24.2.7	Configure the Real Time NTP Synchronization .....	24-5
24.3	Showing NTP Information .....	24-6
24.3.1	NTP Debugging.....	24-6
24.3.2	Showing NTP Information .....	24-6
24.4	Configuration Examples.....	24-7
25	UDP-Helper Configuration .....	25-1
25.1	UDP-Helper Configuration .....	25-1
25.1.1	UDP-Helper Overview.....	25-1
25.2	Configuring UDP-Helper .....	25-1
25.2.1	Default UDP-Helper Configuration .....	25-1



25.2.2	Enable the Relay and Forward Function of the UDP-Helper .....	25-2
25.2.3	Configuring the Destination Server for Relay and Forwarding .....	25-2
25.2.4	Configuring the UDP Port for Relay and Forwarding .....	25-3
26	SNMP Configuration .....	26-1
26.1	SNMP Related Information .....	26-1
26.1.1	Overview .....	26-1
26.1.2	SNMP Versions .....	26-3
26.1.3	SNMP Management Operations .....	26-3
26.1.4	SNMP Security .....	26-4
26.1.5	SNMP Engine ID .....	26-5
26.2	SNMP Configuration .....	26-5
26.2.1	Setting the Community String and Access Authority .....	26-6
26.2.2	Configuring MIB Views and Groups .....	26-6
26.2.3	Configuring SNMP Users .....	26-7
26.2.4	Configuring SNMP Host Address .....	26-7
26.2.5	Configuring SNMP Agent Parameters.....	26-8
26.2.6	Defining the Maximum Message Size of the SNMP Agent .....	26-8
26.2.7	Shielding the SNMP Agent.....	26-8
26.2.8	Disabling the SNMP Agent.....	26-9
26.2.9	Configuring the SNMP Agent to Send the Trap Message to the NMS Initiatively...	26-9
26.2.10	Configuring LinkTrap Policy .....	26-9
26.2.11	Configuring the Parameters for Sending the Trap Message .....	26-10
26.3	SNMP Monitoring and Maintenance .....	26-10
26.3.1	Checking the Current SNMP Status.....	26-10
26.3.2	Checking the MIB Objects Supported by the Current SNMP Agent .....	26-11
26.3.3	Viewing SNMP Users.....	26-13
26.3.4	Viewing SNMP Views and Groups .....	26-13
26.4	SNMP Configuration Example .....	26-14
26.4.1	Typical Configuration Example.....	26-14
26.4.2	Example of SNMP Access Control List Association .....	26-16
26.4.3	SNMPv3 Related Configuration Examples .....	26-17
27	RMON Configuration.....	27-1
27.1	Overview .....	27-1
27.1.1	Statistics .....	27-1
27.1.2	History .....	27-1
27.1.3	Alarm .....	27-2
27.1.4	Event .....	27-2
27.2	RMON Configuration Task List .....	27-2



---

27.2.1	Configuring Statistics.....	27-2
27.2.2	Configuring History.....	27-2
27.2.3	Configuring Alarm and Event .....	27-3
27.2.4	Showing RMON status.....	27-4
27.3	RMON Configuration Examples.....	27-4
27.3.1	Example of Configuring Statistics.....	27-4
27.3.2	Example of Configuring History.....	27-4
27.3.3	Example of Configuring Alarm and Event .....	27-4
27.3.4	Example of Showing RMON Status .....	27-5
28	RIP Configuration.....	28-1
28.1	RIP Overview .....	28-1
28.2	RIP Configuration Task List.....	28-2
28.2.1	Creating the RIP Routing Process .....	28-2
28.2.2	Configuring the RIP Update Packet in Unicast Form .....	28-3
28.2.3	Configuring Split Horizon.....	28-3
28.2.4	Defining the RIP Version .....	28-4
28.2.5	Disabling Automatic Route Aggregation.....	28-5
28.2.6	Configuring RIP Authentication .....	28-6
28.2.7	Adjusting the RIP Timer .....	28-6
28.2.8	Configuring the RIP Route Source IP Address Validation.....	28-7
28.2.9	RIP Interface Status Control.....	28-7
28.2.10	Configuring RIP VRF .....	28-8
28.3	RIP Configuration Examples.....	28-9
28.3.1	Example of Configuring Split Horizon .....	28-9
28.3.2	Example of Configuring RIP Authentication .....	28-11
28.3.3	Example of Configuring the RIP Packets in Unicast Form.....	28-13
28.3.4	Example of Configuring RIP VRF.....	28-15
29	OSPF Configuration.....	29-16
29.1	OSPF Overview .....	29-16
29.2	OSPF Configuration Task List.....	29-18
29.2.1	Creating the OSPF Routing Process .....	29-20
29.2.2	Configuring the OSPF Interface Parameters .....	29-21
29.2.3	Configuring the OSPF to Accommodate Different Physical Networks .....	29-22
29.2.4	Configuring the OSPF Area Parameters.....	29-26
29.2.5	Configuring OSPF NSSA .....	29-28
29.2.6	Configuring the Route Aggregation between OSPF Areas .....	29-29
29.2.7	Configuring Route Aggregation When Routes are Injected to the OSPF .....	29-29
29.2.8	Creating the Virtual Links .....	29-30



29.2.9	Creating the Default Routes.....	29-31
29.2.10	Using the Loopback Address as the Route ID .....	29-31
29.2.11	Changing the OSPF Default Management Distance .....	29-32
29.2.12	Configuring the Route Calculation Timer .....	29-32
29.2.13	Changing LSAs Group Pacing .....	29-33
29.2.14	Configuring Routing .....	29-33
29.2.15	Configuring whether to check the MTU Value when the Interface Receives the Database Description packets .....	29-34
29.2.16	Disabling an Interface to Sending the OSPF Packets .....	29-35
29.2.17	OSPF TRAP Sending Configuration .....	29-35
29.3	Monitoring and Maintaining OSPF .....	29-36
29.4	OSPF Configuration Examples.....	29-40
29.4.1	Example of Configuring the OSPF NBMA Network Type.....	29-40
29.4.2	Example of Configuring the OSPF Point-to-multipoint Broadcast Network Type .....	29-42
29.4.3	Example of configuring OSPF authentication .....	29-44
29.4.4	Example of Configuring Route Aggregation.....	29-45
29.4.5	OSPF ABR, ASBR Configuration Examples .....	29-47
29.4.6	Example of Configuring OSPF Stub Area .....	29-50
29.4.7	Example of Configuring OSPF Virtual Links .....	29-52
30	BGP Configuration .....	30-1
30.1	BGP Overview .....	30-1
30.2	Enabling the BGP Protocol .....	30-2
30.3	Default BGP Configuration.....	30-2
30.4	Injecting Route information into the BGP Protocol .....	30-3
30.5	Configuring BGP Peer (Group) and Its Parameters .....	30-5
30.6	Configuring the Management Strategy for BGP .....	30-9
30.7	Configuring Synchronization between BGP and IGP .....	30-10
30.8	Configuring Interaction between BGP and IGP .....	30-11
30.9	Configuring BGP Timer.....	30-12
30.10	Configuring BGP Path Attributes .....	30-12
30.10.1	AS_PATH Attribute .....	30-12
30.10.2	NEXT_HOP Attribute .....	30-14
30.10.3	MULTI_EXIT_DISC Attribute.....	30-14
30.10.4	LOCAL_PREF Attribute .....	30-15
30.10.5	COMMUNITY Attribute.....	30-16
30.10.6	Other Related Configuration .....	30-17
30.11	Selecting the Optimal Path for BGP .....	30-17
30.12	Configuring BGP Route Aggregation .....	30-18



---

30.13	Configuring Route Reflector for BGP.....	30-19
30.14	Configuring Route Flap Dampening for BGP .....	30-20
30.15	Configuring AS Confederation for BGP .....	30-22
30.16	Configuring BGP Management Distance.....	30-22
30.17	Monitoring BGP.....	30-23
30.18	Protocol Independent Configuration .....	30-24
30.18.1	route-map Configuration .....	30-24
30.18.2	Regular Expression Configuration .....	30-24
30.19	BGP Configuration Examples .....	30-26
30.19.1	Configuring BGP Neighbor .....	30-26
30.19.2	Configuring BGP Synchronization .....	30-27
30.19.3	Configuring Neighbors to Use aspath Filter.....	30-28
30.19.4	Configuring Route Aggregation.....	30-29
30.19.5	Configuring Confederation.....	30-29
30.19.6	Configuring Route Reflector.....	30-31
30.19.7	Configuring peergroup .....	30-33
30.19.8	Configuring TCP MD5.....	30-37
31	Protocol-Independent Configuration .....	31-1
31.1	IP Routing Configuration.....	31-1
31.1.1	Configuring Static Routes.....	31-1
31.1.2	Configuring Default Routes .....	31-2
31.1.3	Configuring the Number of Equivalent Routes.....	31-3
31.2	Route Redistribution .....	31-4
31.2.1	Configuring Route Redistribution .....	31-4
31.2.2	Route Filtering Configuration .....	31-6
31.2.3	Configuration Examples: .....	31-8
31.3	Configuring Switch Fast Forwarding ECMP/WCMP Policy .....	31-11
31.3.1	Selecting Hash Keyword .....	31-11
31.3.2	Selecting the Hash Algorithm .....	31-12
31.3.3	Configuration Commands .....	31-12
31.3.4	Configuration Examples .....	31-12
32	Policy-Based Routing Configuration .....	32-1
33	IPv6 Configuration .....	33-1
33.1	IPv6 Overview.....	33-1
33.1.1	IPv6 Address Format.....	33-3
33.1.2	Type of IPv6 Address .....	33-3
33.1.3	IPv6 Packet Header Structure.....	33-9



33.1.4 IPv6 Path MTU Discovery .....	33-11
33.1.5 IPv6 Neighbor Discovery.....	33-11
33.2 IPv6 Configuration .....	33-14
33.2.1 Configuring IPv6 Address.....	33-14
33.2.2 Configuring ICMPv6 Redirection.....	33-15
33.2.3 Configuring Static Neighbor .....	33-16
33.2.4 Configuring Address Conflict Detection .....	33-17
33.2.5 Configuring Other Interface Parameters .....	33-19
33.3 IPv6 Monitoring and Maintenance .....	33-20
34 Configuring IPV6 Tunnel .....	34-1
34.1 Overview .....	34-1
34.1.1 Manually Configured IPv6 Tunnel .....	34-2
34.1.2 Automatic 6to4 Tunnel .....	34-2
34.1.3 ISATAP Automatic unnel .....	34-4
34.2 IPv6 Tunnel Configuration .....	34-5
34.2.1 Manually Configuring IPv6 Tunnels.....	34-5
34.2.2 Configuring 6to4 Tunnel.....	34-6
34.2.3 Configuring ISATAP Tunnel.....	34-7
34.3 Verifying and Monitoring IPv6 Tunnel Configuration.....	34-8
34.4 IPv6 Tunnel Configuration Instances .....	34-10
34.4.1 Manual IPv6 Tunnel Configuration .....	34-10
34.4.2 6to4 Tunnel Configuration .....	34-12
34.4.3 ISATAP Tunnel Configuration.....	34-14
34.4.4 ISATAP and 6to4 Tunnels Configuration.....	34-15
35 OSPFv3 Configuration .....	35-1
35.1 Overview .....	35-1
35.1.1 LSA Association Change.....	35-1
35.1.2 Basic OSPFv3 Configuration .....	35-4
35.1.3 Configuring OSPF Parameters on the Interface .....	35-6
35.1.4 Configuring OSPFv3 Area Parameter .....	35-7
35.1.5 Configurring OSPFv3 Virtual Link .....	35-8
35.1.6 Configuring OSPFv3 Route Aggregation .....	35-9
35.1.7 Configuring Bandwidth Reference Value of OSPFv3 Interface Metric.....	35-9
35.1.8 Configuring OSPFv3 Default Route .....	35-10
35.1.9 Configuring OSPFv3 Timer .....	35-10
35.1.10 Configuring OSPFv3 Route Redistribution .....	35-11
35.1.11 Configuring OSPFv3 Passive Interface .....	35-11
35.1.12 Debugging and Monitoring OSPFv3 .....	35-12



---

36	IP Multicast Routing Configuration.....	36-1
36.1	Overview .....	36-1
36.1.1	IP Multicast Routing Implementation.....	36-1
36.1.2	IGMP Overview .....	36-2
36.1.3	PIM-DM Overview .....	36-6
36.2	PIM-SM Overview .....	36-7
36.3	Basic Multicast Routing Configuration .....	36-10
36.3.1	Enabling multicast routing forwarding .....	36-10
36.3.2	Enabling IP multicast routing protocol.....	36-10
36.3.3	Enabling IGMP .....	36-11
36.4	Advanced Multicast Routing Configuration.....	36-11
36.4.1	Configuring Multicast Routing Characteristics .....	36-11
36.4.2	Configuring IGMP .....	36-14
36.4.3	Configuring PIM-DM.....	36-24
36.4.4	Configuring PIM-SM.....	36-28
36.4.5	Monitoring and Maintaining PIM-SM .....	36-37
36.5	Multiple Routing Configuration Examples .....	36-38
36.5.1	PIM-DM Configuration Example.....	36-38
36.5.2	PIM-SM Configuration Example.....	36-39
36.5.3	BSR Configuration Examples.....	36-40
37	MPLS Configuration.....	37-1
37.1	MPLS Overview .....	37-1
37.1.1	Basic Concepts .....	37-1
37.1.2	Label .....	37-3
37.1.3	Label Distribution Protocol .....	37-5
37.1.4	MPLS Network .....	37-5
37.1.5	MPLS Forwarding Behavior .....	37-6
37.1.6	Establishment and Loop Detection of LSP .....	37-7
37.1.7	Application of MPLS.....	37-8
37.2	Configuring MPLS.....	37-9
37.2.1	MPLS Basic Configuration Steps .....	37-9
37.2.2	LDP Parameter Configuration .....	37-15
37.2.3	Manually Configuring the LSP.....	37-22
37.2.4	MPLS Basic Configuration Examples .....	37-24
38	BGP/MPLS VPN Configuration.....	38-1
38.1	BGP/MPLS VPN Overview .....	38-1
38.1.1	BGP/MPLS VPN structure .....	38-2
38.1.2	VRF .....	38-3



38.1.3 MP-BGP .....	38-5
38.1.4 Configuring the MPLS network .....	38-5
38.1.5 Configuring the VPN route instance .....	38-6
38.1.6 Configuring PE-PE transfer of VPN routes .....	38-7
38.2 Configuring the PE-CE Route Switching .....	38-7
38.2.1 Running the BGP protocol to transfer the route information between PE-CE .....	38-7
38.3 BGP/MPLS VPN Configuration Example.....	38-11
38.3.1 Intranet Configuration Example.....	38-11
38.3.2 Extranet configuration example.....	38-14
38.3.3 Hub-and-Spoke configuration example .....	38-18
39 Port-based Flow Control Configuration.....	39-1
39.1 Storm Control .....	39-1
39.1.1 Overview .....	39-1
39.1.2 Configuring Storm Control.....	39-1
39.1.3 Viewing the Enable Status of Storm Control .....	39-2
39.2 Protected Port .....	39-3
39.2.1 Overview .....	39-3
39.2.2 Configuring the Protected Port.....	39-4
39.2.3 Showing Protected Port Configuration .....	39-4
39.3 Port Security .....	39-4
39.3.1 Overview .....	39-4
39.3.2 Configuring Port Security .....	39-5
39.3.3 Viewing Port Security Information .....	39-8
39.4 ARP-CHECK.....	39-10
39.4.1 overview .....	39-10
39.4.2 Configuring ARP-CHECK.....	39-10
40 802.1x Configuration.....	40-1
40.1 Overview .....	40-1
40.1.1 Device Roles .....	40-2
40.1.2 Authentication Initiation and Packet Interaction During Authentication .....	40-3
40.1.3 States of Authorized Users and Unauthorized Users .....	40-4
40.1.4 Topologies of Typical Applications.....	40-5
40.2 Configuring 802.1x.....	40-8
40.2.1 Default Configuration of 802.1x.....	40-9
40.2.2 Precautions for Configuring 802.1x.....	40-10
40.2.3 Configuring the communication between the device and Radius server .....	40-10
40.2.4 Setting the 802.1X Authentication Switch .....	40-11
40.2.5 Enabling/Disabling the Authentication of a Port .....	40-13



---

40.2.6	Enabling Timed Re-authentication .....	40-14
40.2.7	Changing the QUIET Time .....	40-15
40.2.8	Setting the Packet Retransmission Interval .....	40-15
40.2.9	Setting the Maximum Number of Requests .....	40-16
40.2.10	Setting the Maximum Number of Re-authentications .....	40-16
40.2.11	Setting the Server-timeout .....	40-17
40.2.12	Configuring the device to initiate the 802.1x authentication proactively ....	40-17
40.2.13	Configuring 802.1x Accounting .....	40-20
40.2.14	Configuring the IP authorization mode.....	40-23
40.2.15	Releasing Advertisement .....	40-25
40.2.16	List of Authenticable Hosts under a Port.....	40-25
40.2.17	Authorization .....	40-26
40.2.18	Configuring the Authentication Mode .....	40-27
40.2.19	Configure the backup authentication server. ....	40-28
40.2.20	Configuring and Managing Online Users.....	40-29
40.2.21	Implementing User-IP Binding .....	40-29
40.2.22	Port-based Traffic Charging .....	40-29
40.2.23	Implementing Automatic Switching and Control of VLAN .....	40-29
40.2.24	Implementing GUEST VLAN Function.....	40-30
40.2.25	Shielding Proxy Server and Dial-up .....	40-31
40.2.26	Configuring On-line Probe on Client End.....	40-32
40.2.27	Configuring the Option Flag for EAPOL Frames to Carry TAG .....	40-33
40.2.28	Configuring Port-based Authentication .....	40-33
40.2.29	Configuring Port-based Single-user Authentication .....	40-34
40.2.30	Configuring Dynamic Acl Assignment .....	40-36
40.3	Viewing the Configuration and Current Statistics of the 802.1x.....	40-37
40.3.1	Viewing the Radius Authentication and Accounting Configuration .....	40-37
40.3.2	Viewing the Number of Current Users .....	40-37
40.3.3	Viewing the Authenticable Address Table .....	40-38
40.3.4	Viewing the User Authentication Status Information .....	40-38
40.3.5	Showing the 1x Client Probe Time Configuration .....	40-39
40.3.6	Other Precautions for Configuring 802.1x.....	40-39
41	AAA Configuration.....	41-1
41.1	Basic AAA Principles.....	41-1
41.1.1	Basic AAA Principles .....	41-2
41.1.2	Method List.....	41-2
41.2	Basic AAA Configuration Steps.....	41-3
41.2.1	Overview of AAA Configuration Steps .....	41-4



---

41.2.2 Enabling AAA .....	41-4
41.2.3 Disabling AAA.....	41-4
41.2.4 Sequential Configuration Steps.....	41-4
41.3 Configuring Authentication .....	41-5
41.3.1 Defining AAA Authentication Method List.....	41-5
41.3.2 Example of Method List.....	41-6
41.3.3 General Steps in Configuring AAA Authentication.....	41-7
41.3.4 Configuring the AAA Line Authentication .....	41-7
41.3.5 Example of Authentication Configuration .....	41-10
41.4 Configuring Authorization.....	41-11
41.4.1 Preparations for Authorization.....	41-11
41.4.2 Configuring Authorization List .....	41-12
41.4.3 RADIUS Authorization .....	41-12
41.4.4 Local Authorization.....	41-12
41.4.5 None Authorization.....	41-13
41.4.6 Example of Configuring Network Authorization.....	41-13
41.5 Configuring Accounting .....	41-14
41.5.1 Accounting Types .....	41-14
41.5.2 Network Accounting .....	41-14
41.5.3 Preparations for Accounting .....	41-14
41.5.4 Configuring Accounting .....	41-14
41.5.5 Monitoring AAA users.....	41-15
41.5.6 Example of Configuring Accounting .....	41-15
41.6 Configuring Failed Authentication Lockout of Login User.....	41-16
42 Configuring Radius .....	42-1
42.1 Radius Overview.....	42-1
42.2 RADIUS Configuration Tasks.....	42-2
42.2.1 Configuring Radius Protocol Parameters.....	42-2
42.2.2 Specifying the Radius Authentication.....	42-3
42.2.3 Specify Radius Private Attribute Type .....	42-3
42.3 Monitoring RADIUS.....	42-6
42.4 Radius Configuration Example .....	42-6
43 TACACS+ Configuration .....	43-1
43.1 TACACS+ Overview.....	43-1
43.2 TACACS+ Application .....	43-2
43.3 TACACS+ Configuration Task.....	43-4
43.3.1 Configuring TACACS+ Protocol Parameter .....	43-5
43.4 Configuration Examples of Using TACACS+ to Authenticate, Authorize and Account.....	43-7



---

43.4.1	Configuration Example of Using TACACS+ by Login Authentication .....	43-7
43.4.2	Configuration Example of Using TACACS+ by ENABLE Authentication .....	43-8
43.4.3	Configuration Example of Using TACACS+ by Login Authorization .....	43-9
43.4.4	Configuration Example of Using TACACS+ by Level 15 Command Audit.....	43-9
44	SSH Terminal Service .....	44-11
44.1	About SSH .....	44-11
44.2	SSH Support Algorithms .....	44-11
44.3	SSH Supports .....	44-11
44.4	SSH Configuration .....	44-12
44.4.1	Default SSH Configurations .....	44-12
44.4.2	User Authentication Configuration .....	44-12
44.4.3	Enabling SSH SERVER .....	44-12
44.4.4	Disabling SSH SERVER .....	44-13
44.4.5	Configuring SSH User Authentication Timeout .....	44-13
44.4.6	Configuring SSH Re-authentication Times .....	44-13
44.5	Using SSH for Device Management .....	44-14
45	CPU Protection Configuration.....	45-1
45.1	Overview .....	45-1
45.1.1	Function of CPU Protect .....	45-1
45.1.2	Operating Principles of CPU Protect.....	45-1
45.2	Configuring CPU Protect .....	45-2
45.2.1	CPU Protect Default value .....	45-2
45.2.2	Configuring the Bandwidth for Each Type of Packet.....	45-3
45.2.3	Configuring the Priority for Each Type of Packet .....	45-3
45.3	Viewing CPU Protect Information .....	45-4
45.3.1	Showing the Statistics of the Packets Received by the CPU of the Management Board .....	45-4
45.3.2	Showing the Statistics of the Packets Received by the CPU of the Line Card .....	45-4
45.3.3	Showing the Statistics of the Packets Received by a specific type .....	45-5
46	Anti-attack System Guard Configuration.....	46-1
46.1	Overview .....	46-1
46.2	Anti-attack System Guard Configuration .....	46-2
46.2.1	IP anti-scanning configuration task list.....	46-2
46.2.2	Enabling the Anti-attack System Guard on the Interface .....	46-2
46.2.3	Setting the Isolation Period for Illegal IP Address .....	46-3
46.2.4	Setting the Threshold to Judge Illegal IP Address .....	46-3
46.2.5	Setting the Maximum Monitored IPs .....	46-4



---

46.2.6	Setting the Exceptional IP Addresses Free from Monitoring.....	46-5
46.2.7	Clearing the Isolation Status of Isolated IP Addresses .....	46-6
46.2.8	View Related Information of System Guard.....	46-6
47	Dynamic ARP Inspection Configuration .....	47-1
47.1	Understanding DAI.....	47-1
47.1.1	Understanding ARP Spoofing Attack.....	47-1
47.1.2	Understanding DAI and ARP Spoofing Attacks.....	47-2
47.1.3	Understanding DAI Global Switch.....	47-2
47.1.4	Interface Trust Status and Network Security.....	47-3
47.2	Configuring DAI.....	47-3
47.2.1	Enabling Global DAI Function.....	47-3
47.2.2	Enabling DAI Packet Check Function for Specified VLAN.....	47-4
47.2.3	Setting the Trust Status of Port .....	47-4
47.2.4	Related Configuration of DHCP Snooping Database .....	47-4
47.3	Showing DAI Configuration.....	47-5
47.3.1	Showing Whether DAI Function Is Enabled for VLAN .....	47-5
47.3.2	Showing DAI Configuration Status of Each Layer 2 Interface .....	47-5
48	IP Source Guard Configuration.....	48-1
48.1	Brief Introduction of IP Source Guard.....	48-1
48.1.1	Understanding DHCP.....	48-1
48.1.2	Understanding IP Source Guard .....	48-3
48.1.3	Other Precautions of Configuring IP Source Guard.....	48-4
48.2	IP Source Guard Configuration.....	48-4
48.2.1	Configuring IP Source Guard on the Interface.....	48-4
48.2.2	Configuring Static IP Source Address Binding User .....	48-5
48.3	Displaying IP Source Guard Configuration.....	48-5
48.3.1	Displaying IP Source Guard Filtering Entry .....	48-5
48.3.2	Displaying the Information of IP Source Address Binding Database .....	48-6
49	Access Control List .....	49-7
49.1	Overview .....	49-7
49.1.1	Access Control List Introduction.....	49-7
49.1.2	Why to Configure Access Lists.....	49-8
49.1.3	When to Configure Access Lists .....	49-8
49.1.4	Input/Output ACL, Filtering Domain Template and Rule .....	49-9
49.2	Configuring IP Access List .....	49-11
49.2.1	Guide to configure IP Access List .....	49-11
49.2.2	Configuring IP Access List .....	49-12



---

49.2.3	Showing IP Address-based Access Control List.....	49-13
49.2.4	IP Address-based Access Control List Example .....	49-13
49.3	Configuring Extended MAC Address-based Access Control List .....	49-15
49.3.1	Configuration Guide of Extended MAC Address-based Access Control List.....	49-15
49.3.2	Configuring Extended MAC Address-based Access Control List.....	49-16
49.3.3	Showing Configuration of MAC Extended Access List .....	49-17
49.3.4	MAC Extended Access List Example .....	49-17
49.4	Configuring Expert Extended Access List.....	49-18
49.4.1	Configuration Guide of Expert Extended Access List .....	49-18
49.4.2	Configuring Expert Extended Access List .....	49-18
49.4.3	Showing Configuration of ExpertExtended Access List .....	49-20
49.4.4	Expert Extended Access List Example .....	49-20
49.5	Configuring IPv6-based Extended Access List.....	49-20
49.5.1	Configuring IPv6 Extended Access List .....	49-20
49.5.2	Showing Configuration of IPv6Extended Access List .....	49-21
49.5.3	IPv6 Extended Access List Example.....	49-21
49.6	Configuring ACL80.....	49-22
49.7	Configuring TCP Flag Filtering Control.....	49-24
49.8	Configuring ACL Entries by Priority.....	49-26
49.9	Configuring ACL Based on Time-range .....	49-27
49.10	Configuration Examples.....	49-28
49.10.1	Configuring Unidirectional TCP Connection .....	49-28
49.10.2	Configuration Requirements .....	49-28
49.10.3	Topology View.....	49-29
49.10.4	Analysis.....	49-29
49.10.5	Configuration Procedure: .....	49-29
49.11	Acl Configuration of Different Line Cards .....	49-30
50	VACL Configuration.....	50-1
50.1	Overview .....	50-1
50.2	VACL Configuration.....	50-1
50.2.1	Creating Vlan access map .....	50-1
50.2.2	Configuring match Content of vlan access map .....	50-2
50.2.3	Configuring actions Content of vlan access map.....	50-3
50.2.4	Application of vlan access map.....	50-4
50.2.5	Displaying vlan access map.....	50-5
51	QoS Configuration .....	51-6
51.1	QoS Overview.....	51-6
51.1.1	Basic Framework of QoS .....	51-6



51.1.2 QoS processing flow .....	51-7
51.2 QoS Configuration .....	51-10
51.2.1 Default QoS configuration .....	51-10
51.2.2 Configure the QoS trust mode of the interface .....	51-11
51.2.3 Configuring the Default CoS Value of an Interface .....	51-11
51.2.4 Configuring Class Maps .....	51-12
51.2.5 Configuring Policy Maps .....	51-13
51.2.6 Applying Policy Maps on the Interface .....	51-14
51.2.7 Configuring the Output Queue Scheduling Algorithm .....	51-14
51.2.8 Configuring Output Round-Robin Weight .....	51-15
51.2.9 Configuring Cos-Map .....	51-16
51.2.10 Configuring CoS-to-DSCP Map .....	51-17
51.2.11 Configuring DSCP-to-CoS Map .....	51-17
51.2.12 Configuring Port Rate Limiting .....	51-18
51.2.13 Configuring IPpre to DSCP Map .....	51-19
51.3 QoS Displaying .....	51-19
51.3.1 Showing class-map .....	51-19
51.3.2 Showing policy-map .....	51-20
51.3.3 Showing mls qos interface .....	51-20
51.3.4 Showing mls qos queueing .....	51-20
51.3.5 Showing mls qos scheduler .....	51-21
51.3.6 Showing mls qos maps .....	51-21
51.3.7 Showing mls qos rate-limit .....	51-22
51.3.8 Showing show policy-map interface .....	51-23
52 VRRP Configuration .....	52-1
52.1 Overview .....	52-1
52.2 VRRP Applications .....	52-2
52.2.1 Route Redundancy .....	52-3
52.2.2 Load Balancing .....	52-3
52.3 VRRP Configuration .....	52-4
52.3.1 VRRP Configuration Task List .....	52-4
52.3.2 Enabling VRRP Backup Function .....	52-4
52.3.3 Setting the Authentication String for the VRRP Backup Group .....	52-5
52.3.4 Setting the Advertisement Interval of the VRRP Backup Group .....	52-6
52.3.5 Setting the Preemption Mode of the Router in the VRRP Backup Group .....	52-6
52.3.6 Setting the Priority of the Router in the VRRP Backup Group .....	52-7
52.3.7 Setting the Interface to be Monitored by the VRRP Backup Group .....	52-7
52.3.8 Setting the Learning Function of VRRP Advertisement Timer Device .....	52-8



---

50.3.11	Setting the Description String of the Router in the VRRP Backup Group .....	52-8
52.4	Monitoring and Maintaining VRRP.....	52-9
52.4.1	show vrrp .....	52-9
52.4.2	debug vrrp .....	52-11
52.5	Example of Typical VRRP Configuration .....	52-13
52.5.1	Example of Single VRRP Backup Group Configuration.....	52-14
52.5.2	Example of configuration to monitor interface with VRRP .....	52-15
52.5.3	Example of Multiple VRRP Backup Groups .....	52-17
52.6	Diagnosing and Troubleshooting VRRP .....	52-19
53	RERP Configuration.....	53-1
53.1	RERP Overview .....	53-1
53.1.1	Understanding RERP .....	53-1
53.1.2	Typical Applications .....	53-2
53.1.3	Default RERP Configuration .....	53-4
53.1.4	Configuring RERP Globally .....	53-5
53.1.5	Configuring RERP Detection Interval.....	53-5
53.1.6	Configuring RERP Failure Time .....	53-6
53.1.7	Configuring RERP Region .....	53-6
53.1.8	Configuring RERP Region Role .....	53-6
53.1.9	Configuring RERP Region Control VLAN .....	53-7
53.1.10	Configuring RERP Primary/Secondary Port .....	53-7
53.2	Viewing RERP Information .....	53-8
53.2.1	Viewing the RERP Configuration and Status of the Device .....	53-8
54	RLDP Configuration .....	54-1
54.1	RLDP Overview .....	54-1
54.1.1	Understanding RLDP .....	54-1
54.1.2	Typical Application.....	54-2
54.2	Configuring RLDP .....	54-4
54.2.1	RLDP defaults .....	54-4
54.2.2	Configuring RLDP Globally .....	54-5
54.2.3	Configuring RLDP on the Port.....	54-5
54.2.4	Configuring RLDP Detection Interval .....	54-6
54.2.5	Configuring the Maximum RLDP Detection Times.....	54-7
54.2.6	Restoring the RLDP Status of the Port.....	54-7
54.3	Viewing RLDP Information.....	54-8
54.3.1	Viewing the RLDP Status of All Ports .....	54-8
54.3.2	Viewing the RLDP Status of the Specified Port.....	54-9



---

55	TPP Configuratuin.....	55-1
55.1	TPP Overview .....	55-1
55.2	TPP Application.....	55-1
55.3	TPP Configuration.....	55-2
55.3.1	Configuring Topology Protection Globally .....	55-3
55.3.2	Configuring Topology Protection on the Port .....	55-3
55.4	Typical TPP Configuration Examples .....	55-4
55.5	View TPP information.....	55-5
55.5.1	Viewing the TPP configuration and status of the device .....	55-5
56	Management Board Redundancy Configuration.....	56-1
56.1	Understanding Redundant NSF of Management Board .....	56-1
56.1.1	Overview .....	56-1
56.1.2	NSF Advantages and Limitation .....	56-2
56.1.3	Key Constitution Technology of NSF.....	56-4
56.2	NSF Configuration .....	56-5
56.3	Configuring Redundant Management.....	56-5
56.3.1	Automatic selection of master management board.....	56-6
56.3.2	Manual selection of master management board.....	56-7
56.4	Reliability Configuration .....	56-8
56.4.1	Configuring the Synchronization Mode .....	56-8
56.4.2	Configuring the Heart-beat Check Time.....	56-8
56.4.3	Resetting the Management Board .....	56-8
57	File System Configuration.....	57-1
57.1	Overview .....	57-1
57.2	Configuring File System.....	57-1
57.2.1	File System Configuration Guide .....	57-1
57.2.2	Changing Directories.....	57-2
57.2.3	Copying Files.....	57-2
57.2.4	Showing Directories .....	57-2
57.2.5	Formating the System .....	57-3
57.2.6	Creating Directories .....	57-3
57.2.7	Moving Files .....	57-3
57.2.8	Showing the Current Working Path.....	57-4
57.2.9	Removing Files.....	57-4
57.2.10	Deleting Empty Directories .....	57-4
58	Log Configuration.....	58-1
58.1	Overview .....	58-1



---

58.1.1 Log Message Format .....	58-1
58.2 Log Configuration.....	58-2
58.2.1 Log Switch.....	58-2
58.2.2 Configuring the Device Displaying the Log Information.....	58-2
58.2.3 Enabling the Log Timestamp Switch of Log Information.....	58-3
58.2.4 Enabling Switches in Log System.....	58-4
58.2.5 Enabling Log Statistics .....	58-4
58.2.6 Enabling the Sequential Number Switch of Log Information .....	58-4
58.2.7 Configuring Synchronization Between User Input and Log Output .....	58-4
58.2.8 Configuring Log Rate Limit.....	58-5
58.2.9 Configuring the Log Information Displaying Level .....	58-5
58.2.10 Configuring the log information device value.....	58-7
58.2.11 Configuring the Source Address of Log Messages.....	58-8
58.2.12 Setting and Sending User Log.....	58-8
58.3 Log Monitoring .....	58-8
58.3.1 Examples of Log Configurations .....	58-9
59 Module Hot-Plugging/ Unplugging .....	59-1
59.1 Overview .....	59-1
59.2 Module Hot-Plugging/Unplugging Configuration .....	59-1
59.2.1 Plugging or Unplugging Modules .....	59-1
59.2.2 Installing or Uninstalling Modules.....	59-2
59.2.3 Viewing module information .....	59-2
60 Configuring LCD.....	60-1
60.1 Overview .....	60-1
60.1.1 LCD Key Introduction .....	60-1
60.2 LCD Configuration Task List .....	60-3
60.2.1 Configuring Warning Information Queue Length .....	60-3
60.3 LCD Configuration Instance.....	60-3
61 Using the USB.....	61-1
61.1 Overview .....	61-1
61.2 Inserting the Device .....	61-1
61.3 Using the Device.....	61-1
61.3.1 Formatting the partition .....	61-2
61.3.2 Showing USB Device Information.....	61-2
61.3.3 Unplugging USB Device.....	61-3
61.4 USB Faults .....	61-3
62 POE Management Configurations .....	62-1



---

62.1	Overview .....	62-1
62.2	POE Configuration Management.....	62-1
62.2.1	Remote power supply configuration.....	62-2
62.2.2	Enabling/Disabling the PoE of the Port.....	62-2
62.2.3	Setting the Minimum Allowed Voltage of the POE System .....	62-3
62.2.4	Setting the Maximum Allowed Voltage of the POE System .....	62-4
62.2.5	Setting the Power Management Mode of the Switch .....	62-4
62.2.6	Disconnect Detection Mode .....	62-5
62.2.7	Showing the Power Supply Status of the Port/System .....	62-6



# 1

## Command Line Interface Configuration

This chapter describes the method to use the command line interface (CLI). You can manage network devices by the command line interface.

This chapter covers the following topics:

- Command Mode
- Getting Help
- Abbreviating Commands
- Using **no** and **default** Options
- Understanding CLI Error Messages
- Using History Commands
- Using Editing Features
- Filtering and Looking Up CLI Output Information
- Using Command Alias

### 1.1 Command Mode

---

The management interface of DES-7200 series falls into multiple modes. The command mode you are working with determines the commands you can use.

To list the usable commands in each mode, enter a question mark (?) at the command prompt.

After setting up a session connection to the network device management interface, you enter in the user EXEC mode first. In the user EXEC mode, only a few commands are usable with limited functions, for example, command **show**. The command results are also not saved.

To use all commands, enter the privileged EXEC mode with the privileged password. Then you can use all privileged commands and enter the global configuration mode.

Using commands in a configuration mode (for instance, global configuration or interface configuration) will influence the current configuration. If you have saved the configuration information, these commands will be saved and executed when the system restarts. To enter any of the configuration modes, first enter the global configuration mode.



The following table lists the command modes, access methods, prompts, and exit methods. Suppose the equipment is named "DES-7200" by default.

Summary of main command modes:

Command mode	Access method	Prompt	Exit or enter the next mode	Remark
User EXEC	Log in,	DES-7200 >	Enter command <b>exit</b> to quit this mode. Enter command <b>enable</b> to enter the privileged EXEC mode.	Used for basic test and showing system information
Privileged EXEC	In the user EXEC mode, enter command <b>enable</b> .	DES-7200 #	To return to the user EXEC mode, enter command <b>disable</b> . To enter the global configuration mode, enter command <b>configure</b> .	Verify settings. This mode is password-protected.
Global configuration	In the privileged EXEC mode, enter command <b>configure terminal</b> .	DES-7200 (config)#	To return to the privileged EXEC mode, enter command <b>end</b> or <b>exit</b> or press Ctrl+C. To access the interface configuration mode, enter command <b>interface</b> with an interface specified. To access the VLAN configuration mode, enter command <b>vlan</b> <i>vlan_id</i> .	In this mode, you can execute commands to configure global parameters influencing the whole switch.
Interface configuration	In the global configuration mode, enter command <b>interface</b> .	DES-7200 (config-if)#	To return to the privileged EXEC mode, enter command <b>end</b> or press Ctrl+C. To return to the global configuration mode, enter command <b>exit</b> . Moreover, you need specify an interface in the <b>interface</b> command.	Configure various interfaces of the equipment in this mode.
Config-vlan (Vlan Mode)	In the global configuration mode, enter command <b>vlan</b> <i>vlan-id</i> .	DES-7200 (config-vlan)#	To return to privileged EXEC mode, enter command <b>end</b> or press Ctrl+C. To return to the global configuration mode, enter command <b>exit</b> .	Configure VLAN parameters in this mode.



## 1.2 Getting Help

To obtain a list of commands that are available for each command mode, enter a question mark(?) at the command prompt. You can also obtain a list of command keywords beginning with the same character or parameters of each command. See the following table.

Command	Description
<b>Help</b>	Obtain the brief description of the help system under any command mode.
<b>abbreviated-command-entry?</b>	Obtain a list of commands that begin with a particular character string.(Do not leave a space between the keyword and question mark.) For example: DES-7200# <b>di?</b> dir disable
<b>abbreviated-command-entry &lt;Tab&gt;</b>	Complete a partial command name. For example: DES-7200# <b>show conf&lt;Tab&gt;</b> DES-7200# <b>show configuration</b>
<b>Command ?</b>	List a command's associated keywords.(Leave a space between the keyword and question mark.) For example: DES-7200# <b>show ?</b>
<b>command keyword ?</b>	List a command's associated arguments.(Leave a space between the keyword and question mark.) For example: DES-7200(config)# <b>snmp-server community ?</b> WORD SNMP community string

## 1.3 Abbreviating Commands

To abbreviate a command, simply enter part of the command that can uniquely identify the command.

For example, **show running-config** can be abbreviated as:

```
DES-7200# show run
```

If the entered command cannot be uniquely identified by the system, the system will prompt "Ambiguous command:".



For example, when you want to view the information about access lists, the following command is not complete.

```
DES-7200# show access
% Ambiguous command: "show access"
```

## 1.4 Using no and default Options

Almost all commands have the **no** option generally used to disable a feature or function or perform a reversed action of the command. For example, the **no shutdown** command turns on the interface, the opposite operation of the **shutdown** command. You can use the commands without the **no** option to enable the features that have been disabled or are disabled by default.

Most configuration commands have the **default** option that restores the command setting to its default. Most commands are disabled by default. In this case, the **default** and **no** options generally serve the same purpose. However, some commands are enabled by default. In this case, the **default** and **no** options serve different purposes, where the **default** option enables the command and restores the arguments to the default settings.

## 1.5 Understanding CLI Error Messages

The following table lists the error prompt messages that may occur when you use the CLI to manage equipments.

Common CLI error messages:

Error message	Meaning	How to obtain help
% Ambiguous command: "show c"	The switch cannot identify the unique command for you input insufficient characters.	Re-input the command with a question mark following the ambiguous word. The possible keywords will be listed.
% Incomplete command.	User has not input the required keywords or arguments.	Re-input the command with a space followed by a question mark. The possible keywords or arguments will be displayed.
% Invalid input detected at '^' marker.	The symbol "^" will indicate the position of the wrong words when user inputs a wrong command.	Input a question mark at the command prompt to show the allowed keywords of the command.



## 1.6 Using Historical Commands

The system records the commands you have input recently, which is very useful when you input a long and complex command again.

To re-execute the commands you have input from the historical records, perform the following operations.

Operation	Result
<b>Ctrl-P</b> or <b>Up</b>	Allows you to browse the previous command in the historical command records.
<b>Ctrl-N</b> or <b>Down</b>	Allows you to return to a more recent command in the historical command records.



### Note

Standards-based terminals like VT100 series support arrow keys.

## 1.7 Using Editing Features

This section describes the editing functions that may be used for command line edit, including:

- Edit Shortcut Keys
- Sliding Window of Command Line

### 1.7.1 Editing Shortcut Keys

The following table lists the edit shortcut keys.

Function	Shortcut Key	Description
Move cursor in an editing line	Left direction key or Ctrl+B	Move the cursor to left by one character.
	Right direction key or Ctrl+F	Move the cursor to right by one character.
	Ctrl+A	Move the cursor to the beginning of the command line.
	Ctrl+E	Move the cursor to the end of the command line.
Delete the entered characters	Backspace	Delete the character to the left of the cursor.
	Delete	Delete the character where the cursor is located.



Function	Shortcut Key	Description
Scroll up by one line or one page	Return	Scroll up the displayed contents by one line and make the next line appear. This is used only before the end of the output.
	Space	Scroll up the displayed contents by one page and make the next page appear. This is used only before the end of the output.

### 1.7.2 Sliding Window of Command Line

You can use the sliding window to edit the commands that exceed the width of one line. When the editing cursor closes to the right border, the whole command line will move to the left by 20 characters. In this case, the cursor can still be moved back to the previous character or the beginning of the command line.

When editing a command line, you can move the cursor using the shortcut keys in the following table:

Function	Shortcut key
Move the cursor to the left by one character	Left direction key or Ctrl+B
Move the cursor to the head of a line	Ctrl+A
Move the cursor to the right by one character	Right direction key or Ctrl+F
Move the cursor to the end of a line	Ctrl+E

For example, the contents of the **mac-address-table static** command may exceed the screen width. When the cursor approaches the line end for the first time, the whole line move left by 20 characters, and the hidden beginning part is replaced by "\$" on the screen. The line moves left by 20 characters when the cursor reaches the right border.

```
mac-address-table static 00d0.f800.0c0c vlan 1 interface
$static 00d0.f800.0c0c vlan 1 interface fastEthernet
$static 00d0.f800.0c0c vlan 1 interface fastEthernet 0/1
```

Now you can press **Ctrl+A** to return to the beginning of the command line. In this case, the hidden ending part is replaced by "\$".

```
-address-table static 00d0.f800.0c0c vlan 1 interface $
```



#### Note

The default line width on the terminal is 80 characters.

Combined with historical commands, the sliding window enables you to invoke complicated commands repeatedly. For details about shortcut keys, see Edit Shortcut Keys.



## 1.8 Filtering and Looking UP CLI Output Information

### 1.8.1 Filtering and Looking Up the Information Outputted by the Show Command

To look up the specified message in the information outputted by the **show** command, execute the following command:

Command	Description
DES-7200# <b>show</b> <i>any-command</i>   <b>begin</b> <i>regular-expression</i>	Look up the specified content from the information outputted by the <b>show</b> command and output all information of the first line that contains this content and subsequent lines.



#### Caution

- 1.You can execute **show** command in any mode.
- 2.The information to be looked up is case sensitive, and the following is the same.

To filter the specified content in the information outputted by the **show** command, execute the following commands:

Command	Description
DES-7200# <b>show</b> <i>any-command</i>   <b>exclude</b> <i>regular-expression</i>	Filter the content from the information outputted by the <b>show</b> command and output other information excluding the line that includes the specified content.
DES-7200# <b>show</b> <i>any-command</i>     <b>include</b> <i>regular-expression</i>	Filter the content from the information outputted by the <b>show</b> command and output the line that includes the specified content. Other information will be filtered.



#### Note

To look up and filter the contents outputted by the **show** command, it is necessary to input the pipeline sign (vertical line, "|") followed by lookup and filtration rules and contents (characters or strings). The contents to be looked up and filtered are case sensitive.

## 1.9 Using Command Alias

The system provides the command alias function. Any word can be specified as the alias of a command. For example, you can define the word "mygateway" as the alias of "ip route 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0 192.1.1.1". Inputting this word is equal to inputting the whole string.



You can use one word to replace one command by configuring an alias for the command. For example, you can define an alias to represent the front part of one command, and then continue to enter the following part.

The command that an alias represents must run under the mode you have defined in the current system. In the global configuration mode, you can enter **alias?** to list all command modes that can configure alias.

```
DES-7200(config)#alias ?
aaa-gs          AAA server group mode
acl             acl configure mode
bgp             Configure bgp Protocol
config         globle configure mode
.....
```

An alias supports help information. An alias appears with an asterisk (\*) before it in the following format:

```
*command-alias=original-command
```

For example, in the EXEC mode, the alias “s” indicates the **show** command by default. Enter “s?” to obtain the help information on the command and the aliases beginning with ‘s’.

```
DES-7200#s?
*s=show  show  start-chat  start-terminal-service
```

If the command that an alias represents has more than one word, the command will be included by the quotation marks. As shown in the following example, configure the alias “sv” to replace the **show version** command in the EXEC mode.

```
DES-7200#s?
*s=show  *sv="show version"  show  start-chat
start-terminal-service
```

An alias must begin with the first character of the command line entered without any blank before it. As shown in the above example, the alias is invalid if you have inputted a blank before the command.

```
DES-7200# s?
show  start-chat  start-terminal-service
```

An alias can also be used to get the help information on obtaining command parameters. For example, the alias “ia” represents “ip address” in the interface configuration mode.

```
DES-7200(config-if)#ia ?
A.B.C.D  IP address
dhcp     IP Address via DHCP
```



```
DES-7200(config-if)#ip address
```

Here lists the parameter information after the command "**ip address**", and replaces the alias with the actual command.

An alias must be inputted fully for use. Otherwise, it can not be identified.

Use the **show aliases** command to view the setting of aliases in the system.

## 1.10 Accessing CLI

---

Before using CLI, you need to use a terminal or PC to connect with the network device. Power on the network device. After the initialization of hardware and software, you can use CLI. If the network device is used for the first time, you can only connect the network device through the serial port (Console), which is referred to as out-band management. In addition, you can connect and manage the network device through Telnet virtual terminal by performing corresponding configurations. In either case, you can access the command line interface.







# 2

## Basic Switch Management Configuration

### 2.1 Overview

---

This chapter describes how to manage our switches:

- Command Authorization-based Access Control
- Logon Authentication Control
- System Time Configuration
- Scheduled Restart
- System Name and Command Prompt Configuration
- Banner Configuration
- System Information Displaying
- Console Rate Configuration
- Telnet Configuration
- Connection Timeout Configuration
- Commands Execution in Batch in the Executable File
- Service Switch Configuration

**Note**

For more information about the usage and description of the CLI commands mentioned in this chapter, see the *Reference Configuration of Switch Management Command*.

### 2.2 Command Authorization-based Access Control

---

#### 2.2.1 Overview

---

A simple way to manage the terminals' access to a network is to use passwords and assign privileged levels. Password restricts access to a network or network devices. Privileged levels define the commands users can use after they have logged in to a network device.

From the perspective of security, password is stored in the configuration file. Password must be safe when the configuration file is transmitted, for example, over TFTP, across a network. Password is encrypted before being stored into the configuration file, and the clear text



password is changed to the cipher text password. The **enable secret** command uses a private encryption algorithm.

### 2.2.2 Configuring Default Password and Privileged Level

No password at any level is configured by default. The default privileged level is 15.

### 2.2.3 Configuring/Changing the Passwords at Different Levels

Our products provide the following commands for configuring or changing the passwords at different levels.

Command	Purpose
DES-7200(config)# <b>enable password</b> [level level] {password   encryption-type encrypted-password}	<p>Set a static password. You can only set a level-15 password only when no level-15 security password is configured.</p> <p>If a non- level -15 password is set, the system will show a prompt and automatically convert it into a security password.</p> <p>If you have set the same level-15 static password as the level 15 security password, the system will show a warning message.</p>
DES-7200(config)# <b>enable secret</b> [level level] {encryption-type encrypted-password}	Set the security password, which has the same function but better password encryption algorithm than the static password. For the purpose of security, it is recommended to use the security password.
DES-7200# <b>enable</b> [level] and DES-7200# <b>disable</b> [level]	Switch over between user levels. To switch over from a lower level to a higher level, you need to input the password for the higher level.

During the process of setting a password, the keyword "level" is used to define the password for a specified privileged level. After setting, it is only applicable for the users who are at that level.

### 2.2.4 Configuring Multiple Privileged Levels

By default, the system has only two password-protected levels: normal user (level 1) and privileged user (level 15). You can configure up to 16 hierarchical levels of commands for



each mode. By configuring different passwords at different levels, you can use different sets of commands by different levels.

When no password is set for the privileged user level, you can enter the privileged mode without password authentication. For security, you are recommended to set the password for the privileged user level.

#### 2.2.4.1 Configuring Command Authorization

To expand the usage range of a command, you can assign it to the users at lower level. On contrary, to narrow the usage range of a command, you can assign it to the users at higher level.

You can use the following commands to authorize users to use a command:

Command	Purpose
<b>DES-7200# configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
<b>DES-7200(config)# privilege mode [all] {level level   reset} command-string</b>	<p>Set the privileged level for a command.</p> <p><b>mode</b> – The CLI command mode at which you are authorizing the command. For example, <b>config</b> indicates the global configuration mode, <b>exec</b> indicates the privileged command mode, and <b>interface</b> indicates the interface configuration mode.</p> <p><b>all</b> – Change the privileges of all the sub-commands of the specified commands into the same level.</p> <p><b>level level</b> – Authorization level in the range from 0 to 15. <b>Level 1</b> is for the normal user level. <b>Level 15</b> is for the privileged user level. You can switch over between various levels by using the <b>enable/disable</b> command.</p> <p><i>command-string</i> - The command to be authorized.</p>

To restore the configuration for a specified command, use the **no privilege mode [all] level level command** in the global configuration mode.

#### 2.2.4.2 Example of Command Authorization Configuration

The following is the configuration process that sets the **reload** command and all its sub-commands to be level 1, and brings level 1 into effective (by setting the command as **test**):

```
DES-7200# configure terminal
DES-7200(config)# privilege exec all level 1 reload
DES-7200(config)# enable secret level 1 0 test
DES-7200(config)# end
```

Enter the level 1, you can see the command and its subcommand:



```
DES-7200# disable 1
DES-7200> reload ?
  at                reload at a specific time/date
  cancel            cancel pending reload scheme
  in                reload after a time interval
  <cr>
```

The following is the configuration process that restores the privilege settings of the **reload** command and all its sub-commands to the default value:

```
DES-7200# configure terminal
DES-7200(config)# privilege exec all reset reload
DES-7200(config)# end
```

Enter the level 1, the privilege setting for the command is removed.

```
DES-7200# disable 1
DES-7200> reload ?
% Unrecognized command.
```

### 2.2.5 Configuring Line Password Protection

Our products offer password authentication for remote logons (such as Telnet). A password is required for the protection purpose. Execute the following command in the line configuration mode:

Command	Purpose
DES-7200(config-line)# <b>password</b> <i>password</i>	Specify a line password.
DES-7200(config-line)# <b>login</b>	Enable the line password protection.



#### Note

If no logon authentication is configured, the password authentication on line layer will be ignored even when the line password is configured. The logon authentication will be described in the next section.

### 2.2.6 Supporting Session Locking

Our products allow you to lock the session terminal temporarily using the **lock** command, so as to prevent access. To this end, enable the terminal locking function in the line configuration mode, and lock the terminal using the **lock** command in the EXEC mode of the terminal:

Command	Purpose
DES-7200(config-line)# <b>lockable</b>	Enable the function of locking the line terminal
DES-7200# <b>lock</b>	Lock the current line terminal



## 2.3 Logon Authentication Control

### 2.3.1 Overview

In the previous section, we have described how to control the access to network devices by configuring the locally stored password. In addition to line password protection and local authentication, in AAA mode, we can authenticate users' management privilege based on their usernames and passwords on some servers when they log on to the switch, take RADIUS server for example.

With RADIUS server, the network device sends the encrypted user information to the RADIUS server for authentication rather than authenticates them with the locally stored credentials. The RADIUS server configures user information consistently like user name, password, shared key, and access policy to facilitate the management and control of user access and enhance the security of user information.

### 2.3.2 Configuring Local Users

Our products support local database-based identity authentication system used for local authentication of the method list in AAA mode and local authentication of line login management in non-AAA mode.

To enable the username identity authentication, run the following specific commands in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>username</b> <i>name</i> <b>[password</b> <i>password</i>   <b>password</b> <i>encryption-type encrypted password</i> ]	Enable the username identity authentication with encrypted password.
DES-7200(config)# <b>username</b> <i>name</i> <b>[privilege</b> <i>level</i> ]	Set the privilege level for the user (optional).

### 2.3.3 Configuring Line Logon Authentication

To enable the line logon identity authentication, run the following specific commands in the line configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config-line)# <b>login local</b>	Set local authentication for line logon in non-AAA mode.



Command	Function
DES-7200(config-line)# <b>login authentication</b> {default   <i>list-name</i> }	Set AAA authentication for line logon in AAA mode. The authentication methods in the AAA method list will be used for authentication, including Radius authentication, local authentication and no authentication.

**Note**

For more information on how to set AAA mode, configure Radius service and configure the method list, see the sections for AAA configuration.

## 2.4 System Time Configuration

### 2.4.1 Overview

Every switch has its system clock, which provides date (year, month, day) and time (hour, minute, second) and week. When you use a switch for the first time, you must configure the system clock manually. Of course, you can adjust the system clock when necessary. System clock is used for such functions as system logging that need recording the time when an event occurs.

### 2.4.2 Setting System Time and Date

You can configure the system time on the network device manually. Once configured, the clock will be running continuously even if the network device is powered off. Therefore, unless you need to modify the time of device, it is not necessary to configure the time again.

However, for the network devices that don't provide the hardware clock, manually setting time actually configures software clock, which only takes effect for this operation. When the network devices are powered off, the manually set time will not be valid.

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>clock set</b> <i>hh:mm:ss month date day year</i>	Set system date and time.

For example, change the system time to 2002-2003-6-20, 10:10:12-25, 08:00:00

```
DES-7200# clock set 08:00:00 10:10:12 25 2002 6 20 2003 //Set system time and date.
DES-7200# show clock //Confirm the modification
                                takes effect.

clock: 2003-6-20 10:10:54
```



### 2.4.3 Showing System Time and Date

You can show system time and date by using the **show clock** command in the privileged mode. The following is the format:

```
DES-7200# sh clock //Show the current system time and date.
clock: 2003-5-20 11:11:34
```

### 2.4.4 Updating Hardware Clock

Some platforms use hardware clock to complement software clock. Since battery enables hardware clock to run continuously, even though the device is closed or restarts, hardware clock still runs.

If hardware clock and software clock are asynchronous, then software clock is more accurate. Execute **clock update-calendar** command to copy date and time of software clock to hardware clock.

In the privileged mode, execute **clock update-calendar** command to make software clock overwrite the value of hardware clock.

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>clock update-calendar</b>	Update hardware clock via software clock.

Execute the command below to copy current date and time of software clock to hardware clock.

```
DES-7200# clock update-calendar
```

## 2.5 Scheduled Restart

### 2.5.1 Overview

This section describes how to use the **reload [modifiers]** command to schedule a restart scheme to restart the system at the specified time. This function facilitates user's operation in some circumstance (for the purpose of test, for example). *Modifiers* is a set of options provided by the **reload** command, making the command more flexible. The optional *modifiers* includes **in**, **at** and **cancel**. The following are the details:

```
1. reload in mmm | hhh:mm [string]
```

This command sets the system restart in fixed intervals in the format of *mmm* or *hhh:mm*. *string* is a help prompt. You can give the scheme a memorable name by the string to indicate its purpose. *string* is a prompt. For example, to reload the system at the interval of 10 minutes for test, type **reload in 10 test**.

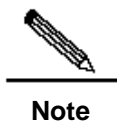


### 2. `reload at hh:mm day month [year] [string]`

This command sets the system restart at the specified time. The parameter *year* is optional. If you do not specify it, the default value is the year of the system clock. Because the interval between the reload time and the current time should not exceed 31 days, you do not need to input the year if the current date is between January 1 and November 30. But if the month of the current system date is December, you may input a date in January of the next year, in which case, you need to input the year to tell the system that the reload time is in January of the next year, not in this year. Otherwise, the setting will not work because the system considers it to be the date in January in this year. The usage of *string* is just like above. For example, if the current system time is 14:31 on January 10, 2005, and you want the system to reload tomorrow, you can input **reload at 08:30 11 1 newday**. If the current system time is 14:31 on December 10, 2005, and you want the system to reload at 12:00 a.m. on January 1, 2006, you can input **reload at 12:00 1 1 2006 newyear**.

### 3. `reload cancel`

This command deletes the restart scheme specified by the user. As mentioned above, you have specified the system to reload at 8:30 a.m. tomorrow, the setting will be removed after you input **reload cancel**.



Only if the system supports clock function can users use option **at**. Before the use, it is recommended to configure the system clock according to your needs. If a restart scheme has been set before, the subsequent settings will overwrite the previous settings. If the user has set a restart scheme and then restarts the system before the scheme takes effect, the scheme will be lost. The span from the time in the restart scheme to the current time shall be within 31 days and must be greater than the current system time. Besides, after you set reload, you should not set the system clock. Otherwise, your setting may fail to take effect, such as setting system time after reload time.

## 2.5.2 Specifying the System to Restart at the Specified Time

In the privileged mode, you can configure the system reload at the specified time using the following commands:

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>reload at</b> <i>hh:mm day month [year] [reload-reason]</i>	The system will reload at <i>hh:mm,month day,year</i> . <i>reload-reason</i> (if any) indicates the reason that the system reloads.

The following is an example specifying the system reload at 12:00 a.m. January 11, 2005 (suppose the current system clock is 8:30 a.m. January 11,2005):



```
DES-7200# reload at 12:00 1 11 2005 midday //Set the reload time and date.
DES-7200# show reload //Confirm the modification takes effect.
Reload scheduled for 2005-01-11 12:00 (in 3 hours 29 minutes)16581 seconds.
At 2005-01-11 12:00
Reload reason: midday
```

### 2.5.3 Specifying the System to Restart after a Period of Time

In the privileged mode, you can configure the system reload in the specified time with the following commands:

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>reload in</b> <i>mmm</i> [ <i>reload-reason</i> ]	Configure the system reload in <i>mmm</i> minutes, where the reload reason is described in <i>reload-reason</i> (if inputted)
DES-7200# <b>reload in</b> <i>hhh:mm</i> [ <i>reload-reason</i> ]	Configure the system reload in <i>hhh</i> hours and <i>mm</i> minutes, where the reload reason is described in <i>reload-reason</i> (if inputted)

The following example shows how to reload the system in 125 minutes (assumes that the current system time is 12:00 a.m. January 10, 2005):

```
DES-7200# reload in 125 test //Set the system reload time
```

Or

```
DES-7200# reload in 2:5 test //Set the system reload time
DES-7200# show reload //Confirm whether the restart time change takes effect
Reload scheduled System will reload in 2 hours and 4 minutes7485 seconds.
```

### 2.5.4 Immediate Restart

The **reload** command without any parameters will restart the device immediately. In the privileged mode, the user can restart the system immediately by typing the **reload** command.

### 2.5.5 Deleting the Configured Restart Scheme

In the privileged mode, use the following command to delete the configured restart scheme:

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>reload cancel</b>	Delete the configured restart scheme.

If no reload scheme is configured, you will see an error message for the operation.



## 2.6 Configuring a System Name and Prompt

### 2.6.1 Overview

For easy management, you can configure a system name for the switch to identify it. If you configure a system name of more than 32 characters, the first 32 characters are used as the system prompt. The prompt varies with the system name. By default, the system name and command prompt are "DES-7200" (if the system name exceeds 32 characters, intercept the first 32 characters), which will be taken as the default command prompt. Furthermore, the prompt will change with the system name. By default, it will take the concrete device name as the system name, for example "DES-7206" or "DES-7210".

### 2.6.2 Configuring a System Name

Our products provide the following commands to configure a system name in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(Config)# <b>hostname</b> <i>name</i>	Configure a system name with printable characters less than 255 bytes.

To restore the name to the default value, use the **no hostname** command in the global configuration mode. The following example changes the equipment name to DES-7200 SERIES:

```
DES-7200# configure terminal           //Enter the global configuration mode.
DES-7200(config)# hostname D-Link      //Set the equipment name to D-Link
D-Link(config)#                          //The name has been modified successfully.
```

### 2.6.3 Configuring a Command Prompt

System name will be the default prompt if you have not configured command prompt. (if the system name exceeds 32 characters, intercept the first 32 characters) The prompt varies with the system name. You can use the **prompt** command to configure the command prompt in the global configuration mode, and the command prompt is only valid in the EXEC mode.

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>prompt</b> <i>string</i>	Set the command prompt with printable characters. If the name exceeds 32 characters, intercept the first 32 characters.

To restore the prompt to the default value, use the **no prompt** command in the global configuration mode.



## 2.7 Banner Configuration

### 2.7.1 Overview

When the user logs in the switch, you may need to tell the user some useful information by configuring a banner. There are two kinds of banners: message-of-the-day (MOTD) and login banner. The MOTD is specific for all users who connect with switches. And when users log in the switch, the notification message will appear on the terminal. MOTD allows you send some urgent messages (for example, the system is to be shut down) to network users. The login banner also appears on all connected terminals. It provides some common login messages. By default, the MOTD and login banner are not configured.

### 2.7.2 Configuring a Message-of-the-Day

You can create a notification of single or multi-line messages that appears when a user logs in the switch. To configure the message of the day, execute the following commands in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(Config)# <b>banner motd</b> <i>c</i> <i>message c</i>	Specify the message of the day, with <i>c</i> being the delimiter, for example, a pound sign (&). After inputting the delimiter, press the <b>Enter</b> key. Now, you can start to type text. You need to input the delimiter and then press <b>Enter</b> to complete the type. Note that if you type additional characters after the end delimiter, these characters will be discarded by the system. Also note that you cannot use the delimiter in the message and the message length should be no more than 255 bytes.

To delete the MOTD, use the **no banner motd** command in the global configuration mode. The following example describes how to configure a MOTD. The **#** symbol is used as the delimiter, and the text is "Notice: system will shutdown on July 6th."

```
DES-7200(config)# banner motd #                               //Start delimiter.
Enter TEXT message. End with the character '#'.
Notice: system will shutdown on July 6th.
#                                                             # //End delimiter.
DES-7200(config)#
```

### 2.7.3 Configuring a Login Banner

To configure a login banner, executing the following commands in the global configuration mode:



Command	Function
DES-7200(Config)# <b>banner login c</b> <i>message c</i>	Specify the text of the login banner, with c being the delimiter, for example, a pound sign (&). After inputting the delimiter, press the <b>Enter</b> key. Now, you can start to type text. You need to input the delimiter and then press <b>Enter</b> to complete the type. Note that if you type additional characters after the end delimiter, these characters will be discarded by the system. Also note that you cannot use the delimiter in the text of the login banner and the text length should be no more than 255 bytes.

To delete the login banner, use the **no banner login** command in the global configuration mode.

The following example shows how to configure a login banner. The pound sign (#) is used as the starting and end delimiters and the text of the login banner is "Access for authorized users only. Please enter your password."

```
DES-7200(config)# banner login #           //Start delimiter
Enter TEXT message. End with the character '#'.
Access for authorized users only. Please enter your password.
#                                           //End delimiter
DES-7200(config)#
```

### 2.7.4 Displaying a Banner

A banner is displayed when you log in the network device. See the following example:

```
C:\>telnet 192.168.65.236
Notice: system will shutdown on July 6th.
Access for authorized users only. Please enter your password.
User Access Verification
Password:
```

As you can see, "Notice: system will shutdown on July 6th." is a MOTD banner and "Access for authorized users only. Please enter your password." is a login banner.

## 2.8 Viewing System Information

### 2.8.1 Overview

You can view some system information with the **show** command on the command-line interface, such as version, device information, and so on.



### 2.8.2 Viewing System Information and Version

System information consists of description, power-on time, hardware version, software version, BOOT-layer software version, CTRL-layer software version, and so on. System information helps you know the system. You can show the system information with the following commands in the privileged mode.

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>show version</b>	Show system information.

### 2.8.3 Viewing Hardware Entity Information

Hardware information refers to the information on physical devices as well as slots and modules assembled in a device. The information on a device itself includes description, number of slots, slot information, slot number, description of the module on the slot (empty description if no module is plugged on the slot), number of physical ports of the module on the slot, and maximum number of ports possibly supported on the slot (number of ports of the module plugged). You may use the following commands to show the information of the device and slots in the privileged mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>show version devices</b>	Show device information.
DES-7200# <b>show version slots</b>	Show the information about slots and modules.

## 2.9 Setting Console Rate

### 2.9.1 Overview

The switch comes with a console interface for management. When using the switch for the first time, you need to execute configuration through the console interface. You can change the console rate on the equipment if necessary. Note that the rate of the terminal used to managing the switch must be the same as that of the console interface on the switch.

### 2.9.2 Setting Console Rate

In the line configuration mode, execute the following command to set the console rate:



Command	Function
DES-7200(config-line)# <b>speed speed</b>	Set transmission rate in bps on the console interface. For a serial interface, you can only set the transmission rate to one of 9600, 19200, 38400, 57600 and 115200 bps, with 9600 bps by default.

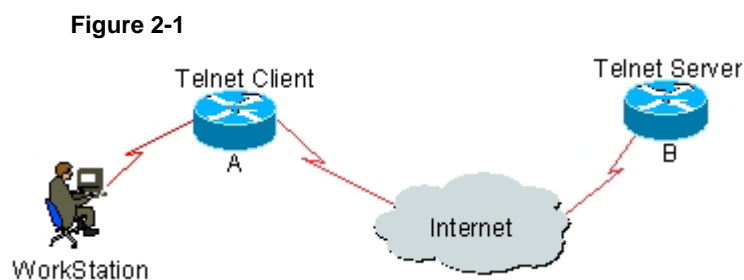
This example shows how to configure the baud rate of the serial interface to 57600 bps:

```
DES-7200# configure terminal           //Enter the global configuration mode.
DES-7200(config)# line console 0       //Enter the console line configuration mode
DES-7200(config-line)# speed 57600     //Set the console rate to 57600bps
DES-7200(config-line)# end             //Return to the privileged mode
DES-7200# show line console 0          //View the console configuration
CON      Type      speed  Overruns
* 0      CON       57600   0
Line 0, Location: "", Type: "vt100"
Length: 25 lines, Width: 80 columns
Special Chars: Escape Disconnect Activation
              ^^x      none      ^M
Timeouts:    Idle EXEC   Idle Session
              never      never
History is enabled, history size is 10.
Total input: 22 bytes
Total output: 115 bytes
Data overflow: 0 bytes
stop rx interrupt: 0 times
Modem: READY
```

## 2.10 Configuring Telnet

### 2.10.1 Overview

Telnet, an application layer protocol in the TCP/IP protocol suite, provides the specifications of remote logon and virtual terminal communication functions. The **Telnet Client** service is used by the local or remote user who has logged onto the local network device to work with the Telnet Client program to access other remote system resources on the network. As shown below, after setting up a connection with Switch A through the terminal emulation program or Telnet, users can log on the Switch B for management and configuration with the **telnet** command.





## 2.10.2 Using Telnet Client

You can log in to a remote device by using the **telnet** command on the switch.

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>telnet</b> <i>host-ip-address</i>	Log on to a remote device via Telnet. <i>host-ip-address</i> may be the host name or IP address.

The following example shows how to establish a Telnet session and manage the remote device with the IP address 192.168.65.119:

```
DES-7200# telnet 192.168.65.119 //Establish the telnet session to the remote device
Trying 192.168.65.119 ... Open
User Access Verification //Enter into the logon interface of the remote device
Password:
```

## 2.11 Setting Connection Timeout

### 2.11.1 Overview

You can control the connections that a device has set up (including the accepted connections and the session between the device and a remote terminal) by configuring the connection timeout time for the device. When the idle time exceeds the set value and there is no input or output, this connection will be interrupted.

### 2.11.2 Connection Timeout

When there is no information traveling through an accepted connection within a specified time, the server will interrupt this connection.

Our products provide commands to configure the connection timeout in the line configuration mode.

Command	Function
DES-7200(Config-line)# <b>exec-timeout</b> <b>20</b>	Configure the timeout for the accepted connection. When the configured time is due and there is no input, this connection will be interrupted.

The connection timeout setting can be removed by using the **no exec-timeout** command in the line configuration mode.

```
DES-7200# configure terminal //Enter the global configuration mode.
DES-7200# line vty 0 //Enter the line configuration mode
DES-7200(config-line)#exec-timeout 20 //Set the timeout to 20min
```



### 2.11.3 Session Timeout

When there is no input for the session established with a remote terminal over the current line within the specified time, the session will be interrupted and the remote terminal becomes idle.

DES-7200 SERIES provides commands in the line configuration mode to configure the timeout for the session set up with the remote terminal.

Command	Function
DES-7200(Config-line)# <b>session-timeout 20</b>	Configure the timeout for the session set up with the remote terminal over the line. If there is no input within the specified time, this session will be interrupted.

The timeout setting for the session set up with the remote terminal over the line can be removed by using the **no exec-timeout** command in the line configuration mode.

```
DES-7200# configure terminal           //Enter the global configuration mode.
DES-7200(config)# line vty 0           //Enter the line configuration mode
DES-7200(config-line)#session-timeout 20 //Set the session timeout to 20min
```

## 2.12 Executing the Commands in the Executable File in Batch

In system management, sometimes it is necessary to enter multiple configuration commands to manage a function. It takes a long period of time to enter all the commands on CLI, causing error or mission. To resolve this problem, you can encapsulate all the commands in a batch file according to configuration steps. Then, you can execute the batch file for configuration when necessary.

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>execute</b> <b>{[flash:] filename}</b>	Execute a batch file.

For example, the batch file `line_rcms_script.text` enables the reversed Telnet function on all the asynchronous interfaces as shown below:

```
configure terminal
line tty 1 16
transport input all
no exec
end
```

**Result:**

```
DES-7200# execute flash:line_rcms_script.text
executing script file line_rcms_script.text .....
executing done
DES-7200# configure terminal
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
```



```
DES-7200(config)# line vty 1 16
DES-7200(config-line)# transport input all
DES-7200(config-line)# no exec
DES-7200(config-line)# end
```

**Note**

The file name and contents of a batch file can be specified. Once edited, users send the batch file to the FLASH of the network device in TFTP. The contents of the batch file will simulate the input completely. Hence, it is necessary to edit the contents of the batch file by the sequence that CIL commands are configured. Furthermore, for some interactive commands, it is necessary to write corresponding response information in the batch file, guaranteeing that the commands can be executed normally.

## 2.13 Setting Service Switch

During operation, you can adjust services dynamically, enabling or disabling specified services (SSH Server/Telnet Server/Web Server).

Command	Function
DES-7200(Config)# <b>enable service ssh-sesrver</b>	Enable SSH Server.
DES-7200(Config)# <b>enable service telnet-server</b>	Enabling Telnet Server
DES-7200(Config)# <b>enable service web-server</b>	Enable Http Server.

In the configuration mode, you can use the **no enable service** command to disable corresponding services.

```
DES-7200# configure terminal //Enter the global configuration mode.
DES-7200(config)# enable service ssh-server //Enable SSH Server
```







# 3

## LINE Mode Configuration

### 3.1 Overview

---

This chapter describes some operations in LINE mode:

- Enter the LINE mode
- Increase/decrease LINE VTY
- Configure the protocols to communicate on the line

### 3.2 Configuring LINE Mode

---

#### 3.2.1 Entering the LINE mode

---

After entering the specific LINE mode, you can configure the specified line. Execute the following commands to enter the specified LINE mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>line</b> [aux   console   tty   vty] first-line [last-line]	Enter the specified LINE mode.

#### 3.2.2 Increasing/Decreasing LINE VTY

---

By default, the number of line vty is 5. You can execute the following commands to increase or decrease line vty, up to 36 line vty is supported.

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>line vty</b> <i>line-number</i>	Increase the number of LINE VTY to the specified value.
DES-7200(config)# <b>no line vty</b> <i>line-number</i>	Decrease the number of LINE VTY to the specified value.



### 3.2.3 Configuring the Protocols to Communicate on the Line

To restrain the communication protocol type supported on the line, you can use this command. By default, a VTY supports the communication of all protocols while a TTY do not support the communication of any protocol.

Command	Description
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the configuration mode.
<b>Line vty</b> <i>line number</i>	Enter the line configuration mode.
<b>transport input</b> { <i>all</i>   <i>ssh</i>   <i>telnet</i>   <i>none</i> }	Configure the protocol to communicate on the line.
<b>no transport input</b>	Disable the communication of any protocol on the line.
<b>default transport input</b>	Restore the setting to the default value.

### 3.2.4 Configuring the Access Control List on the Line

To configure the access control list on the line, you can use the command. By default, no access control list is configured on the line. That is, all incoming and outgoing connections are permitted.

Command	Description
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the configuration mode.
<b>Line vty</b> <i>line number</i>	Enter the line configuration mode.
<b>access-class</b> <i>access-list-number</i> { <i>in</i>   <i>out</i> }	Configure the access control list on the line.
<b>no access-class</b> <i>access-list-number</i> { <i>in</i>   <i>out</i> }	Remove the configuration.



# 4

## System Upgrade and Maintenance

### 4.1 Overview

---

Upgrade and maintenance refers to upgrade the main program or CTRL program or upload and download files on the CLI . There are two ways to upgrade programs: use TFTP through a network interface or use Xmodem protocol through a serial interface.

### 4.2 Upgrade and Maintenance Method

---

The following sections describe how to upgrade and maintain the equipment:

- Transfer files by TFTP
- Transfer files by Xmodem
- Upgrade system

#### 4.2.1 Transferring Files by TFTP

---

There are two ways to transfer files by TFTP: download files from the host to the equipment, or upload files from the equipment to the host.

In the CLI command mode, download the files by performing the following steps:

Before download, first run the TFTP server software on the local host. Then, select the directory of the file to download. Finally, log in to the equipment. In the privileged mode, download the files by using the following commands. If no location is specified, you need to separately input the IP address of the TFTP server.

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>copy tftp:</b> <i>//location/</i> <i>filename</i> <b>flash:</b> <i>filename</i>	Copy the specified file from the URL on the host to the equipment.

In the CLI command mode, upload the files by performing the following steps:



Before upload, first run the TFTP server software on the local host. Then, select the destination directory for the file to upload at the host. Finally, upload the files by using the following commands in the privileged mode.

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>copy flash: filename</b> <b>tftp: //location/filename</b>	Copy the specified file from the equipment to the directory specified by the URL on the host. You can also rename the file.

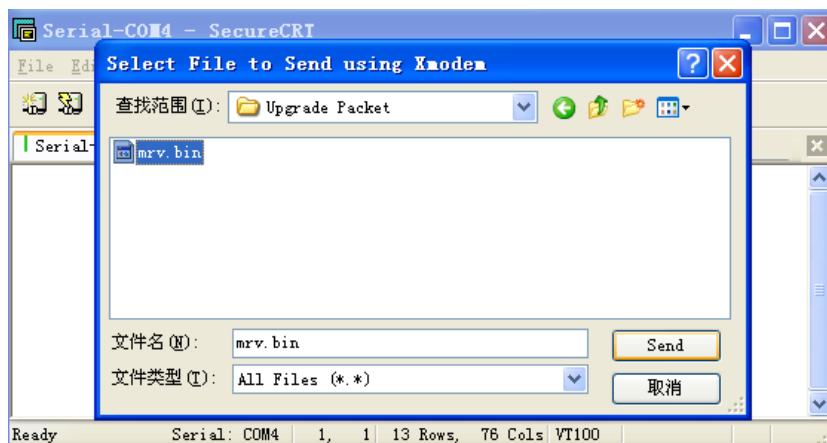
#### 4.2.2 Transferring Files by XMODEM

There are two ways to transfer files by Xmodem: download files from the host to the equipment, or upload files from the equipment to the host.

In the CLI command mode, download the files by performing the following steps:

Prior to download, first log in to the out-band management interface of the device by using the Windows HyperTerminal. Then, download the files by using the following command in the privileged mode. Finally, select the “Send File” from the “Transfer” menu on the Windows HyperTerminal on the local host, as shown in the following figure:

Figure 4-1



In the pop-up dialog box, select the file to download from the File Name field and Xmodem from the Protocol field. Click “Send”, and the Windows HyperTerminal will show the transmission process and packets.

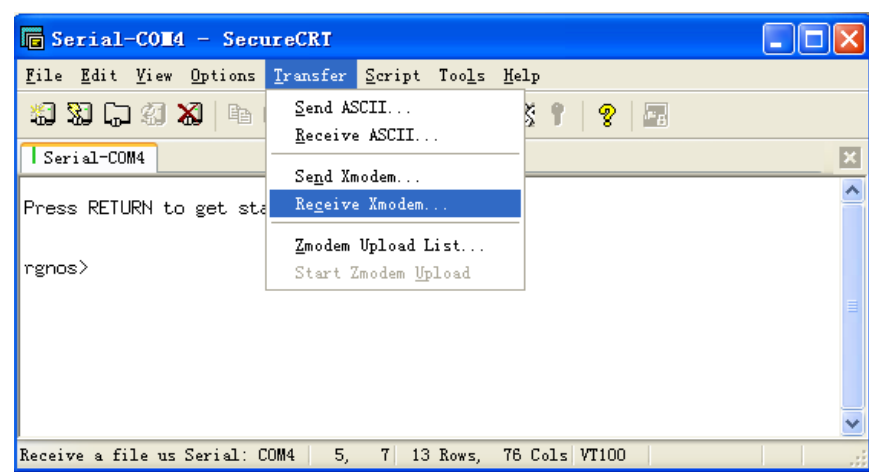
Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>copy xmodem flash:filename</b>	Download the file from the host to the equipment and name it <i>filename</i> .

In the CLI command mode, upload the files by performing the following steps:



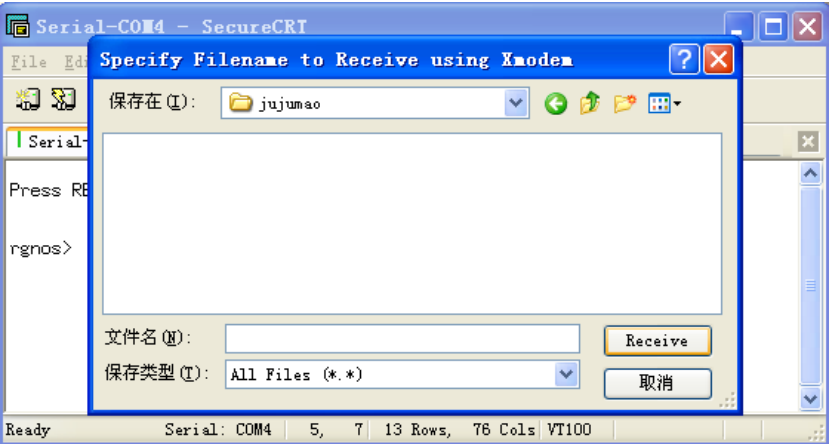
Prior to upload, first log in to the out-band management interface of the switch by using the Windows HyperTerminal. Then, upload the files by using the following command in the privileged mode. Finally, select the “Receive File” from the “Transfer” menu on the Windows HyperTerminal on the local host. It’s shown in the Figure 4-3:

Figure 4-2



In the pop-up dialog box, select the storage location for the file to upload and select the “Xmodem” as the reception protocol. Click “Receive”, and the Windows HyperTerminal will further prompt the name of the locally stored file. Click “OK” to start reception. The operaton is shown below:

Figure 4-3



Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>copy flash:filename xmodem</b>	Upload the file from the equipment to the host.



### 4.2.3 Upgrading System

---

You can transfer the upgrading file to a device through TFTP or Xmodem, no matter the device is box-mount or chassis-mount. After transmission, restart the device. The upgrading file will automatically check and upgrade the system without manual interference.

The upgrade procedure on the box-mount equipment is slightly different from that on the chassis-mount equipment:

1. On the box-mount equipment, the upgrading file upgrades only its board system. After upgrading, the system automatically resets. The equipment works normally after restart.
2. The chassis-mount equipment includes management boards, line cards and multi-service cards. To upgrade the whole system with a upgrading file, first upgrade the management board. The system resets. When the equipment restarts, the automatic version synchronization function runs to upgrade line cards and multi-service cards.

Automatic Upgrade: a function running on the master management board that verify the version consistency for the slave management board, line cards and multi-service cards. When it is found that the version is not consistent with the one in the master management board, the founction sends the upgrading files to those boards for upgrading so as to keep the version consistence in the whole system.



#### Caution

Whenever you upgrade the master management board, the slave one (if any) is upgraded at the same time to keep the version consistent. The upgrade of a line card will upgrade all the line cards inserted into the device. Do not power off the device before the upgrade is complete. Otherwise, the upgrade program may be lost.

Before the chassis-mount device is upgraded, you can check whether the software version of all line cards and management boards are consistent with the upgraded object version by the **show version** command. However, you cannot carry out master-slave switch (such as **redundancy force-switchover**). Otherwise, it will cause the upgrade failure and return to the original version.



#### Note

The upgrade method of the box-mount device is the same as that of the management board.

### 4.2.4 Upgrading System by Upgrade Pack

---

- What is upgrade pack?



In essence, upgrade pack is a binary executable file that can be loaded and run as a primary program of a device. The upgrade pack is encapsulated with the BOOT/CTRL/MAIN program of corresponding products. After the upgrade pack runs, it will search for the version information of the BOOT/CTRL/MAIN program of the current system, and compare it with the version of the encapsulated BOOT/CTRL/MAIN program. If the version of some program is not consistent, it will upgrade this program with the encapsulated program. With upgrade packet, you can upgrade the whole system easily.

You can transfer the upgrading file to a device through TFTP or Xmodem, no matter the device is box-mount or chassis-mount. After transport, restart the device. The upgrading file will automatically check and upgrade the system without manual interference.

The procedure of upgrade pack on the box-mount equipment is slightly different from that on the chassis-mount equipment:

1. The upgrade pack of the box-mount device upgrades only its board system. Hence, it simply encapsulates its own BOOT/CTRL/MAIN programs. Its upgrade steps are:
  - a. Detect and upgrade the BOOT/CTRL in turn.
  - b. Decompress the MAIN program and upgrade it as the main program of the device, so as to cover the upgrade pack.
  - c. After the upgrade is completed, the system will be reset automatically, and the equipment restarts again and runs normally.
2. The operation of the upgrade pack on the chassis-mount device is more complicated for the chassis-mount device includes the management board, line card and multi-service card, and needs to carry out the upgrade operation of the whole system by an upgrade pack. The upgrade pack should encapsulate the BOOT/CTRL/MAIN program of all board cards. In this way, it is necessary to carry out the upgrade and synchronization of the line card individually. The upgrade steps are:
  - a. Detect and upgrade the BOOT/CTRL of the management board.
  - b. Decompress the main program and line card of the management board to the root directory.
  - c. After the management board is upgraded, the system will be reset.
  - d. When the equipment is rebooted again, the automatic version synchronization function will be enabled to carry out the system upgrade of the line card and the multi-service card.

**Automatic Upgrade Function:** A function running on the master management board that verifies the version consistency for the slave management board, line card and multi-service card. When it found that the version is not consistent with the BOOT/CTRL/MAIN version of the corresponding single board in the master management board, the function sends the upgrading files to those boards for upgrading so as to keep the version consistence of the whole system.



**Caution**

The upgrade packs of the management board, line card and multi-service board decompressed from the upgrade pack on the chassis-mount device (namely the main program of the management board) cannot be removed or changed at random. Otherwise, the system cannot operate normally.

This upgrade method is applicable for upgrading all versions to 10.1 version.

### ■ Upgrade the chassis-mount device by the upgrade pack:

Confirm the filename of the upgrade pack to be loaded is **\*.bin** (the upgrade pack runs as the main program).

### ■ Upgrade the chassis-mounted device by the upgrade file:

1. Confirm the filename of the upgrade file to be loaded is **\*.bin**.
2. Download the file to the device by using the **copy** command.
3. If there is a slave management board on the device, you need to first upgrade the main programs of the master and slave management boards successfully. After upgrading the main program successfully, the system prompts:

```
Upgrade Slave CM MAIN successful!!
Upgrade Slave CM MAIN successful!!
```

4. Reset the equipment.
5. After reset, the upgrade file will run automatically. The system prompts:

```
Installing is in process .....
Do not restart your machine before finish !!!!!!!
.....
```

6. After the upgrade operation is completed, the system prompts:

```
Installing process finished .....
Restart machine operation is permitted now !!!!!!!
```

7. After the operation of the upgrade file is completed, the system resets automatically and prompts:

```
System restarting, for reason 'Upgrade product !'.
```

8. After reset, the upgrading operation of the whole system of the management board is completed. The system will load and operate the upgrade pack of boards. Moreover, it prompts information in Steps 5 to 6. Instead of the information in Step 7, it prompts:

```
System load main program from install package .....
```

Load the main program of the management board to operate from the upgrade file directly.



9. After the main program operates normally, the automatic upgrade function starts. If there is the slave management board or other modules in the chassis-mount device, the system prompts:

```
A new card is found in slot [1].
System is doing version synchronization checking .....
Current software version in slot [1] is synchronous.
System needn't to do version synchronization for this card .....
```

Or, the system prompts:

```
System is doing version synchronization checking .....
Card in slot [3] need to do version synchronization .....
```

#### Other Printing Information

```
Version synchronization begain .....
Keep power on, don't draw out the card and don't restart your machine before
finished !!!!!!
```

#### Other Printing Information

```
Transmission is OK, now, card in slot [3] need restart ...
Software installation of card in slot [3] is in process .....
!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!
!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!
Software installation of card in slot [3] has finished successfully .....
The version synchronization of card in slot [3] get finished successfully.
```

The former indicates the version of the line card is synchronous and it is not necessary to upgrade again. The latter indicates the version of the line card, and it is necessary to upgrade the line card.

The system will carry out above operation for the slave board and each module in turn.

After checking the version consistency on all modules and upgrading, the system will work normally.



#### Caution

During the upgrade or automatic upgrade, the system may prompt that the reboot is not allowed. In this case, neither power off or reset the system nor plug or unplug other modules.



#### Note

Automatic upgrading and checking also applies to the system with hot-plugging modules.

#### ■ Upgrade the box-mount device by the upgrade file:

To upgrade the box-mount device, do Steps 1 to 7, and then the system resets. After that, the equipment runs well.







# 5

## Network Communication Detection Tools

### 5.1 Ping Connectivity Test

To test the connectivity of a network, many network devices support the **Echo** protocol. The protocol sends a special packet to a specified network address and waits for a response. This allows you to evaluate the connectivity, delay and reliability of a network. The ping tool provided by DES-7200 SERIES can effectively help users diagnose and locate the connectivity problems in a network.

The **Ping** command runs in the user EXEC mode and privileged EXEC mode. In the user EXEC mode, only basic ping functions are available. However, in the privileged EXEC mode, extended ping functions are available.

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>ping</b> [ <i>ip</i> ] [ <i>address</i> ] [ <b>length</b> <i>length</i> ] [ <b>ntimes</b> <i>times</i> ] [ <b>timeout</b> <i>seconds</i> ] ]	Test the network connectivity.

The basic ping function can be performed in either the user EXEC mode or the privileged EXEC mode. By default, this command sends five 100-byte packets to the specified IP address. If the system receives a response within the specified time (2 seconds by default), it shows "!" . Otherwise, it shows ".". Finally, the system shows statistics. This is a normal ping example:

```
DES-7200# ping 192.168.5.1
Sending 5, 100-byte ICMP Echoes to 192.168.5.1, timeout is 2 seconds:
< press Ctrl+C to break >
!!!!
Success rate is 100 percent (5/5), round-trip min/avg/max = 1/2/10 ms
```

The extended ping function can be performed in the privileged EXEC mode only. This function allows you specify the number of packets, packet length, and timeout. As with the basic ping function, the extended ping also shows statistics. The following is an example of the extended ping:

```
DES-7200 ping 192.168.5.197 length 1500 ntimes 100 timeout 3
Sending 100, 1000-byte ICMP Echoes to 192.168.5.197, timeout is 3 seconds:
< press Ctrl+C to break >
```



```

!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!
!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!
Success rate is 100 percent (100/100), round-trip min/avg/max = 2/2/3 ms
DES-7200#

```

## 5.2 Traceroute Connectivity Test

The **Traceroute** command is mainly used to check the network connectivity. It shows all the gateways that a packet passes through from the source to the destination and exactly locates the fault when the network fails.

One of the network transmission rules is that the number in the TTL field in the packet will decrease by 1 every time when a packet passes through a gateway. When the number in the TTL field is 0, the gateway will discard this packet and send an address unreachable error message back to the source. According to this rule, the execution of the traceroute command is as follows: At first, the source sends a packet whose TTL is 1 to the destination address. The first gateway sends an ICMP error message back, indicating that this packet cannot be forwarded for TTL timeout. Then, the first gateway re-sends the packet after the TTL domain adds 1. Likewise, the second gateway returns a TTL timeout error and the process lasts until the packet reaches the destination address. By recording every address returning the ICMP TTL timeout message, you can draw the entire path passed by the IP packet from the source address to the destination address.

The **traceroute** command can run in the user EXEC mode and the privileged EXEC mode. The command format is as follows:

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>traceroute</b> [ <i>protocol</i> ] [ <i>destination</i> ]	Trace the path that a packet passes through.

The following are two examples that apply **traceroute**. In one example, network connectivity is good. In another example, some gateways in a network are not connected.

### 1. **traceroute** example where network connectivity is good:

```

DES-7200# traceroute 61.154.22.36
< press Ctrl+C to break >
Tracing the route to 61.154.22.36

 1  192.168.12.1      0 msec  0 msec  0 msec
 2  192.168.9.2       4 msec  4 msec  4 msec
 3  192.168.9.1       8 msec  8 msec  4 msec
 4  192.168.0.10      4 msec  28 msec 12 msec
 5  202.101.143.130   4 msec  16 msec  8 msec
 6  202.101.143.154  12 msec  8 msec  24 msec
 7  61.154.22.36     12 msec  8 msec  22 msec

```

As you can see, to access the host with an IP address of 61.154.22.36, the network packet passes through gateways 1 to 6 from the source address. Meanwhile, you can know the time



that the network packet spends to reach a gateway. This is very useful for network analysis.

## 2. traceroute example where some gateways in a network are not connected:

```
DES-7200# traceroute 202.108.37.42
< press Ctrl+C to break >
Tracing the route to 202.108.37.42
 1  192.168.12.1          0 msec  0 msec  0 msec
 2  192.168.9.2           0 msec  4 msec  4 msec
 3  192.168.110.1        16 msec  12 msec  16 msec
 4  * * *
 5  61.154.8.129         12 msec  28 msec  12 msec
 6  61.154.8.17           8 msec  12 msec  16 msec
 7  61.154.8.250         12 msec  12 msec  12 msec
 8  218.85.157.222       12 msec  12 msec  12 msec
 9  218.85.157.130       16 msec  16 msec  16 msec
10  218.85.157.77        16 msec  48 msec  16 msec
11  202.97.40.65         76 msec  24 msec  24 msec
12  202.97.37.65         32 msec  24 msec  24 msec
13  202.97.38.162        52 msec  52 msec  224 msec
14  202.96.12.38         84 msec  52 msec  52 msec
15  202.106.192.226      88 msec  52 msec  52 msec
16  202.106.192.174      52 msec  52 msec  88 msec
17  210.74.176.158      100 msec  52 msec  84 msec
18  202.108.37.42        48 msec  48 msec  52 msec
```

As you can see, to access the host with an IP address of 202.108.37.42, the network packet passes through gateways 1 to 17 from the source address and there is failure in gateway 4.

## 5.3 Line Detection

You can use command **line-detect** to detect the work status of lines. Line detection can help you judge the work status of lines correctly when the lines are in abnormal status.

You can use command **line-detect** to detect the work status of lines in the interface mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>interface</b> <b>gigabitEthernet x/x</b>	Enter the Interface configuration mode.
DES-7200(config)# <b>line-detect</b>	Detect lines.



### Caution

1. Only L2 exchange ports can support line detection.
2. Optical and AP port can not support line detection,



The following gives an example to present the process of line detection:

```
DES-7200(config)#int gi 3/1
DES-7200(config-if)#lin
DES-7200(config-if)#line-detect
start cable-diagnoses,please wait...
cable-daignoses end!this is result:
4 pairs
pair state      length(meters)
----
A   Ok          2
pair state      length(meters)
----
B   Ok          1
pair state      length(meters)
----
C   Short       1
pair state      length(meters)
----
D   Short       1
```



# 6

## Interface Configuration

### 6.1 Overview of Interface Types

---

This chapter classifies the interfaces used on DES-7200 series and defines interface types. Interfaces on DES-7200 series are divided into two types:

- L2 Interfaces
- L3 Interfaces (supported on layer 3 devices)

#### 6.1.1 L2 Interfaces

---

This section presents the types of L2 interfaces and their definitions. L2 interfaces fall into the following types

- Switch Port
- L2 Aggregate Ports

##### 6.1.1.1 Switch Port

---

Switch port refers to a single physical port of only layer 2 switching function on the device. This port can either be an Access Port or a Trunk Port. You can configure a port to be an Access Port or a Trunk Port by using the **Switch Port** command in the interface configuration mode. Switch port is used to manage a physical interface and relevant layer 2 protocols rather than handling routing or bridging.

###### 6.1.1.1.1 Access Port

An access port belongs to only one VLAN that transports only the frames belonging to the same VLAN. Typically, it is used to connect computers.

###### Default VLAN

An access port belongs to only one VLAN. Therefore, its default VLAN is the VLAN where it locates. You do not need to configure it.

###### Receiving and sending frames

An access port sends untagged frames and receives frames in the following three formats only:

- Untagged frame



- Tagged frames whose VID is the VLAN where the access port locates
- Tagged frames whose VID is 0

#### Untagged frame

An access port receives untagged frames and then adds the tag of the default VLAN to them. The added tag will be removed before the access port sends them out.

#### Tagged frame

An access port handles tagged frames in the following ways:

- When the VID (VLAN ID) of the tag is the same as the default VLAN ID, the access port receives the frame and removes the tag before sending it out.
- When the VID (VLAN ID) of the tag is 0, the access port receives the frame. In the tag, VID=0 is used to prioritize the frame.
- When the VID (VLAN ID) of the tag is different from the default VLAN ID and is not 0, this frame is discarded.

#### 6.1.1.1.2 Trunk Port

A trunk port can belong to multiple VLANs that receives and sends frames belonging to multiple VLANs. Generally, it is used to connect devices or computers.

#### Default VLAN

Because a trunk port can belong to multiple VLANs, you need to set a native VLAN as the default VLAN. By default, the trunk port transmits the frames of all VLANs. In order to reduce device load and minimize waste of bandwidth, you can set a VLAN allowance list to specify the frames of which VLANs the trunk port can transmit.



#### Caution

It is recommended to set the native VLAN of the trunk port on the local device to be consistent with that of the trunk port on the remote device. Otherwise, the trunk port cannot forward packets properly.

#### Receiving and sending frames

The trunk port can receive untagged frames and the tagged frames of the VLANs permitted by the port. All the frames of non-native VLANs sent by the trunk port are tagged, and the frames of native VLAN are untagged.

#### Untagged frame

If a trunk port receives a frame without IEEE802.1Q TAG, this frame will be transmitted in the native VLAN of the port.

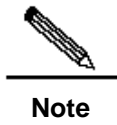
#### Tagged frame

If a trunk port receives a tagged frame, it handles the frame in the following ways:

- When the trunk port receives a tagged frame whose VID is the same as that of its native VLAN, this frame is accepted. The tag will be removed before it sends the frame.



- When the trunk port receives a tagged frame whose VID is different from that of its native VLAN but is permitted by the port, the frame is accepted. The tag is kept unchanged when it sends the frame.
- When the trunk port receives a tagged frame whose VID is different from that of its native VLAN and is not permitted by the port, the frame is discarded.



Untagged packets are ordinary Ethernet packets that can be recognized by the network cards in PCs for communication. Tagging refers to append four bytes of VLAN information, namely the VLAN tag header, at the end of the source MAC address and the destination MAC address.

#### 6.1.1.1.3 Hybrid port

A hybrid port can belong to multiple VLANs that receives and sends packets of multiple VLANs. It can be used to connect devices or computers. The difference between the hybrid port and the trunk port is that the hybrid port sends the untagged frames of multiple VLANs, but the trunk port sends only the untagged frames of the default VLAN. Note that the VLAN that a hybrid port is going to join must already exist.

#### 6.1.1.2 L2 Aggregate Port

An aggregate port consists of several physical ports. Multiple physical connections can be bound into a simple logical connection, which is called an aggregate port (hereinafter referred to as AP).

For layer 2 switching, an AP works like a switch port of high bandwidth. It increases link bandwidth by using the bandwidth of multiple ports together. In addition, the frames that pass through the L2 aggregate port will undergo traffic balancing on the member ports of the L2 aggregate port. If one member link of AP fails, the L2 aggregate port automatically transfers the traffic on this link to other working member links, making the connection more reliable.



The member port of the L2 aggregate port can be either access port or trunk port. However, the member ports in one AP must be of the same type, namely, all the ports are either access ports or trunk ports.

#### 6.1.2 L3 Interfaces

This section discusses the types and definitions of L3 interfaces. L3 interfaces fall into the following categories.

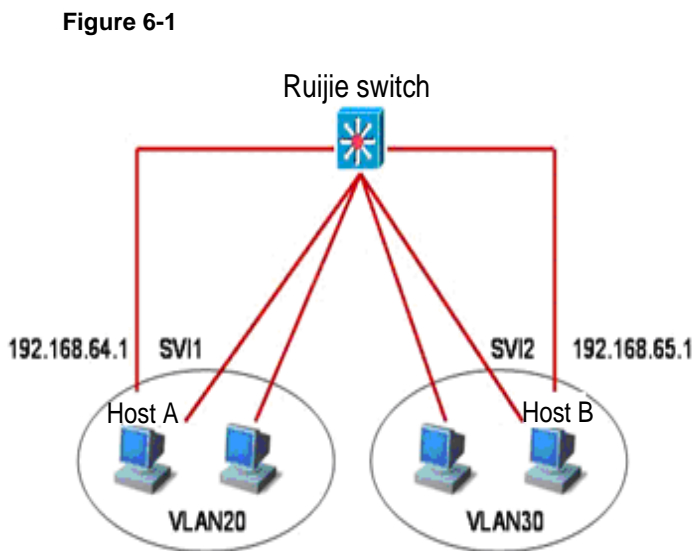
- SVI (Switch virtual interface)
- Routed Port
- L3 Aggregate Ports



### 6.1.2.1 SVI (Switch virtual interface)

SVI, short for Switch Virtual Interface, is used to implement the logical interface for layer 3 switching. SVI can work as the local management interface through which administrator can manage devices. You can also create SVI as a gateway interface that serves as the virtual sub-interface of each VLAN. It can be used for inter-VLAN routing on layer 3 device. A SVI can be created simply by using the **interface vlan** command in the interface configuration mode. Then an IP address is assigned to the SVI to establish a route between VLANs.

As the following figure depicts, the hosts of VLAN20 can communicate to each other directly without routing through an L3 device. If host A in VLAN20 wants to communicate with host B in VLAN30, it must route through SVI1 corresponding to VLAN20 and SVI2 corresponding to VLAN30.



### 6.1.2.2 Routed Port

A routed port is a physical port, for example, a port on the layer 3 device. It can be configured by using a layer 3 routing protocol. On the layer 3 device, a single physical port can be set as a routed port that serves as the gateway interface for layer 3 switching. A routed port serves as an access port that is not related to a specific VLAN. A routed port provides no L2 switching function. You may change an L2 switch port into a routed port by using the **No switchport** command and then assign an IP address to it for routing purposes. Note that using the **no switchport** command in the interface configuration mode will close and restart this port and delete all the layer 2 features of this port.

**Caution**

However, when a port is a member port of an L2 aggregate port or an unauthenticated DOT1x authentication port, the **switchport/ no switchport** command will not work.



### 6.1.2.3 L3 Aggregate Port

---

Just like a L2 aggregate port, a L3 aggregate port is a logically aggregated port group that consists of multiple physical ports. The aggregated ports must be layer 3 ports of the same type. For layer 3 switching, an AP that serves as the gateway interface for layer 3 switching considers multiple physical links in the same aggregate group as one logical link. This is an important method for expanding link bandwidth. In addition, the frames that pass through the L3 aggregate port will undergo traffic balancing on the member ports of the L3 aggregate port. If one member link of AP fails, the L3 aggregate port automatically assigns the traffic on this link to other working member links, making the connection more reliable.

An L3 aggregate port offers no L2 switching functions. You may establish routes by first changing an L2 aggregate port without members into an L3 aggregate port using the **no switchport** command and then adding multiple routed ports and assigning an IP address to it.

## 6.2 Configuring Interfaces

---

This section provides the default setting, guidelines, steps, and examples of configuration.

### 6.2.1 Interface Numbering Rule

---

The number of a switch port consists of a slot number and the port number on the slot. For example, the port number is 3 and the slot number is 2, the number of the corresponding interface is 2/3. The slot number ranges from 0 to the total number of slots. The rule of numbering slots is that for panels facing the device, slots are numbered from front to back, from left to right, and from top down starting from 1 and increased in turn. Ports in a slot are numbered from left to right starting from 1 to the number of ports in the slot. For the devices which have a choice of optical or electrical interfaces, in either case, they use the same port number. You can view information on a slot and ports on it by using the **show** command in CLI.

Aggregate ports are numbered from 1 to the number of aggregate ports supported on the device.

A SVI is numbered by the VID of its corresponding VLAN.



#### Caution

The number of the static slot on a device is always 0. However, dynamic slots (pluggable modules or line cards) are numbered starting from 1.

---

### 6.2.2 Using Interface Configuration Commands

---

Execute the **interface** command to enter interface configuration mode in the global configuration mode.



Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>interface</b> <i>interface ID</i>	Input <b>interface</b> to enter the interface configuration mode in the global configuration mode. You can also configure an interface range by using the <b>interface range</b> or <b>interface range macro</b> command. However, the interfaces in the same range must be of the same type and features.

This example shows how to access GigabitEthernet2/1:

```
DES-7200(config)# interface gigabitethernet 2/1
DES-7200(config-if)#
```

You can configure the related attributes of the interface in the interface configuration mode.

### 6.2.3 Using the interface range Command

#### 6.2.3.1 Setting an Interface Range

You can configure multiple interfaces at once by using the **interface range** command in the global configuration mode. As a result, the configured parameters apply to all the interfaces within the range.

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>interface range</b> <i>{port-range   macro macro_name}</i>	<p>Enter an interface range.</p> <p>You can use the <b>interface range</b> command to specify multiple ranges separated by a comma.</p> <p>The <b>macro</b> parameter can use the macro of a range. See the section of <i>Configuring and Using Macro Definition for Interface Range</i>.</p> <p>Be sure that the interfaces of all the ranges specified by a command must be of the same type.</p>

When using the **interface range** command, you should pay attention to the format of **range**.

A valid range format

**vlan** *vlan-ID - vlan-ID*, with VLAN ID in the range of 1–4094;

**Fastethernet** *slot/{the first port} - {the last port}*;

**Gigabitethernet** *slot/{the first port} - {the last port}*;

**TenGigabitethernet** *slot/{the first port} - {the last port}*;

**Aggregate Port Aggregate** *port number*, with *Aggregate port number* in the range of 1 to MAX.



The interfaces in an **interface range** must be of the same type, for example fastethernet, gigabitethernet, aggregate port or SVI.

This example shows how to use the **interface range** command in the global configuration mode:

```
DES-7200# configure terminal
DES-7200(config)# interface range fastethernet 1/1 - 10
DES-7200(config-if-range)# no shutdown
DES-7200(config-if-range)#
```

This example shows how to separate multiple ranges by a comma “,”:

```
DES-7200# configure terminal
DES-7200(config)# interface range fastethernet 1/1-5, 1/7-8
DES-7200(config-if-range)# no shutdown
DES-7200(config-if-range)#
```

### 6.2.3.2 Configuring and Using Macro Definition for Interface Range

You can define a macro instead of inputting port ranges. However, you have to define macros using the **define interface-range** command in the global configuration mode before using the **macro** keyword of the **interface range** command.

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>define interface-range</b> <i>macro_name interface-range</i>	<p>Define a macro for interface range.</p> <p>Name of the macro, up to 32 characters.</p> <p>A macro can define multiple interface ranges.</p> <p>The interfaces in all ranges in the same macro must be of the same type.</p>
DES-7200(config)# <b>interface range macro</b> <i>macro_name</i>	<p>The string defined by the macro will be saved in the memory. When you use the <b>interface range</b> command, you can use the macro name to replace the interface-range string.</p>

To delete a macro, use the **no define interface-range macro\_name** command in the global configuration mode.

When defining an interface range using the **define interface-range** command, you should pay attention to the range format.

A valid range format is:

- **vlan** *vlan-ID* - *vlan-ID*, with VLAN ID in the range of 1 to 4094;
- **fastethernet** *slot/{the first port}* - {the last port};
- **gigabitethernet** *slot/{the first port}* - {the last port};



– **Aggregate Port Aggregate** *port number*, with *Aggregate port number* in the range of 1 to MAX.

Interfaces contained in an **interface range** must be of the same type, that is, they should be all switch ports, aggregate ports or SVIs.

This example defines a macro for fastethernet1/1-4 by using the **define interface-range** command:

```
DES-7200# configure terminal
DES-7200(config)# define interface-range resource
fastethernet 1/1-4
DES-7200(config)# end
```

This example defines a macro for multiple ranges:

```
DES-7200# configure terminal
DES-7200(config)# define interface-range ports1to2N5to7
fastethernet 1/1-2, 1/5-7
DES-7200(config)# end
```

This example uses the macro ports1to2N5to7 to set the specified range of interfaces:

```
DES-7200# configure terminal
DES-7200(config)# interface range macro ports1to2N5to7
DES-7200(config-if-range)#
```

This example deletes the macro ports1to2N5to7:

```
DES-7200# configure terminal
DES-7200(config)# no define interface-range ports1to2N5to7
DES-7200# end
```

## 6.2.4 Selecting Interface Media Type

Some interfaces come with multiple media types for your choice. Once you have selected a media, interface attributes like connection status, speed, duplex, and flow control will be determined. When you change the media, interface attributes will use their default values. Change the default values when necessary.

This configuration takes effect for only physical ports. Aggregate port and SVI port do not support setting media types.

This configuration command takes effect for only the ports that supports media selection.

The ports configured to be the members of an aggregate port must have the same media type. Otherwise, they cannot be added to the AP. The port type of the members of the aggregate port cannot be changed.

Command	Function
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>medium-type</b> { fiber   copper }	Set the media type of a port.



This example sets the media type of gigabitethernet 1/1:

```
DES-7200# config terminal
```

Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.

```
DES-7200(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/1  
DES-7200(config-if)# medium-type fiber  
DES-7200(config-if)# end
```

### 6.2.5 Setting Interface Description and Management Status

You may give an interface a particular name (description) to help you remember its functions. You may name the interface what you want to do with it, for example, if you want to reserve Gigabitethernet 1/1 for the exclusive use of user A, you may set its description to "Port for User A".

Command	Function
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>description</b> <i>string</i>	Set the interface description in no more than 32 characters.

This example sets the description of Gigabitethernet 1/1:

```
DES-7200# config terminal  
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.  
DES-7200(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/1  
DES-7200(config-if)# description PortForUser A  
DES-7200(config-if)# end
```

In some circumstances, you may need to disable some interface. You can do this by setting the management status of the interface. Once disabled, no frames can be received and sent through the interface, and all its functions are disabled. You can also restart an disabled interface by setting its management status. The management status of an interface can be **up** or **down**. When a port is disabled, its management status is **down**; otherwise, it is in the status **up**.

Command	Function
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>shutdown</b>	Disable an interface.

The following example illustrates how to disable Gigabitethernet 1/2.

```
DES-7200# configure terminal  
DES-7200(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/2  
DES-7200(config-if)# shutdown  
DES-7200(config-if)# end
```



### 6.2.6 Setting Speed, Duplexing, and Flow Control for an Interface

The section deals with the setting of speed, duplexing, and flow control for interfaces.

The following command takes effect only for switch port and routed port.

Command	Function
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>speed</b> {10   100   1000   auto }	Select a speed or set it to <b>auto</b> .  Caution: 1000M applies only to gigabit interfaces. The rate of the 7200-24GE 1000M optical interface can be set as 100M. However, the rate of the optical interface for other devices is forced to be 1000M.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>duplex</b> {auto / full / half }	Set duplex mode.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>flowcontrol</b> {auto   on   off }	Set flow control mode.  Note: When <b>speed</b> , <b>duplex</b> , and <b>flowcontrol</b> are all set to non-auto, the system will disable auto-negotiation on the interface.

In the interface configuration mode, you can restore the settings of speed, duplexing, and flow control to the default values (auto-negotiation) by using the **no speed**, **no duplex**, and **no flowcontrol** commands. The following example shows how to set the speed of Gigabitethernet 1/1 to 1000M, its duplex mode to **full**, and its flow control to **off**.

```
DES-7200# configure terminal
DES-7200(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/1
DES-7200(config-if)# speed 1000
DES-7200(config-if)# duplex full
DES-7200(config-if)# flowcontrol off
DES-7200(config-if)# end
```



#### Caution

According to related IEEE standards, you can determine Master or Slave status of the gigabit electric port by negotiation. Gigabit and megabit optic port of 7200-24GE can not support automatic negotiation switchover, so it needs switch the configuration command manually.

### 6.2.7 Configuring Interface MTU

When a heavy throughput of data interchange occurs on a port, there may be a frame beyond the Ethernet standard frame length. This type of frame is called jumbo frame. A user



can control the maximum frame length that the port is allowed to receive and send by setting the MTU.

MTU refers to the length of a valid data segment in a frame, excluding the overhead of Ethernet encapsulation.

The MTU of a port is checked during input, not output. If the frame received by the port is longer than the set MTU, it will be discarded.

The MTU is in the range from 64 to 9216 bytes with the granularity of 4 bytes. Its default value is 1500 bytes.

This configuration command takes effect only for physical ports. The SVI interface currently does not support the MTU setting.

Command	Function
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>Mtu num</b>	Set the MTU for a port. Num: <64 to 9216>

This example shows how to set the MTU for Gigabitethernet 1/1:

```
DES-7200# config terminal
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
DES-7200(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/1
DES-7200(config-if)# mtu 64
DES-7200(config-if)# end
```

### 6.2.8 Configuring L2 Interfaces

The following table shows the default settings of L2 interfaces. For the configurations of VLAN and ports, please refer to *Configuring VLAN* and *Configuring Port-based Flow Control*.

Attribute	Default Configuration
Working mode	L2 switch mode
Switch port mode	access port
Allowed VLAN range	1 to 4094
Default VLAN (for access port)	VLAN 1
Native VLAN (for trunk port)	VLAN 1
Media Type	copper
Interface management status	Up
Interface Description	Null
Speed	Auto-negotiation
Duplex mode	Auto-negotiation



Attribute	Default Configuration
Flow control	Auto-negotiation
Aggregate port	None
Storm suppression	Off
Port protection	Off
Port Security	Off

### 6.2.8.1 Configuring Switch Ports

#### 6.2.8.1.1 Configuring Access/Trunk Port

This section is devoted to the setting of working modes (access/trunk port) of switch port and the setting in each mode.

To set the related attributes of a switch port, use the **switchport** command or other commands in the interface configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>switchport mode {access   trunk }</b>	Set the operation mode.

The following example shows how to set the operation mode of Gigabitethernet 1/2 to access port.

```
DES-7200# configure terminal
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
DES-7200(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/2
DES-7200(config-if)# switchport mode access
DES-7200(config-if)# end
```

Command	Function
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>switchport access vlan</b> <i>vlan-id</i>	Set the VLAN to which the access port belongs.

The following example shows how to configure the VLAN to which the access port gigabitethernet 2/1 to be 100

```
DES-7200# configure terminal
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
DES-7200(config)# interface gigabitethernet 2/1
DES-7200(config-if)# switchport access vlan 100
DES-7200(config-if)# end
```

Set the native VLAN of the trunk port.



Command	Function
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>switchport trunk native vlan <i>vlan-id</i></b>	Set the Native VLAN of the trunk port.

The following example shows how to set the native VLAN of the trunk port Gigabitethernet 2/1 to be 10.

```
DES-7200# configure terminal
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
DES-7200(config)# interface gigabitethernet 2/1
DES-7200(config-if)# switchport trunk native vlan 10
DES-7200(config-if)# end
```

Set port security. For more information about port security, refer to *Port-based Flow Control*:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>switchport port-security</b>	Set port security.

The following example shows how to enable port security on Gigabitethernet 2/1.

```
DES-7200# configure terminal
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
DES-7200(config)# interface gigabitethernet 2/1
DES-7200(config-if)# switchport port-security
DES-7200(config-if)# end
```

For more information on configuring the speed, duplexing, and flow control of an interface, see the section of *Setting Speed, Duplexing, and Flow Control for an Interface*.

The following example shows how to set Gigabitethernet 2/1 to access port, its VLAN to 100, its speed, duplexing, and flow control to self-negotiation and enable port security.

```
DES-7200# configure terminal
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
DES-7200(config)# interface gigabitethernet 2/1
DES-7200(config-if)# switchport access vlan 100
DES-7200(config-if)# speed auto
DES-7200(config-if)# duplex auto
DES-7200(config-if)# flowcontrol auto
DES-7200(config-if)# switchport port-security
DES-7200(config-if)# end
```

#### 6.2.8.1.2 Configuring Hybrid Port

You can configure the hybrid port by performing the following steps:

Command	Description
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter configuration mode
<b>interface &lt;interface&gt;</b>	Enter the interface configuration mode. Megabit, Gigabit, 10 Gigabit
<b>switchport mode hybrid</b>	Configure the port as a hybrid port.



Command	Description
<b>no switchport mode</b>	Delete the port mode.
<b>switchport hybrid native <i>vlan id</i></b>	Set the default VLAN for the hybrid port.
<b>switchport hybrid allowed vlan</b> <b>[[add] [tagged   untagged]] [remove ] <i>vlist</i></b>	Set the output rule for the port.

```
DES-7200# configure terminal
DES-7200(config)# interface g 0/1
DES-7200(config-if)# switchport mode hybrid
DES-7200(config-if)# switchport hybrid native vlan 3
DES-7200(config-if)# switchport hybrid allowed vlan untagged 20-30
DES-7200(config-if)# end
DES-7200# show running interface g 0/1
```

### 6.2.8.2 Configuring L2 Aggregate Ports

This section describes how to create an L2 aggregate port and some related settings.

You may create an L2 aggregate port by using the **aggregateport** command in the interface configuration mode. For details, see *Configuring Aggregate Port*.

### 6.2.8.3 Clearing Statistics and Resetting an Interface

In the privileged EXEC mode, you may clear the statistics of an interface and then reset it by using the **clear** command. This command is only applicable for switch port, port members of an L2 aggregate port, routed port, and port members of an L3 aggregate port. The **clear** command is shown as follows.

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>clear counters</b> [ <i>interface-id</i> ]	Clear interface statistics.
DES-7200# <b>clear interface</b> <i>interface-id</i>	Reset the interface.

In the privileged EXEC mode, use the **show interfaces** command to display interface statistics, or use the **clear counters** command to clear the counters. If no interface is specified, the counters of all layer 2 interfaces will be cleared.

The following example shows how to clear the counter of gigabitethernet 1/1.

```
DES-7200# clear counters gigabitethernet 1/1
```

## 6.2.9 Configuring L3 Interfaces

To configure a layer 3 interface, execute the following steps:



Command	Function
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>no switchport</b>	Shut down the interface and change it to L3 mode. This command applies to switch port and L2 aggregate port only.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>ip address</b> <i>ip_address</i> <i>subnet_mask</i> {[ <b>secondary</b>   <b>tertiary</b>   <b>quartus</b> ][ <b>broadcast</b> ]}	Configure the IP address and subnet mask of the interface.

To delete the IP address of an L3 interface, use the **no ip address** command in the interface configuration mode.

The **no switchport** operation cannot be performed on one member of an L2 aggregate port.

The following example shows how to set an L2 interface to a routed port and assign an IP address to it.

```
DES-7200# configure terminal
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
DES-7200(config)# interface gigabitethernet 2/1
DES-7200(config-if)# no switchport
DES-7200(config-if)# ip address 192.20.135.21 255.255.255.0
DES-7200(config-if)# no shutdown
DES-7200(config-if)# end
```

### 6.2.9.1 Configuring SVI

This section describes how to create a SVI and some related configuration.

You may create a SVI or modify an existing one by using the **interface vlan** *vlan-id* command.

To configure a SVI, execute the following command:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>interface vlan</b> <i>vlan-id</i>	Enter the SVI interface configuration mode.

Then, you can configure the attributes related to the SVI. For detailed information, refer to *Configuring Single IP Address Route*.

The following example shows how to enter the interface configuration mode and assign an IP address to SVI 100.

```
DES-7200# configure terminal
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
DES-7200(config)# interface vlan 100
DES-7200(config-if)# ip address 192.168.1.1 255.255.255.0
DES-7200(config-if)# end
```



### 6.2.9.2 Configuring Routed Ports

This section deals with how to create and configure a routed port.

You may create a routed port by using the **no switchport** command in the interface configuration command.

To create one routed port and assign an IP address to it, execute the following commands:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>no switchport</b>	Shut down the interface and then change it to L3 mode.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>ip address</b> <i>ip_address</i> <i>subnet_mask</i>	Configure the IP address and subnet mask.



#### Caution

No layer switching can be performed by using **switchport/ no switchport** when an interface is a member of an L2 Aggregate Port.

The following example shows how to set an L2 interface to a routed port and then assign an IP address to it.

```
DES-7200# configure terminal
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
DES-7200(config)# interface fastethernet 1/6
DES-7200(config-if)# no switchport
DES-7200(config-if)# ip address 192.168.1.1 255.255.255.0
DES-7200(config-if)# no shutdown
DES-7200(config-if)# end
```

### 6.2.9.3 Configuring L3 Aggregate Ports

This section deals with how to create an L3 aggregate port and some related configuration.

In the interface configuration mode, you can use the **no switchport** command to convert a L2 aggregate port to a L3 aggregate port:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>no switchport</b>	Shut down the interface and change it to L3 mode.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>ip address</b> <i>ip_address</i> <i>subnet_mask</i>	Configure the IP address and subnet mask.

The following example shows how to create an L3 aggregate port and assign an IP address to it.

```
DES-7200# configure terminal
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
```



```

DES-7200(config)# interface aggregateport 2
DES-7200(config-if)# no switchport
DES-7200(config-if)# ip address 192.168.1.1 255.255.255.0
DES-7200(config-if)# no shutdown
DES-7200(config-if)# end

```

### 6.3 Showing Interface Configuration and Status

This section covers interface status display and gives examples. You may view interface status by using the **show** command in the privileged EXEC mode. To show interface status, use the following commands.

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>show interfaces</b> [ <i>interface-id</i> ]	Show the status and configuration of the specified interface.
DES-7200# <b>show interfaces</b> <i>interface-id</i> <b>status</b>	Show the status of the specified interface.
DES-7200# <b>show interfaces</b> [ <i>interface-id</i> ] <b>switchport</b>	Show the administrative and operational status of an switch interface (non-routing interface).
DES-7200# <b>show interfaces</b> [ <i>interface-id</i> ] <b>description</b>	Show the description and status of the specified interface.
DES-7200# <b>show interfaces</b> [ <i>interface-id</i> ] <b>counters</b>	Show the statistics of the specified port. Where, the rate displayed may have an error of less than 0.5%.

The following example shows how to display the status of Gigabitethernet 1/1.

```

DES-7200# show interfaces gigabitethernet 1/1
GigabitEthernet          : Gi 1/1
Description               : user A
AdminStatus              : up
OperStatus               : down
Hardware                 : 1000BASE-TX
Mtu                      : 1500
PhysAddress              :
LastChange               : 0:0h:0m:0s
AdminDuplex              : Auto
OperDuplex               : Unknown
AdminSpeed               : 1000M
OperSpeed                : Unknown
FlowControlAdminStatus   : Enabled
FlowControlOperStatus    : Disabled
Priority                  : 1

```

The following example shows the status and configuration of SVI 5.



```
DES-7200# show interfaces vlan 5
VLAN      : V5
Description      : SVI 5
AdminStatus      : up
OperStatus      : down
Primary Internet address      : 192.168.65.230/24
Broadcast address      : 192.168.65.255
PhysAddress      : 00d0.f800.0001
LastChange      : 0:0h:0m:5s
```

The following example shows the status of aggregate port 3.

```
DES-7200# show interfaces aggregateport 3:
Interface      : AggregatePort 3
Description      :
AdminStatus      : up
OperStatus      : down
Hardware      : -
Mtu      : 1500
LastChange      : 0d:0h:0m:0s
AdminDuplex      : Auto
OperDuplex      : Unknown
AdminSpeed      : Auto
OperSpeed      : Unknown
FlowControlAdminStatus      : Autonego
FlowControlOperStatus      : Disabled
Priority      : 0
```

This example shows the configuration of GigabitEthernet 1/1:

```
DES-7200# show interfaces gigabitEthernet 1/1 switchport
Interface Switchport Mode      Access      Native      Protected VLAN lists
-----
gigabitEthernet 1/1      Enabled Access      1           1           Enabled All
```

This example shows the description of GigabitEthernet 2/1:

```
DES-7200# show interfaces gigabitEthernet 1/2 description
Interface      Status      Administrative      Description
-----
gigabitEthernet 2/1      down      down      Gi 2/1
```

This example shows statistics of the interfaces.

```
DES-7200# show interfaces gigabitEthernet 1/2 counters
Interface : gigabitEthernet 1/2
5 minute input rate      : 9144 bits/sec, 9 packets/sec
5 minute output rate      : 1280 bits/sec, 1 packets/sec
InOctets      : 17310045
InUcastPkts      : 37488
InMulticastPkts      : 28139
InBroadcastPkts      : 32472
OutOctets      : 1282535
```



```

OutUcastPkts           : 17284
OutMulticastPkts       : 249
OutBroadcastPkts       : 336
Undersize packets      : 0
Oversize packets       : 0
collisions              : 0
Fragments              : 0
Jabbers                 : 0
CRC alignment errors    : 0
AlignmentErrors         : 0
FCSErrors               : 0
dropped packet events (due to lack of resources): 0
packets received of length (in octets):
  64:46264, 65-127: 47427, 128-255: 3478,
  256-511: 658, 512-1023: 18016, 1024-1518: 125

```

## 6.4 LinkTrap Policy Configuration

You can determine whether to send the LinkTrap of an interface according to the interface configuration on a device. With this function enabled, when the interface's link status changes, the SNMP protocol will send a LinkTrap message. Otherwise, it will not send a LinkTrap message. By default, this function is enabled.

### 6.4.1 Configuration Command

Command	Function
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>[no] snmp trap link-status</b>	Enable or disable the function of sending the LinkTrap function of this interface.

### 6.4.2 Configuration Example

The following configuration shows how to configure the interface not to send LinkTrap:

```

DES-7200(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 1/1
DES-7200(config-if)# no snmp trap link-status

```







# 7

## Aggregate Port Configuration

This chapter explains how to configure an aggregate port on DES-7200 series.

### 7.1 Overview

#### 7.1.1 Understanding Aggregate Port

Multiple physical links can be bound into a logical link, called an aggregate port (hereinafter referred to as AP). DES-7200 series provide the AP function that complies with the IEEE802.3ad standard. This function can be used to expand link bandwidth and improve reliability.

When a link member in an AP is disconnected, the system will automatically allocate the traffic of the member link to other active member links in the AP, except for the broadcast or multicast packets it received.

**Figure 7-1** Typical AP configurations



#### Note

The DES-7200 series supports up to 128 APs. Each AP includes up to eight ports.



### 7.1.2 Understanding Traffic Balancing

---

Traffic can be evenly distributed on the member links of an AP according to the features such as source MAC address, destination MAC address, combination of source MAC address and destination MAC address, source IP address, destination IP address, and combination of source IP address and destination IP address. The **aggregateport load-balance** command can be used to set the method to distribute traffic.

Source MAC address-based traffic balancing refers to distribute the traffic on the member links of an AP according to the source MAC addresses of packets. Those packets with different source MAC addresses are forwarded through different member links. Those packets with the same source MAC address are forwarded through the same member link.

Destination MAC address-based traffic balancing refers to distribute the traffic on the member links of an AP according to the destination MAC addresses of packets. Those packets with different destination MAC addresses are forwarded through different member links. Those packets with the same destination MAC address are forwarded through the same member link.

The traffic balancing based on the combination of source MAC address and destination MAC address refers to distribute the traffic on the member links of an AP according to the combination of source MAC address and destination MAC address of packets. Those packets with different source and destination MAC addresses may be distributed on the same member link.

Source IP address- or destination IP address-based traffic balancing refers to distribute the traffic on the member links of an AP according to the source IP addresses or destination IP addresses of packets. Those packets with different source IP addresses or destination IP addresses are forwarded through different member links. Those packets with the same source IP address or destination IP address are forwarded through the same member link. This mode is specific for Layer 3 packets. If layer2 packets are received under this mode, traffic balancing is performed automatically according to the source MAC addresses or destination MAC addresses of layer 2 packets.

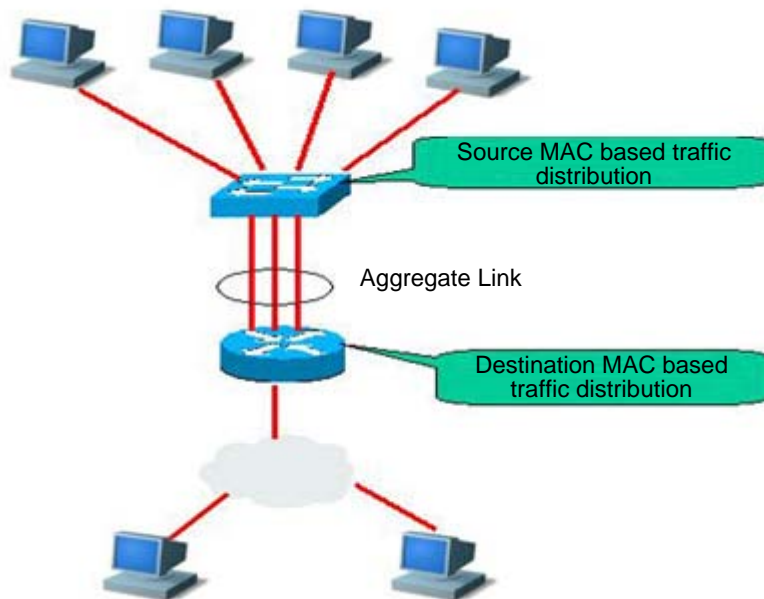
The traffic balancing based on the combination of source IP address and destination IP address refers to distribute the traffic on the member links of an AP according to the combination of source IP address and destination IP address of packets. Those packets with different source and destination IP addresses may be forwarded through the same member link. This mode is specific for Layer 3 packets. If layer2 packets are received under this mode, traffic balancing is performed automatically according to the combination of source MAC addresses and destination MAC addresses of layer 2 packets.

An appropriate traffic distribution method should be set according to the actual network environments, so that the traffic can be evenly distributed on the the links for the maximum utilization of network bandwidth.



In the following diagram, a switch communicates with a router through an AP, and the router serves as the gateway for all the devices inside the network (such as four PCs on the top of the diagram). The source MAC addresses of all the packets that the devices outside the network (such as two PCs at the bottom of the diagram) send through the router are the MAC address of the gateway. In order to distribute traffic between the router and other hosts on other links, traffic balancing should be performed based on the destination MAC address. However, traffic balancing should be performed based on the source MAC address on the switch.

**Figure 7-2** AP traffic balancing



## 7.2 Configuring Aggregate Port

### 7.2.1 Default Aggregate Port Configuration

The default AP configuration is shown in the table below.

Attribute	Default value
Layer-2 AP interface	None
Layer-2 AP interface	None
Traffic balancing	Traffic is distributed according to the source MAC addresses of the incoming packets.



**Caution**

By default, the DES-7200 series performs traffic balancing based on the combination of the source MAC addresses and destination MAC addresses of the incoming packets.

### 7.2.2 Aggregate Port Configuration Guide

The rates of the member ports of an AP must be the same.

L2 ports can only be join a L2 AP, and L3 ports can only join a L3 AP.

An AP does not support port security.

When you want to add a port to an inexistent AP, the system will automatically create the AP.

Once a port is added to an AP, its attributes will be replaced by those of the AP.

Once a port is removed from an AP, its attributes will be restored to original attributes.

**Note**

When a port is added to an AP, you cannot perform any configuration on the port before removing the port from the AP.

### 7.2.3 Configuring a Layer2 Aggregate Port

In the interface configuration mode, add the interface to an AP by performing the following steps.

Command	Function
DES-7200(config-if-range)# <b>port-group</b> <i>port-group-number</i>	Add the interface to an AP (the system will create the AP if it does not exist).

In the interface configuration mode, use the **no port-group** command to remove a physical port from the AP.

The example below shows how to configure the layer2 Ethernet interface 1/0 to a member of layer2 AP 5.

```
DES-7200# configure terminal
DES-7200(config)# interface range gigabitEthernet 0/1
DES-7200(config-if-range)# port-group 5
DES-7200(config-if-range)# end
```

The command DES-7200(config)# **interface aggregateport** *n* (*n* is the AP number) in the global configuration mode can be used to directly create an AP (if AP *n* does not exist).



### 7.2.4 Configuring a Layer3 Aggregate Port

By default, an aggregate port is on layer 2. To configure a layer-3 AP, perform the following operations.

The example below shows how to configure a layer-3 AP (AP 3) and configure its IP address (192.168.1.1):

```
DES-7200# configure terminal
DES-7200(config)# interface aggregateport 3
DES-7200(config-if)# no switchport
DES-7200(config-if)# ip address 192.168.1.1 255.255.255.0
DES-7200(config-if)# end
```

### 7.2.5 Configuring Traffic Balancing on an Aggregate Port

In the configuration mode, configure traffic balancing on the AP by performing the following steps:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>aggregateport load-balance</b> <b>{dst-mac  </b> <b>src-mac   src-dst-mac  </b> <b>dst-ip   src-ip   ip }</b>	<p>Set the AP traffic balancing and select the algorithm:</p> <p><b>dst-mac:</b> Distribute traffic according to the destination MAC addresses of the incoming packets. Those packets with the same destination MAC address are forwarded through the same member link. Those packets with different destination MAC addresses are forwarded to different member links.</p> <p><b>src-mac:</b> Distribute traffic according to the source MAC addresses of the incoming packets. Those packets with the same source MAC address are forwarded through the same member link. Those packets with different source MAC addresses are forwarded to different member links.</p> <p><b>ip:</b> Distribute traffic according to the combination of the source IP addresses and destination IP addresses of the incoming packets. Those packets with the same combination of source IP address and destination IP address are forwarded through the same member link. Those packets with different combinations of source IP addresses and destination IP addresses are forwarded through different member links.</p> <p><b>dst-ip:</b> Distribute traffic according to the destination IP addresses of the incoming packets. Those packets with the same destination IP address are forwarded through the same member link. Those packets with different destination IP</p>



Command	Function
	<p>addresses are forwarded to different member links.</p> <p><b>src-ip:</b> Distribute traffic according to the source IP addresses of the incoming packets. Those packets with the same source IP address are forwarded through the same member link. Those packets with different source IP addresses are forwarded to different member links.</p> <p><b>src-dst-mac:</b> Distribute traffic according to the combination of the source MAC addresses and destination MAC addresses of the incoming packets. Those packets with the same combination of source MAC address and destination MAC address are forwarded through the same member link. Those packets with different combinations of source MAC addresses and destination MAC addresses are forwarded through different member links.</p>

To restore the traffic balancing configuration of an AP to the default value, execute the **no aggregateport load-balance** command in the global configuration mode:

### 7.3 Showing an Aggregate Port

In the privileged mode, show the AP configuration by performing the following steps.

Command	Function
<pre>DES-7200# show aggregateport [port-number]{load-balance   summary}</pre>	Show the AP settings.

```
DES-7200# show aggregateport load-balance
Load-balance : Source MAC address
DES-7200# show aggregateport 1 summary
AggregatePort MaxPorts SwitchPort Mode  Ports
-----
Ag1           8      Enabled      ACCES
```



# 8

## VLAN Configuration

This chapter describes how to configure IEEE802.1q VLAN.

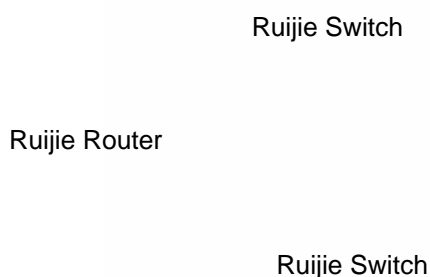
### 8.1 Overview

---

Virtual Local Area Network (VLAN) is a logical network divided on a physical network. VLAN corresponds to the L2 network in the ISO model. The division of VLAN is not restricted by the physical locations of network ports. A VLAN has the same attributes as a common physical network. Except for no restriction on physical location, unicast, broadcast and multicast frames on layer 2 are forwarded and distributed within a VLAN, not being allowed to directly go to other VLANs. Therefore, when a host in a VLAN wants to communicate with another host in another VLAN, a layer 3 device must be used, as shown in the following diagram.

You can define a port as the member of a VLAN. All the terminals connected to the specified port are part of the VLAN. A network can support multiple VLANs. In this case, when you add, delete, and modify users, you do not need to modify the network configuration physically.

**Figure 8-1**



Like a physical network, a VLAN is usually connected to an IP subnet. A typical example is that all the hosts in the same IP subnet belong to the same VLAN. A layer 3 device must be used for communication between VLANs. DES-7200 devices can perform IP routing



between VLANs through SVI (Switch Virtual Interfaces). For the configuration about SVI, refer to *Interface Management Configuration* and *IP Unicast Routing Configuration*.

### 8.1.2 Supported VLAN

Complying with IEEE802.1Q Standard, our products support up to 4094 VLANs(VLAN ID 1-4094 ), in which VLAN 1 is the default VLAN that cannot be deleted.



#### Caution

The DES-7200 series supports 4094 VLANs.

### 8.1.3 VLAN Member Type

You can determine the frames that can pass a port and the number of VLANs that the port can belong to by configuring the VLAN member type of the port. For the detailed description about VLAN member type , see the following table:

Member Type	Port Feature
Access	One access port can belong to only one VLAN, which must be specified manually.
Trunk (802.1Q)	By default, one Trunk port belongs to all the VLANs of the device itself, and it can forward the frames of all the VLANs. However, you can impose restriction by setting a list of allowed VLANs.

## 8.2 Configuring a VLAN

A VLAN is identified by its VLAN ID. You can add, remove, and modify the VLANs in the range of 2 to 4094 on a device. VLAN 1 is created by a device automatically and cannot be removed.

You can configure the member type of a port in a VLAN, add a port to a VLAN, and remove a port from a VLAN in the interface configuration mode.

### 8.2.1 Saving the VLAN Configuration

To save the VLAN configuration in the configuration file, execute the **copy running-config startup-config** command in the privileged mode. To view VLAN configuration, execute the **show vlan** command.



### 8.2.2 Default VLAN Configuration

The following table shows the default configuration of a VLAN.

Parameter	Default value	Range
VLAN ID	1	1 to 4094
VLAN Name	VLAN xxxx, where xxxx is the VLAN ID	None
VLAN State	Active	Two status: active or inactive

### 8.2.3 Creating/Modifying a VLAN

In the privileged mode, you can create or modify a VLAN by executing the following commands.

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>vlan</b> <i>vlan-id</i>	Enter a VLAN ID. If you enter a new VLAN ID, the device will create it. If you enter an existing VLAN ID, the device modifies the corresponding VLAN.
DES-7200(config)# <b>name</b> <i>vlan-name</i>	(Optional) Name the VLAN. If you skip this step, the device automatically assigns the VLAN a name of VLAN xxxx, where xxxx is a 4-digit VLAN ID starting with 0. For example, VLAN 0004 is the default name of VLAN 4.

To restore the name of a VLAN to its default, simply enter the **no name** command.

The following example creates VLAN 888, names it test888, and saves its configuration into the configuration file:

```
DES-7200# configure terminal
DES-7200(config)# vlan 888
DES-7200(config-vlan)# name test888
DES-7200(config-vlan)# end
```

### 8.2.4 Deleting a VLAN

You cannot delete the default VLAN (VLAN 1).

In the privileged mode, you can delete a VLAN by executing the following command.

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>no vlan</b> <i>vlan-id</i>	Enter the VLAN ID that you want to delete.



### 8.2.5 Assigning Access Ports to a VLAN

If you assign a port to an inexistent VLAN, the switch will automatically create that VLAN.

In the privileged mode, you can assign a port to a VLAN by executing the following command.

Command	Function
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>switchport mode access</b>	Define the member type of the port in a VLAN (L2 ACCESS port).
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>switchport access vlan</b> <i>vlan-id</i>	Assign the port to the VLAN.

The following example adds Ethernet 1/10 to VLAN20 as an access port:

```
DES-7200# configure terminal
DES-7200(config)# interface fastethernet 1/10
DES-7200(config-if)# switchport mode access
DES-7200(config-if)# switchport access vlan 20
DES-7200(config-if)# end
```

The following example shows how to verify the configuration:

```
DES-7200(config)#show interfaces gigabitEthernet 3/1
switchport
Switchport is enabled
Mode is access port
Access vlan is 1,Native vlan is 1
Protected is disabled
Vlan lists is ALL
```

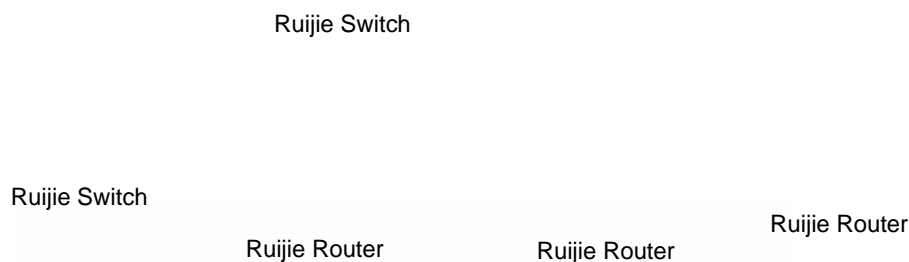
## 8.3 Configuring VLAN Trunks

### 8.3.1 Overview

A trunk is a point-to-point link that connects one or multiple Ethernet switching interfaces to other network devices (for instance, router or switch). A trunk can transmit the traffics of multiple VLANs.

The encapsulation of the trunks of DES-7200 is 802.1Q-complied . The following diagram shows a network connected with trunks.



**Figure 8-2**

You can set a common Ethernet port or aggregate port to be a trunk port. For the details of aggregate port, refer to *Configuring Aggregate Port*.

In order to switch an interface between the access mode and the trunk mode, use the **switchport mode** command:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>switchport mode access</b>	Set an interface to the access mode
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>switchport mode trunk</b>	Set an interface to the Trunk mode

A native VLAN must be defined for a trunk port. The untagged packets received and sent through the port are deemed as the packets of the native VLAN. Obviously, the default VLAN ID of the port (that is, the PVID in the IEEE 802.1Q) is the VLAN ID of the native VLAN. Moreover, you must untag them before sending the packets of the native VLAN through the trunk port. The default native VLAN of a trunk port is VLAN 1.

When you configure a trunk link, be sure that the ports on both ends of the trunk belong to the same native VLAN.



### 8.3.2 Configuring a Trunk Port

#### 8.3.2.1 Basic Trunk Port Configuration

In the privileged mode, you can configure a trunk port by executing the following command.

Command	Function
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>switchport mode trunk</b>	Configure the port as a L2 trunk port.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>switchport trunk native vlan</b> <i>vlan-id</i>	Specify a native VLAN for the port.

To restore all the trunk-related settings of a trunk port to their defaults, use the **no switchport trunk** command in the interface configuration mode.

### 8.3.3 Defining the Allowed VLAN List of a Trunk Port

By default, the traffic of all VLANs in the range of 1 to 4094 can be transmitted over a trunk port. However, you can restrict the traffic of some VLANs from passing the trunk port by setting its allowed VLAN list.

In the privileged mode, you can modify the allowed VLAN list of a trunk port by executing the following command.

Command	Function
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>switchport trunk allowed vlan</b> {all   [add   remove   except] } <i>vlan-list</i>	<p>(Optional) Configure the allowed VLAN list of the trunk port. The <i>vlan-list</i> parameter may be a VLAN or a series of VLANs. It starts with a small VLAN ID and ends with a large VLAN ID. Both IDs are connected with "-", such as 10–20.</p> <p><b>All:</b> Add all the allowed VLANs to the allowed VLAN list;</p> <p><b>add:</b> Add the specified VLAN list to the allowed VLAN list;</p> <p><b>remove:</b> Remove the specified VLAN list from the allowed VLAN list;</p> <p><b>except:</b> Add all the VLANs other than the specified VLAN list to the allowed VLAN list.</p>

To restore the allowed VLAN list of the trunk port to its default, execute the **no switchport trunk allowed vlan** command in the interface configuration mode.

The following example removes VLAN 2 from the allowed VLAN list of port 1/15:

```
DES-7200(config)# interface fastethernet 1/15
DES-7200(config-if)# switchport trunk allowed vlan remove 2
DES-7200(config-if)# end
```



```
DES-7200# show interfaces fastethernet 1/15 switchport
Switchport is enabled
Mode is trunk port
Access vlan is 1,Native vlan is 1
Protected is disabled
Vlan lists is
1,3-4094
```

### 8.3.4 Configuring a Native VLAN.

Tagged or untagged 802.1Q frames can be received or sent on a trunk port. Untagged frames are used to transmit the traffic of the native VLAN. By default, the native VLAN is VLAN 1.

In the privileged mode, you can configure a native VLAN for a trunk port by executing the following command.

Command	Function
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>switchport trunk native vlan <i>vlan-id</i></b>	Configure a native VLAN.

To restore the native VLAN of a trunk port to its default, execute the **no switchport trunk native vlan** command in the interface configuration command.

If a frame carries the VLAN ID of the native VLAN, it will be automatically untagged when being forwarded through the trunk port.

When you set the native VLAN of a trunk port to an inexistent VLAN, the switch will not automatically create the VLAN. In addition, the native VLAN of a trunk port may be out the allowed VLAN list. In this case, the traffic of the native VLAN cannot pass the trunk port.

## 8.4 Showing VLAN Information

Only in the privileged mode can you view the VLAN information, including VLAN VID, VLAN status, member ports of the VLAN, and VLAN configuration. The related commands are listed as below:

Command	Function
<b>show vlan [id <i>vlan-id</i>]</b>	Show the information about all or the specified VLAN.

The following example shows the information about a VLAN:

```
DES-7200# show vlan
VLAN[1] "VLAN0001"
    GigabitEthernet 3/1
    GigabitEthernet 3/2
    GigabitEthernet 3/3
    GigabitEthernet 3/4
```



```
GigabitEthernet 3/5
GigabitEthernet 3/6
GigabitEthernet 3/7
GigabitEthernet 3/8
GigabitEthernet 3/9
GigabitEthernet 3/10
GigabitEthernet 3/11
GigabitEthernet 3/12
VLAN[6] "VLAN0006"
GigabitEthernet 3/1
```

```
DES-7200#show vlan id 1
VLAN[1] "VLAN0001"
GigabitEthernet 3/1
GigabitEthernet 3/2
GigabitEthernet 3/3
GigabitEthernet 3/4
GigabitEthernet 3/5
GigabitEthernet 3/6
GigabitEthernet 3/7
GigabitEthernet 3/8
GigabitEthernet 3/9
GigabitEthernet 3/10
GigabitEthernet 3/11

GigabitEthernet 3/12
```



# 9

## Super VLAN Configuration

This chapter describes the Super VLAN configuration of DES-7200 series.

### 9.1 Overview

---

Super VLAN is a method for VLAN division. Super VLAN, also called VLAN aggregation, is a management technology for optimizing IP addresses. Its principle is to assign the IP address of a network segment to different sub VLANs that belong to the same super VLAN. Each sub VLAN is an independent broadcast domain and isolated on the layer 2. Users in a sub VLAN use the IP address of a virtual interface of the super VLAN as the gateway for communication on the layer 3, which allows multiple VLANs to share one IP address and saves IP address resources. At the same time, the ARP proxy function is required to realize layer 3 interoperation between sub VLANs, as well as interoperation between sub VLANs and other networks. The ARP proxy can forward and handle the ARP request and response packets to realize layer 3 interoperation between the isolated layer 2 ports of sub VLANs. By default, the ARP proxy function is enabled for super VLAN and sub VLAN.

Super VLAN not only save lots of IP addresses, but also is convenient for the network management. You only need to assign an IP address to a super VLAN including multiple sub VLANs.

**Figure 9-1**



As shown in the above diagram, Sub VLAN2 and Sub VLAN4 are aggregated to form Super VLAN3. An IP address is assigned to Super VLAN3, and both Sub VLAN2 and Sub VLAN4 are located in this subnet. Supposing PC1 in Sub VLAN2 wants to communicate with PC2 in the subnet, after knowing that the peer is located in the same network segment, PC1 directly sends an ARP request packet with a destination IP address. Upon receiving this ARP request packet, the layer 3 device directly broadcasts this packet through layer 2 within Sub VLAN2, and sends a copy to the ARP module of the device. This module first checks whether the destination IP address in the ARP request packet is in Sub-VLAN2. If so, it will discard this packet because it and PC1 are located in the same broadcast domain, and the destination host will directly respond to PC1. If not, it will respond PC1 with the MAC address of SuperVLAN3, acting as an ARP agent. For example, PC1 and PC2 have to communicate through the ARP agent which forwards packets from PC1 to PC2. However, PC1 and PC3 can communicate directly without a forwarding device.

Restrictions:

- A super VLAN can only contain sub VLANs. The sub VLAN contains actual physical ports.
- A super VLAN cannot serve as a sub VLAN of other Super VLANs.
- A super VLAN cannot be used as the normal 1Q VLAN.
- VLAN 1 cannot be used as a super VLAN.
- A sub VLAN cannot be configured as a network interface, and cannot be assigned with an IP address.
- SVLAN does not support VRRP and multicast.
- Super VLAN interface-based ACL and QOS configurations take no effect for sub VLANs.

## 9.2 Configuring a Super VLAN

To configure a super VLAN, execute the following commands.

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>configure</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
DES-7200(config)# <b>vlan</b> <i>vlan-id</i>	Enter the VLAN configuration mode
DES-7200(config-vlan)# <b>supervlan</b>	Enable the Super VLAN function
DES-7200(config-vlan)# <b>end</b>	Return to the privileged mode.

The super VLAN function is disabled by default. The enabled super VLAN function can be disabled by using the **no supervlan** command.



### 9.3 Configuring the Sub VLANs of a Super VLAN

A super VLAN is meaningful only when subVLANs are configured.

To configure a VLAN as the sub VLAN of a super VLAN, execute the following command.



#### Caution

The sub VLAN configuration may fail due to a lack of resources.

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>configure</b>	Enter the global configuration mode
DES-7200(config)# <b>vlan</b> <i>vlan-id</i>	Enter the VLAN configuration mode
DES-7200(config-vlan)# <b>supervlan</b>	Set this VLAN as a super VLAN
DES-7200(config-vlan)# <b>subvlan</b> <i>vlan-id-list</i>	Specify several sub VLANs and add them to the super VLAN.
DES-7200(config-vlan)# <b>exit</b>	Return to the global mode.

To delete a sub VLAN from the super VLAN, execute the **no subvlan [ *vlan-id-list* ]** command.



#### Caution

If you want to delete SubVLAN, you must switch it to ordinary VLAN and then use command **no vlan**.

### 9.4 Setting an Address Range for a Sub VLAN

You can configure an address range for each sub VLAN so that the device can identify which sub VLAN that a given IP address belongs to. The address ranges configured for sub VLANs of the super VLAN should not be overlapped or covered each other.

To set an address range for a sub VLAN, execute the following command in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>configure</b>	Enter the global configuration mode
DES-7200(config)# <b>vlan</b> <i>vlan-id</i>	Enter the VLAN configuration mode



Command	Function
DES-7200(config-vlan)# <b>subvlan-address-range</b> <i>start-ip end-ip</i>	Set an address range for the sub VLAN. start-ip is the start IP address of this sub VLAN, and end-ip is the end IP address of this sub VLAN.
DES-7200(config-vlan)# <b>end</b>	Return to the privileged mode.
DES-7200# <b>show run</b>	Verify the configuration.

**Note**

You can delete previous configurations by using command **no subvlan-address-range**.

## 9.5 Setting a Virtual Interface for a Super VLAN

When a user in a sub VLAN needs to perform layer 3 communication, a virtual layer 3 interface of the super VLAN should be created first.

The SVI of the super VLAN itself is used as the virtual interface.

To set a virtual interface for a super VLAN, execute the following commands in the global configuration mode.

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>configure</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
DES-7200(config)# <b>interface vlan</b> <i>vlan-id</i>	Enter the SVI mode .
DES-7200(config-vlan)# <b>ip address</b> <i>ip mask</i>	Set an IP address for the virtual interface.
DES-7200(config-vlan)# <b>end</b>	Return to the privileged mode.
DES-7200# <b>show run</b>	Verify the configuration.

## 9.6 Setting ARP Proxy for a VLAN

You can set ARP Proxy for a VLAN so that sub VLANs can communicate with each other.

ARP Proxy is enabled for a VLAN by default.

To set ARP Proxy for a VLAN, execute the following command in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>configure</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.



Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>vlan</b> <i>vlan-id</i>	Enter the VLAN mode.
DES-7200(config-vlan)# <b>proxy-arp</b>	Enable ARP Proxy function for the VLAN.
DES-7200(config-vlan)# <b>end</b>	Return to the privileged mode.
DES-7200# <b>show run</b>	Verify the configuration.

To disable ARP Proxy for a VLAN, execute the **no proxy-arp** command.

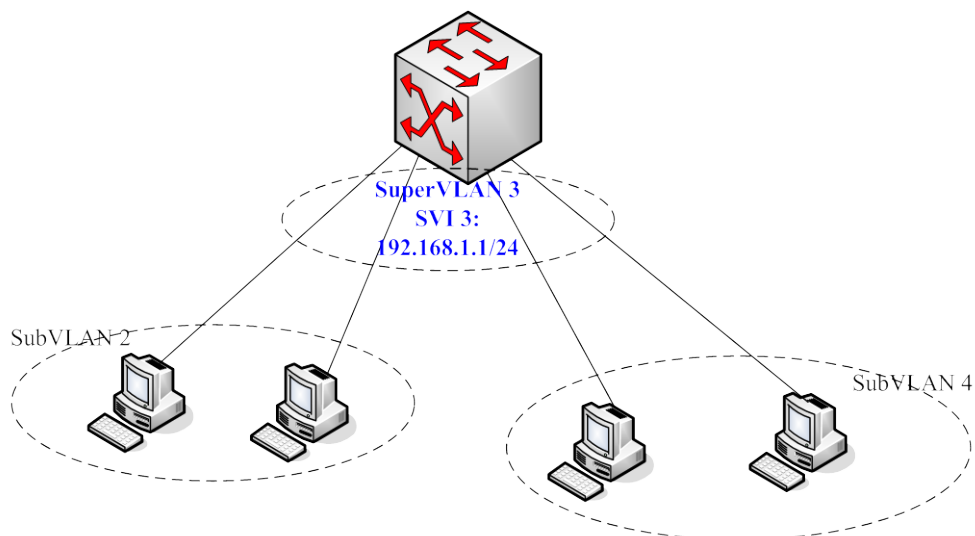
## 9.7 Showing Super VLAN Setting

To show the super VLAN setting, execute the following command.

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>show supervlan</b>	Show the super VLAN setting.

## 9.8 Configuration Example

Figure 9-2



The above diagram shows a super VLAN. To allow the hosts in Sub VLAN2 and that in SubVLAN4 to communicate with each other, the hosts are configured as follows: (only related parts are listed.)

```
vlan 1
!
vlan 2

# Set an IP address range for Sub VLAN 2.

subvlan-address-range 192.168.1.1 192.168.1.100
!
```



```
vlan 3
supervlan
subvlan 2,4
!
vlan 4

# Set an IP address range for Sub VLAN 4.

subvlan-address-range 192.168.1.101 192.168.1.254
!
interface FastEthernet 0/23

# Add a member port for Sub VLAN2.

switchport access vlan 2
!
interface GigabitEthernet 0/25

# Add a member port for Sub VLAN4.

switchport access vlan 4
!

# Create a virtual layer 3 interface for the super VLAN.

interface Vlan 3
ip address 192.168.1.1 255.255.255.0
```



# 10 Protocol VLAN Configuration

## 10.1 Protocol VLAN Technology

Every packet received on a port of the device should be classified and added to an unique VLAN. There are three possibilities:

1. If the packet has no VLAN ID (for instance, UNTAG or Priority packet ), and the device only supports port-based VLAN classification, the VLAN ID in the tag added to the packet is the PVID of the inbound port.
2. If the packet has no VLAN ID (for instance, UNTAG or Priority packet), and the device supports protocol type-based VLAN classification, one of the VLAN IDs corresponding to the protocol suite configured on the inbound port will be selected as the VLAN ID in the tag added to the packet. However, if the protocol type of the packet matches none of the protocol suite configured on the inbound port, the VLAN ID will be assigned by port-based VLAN classification.
3. If the packet is tagged, its VLAN is determined by the VLAN ID in the tag.

As a protocol type-based VLAN classification technology, the protocol VLAN classifies the packets that have no VLAN ID and be of the same protocol type to the same VLAN.

The protocol VLAN configuration takes effect for Trunk port and Hybrid port, not for the Access port.

Our products support both global IP address-based VLAN classification, and packet type and Ethernet type-based VLAN classification on a port.

Because IP address-based VLAN classification is a global configuration, once configured, it will apply to all trunk ports and Hybrid ports.

1. If the incoming packet has no VLAN ID, and its IP address matches the configured IP address, this packet will be classify into the configured VLAN.
2. If the incoming packet has no VLAN ID, and its packet type and Ethernet type match those you configured on the inbound port respectively, this packet will be classified into the configured VLAN.

IP address-based VLAN classification takes precedence over packet type and Ethernet type-based VLAN classification. Hence, if you have configured both IP address-based



VLAN classification and packet type and Ethernet type-based VLAN classification, and the incoming packet matches them both, IP address-based VLAN classification takes effect.

You should configure a VLAN, trunk port, hybrid port, access port and AP attributes before configuring the protocol VLAN. If you have configured protocol VLAN on a trunk port or a hybrid port, the allowed VLAN list for the trunk port and hybrid port must include all the VLANs related to the protocol VLAN.

## 10.2 Configuring a Protocol VLAN

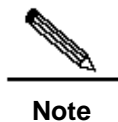
### 10.2.1 Default Protocol VLAN

No Protocol VLAN is configured by default.

### 10.2.2 Configuring IP Address-based VLAN Classification

To configure IP address-based VLAN classification, execute the following commands:

Command	Description
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
<b>protocol-vlan ipv4</b> <i>Ip-address mask mask-address</i> <b>vlan</b> <i>vid</i>	Configure IP address, subnet mask and VLAN classification.
<b>no protocol-vlan ipv4</b> <i>IP-address mask mask-address</i>	Remove the IP address configuration.
<b>no protocol-vlan ipv4</b>	Remove all IP address configuration.
<b>end</b>	Exit the VLAN mode
<b>show protocol-vlan ipv4</b>	Show the configured IP address



Specify the IP address and subnet mask in the x.x.x.x format.  
Available VLAN IDs may vary with different products.

The following command configures the IP address of 192.168.100.3, and the mask of 255.255.255.0 VLAN 100.

```
DES-7200# configure terminal
DES-7200(config)# protocol-vlan ipv4 192.168.100.3 mask 255. 255.255.0 vlan 100
DES-7200(config-vlan)# end
DES-7200# show protocol-vlan ipv4
ip          mask          vlan
-----
-----
```



```
192.168.100.3 255.255.255.0 100
```

### 10.2.3 Configuring Packet Type and Ethernet Type Profile

To configure the packet type and Ethernet type profile, execute the following commands:

Command	Description
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
<b>protocol-vlan profile</b> <i>id</i> <b>frame-type</b> <i>type</i> <b>ether-type</b> <i>type</i>	Configure packet type and Ethernet type profile.
<b>no protocol-vlan profile</b> <i>id</i>	Delete an profile.
<b>no protocol-vlan profile</b>	Clear all profiles.
<b>End</b>	Exit the VLAN mode
<b>show protocol-vlan profile</b>	Show all profiles.
<b>show protocol-vlan profile</b> <i>id</i>	Show a profile.

For example:

```
DES-7200# configure terminal
DES-7200(config)# protocol-vlan profile 1 frame-type ETHERII ether-type EHTER_AARP
DES-7200(config)# protocol-vlan profile 2 frame-type SNAP ether-type 0x809b
DES-7200(config-vlan)# end
DES-7200# show protocol-vlan profile
profile    frame-type  ether-type  Interfaces|vid
-----
1          ETHERII    EHTER_AARP  NULL|NULL
2          SNAP      ETHER_APPLETALK  NULL|NULL
```



#### Note

1. The configuration will not become effective until the profile is applied to a port.
2. Before updating a profile, you must delete the profile and then reconfigure it.
3. The number of profiles varies with different products. DES-7200 sports 16 profiles.

### 10.2.4 Applying a Profile

To apply a profile, execute the following commands:

Command	Description
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.



Command	Description
<b>interface</b> <i>[interface ID]</i>	Enter the interface configuration mode.
<b>protocol-vlan profile</b> <i>id</i> <b>vlan</b> <i>vid</i>	Apply a profile to this port.
<b>no protocol-vlan profile</b>	Clear all profiles on this port .
<b>no protocol-vlan profile</b> <i>id</i>	Clear a profile on this port
<b>end</b>	Exit the interface configuration mode

The following example applies profile 1 and profile 2 to the GE interface 1 of Slot 3. The VLAN categories are VLAN 101 and 102:

```
DES-7200# configure terminal
DES-7200(config)# interface gi 3/1
DES-7200(config-if)# protocol-vlan profile 1 vlan 101
DES-7200(config-if)# protocol-vlan profile 2 vlan 102
DES-7200(config-if)# end
DES-7200# show protocol-vlan profile
profile      frame-type  ether-type  Interfaces|vid
-----
1            ETHERII    EHTER_AARP  gi3/1|101
2            SNAP      ETHER_APPLETALK  gi3/1|102
```



#### Note

1. All profiles can be applied to each interface.
2. Different VIDs can be specified for the same profile on different interfaces.
3. The number of VIDs vary with different series of products. DES-7200 series supports 4094 VLANs.

## 10.3 Showing a Protocol VLAN

To show a protocol VLAN, execute the following command:

Command	Description
<b>show protocol-vlan</b>	Show a protocol VLAN.

```
DES-7200# show protocol-vlan
ip          mask          vlan
-----
192.168.100.3  255.255.255.0  100
profile      frame-type  ether-type  Interfaces|vid
-----
1            ETHERII    EHTER_AARP  gi3/1|101
2            SNAP      ETHER_APPLETALK  gi3/1|1
```



# 11

## Private VLAN Configuration

### 11.1 Private VLAN Technology

---

If the service provider offers a VLAN to each subscriber, the service provider supports a limited number of subscribers because one device supports 4096 VLANs at most. On the layer 3 device, each VLAN is assigned with a subnet address or a series of addresses, which results in a waste of IP addresses. In this case, private VLAN comes into being.

A private VLAN divides the layer 2 broadcast domain of a VLAN into several sub domains. Each sub domain consists of a private VLAN pair: primary VLAN and secondary VLAN.

A private VLAN domain can have multiple private VLAN pairs, and each VLAN pair represents a sub domain. All the private VLAN pairs in one private VLAN domain share a primary VLAN. Each sub domain has a different secondary VLAN IDs.

There is only one primary VLAN in each private VLAN domain. The secondary VLAN is used for layer 2 separation in the same private VLAN domain. There are two types of secondary VLANs:

- **Isolated VLAN:** Layer 2 communication is not possible for the ports in the same isolated VLAN. There is only one isolated VLAN in a private VLAN domain.
- **Community VLAN:** The ports in the same community VLAN can perform layer 2 communication, but not with the ports in other community VLANs. There can be multiple community VLANs in a private VLAN domains.

Promiscuous port, a port in the primary VLAN, can communicate with any port, including the isolated port and community port of the secondary VLAN in the same private VLAN.

Isolated port, a port in the isolated VLAN, can only communicate with the promiscuous port.

Community port, a port in the community VLAN, can communicate with other community ports in the same community VLAN as well as the promiscuous port in the primary VLAN. However, they cannot communicate with the community ports in other community VLANs and isolated ports in the isolated VLANs.

In a private VLAN, an SVI interface can be created for the primary VLAN rather than the secondary VLANs.

A port in the private VLAN can be a SPAN source port instead of a mirrored destination port.



## 11.2 Configuring a Private VLAN

### 11.2.1 Default Private VLAN Configuration

No Private VLAN is configured by default.

### 11.2.2 Configuring a VLAN as a Private VLAN

To configure a VLAN as a private VLAN, execute the following commands:

Command	Description
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
<b>vlan vid</b>	Enter the VLAN configuration mode.
<b>private-vlan{community   isolated  primary}</b>	Configure a private VLAN.
<b>no private-vlan{community   isolated   primary}</b>	Remove the configured private VLAN.
<b>end</b>	Exit the VLAN configuration mode.
<b>show vlan private-vlan [type]</b>	Show a private VLAN



#### Note

The member port in the 802.1Q VLAN cannot be declared as a private VLAN. VLAN 1 cannot be declared as a private VLAN as well. If there is a trunk or uplink port in the 802.1Q VLAN, first delete this VLAN from the allowed VLAN list. The following conditions must be met in order to make a private VLAN become active:

1. The primary VLAN is available.
2. The secondary VLANs are available.
3. The secondary VLANs are associated with the primary VLAN.

The following example configures 802.1Q VLAN as a private VLAN:

```
DES-7200# configure terminal
DES-7200(config)# vlan 303
DES-7200(config-vlan)# private-vlan community
DES-7200(config-vlan)# end
DES-7200# show vlan private-vlan community
VLAN Type  Status   Routed   Interface  Associated VLANs
---
303 comm  inactive Disabled          no association
DES-7200#configure terminal
DES-7200(config)#vlan 404
DES-7200(config-vlan)# private-vlan isolated
DES-7200(config-vlan)# end
DES-7200# show vlan private-vlan
```



VLAN	Type	Status	Routed	Interface	Associated VLANs
---	----	-----	-----	-----	-----
303	comm	inactive	Disabled		no association
404	isol	inactive	Disabled		no association

### 11.2.3 Associating the Secondary VLANs with the Primary VLAN

To associate the secondary VLANs with the primary VLAN, execute the following commands:

Command	Description
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
<b>vlan <i>p_vid</i></b>	Enter the primary VLAN configuration mode.
<b>private-vlan association</b> <b>{svlist   add svlist   remove svlist}</b>	Associate with the secondary VLANs.
<b>no private-vlan association</b>	Remove the association with all the secondary VLANs.
<b>end</b>	Exit the VLAN mode.
<b>show vlan private-vlan [<i>type</i>]</b>	Show the private VLAN

For example:

```
DES-7200# configure terminal
DES-7200(config)# vlan 202
DES-7200(config-vlan)# private-vlan association 303-307,309,440
DES-7200(config-vlan)# end
DES-7200# show vlan private-vlan
```

VLAN	Type	Status	Routed	Interface	Associated VLANs
---	----	-----	-----	-----	-----
202	prim	inactive	Disabled		303-307,309,440
303	comm	inactive	Disabled		202
304	comm	inactive	Disabled		202
305	comm	inactive	Disabled		202
306	comm	inactive	Disabled		202
307	comm	inactive	Disabled		202
309	comm	inactive	Disabled		202
440	comm	inactive	Disabled		202



#### Note

This operation is performed in the configuration mode of the VLAN declared as the primary VLAN.



### 11.2.4 Mapping Secondary VLANs to the Layer 3 Interface of the Primary VLAN

To map the secondary VLANs to the layer 3 interface of the primary VLAN, execute the following commands:

Command	Description
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
<b>interface vlan</b> <i>p_vid</i>	Enter the interface configuration mode of the primary VLAN.
<b>private-vlan mapping</b> <b>{svlist   add svlist   remove svlist}</b>	Map the secondary VLANs to the layer 3 SVI of the primary VLAN.
<b>end</b>	Exit the interface configuration mode.

The following example configures Secondary VLAN routing:

```
DES-7200# configure terminal
DES-7200(config)# interface vlan 202
DES-7200(config-if)# private-vlan mapping add 303-307,309,440
DES-7200(config-if)# end
DES-7200#
```



#### Note

The primary VLAN and the secondary VLANs in this process are associated.

### 11.2.5 Configuring a Layer 2 Interface as the Host Port of a Private VLAN

To configure a layer 2 interface as the Host Port of a private VLAN, execute the following commands:

Command	Description
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
<b>interface</b> <i>&lt;interface&gt;</i>	Enter the interface configuration mode. Three kinds of interfaces are available: fastethernet, GE and 10GE.
<b>switchport mode private-vlan host</b>	Configure the interface as the host interface of the private VLAN.
<b>no switchport mode</b>	Remove the configuration.



Command	Description
<b>End</b>	Exit the interface mode.
<b>switchport private-vlan host-association <i>p_vid s_vid</i></b>	Associate the layer 2 interface with the private VLAN.
<b>no switchport private-vlan host-association</b>	Remove the association.

For example:

```
DES-7200# configure terminal
DES-7200(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 0/2
DES-7200(config-if)# switchport mode private-vlan host
DES-7200(config-if)# switchport private-vlan host-association
202 203
DES-7200(config-if)# end
DES-7200#
```



#### Note

The primary VLAN and the secondary VLANs in this process are associated.

### 11.2.6 Configuring a Layer 2 Interface as the Promiscuous Port of a Private VLAN

To configure a layer 2 interface as the promiscuous port of a private VLAN, execute the following commands:

Command	Description
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
<b>interface &lt;interface&gt;</b>	Enter the interface configuration mode. Three kinds of interfaces are available: Megabit, Gigabit, 10 Gigabit.
<b>switchport mode private-vlan promiscuous</b>	Configure the interface as the promiscuous port of the private VLAN.
<b>no switchport mode</b>	Remove the configuration.
<b>switchport private-vlan mapping p_vid{svlist   add svlist   remove svlist}</b>	Map the secondary VLANs to the promiscuous port.
<b>no switchport private-vlan mapping</b>	Remove the mapping.

For example:



```

DES-7200# configure terminal
DES-7200(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 0/2
DES-7200(config-if)# switchport mode private-vlan promiscuous
DES-7200(config-if)# switchport private-vlan mapping 202 add 203
DES-7200(config-if)# end

```

**Note**

The primary VLAN and the secondary VLANs in this process are associated.

## 11.3 Showing a Private VLAN

### 11.3.1 Showing a Private VLAN

To show a private VLAN, execute the following command:

Command	Description
<b>show vlan private-vlan [type]</b>	Show the private VLAN.

```

DES-7200# show vlan private-vlan
VLAN Type  Status   Routed  Interface  Associated VLANs
--- ----  -
202 prim   active   Enabled  Gi0/1      303-307,309,440
303 comm   active   Disabled Gi0/2      202
304 comm   active   Disabled Gi0/3      202
305 comm   active   Disabled Gi0/4      202
306 comm   active   Disabled      202
307 comm   active   Disabled      202
309 comm   active   Disabled      202
440 comm   active   Enabled  Gi0/5      202

```



# 12

## 802.1Q Tunneling Configuration

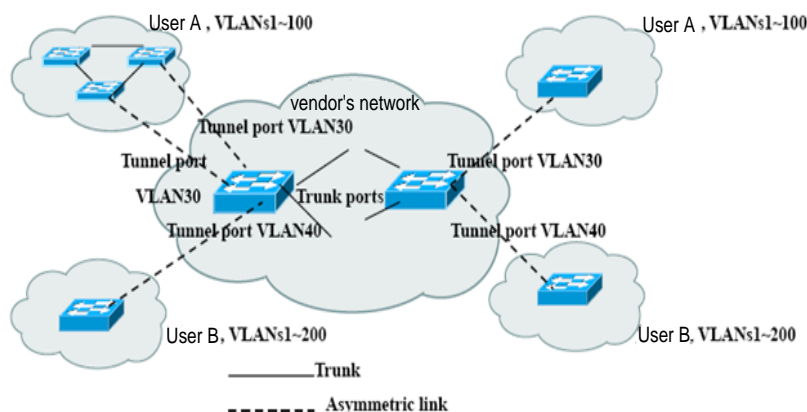
### 12.1 Understanding 802.1Q Tunneling

Commercial users usually have special requirements on the range of supported VLANs and VLAN IDs to network service providers. For users of the same vendor, VLAN ranges may be overlapped. Users may share the switching channels of the core networks. Specifying a range of VLANs for a user will impose limit on configuration and make the VLAN ID exceed 4096 defined by 802.1Q easily.

IEEE 802.1Q tunneling enables vendors to use a VLAN (the vendor VLAN) to support the users with multiple VLANs. A user's own VLAN is reserved. In this way, the traffic from different users to a vendor can be transmitted separately in the vendor's intranet, even if its VLANs are the same. Through dual tags, IEEE 802.1Q tunneling extends the range of a VLAN. A port that supports IEEE 802.1Q tunneling is called a tunnel port. When configuring a tunnel, you can assign a VLAN to the tunnel port as its dedicated VLAN. Thus, every user just needs to use the VLAN of one vendor. The user's traffic is packaged into dual-tagged frames while being transmitted through the VLAN in the vendor's network.

The traffic goes with 802.1Q tag from a trunk port on the user side to a tunnel port on the edge device of the vendor. Such an asymmetrical connection between the user and the vendor is called the asymmetrical link, because one end is a Trunk port while the other end is a tunnel port. The tunnel ports of different users are assigned with different VLANs. See the following application scheme diagram:

Figure 12-1

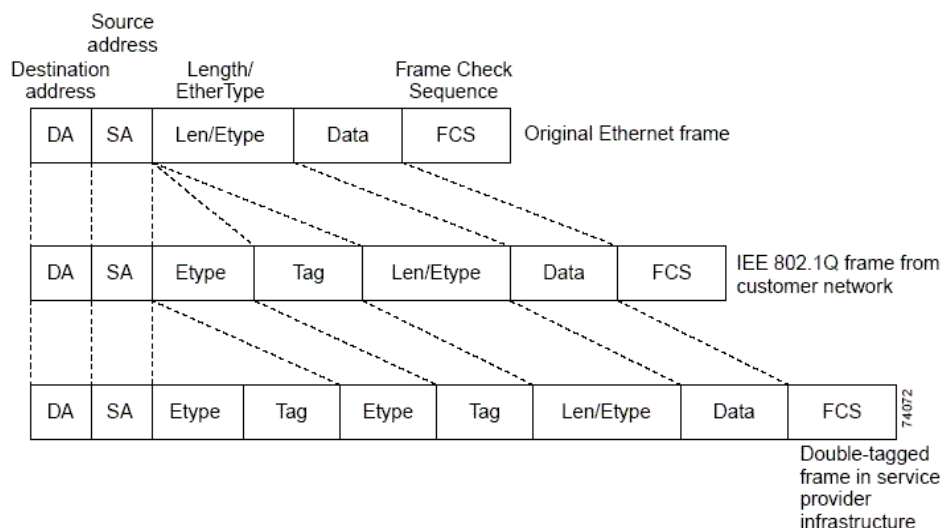


The frames going from a trunk port on the user side to a tunnel port on the edge device of the vendor usually carry an IEEE 802.1Q tag with a VLAN ID. After arriving the tunnel port,



it will be added with another 802.1Q tag (called the vendor tag) including another VLAN ID. This VLAN ID varies with users. The user's tag will be reserved inside the frames. In this way, the frames destined to the vendor's network are dual-tagged, in which the vendor tag contains the user's VID and the internal tag maintains the VID of the incoming frame. The following diagram shows the process of adding dual tags.

**Figure 12-2**



When the dual-tagged frames go out of the tunnel port of the edge device, the vendor tag will be removed and the frames resume their original 802.1Q frame format before they enter the edge device, and the user VLAN is restored.

All frames to the edge device are regarded as untagged frames, no matter whether they are untagged or are attached with 802.1Q tag header. When the frames go through the vendor network, they are encapsulated with the vendor tag and VLAN number (that is, the access VLAN of the tunnel port). The priority field of the vendor tag is the priority configured on the tunnel port (0 by default in case of no configuration).

In the application scheme diagram, user A is assigned with VLAN 30, and user B with VLAN 40. When the frames with 802.1Q tag arrive at the edge device, they are encapsulated with a vendor tag and become dual-tagged, the vendor tag contains VLAN 30 or 40 while the internal tag contains the original VLAN information (such as VLAN 40) of the frames. Even if the frames of both users A and B to the vendor network have VID 100, their traffic is transmitted separately in the vendor network because their vendor tags contain different VIDs. Every user can assign its VLAN range independent of other users and vendor networks.

## 12.2 Configuring 802.1Q tunneling

This chapter includes:

- Default 802.1Q Tunneling Configurations



- 802.1Q Tunneling Configuration Guide
- Restriction of 802.1Q Tunneling Configuration
- Configuring an 802.1Q Tunneling Port
- Configuring an Uplink Port
- Configuring the TPID Value in the Vendor Tag
- Configuring Priority Duplication of User Tag

## 12.3 Default 802.1Q Tunneling Configurations

---

By default, the 802.1Q tunneling function is disabled.

### 12.3.1 802.1Q Tunneling Configuration Guide

---

To configure 802.1Q, you need to confirm that the connection of a 802.1Q tunnel is an asymmetric link with each tunnel a dedicated VLAN and a native VLAN and the maximum frame length are correctly configured.

**Native VLAN:** When you configure 802.1Q tunneling on an edge device, you need to connect a tunnel port through the 802.1Q trunk port. Frames can be switched in the vendor's intranet in many ways, for example, 802.1Q trunk port or non-trunk port. When core devices connect to each other through a trunk port the native VLAN of the trunk port should be different from the access VLAN of the tunnel port, the vendor tag of the frames whose VID is the native VLAN will be removed when they are sent out through the trunk port.

**Maximum frame length:** Because the frames will be added 4-byte vendor VLAN tag on the tunnel port, the maximum frame length increases from 1518 bytes to 1522 bytes.

**Uplink port:** The uplink port is used to connect the uplink devices or vendor devices in other networks. For example, the trunk ports of the vendor network in Figure 12-1. The uplink port is actually a special trunk port. The difference is that the packets that go out of the uplink port are tagged, but the packets that go out of the trunk port are not tagged if they are forwarded from the native VLAN.

**TPID value in the vendor Tag:** TPID (Tag Protocol Identifier) is a field in the VLAN Tag. The IEEE 802.1Q protocol specifies that the value of this field is 0x8100.

**Tag priority duplication:** It refers to copy the priority value of the inner tag (or user tag) to the priority value of the outer tag (or vendor tag) in case of dual tags.

### 12.3.2 Restriction of 802.1Q Tunneling Configuration

---

The following restrictions apply to 802.1Q tunneling configuration:



- The routed ports cannot be configured as tunnel ports.
- The AP ports can be configured as tunnel ports.
- The 802.1x function cannot be enabled on the port configured as a tunnel port.
- Cluster cannot be enabled on the port configured as a tunnel port.
- The STP algorithm cannot be added to the port configured as a tunnel port.
- GVRP cannot be enabled on the port configured as a tunnel port.
- System-guard cannot be enabled on the port configured as a tunnel port.
- For DES-7200, it's recommended to configure the outgoing port of the user's network that connects to the vendor network as an Uplink port. If you have configured the TPID of the vendor tag of 802.1Q tunneling in the user's network, it's required to configure the same TPID of the vendor tag on the uplink port.

### 12.3.3 Configuring an 802.1Q Tunneling Port

In the global configuration mode, input the **interface** command to enter the interface configuration mode. Follow these steps to configure a tunnel port:

Command	Description
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
<b>interface &lt;interface&gt;</b>	Enter the interface configuration mode.
<b>switchport access vlan &lt;vid&gt;</b>	Configure an access VLAN. The access VLAN varies with users.
<b>switchport mode dot1q-tunnel</b>	Set the port as an 802.1Q tunnel port.
<b>end</b>	Exit the interface mode.
<b>show running-config</b>	View the global configuration.



#### Note

The routed port cannot be set as a tunnel port, because system-guard, GVRP, cluster, and 802.1x cannot be enabled and the STP algorithm cannot be added to the port configured as a tunnel port.

The following example demonstrates how to configure a 802.1Q tunneling port:

```
DES-7200(config)# interface fastEthernet 0/1
DES-7200(config-if)# switchport access vlan 22
DES-7200(config-if)# switchport mode dot1q-tunnel
DES-7200(config)# end
```

### 12.3.4 Configuring an Uplink Port

In the global configuration mode, input the **interface** command to enter the interface configuration mode. Follow these steps to configure an uplink port:



Command	Description
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
<b>interface &lt;interface&gt;</b>	Enter the interface configuration mode.
<b>switchport mode uplink</b>	Configure the port as an uplink port.
<b>end</b>	Exit the interface mode.

The following example demonstrates how to configure an uplink port:

```
DES-7200(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 0/1
DES-7200(config-if)# switchport mode up-link
DES-7200(config)# end
```

### 12.3.5 Configuring the TPID Value of the Vendor Tag

In the global configuration mode, input the **interface** command to enter the interface configuration mode. Follow these steps to configure the TPID value in the vendor tag:

Command	Description
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
<b>interface &lt;interface&gt;</b>	Enter the interface configuration mode.
<b>frame-tag tpid &lt;tpid&gt;</b>	Set the TPID value of the vendor tag. If you want to set it as 0x9100, directly enter frame-tag tpid 9100. Note that the hexadecimal system is used by default. This function takes effect when configuring the outgoing port.
<b>end</b>	Exit the interface mode.
<b>show frame-tag tpid</b>	View the TPID value list on the port.

The following example demonstrates how to configure TPID:

```
DES-7200(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 0/1
DES-7200(config-if)# frame-tag tpid 9100
DES-7200(config)# end
DES-7200# show frame-tag tpid interface gigabitEthernet 0/1
Port      tpid
-----
Gi0/1     0x9100
```

### 12.3.6 Configuring Priority Duplication of the User Tag

In the global configuration mode, input the **interface** command to enter the interface configuration mode. Follow these steps to configure priority duplication:



Command	Description
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
<b>interface &lt;interface&gt;</b>	Enter the interface configuration mode.
<b>inner-priority-trust enable</b>	Copy the priority value of the inner tag (user tag) to the priority value of the outer tag. (vendor tag).
<b>end</b>	Exit the interface mode.
<b>show inner-priority-trust</b>	View the priority duplication configuration of the user tag.

**Note**

You can configure priority duplication of the user Tag only on dot1q-tunnel port, which takes effect earlier than QOS.

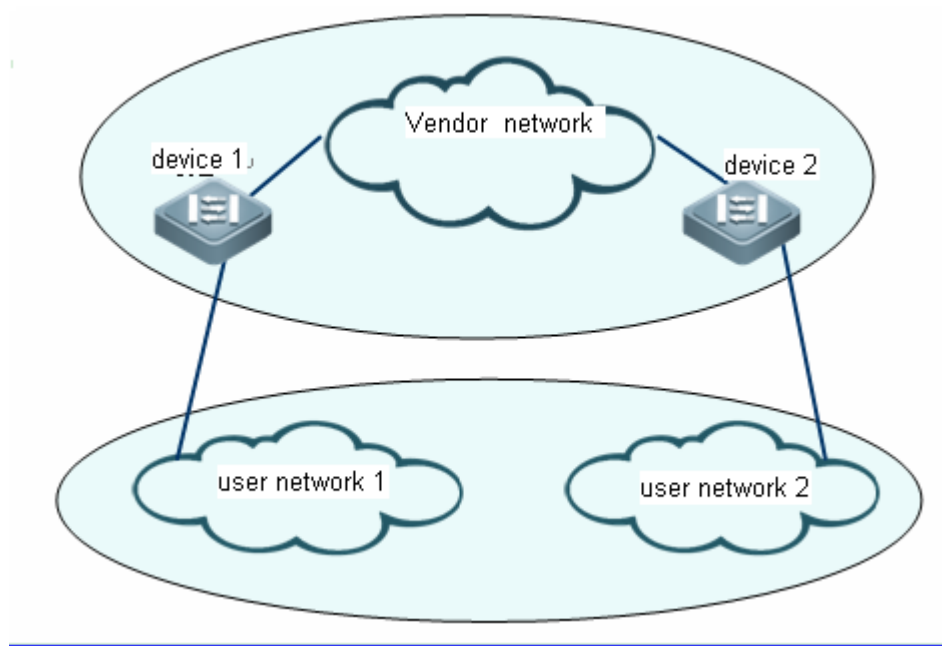
The following example shows how to configure the priority duplication of the user tag:

```
DES-7200(config)# interface gigabitethernet 0/1
DES-7200(config-if)# inner-priority-trust enable
DES-7200(config)# end
DES-7200# show inner-priority-trust interface gigabitethernet 0/1
Port      inner-priority-trust
-----  -
Gi0/1     enable
```

## 12.4 Configuring Transparent Transmission of L2 Protocol Message

In some environment, you need to transparently transmit L2 protocol message in some network. Take the following figure for example, on the inputting port, device1 modifies the destination MAC address of L2 protocol message from user network as particular multicast MAC address. And then in the vendor network, the modified message is forwarded as datagram in the VLAN belongs to the user. On the outputting port, device 2 recognizes the modified message, restores the destination MAC address to be the original source MAC address of L2 protocol message and sends the L2 protocol message to the specified user network. In this environment, you should enable the function of transparent transmission between the interfaces of device 1/2 and user network.





### 12.4.1 Configuring Transparent Transmission of stp Protocol Message

In the privileged mode, you can configure transparent transmission of STP protocol message as the following steps:

Command	Description
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
<b>l2protocol-tunnel stp</b>	Configure to enable transparent transmission of STP protocol message globally.
<b>interface <i>interface-name</i></b>	Enter the interface configuration mode.
<b>l2protocol-tunnel stp enable</b>	Enable transparent transmission of STP protocol message on the interface.
<b>show l2protocol-tunnel stp</b>	View the configuration.

An example below shows how to enable transparent transmission of STP protocol message:

```
DES-7200# configure
DES-7200(config)# l2protocol-tunnel stp
```



```
DES-7200(config)# interface fa 0/1
DES-7200(config-if)# l2protocol-tunnel stp enable
```

### 12.4.2 Configuring Transparent Transmission of gvrp Protocol Message

In the privileged mode, you can configure transparent transmission of GRVP protocol message as the following steps:

Command	Description
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
<b>l2protocol-tunnel gvrp</b>	Configure to enable transparent transmission of GRVP protocol message globally.
<b>interface <i>interface-name</i></b>	Enter the interface configuration mode.
<b>l2protocol-tunnel gvrp enable</b>	Enable transparent transmission of GRVP protocol message on the interface.
<b>show l2protocol-tunnel gvrp</b>	View the configuration.

An example below shows how to enable transparent transmission of G protocol message:

```
DES-7200# configure
DES-7200(config)# l2protocol-tunnel gvrp
DES-7200(config)# interface fa 0/1
DES-7200(config-if)# l2protocol-tunnel gvrp enable
```



#### Note

After globally enabling transparent transmission of protocols, transparent transmission takes effect on the interfaces which do not join the protocol computation. If the interface receives the packet that the destination MAC address is particular multicast address, it implies that there is something wrong in the multinet and the interface will discard the packet directly.



## 12.5 Configuring Protocol-based vid Change Policy List

### 12.5.1 Configuring vid Add Policy List

For the input packet on **dot1q-tunnel** port, sometimes you need to add VID of different outer TAG when the packet is forwarded. Execute **dot1q outer-vid** to specify inner-vid list to add outer VID of outer TAG; execute **no dot1q outer-vid** to delete the corresponding configuration. According to this command, to make the output packet as the original inner TAG message, you can specify inner VLAN to add the same outer VID as inner VID and add the exit port to the UNTAG port set in the VLAN. For the detailed information, please refer to command reference.

Configuration steps:

Command	Description
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
<b>interface</b> <i>intf-id</i>	Enter the interface configuration mode.
<b>switchport mode dot1q-tunnel</b>	Configure port as dot1q-tunnel.
<b>dot1q outer-vid</b> <i>VID</i> <b>register</b> <i>inner-vid v_list</i>	Configure VID policy of adding outer TAG based on protocol.
<b>no dot1q outer-vid</b> <i>VID</i> <b>register</b> <i>inner-vid v_list</i>	Delete VID policy of adding outer TAG based on protocol.
<b>End</b>	Exit the interface mode.
<b>show registration-table</b>	View the configuration.

The example below configures VID in the TAG of input packet as 4-22, adding VID of outer TAG to be 3:

```
DES-7200# configure
DES-7200(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 0/1
DES-7200(config-if)# switchport mode dot1q-tunnel
DES-7200(config-if)# switchport dot1q-tunnel allowed vlan add tagged 3
DES-7200(config-if)# dot1q outer-vid 3 register inner-vid 4-22
DES-7200(config-if)# end
```



### 12.5.2 Configuring vid Modify Policy List

For the input packet on Access,Trunk,Hybrid port, sometimes you need to modify VID of different outer TAG when the packet is forwarded. Execute **dot1q relay-vid vlan** to modify the specified local vid list as new VID; execute **no dot1q outer-vid vlan** to delete the corresponding configuration. For the detailed information, please refer to command reference.

Configuration steps:

Command	Description
<b>Configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
<b>interface <i>intf-id</i></b>	Enter the interface configuration mode.
<b>switchport mode trunk</b>	Configure switchport as Access,Trunk or Hybrid port.
<b>dot1q relay-vid <i>VID</i> translate local-vid <i>v_list</i></b>	Configure VID policy of modifying outer TAG based-on protocol.
<b>no dot1q relay-vid <i>VID</i> translate local-vid <i>v_list</i></b>	Delete VID policy of modifying outer TAG based-on protocol.
<b>End</b>	Exit the interface mode.
<b>show translation-table</b>	View the configuration.



The 7200-24GE line cards of DES-7200 series support this function.

#### Note

The example below configures VID in the TAG of input packet as 10-20, modifying VID as 100:

```
DES-7200(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 0/1
DES-7200(config-if)# switchport mode trunk
DES-7200(config-if)# dot1q relay-vid 100 translate local-vid 10-20
DES-7200(config-if)# end
```



## 12.6 Configuring Flow-based vid Change Policy List

### 12.6.1 Configuring vid Add Policy List

For the input packet on **dot1q-tunnel** port, according to different packet contents, sometimes you can specify different VIDs when the forwarded packet is added outer TAG by executing command **traffic-redirect access-group acl nested-vlan VID in**. When the input packet on **dot1q-tunnel** port matches acl, you can specify the VID as command-specified value when the forwarded packet is added with outer TAG. Execute **no traffic-redirect access-group acl nested-vlan** to delete the corresponding configuration. For the detailed information, please refer to command reference.

Configuration steps:

Command	Description
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
<b>interface <i>intf-id</i></b>	Enter the interface configuration mode.
<b>switchport mode dot1q-tunnel</b>	Configure interface as dot1q-tunnel port.
<b>traffic-redirect access-group <i>acl</i> nested-vlan <i>VID</i> in</b>	Configure VID policy of adding outer TAG based on flow.
<b>no traffic-redirect access-group <i>acl</i> nested-vlan</b>	Delete VID policy of adding outer TAG based on flow.
<b>end</b>	Exit the interface mode.
<b>show traffic-redirect</b>	View the configuration.



#### Note

1. When using line cards below to configure this function, the outgoing port and dot1q-tunnel must be in different chips and dot1q-tunnel will be configured with flow isolation. The 7200-24GE line cards of DES-7200 series support this function.
2. VID change policy list based on flow is prior to that based on protocol.

The example below configures to add VID of the input packet whose source address of interface is 1.1.1.3 as 9:



```

DES-7200# configure
DES-7200(config)# ip access-list standard 20
DES-7200(config-acl-std)# permit host 1.1.1.3
DES-7200(config-acl-std)# exit
DES-7200(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 0/1
DES-7200(config-if)# switchport mode dot1q-tunnel
DES-7200(config-if)# traffic-redirect access-group 20 nested-vlan 10 in
DES-7200(config-if)# end

```

## 12.6.2 Configuring Modify Policy List of Outer vid

For the input packet on Access,Trunk,Hybrid port, according to different packet contents, sometimes you can modify VID of outer TAG by executing command **traffic-redirect access-group acl outer-vlan VID in**. When the input packet matches acl, you can modify the VID in the outer TAG of packet as command-specified value. Execute **no traffic-redirect access-group acl outer-vlan** to delete the corresponding configuration. For the detailed information, please refer to command reference.

Configuration step:

Command	Description
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
<b>interface <i>intf-id</i></b>	Enter the interface configuration mode.
<b>switchport mode trunk</b>	Configure switchport as Access,Trunk or Hybrid port.
<b>traffic-redirect access-group <i>acl</i> outer-vlan <i>VID</i> in</b>	Configure VID policy of modifying outer TAG based on flow.
<b>no traffic-redirect access-group <i>acl</i> outer-vlan</b>	Delete VID policy of modifying outer TAG based on flow.
<b>End</b>	Exit the interface mode.
<b>show traffic-redirect</b>	View the configuration.



### Note

1. The 7200-24GE line cards of DES-7200 series support this function.
2. Outer VID modify policy list based on flow is prior to that based on protocol.



The example below configures to modify outer VID of the input packet whose source address of interface is 1.1.1.1 as 3:

```
DES-7200# configure
DES-7200(config)# ip access-list standard 2
DES-7200(config-acl-std)# permit host 1.1.1.1
DES-7200(config-acl-std)# exit
DES-7200(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 0/1
DES-7200(config-if)# switchport mode trunk
DES-7200(config-if)# traffic-redirect access-group 2 outer-vlan 3 in
DES-7200(config-if)# end
```

### 12.6.3 Configuring Modify Policy List of Inner vid

For the input packet on Access,Trunk,Hybrid port, according to different packet contents, sometimes you can modify VID of inner TAG by executing command **traffic-redirect access-group acl inner-vlan VID out**. When the input packet matches acl, you can modify the VID in the inner TAG of packet as command-specified value. Execute **no traffic-redirect access-group acl inner-vlan** to delete the corresponding configuration. For the detailed information, please refer to command reference.

Configuration step:

Command	Description
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
<b>interface <i>intf-id</i></b>	Enter the interface configuration mode.
<b>switchport mode trunk</b>	Configure switchport as Access,Trunk or Hybrid port.
<b>traffic-redirect access-group <i>acl</i> inner-vlan <i>VID</i> out</b>	Configure VID policy of modifying inner TAG based on flow.
<b>no traffic-redirect access-group <i>acl</i> inner-vlan</b>	Delete VID policy of modifying inner TAG based on flow.
<b>End</b>	Exit the interface mode.
<b>show traffic-redirect</b>	View the configuration.



**Note**

1. The 7200-24GE line cards of DES-7200 series support this function.
2. When adding member port to or deleting member port from AP port, the VID add or modify policy configured on AP port will be deleted. Therefore, it is recommended that you should configure VID policy on AP after configuring AP member port.

The example below configures to modify outer VID of the input packet whose source address of interface is 1.1.1.2 as 6:

```
DES-7200# configure
DES-7200(config)# ip access-list standard to_6
DES-7200(config-acl-std)# permit host 1.1.1.2
DES-7200(config-acl-std)# exit
DES-7200(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 0/1
DES-7200(config-if)# switchport mode trunk
DES-7200(config-if)# traffic-redirect access-group to_6 inner-vlan 6 out
DES-7200(config-if)# end
```



# 13

## MAC Address Configuration

### **13.1 Managing the MAC Address table**

---

#### **13.1.1 Overview**

---

The MAC address list contains address information that the switch uses to forward packets between ports. The MAC address list includes three types of addresses: dynamic address, static address, and filtering address. We will describe the MAC address list in the following sections:

##### **13.1.1.1 Dynamic Address**

---

A dynamic address is the MAC address learnt automatically from the packets received by the device. When the device receives a packet on a port, it will associate the source address of the packet with the port and record it into the address list, in which way the device learns new addresses.

Upon receiving a packet, the device will directly forward the packet to the port associated with the MAC address if it has learned the destination MAC address of the packet. Otherwise, it will forward the packet to all ports.

The device updates the dynamic address list by learning new addresses and aging out unused addresses. For an address in the MAC address table, if the device has not received any packet from the MAC address for a long time (depending on the aging time), the address will be aged out. You can adjust the aging time of a dynamic address according to real circumstances. It's worth mentioning that if the aging time is too short, the address in the address table will be aged out too early and become an unknown address again for the switch. At this time, when the device receives the packet destined to this address, it will broadcast it to other ports in the VLAN, incurring unnecessary broadcast flows. If the aging time is too long, the address will be aged out slowly and the address table will be full rapidly. When the list is full, a new address cannot be learned and becomes unknown before there is room in the list to accommodate it. When the device receives the packet destined to this address, it broadcasts the packet to other ports in the VLAN, incurring some unnecessary broadcast flows as well.

After reset, the device will lose all the dynamic addresses learned. So it needs to learn these addresses again.



### 13.1.1.2 Static Address

---

A static address is a manually configured MAC address. A static address is the same as a dynamic address in terms of function. However, you can only manually add and delete a static address rather than learn and age out a static address. A static address is stored in the configuration file and will not be lost even if the device restarts.

### 13.1.1.3 Filtering Address

---

A filtering address is a manually added MAC address. When the device receives the packets from a filtering address, it will directly discard them. You can only manually add and delete a filtering address rather than age it out. A filtering address is stored in the configuration file and will not be lost even if the device restarts.

If you want the device to filter some invalid users, you can specify their MAC addresses as filtering addresses. Consequently, these invalid users cannot communicate with outside through the device.

### 13.1.1.4 Association between a MAC Address and a VLAN

---

All MAC addresses are associated with VLANs. One MAC address can exist in more than one VLAN and can associate with different ports. Each VLAN maintains its own logical address table. A learned MAC address in one VLAN may be unknown in another VLAN, so learning is still necessary.

## 13.1.2 Configuring a MAC Address

---

### 13.1.2.1 Default MAC Address Table Configuration

---

The table shows the default MAC address table configuration:

Item	Default Configuration
Aging time	300 seconds
Dynamic addresses	Automatically learned
Static addresses	None
Filtering addresses	None



#### Caution

The actual aging time may be different from the setting value for the MAC address table. However, it will not be 2 times than the setting value.



### 13.1.2.2 Setting the Management Learning Mode of Dynamic Addresses

You can switch the management learning mode of the dynamic address according to the application requirement. There are two management learning modes for dynamic MAC address: dispersive and uniform. In the dispersive mode, the capacity of the dynamic MAC address is larger. In the uniform mode, the performance of L2 packet switching is higher. Furthermore, you can improve the performance of L2 packet switching via MAC address synchronization on the whole equipment.

The table below shows the management learning mode of the dynamic address:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>mac-manage-learning dispersive</b>	Set the management learning mode of the dynamic address as the dispersive mode.
DES-7200(config)# <b>mac-manage-learning uniform</b>	Set the management learning mode of the dynamic address as the uniform mode.
DES-7200(config)# <b>mac-manage-learning uniform learning-synchronization</b>	In the uniform mode, configure dynamic address synchronization on the whole equipment.

You can disable dynamic address synchronization on the whole equipment in the global configuration mode by executing command **no mac-manage-learning uniform learning-synchronization**.

The switching of the management learning mode will not be valid immediately. Only when you save the configuration and restart it, the new management learning mode will be valid.

### 13.1.2.3 Setting the Limit of Dynamic Addresses for a VLAN

You can set the limit of dynamic MAC addresses that a VLAN can learn.

The table below sets the limit of the dynamic addresses for a VLAN.

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
DES-7200(config)# <b>vlan [1-4094]</b>	Enter the VLAN configuration mode.
DES-7200(config)# <b>max-dynamic-mac-count [1-32768]</b>	Set the maximum number of dynamic MAC addresses that the VLAN can learn.



After the maximum number of dynamic MAC addresses that a VLAN can learn is set, the dynamic MAC addresses exceeding the maximum number exist until they are aged out naturally.

#### 13.1.2.4 Setting the Address Aging Time

The following table shows how to set the aging time of address:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>mac-address-table aging-time</b> [0   10-1000000]	Set the time for an address to be stored in the dynamic MAC address table after it has been learned. It is in the range of 10 to 1000000 seconds, 300 seconds by default. When you set the aging time as 0, the address aging function is disabled and the learned addresses will not be aged.

To restore the aging time to the default value, use the **no mac-address-table aging-time** command in the global configuration mode.

#### 13.1.2.5 Removing Dynamic MAC Address Entries

To remove all dynamic MAC address entries, use the **clear mac-address-table dynamic** command in privileged EXEC mode. You can also remove a specified dynamic MAC address using the **clear mac-address-table dynamic address** *mac-address* command, remove all the dynamic MAC addresses on the specified physical port or aggregate port using the **clear mac-address-table dynamic interface** *interface-id* command, or remove all the dynamic MAC addresses in a specified VLAN using the **clear mac-address-table dynamic vlan** *vlan-id* command.

To verify whether the dynamic addresses are removed, use the **show mac-address-table dynamic** command in the privileged EXEC mode.

#### 13.1.2.6 Adding and Removing Static MAC Address Entries

You can add a static address to the MAC address table by specifying the destination MAC address, the VLAN (the static address will be added to the address table of this VLAN), and the interface (the packets to the destination MAC address are forwarded to this interface).

To add a static address, execute the following commands:



Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>mac-address-table static</b> <i>mac-addr</i> <b>vlan</b> <i>vlan-id</i> <b>interface</b> <i>interface-id</i>	<p><i>mac-addr</i>: Specify the destination MAC address to which the entry corresponds.</p> <p><i>vlan-id</i>: Specify the VLAN to which this address belongs.</p> <p><i>interface-id</i>: specify the interface (physical port or aggregate port) to which the packet is forwarded.</p> <p>Upon receiving the packets to the destination MAC address in the VLAN, the switch will forward them to the interface.</p>

To remove static entries from the MAC address table, use the **no mac-address-table static** *mac-addr* **vlan** *vlan-id* **interface** *interface-id* command in the global configuration mode.

The following example shows how to configure the static address 00d0.f800.073c. When a packet to this address is received in VLAN 4, it is forwarded to Gigabitethernet 1/3.

```
DES-7200(config)# mac-address-table static 00d0.f800.073c vlan 4 interface
gigabitethernet 1/3
```

### 13.1.2.7 Adding and Removing Filtering Address Entries

To add a filtering address, specify the MAC address to be filtered and the VLAN that the MAC address belongs to. The device will directly discard the packets from the MAC address in the VLAN.

To add a filtering address, execute the following command:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>mac-address-table filtering</b> <i>mac-addr</i> <b>vlan</b> <i>vlan-id</i>	<p><i>mac-addr</i>: Specify the MAC address to be filtered by the device.</p> <p><i>vlan-id</i>: Specify the VLAN to which this address belongs.</p>

To remove filtering entries from the MAC address table, use the **no mac-address-table filtering** *mac-addr* **vlan** *vlan-id* command in the global configuration mode.

This example shows how to configure the device to filter the packets from 00d0.f800.073c in VLAN 1:

```
DES-7200(config)# mac-address-table filtering 00d0.f800.073c vlan 1
```



### 13.1.3 Viewing the MAC Address Table

To View the information about the MAC address table, execute the following command:

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>show mac-address-table</b>	Show all types of MAC addresses (including dynamic address, static address and filtering address).
DES-7200# <b>show mac-address-table aging-time</b>	Show the current aging time.
DES-7200# <b>show mac-address-table Dynamic</b>	Show dynamic MAC addresses.
DES-7200# <b>show mac-address-table static</b>	Show static MAC addresses.
DES-7200# <b>show mac-address-table filtering</b>	Show filtering MAC addresses.
DES-7200# <b>show mac-address-table interface</b>	Show all types of MAC addresses for the specified interface.
DES-7200# <b>show mac-address-table vlan</b>	Show all types of MAC addresses for the specified VLAN.
DES-7200# <b>show mac-address-table count</b>	Show the number of MAC addresses present in MAC address table:
DES-7200# <b>show mac-address-table max-dynamic-mac-count</b>	Show the limit of dynamic MAC addresses for all VLANs.
DES-7200# <b>show mac-address-table max-dynamic-mac-count vlan [1-4094]</b>	Show the limit of dynamic MAC addresses for the specified VLAN.
DES-7200# <b>show mac-address-table mac-manage-learning</b>	Show the management learning mode of dynamic MAC address.

The following examples show MAC addresses:

Show the MAC address table:

```
DES-7200# show mac-address-table dynamic
Vlan      MAC Address      Type      Interface
-----
1          0001.960c.a740    DYNAMIC   gigabitethernet 1/1
1          0009.b715.d40c    DYNAMIC   gigabitethernet 1/1
1          0080.ad00.0000    DYNAMIC   gigabitethernet 1/1
```

Show MAC addresses statistics of the MAC address table:

```
DES-7200# show mac-address-table count
```



```
Dynamic Address Count : 30
Static Address Count : 0
Filtering Address Count: 0
Total Mac Addresses : 30
Total Mac Address Space Available: 8159
```

Show the current aging time:

```
DES-7200# show mac-address-table aging-time
Aging time : 300
```

## 13.2 Configuring MAC Address Change Notification

---

### 13.2.1 Overview

---

The MAC address notification function is an effective way to let you know user changes for the devices in a network. Once enabled, the device will notify the specified NMS of the MAC address change through a SNMP Trap message after it has learned or removed a MAC address. The notification about adding a MAC address lets you know a newcomer (identified by the MAC address) is using the device. The notification about deleting a MAC address (in the case of that the user did not communicate with the device within the aging time) lets you know that a user does not use the device any more.

When many users use the device, lots of MAC address changes may occur in a short period of time (for example, when the device is powered on), incurring additional network traffic. In order to release network burden, you can set the time interval of sending MAC address notifications. All the notification messages within the interval time will be bundled in one SNMP Trap message. So one notification message includes multiple MAC address changes, reducing network traffic significantly.

When a MAC address change notification is generated, it will be recorded in the MAC address notification history list. If you do not specify the NMS for receiving the SNMP Trap message or you do not receive the SNMP Trap message in time, you can view the information about address change by viewing the MAC address notification history list.

A MAC address change notification is based on an interface. However, there is a global switch. When the global switch is turned off, the switch will not generate any MAC address change notification on any interface. This works only when the global switch is turned on and the MAC address change notification function is enabled on the interface. You can set to send either address increase or decrease notification, or send both on an interface.



#### Caution

MAC address change notification is specific only for dynamic addresses, not for static addresses.

---



### 13.2.2 Configuring the MAC Address Change Notification Function

By default, the global switch of MAC addresses is turned off, so the MAC address change notification function is disabled on all interfaces.

To configure the MAC address change notification function, execute the following command:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>snmp-server</b> <b>host</b> host-addr <b>traps</b> { [version {1 2c}] [3 [auth   noauth   priv]]} community-string	Configure the NMS to receive the MAC address change notification. <i>host-addr</i> : IP address of the receiver. <i>version</i> : Specify the version of the SNMP Trap message to be sent. <i>community-string</i> : Specify the authentication name carried with the SNMP Trap message.
DES-7200(config)# <b>snmp-server enable traps</b>	Allow the switch to send the SNMP Trap message.
DES-7200(config)# <b>mac-address-table notification</b>	Turn on the global switch of the MAC address change notification function.
DES-7200(config)# <b>mac-address-table notification</b> {interval <i>value</i>   history-size <i>value</i> }	<i>interval value</i> : Interval of generating the MAC address change notification (optional), in the range of 1 to 3600 seconds, 1 second by default. <i>history-size value</i> : Maximum number of the records in the MAC notification history list, in the range of 1 to 200, 50 by default.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>snmp trap mac-notification</b> {added   removed}	Enable the MAC address change notification on the interface. added: Send a MAC address change notification when a MAC address is <b>added</b> on this interface. Removed: Send a MAC address change notification when a address is deleted.

To disable the MAC address change notification function, use the **no snmp-server enable traps** command in the global configuration mode. To turn off the global switch of the MAC address change notification function, use the **no mac-address-table notification** command. To disable the MAC address change notification function on a specified interface, use the **no snmp trap mac-notification {added | removed}** command in the interface configuration mode.

This example shows how to enable the MAC address change notification function, use public as the authentication name to send a MAC address change notification to the NMS



whose IP address is 192.168.12.54 at the interval of 40 seconds, set the size of the MAC address change history list to 100, and enable the MAC address change notification function on gigabitethernet 1/3 when a MAC address is added or removed.

```
DES-7200(config)# snmp-server host 192.168.12.54 traps public
DES-7200(config)# snmp-server enable traps
DES-7200(config)# mac-address-table notification
DES-7200(config)# mac-address-table notification interval 40
DES-7200(config)# mac-address-table notification history-size 100
DES-7200(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/3
DES-7200(config-if)# snmp trap mac-notification added
DES-7200(config-if)# snmp trap mac-notification removed
```

### 13.2.3 Viewing the MAC Address change Notification Information

In the privileged mode, you can view the information on the MAC address table of the device by using the commands listed in the following table:

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>show mac-address-table notification</b>	Show the global configuration of the MAC address change notification function.
DES-7200# <b>show mac-address-table notification interface</b>	Show the configuration of the MAC address change notification on the interface.
DES-7200# <b>show mac-address-table notification history</b>	Show the history list of the MAC address change notification.

The following examples show how to view the MAC address change notification.

View the global configuration of the MAC address change notification:

```
DES-7200# show mac-address-table notification
MAC Notification Feature : Enabled
Interval(Sec): 2
Maximum History Size : 154
Current History Size : 2
DES-7200# show mac-address-table notification interface
Interface          MAC Added Trap MAC Removed Trap
-----
Gil1/1             Disabled      Enabled
Gil1/2             Disabled      Disabled
Gil1/3             Enabled       Enabled
Gil1/4             Disabled      Disabled
Gil1/5             Disabled      Disabled
Gil1/6             Disabled      Disabled
DES-7200# show mac-address-table notification history
History Index:1
Entry Timestamp: 15091
MAC Changed Message :
```



```

Operation  VLAN  MAC Address  Interface
-----
Added      1    00d0.f808.3cc9  Gi1/1
Removed    1    00d0.f808.0c0c  Gi1/1
History Index:2
Entry Timestamp: 21891
MAC Changed Message :
Operation  VLAN  MAC Address  Interface
-----
Added      1    00d0.f80d.1083  Gi1/1

```

## 13.3 IP Address and MAC Address Binding

### 13.3.1 Overview

IP address and MAC address binding lets you filter packets. After you bind an IP address and a MAC address, the switch will only receive the IP packets whose source IP address and MAC address match the binding address ;or it will be discarded.

Taking advantages of IP address and MAC address binding, you can check the legality of the input sources. Note that this function takes precedence over 802.1X, port-based security and ACL effectiveness.

### 13.3.2 Configuring IP Address and MAC address Binding

In the global mode, to configure IP address and MAC address binding, execute the following commands.

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>address-bind</b> <i>ip-address mac-address</i>	Configure IP address and MAC address binding.
DES-7200(config)# <b>address-bind install</b>	Enable the address binding function.

To cancel the IP address and MAC address binding, use the **no address-bind** *ip-address mac-address* command in the global configuration mode.

To disable the address binding function, execute the **no address-bind install** command

### 13.3.3 Viewing the IP Address and MAC Address Binding Table

To show the IP address and MAC address binding table, use the **show address-bind** command in the privileged mode:



```
DES-7200# show address-bind
IP Address      Binding MAC Addr
-----
3.3.3.3         00d0.f811.1112
3.3.3.4         00d0.f811.1117
```

### 13.3.4 Configuring the Exceptional Ports for the IP Address and MAC Address Binding

To make the IP address and MAC address binding not to take effect on some ports, you can set these ports as exceptional ports. To configure an exceptional port, execute the following command in the global configuration mode.

Command	Function
<b>DES-7200#configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
<b>DES-7200(config)#address-bind uplink intf-id</b>	Configure the exceptional port for the IP address and MAC address binding.
<b>DES-7200(config)# address-bind install</b>	Enable the IP address and MAC address binding.

You can run the **no address-bind uplink interface-id** or **no address-bind install** command in the global configuration mode to remove the setting of exceptional ports or disable the IP address and MAC address binding.

### 13.3.5 Viewing Exceptional Ports for the IP Address and MAC Address Binding

You can use the **show address-bind uplink** command in the privileged mode to show the exceptional ports for the IP address and MAC address binding:

```
DES-7200# show address-bind uplink
Ports      State
-----
Fa0/1      Enabled
Fa0/2      Disabled
Fa0/3      Disabled
Fa0/4      Disabled
Fa0/5      Disabled
Fa0/6      Disabled
Fa0/7      Disabled
Fa0/8      Disabled
Fa0/9      Disabled
Fa0/10     Disabled
```



## 13.4 MAC Address Table Extension

### 13.4.1 Overview

MAC-address-table extension is to extend the capability of address table in the original device. In the ideal circumstances, the extension is the maximum address capability of single chip multiplies by the number of chips.

### 13.4.2 Configuring Address Extension

In the global configuration mode, you can configure address extension as the following steps:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>mac-manage-learning dispersive</b>	Enable address extension function.

In the global configuration mode, you can use command **no mac-manage-learning dispersive** to disable address extension function.



#### Caution

MAC extension is effective for single device only. Besides, you need to reboot the device after enabling extension function.

### 13.4.3 Viewing Address Extension Configuration

In the privileged mode, you can use command **show mac-address-table mac-manage-learnin** to show the address table extension configuration:

```
DES-7200# show show mac-address-table mac-manage-learnin
#####MAC manage-learning
running mode: uniform
configuration mode: dispersive
```



# 14

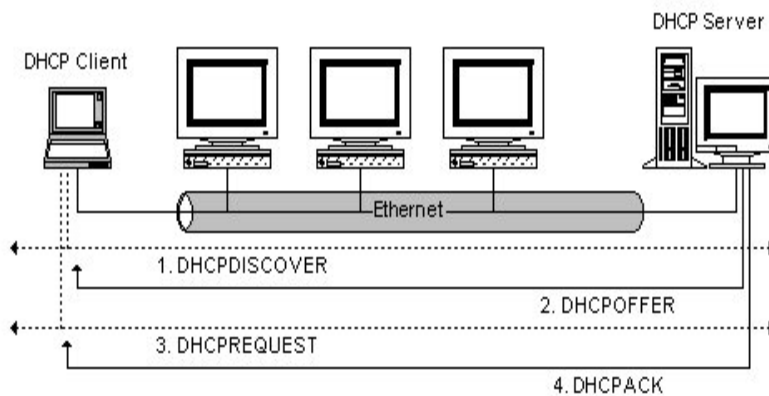
## DHCP Snooping Configuration

### 14.1 Overview

#### 14.1.1 Understanding DHCP

The DHCP protocol is widely used to dynamically allocate the recycled network resources, for example, IP address. A typical IP acquisition process using DHCP is shown below:

Figure 14-1



The DHCP Client sends a DHCP DISCOVER broadcast packet to the DHCP Server. The Client will send the DHCP DISCOVER again if it does not receive a response from the server within a specified time.

After the DHCP Server receives the DHCP DISCOVER packet, it allocates resources to the Client, for example, IP address according to the appropriate policy, and sends the DHCP OFFER packet.

After receiving the DHCP OFFER packet, the DHCP Client sends a DHCP REQUEST packet to obtain the server lease, and notifies other servers that it has accepted this server for address assignment.

After receiving the DHCP REQUEST packet, the server verifies whether the resources are available. If so, it sends a DHCP ACK packet. If not, it sends a DHCP NAK packet. Upon receiving the DHCP ACK packet, the DHCP Client starts to use the resources assigned by the server. If it receives the DHCP NAK packet, the DHCP Client will send the DHCP DISCOVER packet again.



### 14.1.2 Understanding DHCP Snooping

---

DHCP Snooping monitors users by snooping the packets exchanged between the clients and the server. DHCP Snooping can filter DHCP packets and illegal servers by proper configuration. Some terms and functions used in DHCP Snooping are explained below:

**DHCP Snooping TRUST port:** Because the packets for obtaining IP addresses through DHCP are in the form of broadcast, some illegal servers may prevent users from obtaining IP addresses, or even cheat and steal user information. To solve this problem, DHCP Snooping classifies the ports into two types: TRUST port and UNTRUST port. The device forwards only the DHCP reply packets received through the TRUST port while discarding all the DHCP reply packets from the UNTRUST port. In this way, the illegal DHCP Server can be shielded by setting the port connected to the legal DHCP Server as a TRUST port and other ports as UNTRUST ports.

**VLAN-based DHCP Snooping:** DHCP Snooping takes effect in the unit of VLAN. By default, if enabling DHCP Snooping, DHCP Snooping in all VLANs will be enabled. You can control DHCP Snooping-enabled VLAN flexibly by configuration.

**DHCP Snooping binding database:** Many users may set IP addresses by themselves in a DHCP-enabled network. This makes it difficult to maintain the network and causes the legal users who obtain IP addresses by DHCP are unable to use the network due to IP address confliction. By snooping the packets between the DHCP Clients and the DHCP Server, DHCP Snooping combines the IP address, MAC address, VID, port and lease time into a entry to form a DHCP Snooping user database. Combined with ARP inspection, it can control users' access to the network.

**DHCP Snooping rate limit:** Snooping checks the DHCP request packets on all untrusted ports and forwards the verified DHCP packet to the network where trusted port is at the same time to prevent DHCP request attack on untrusted port and control DHCP request rate flowing to the trusted network. DHCP Snooping supports to limit the rate of DHCP packet received on the port. When the rate of DHCP packet received on the port exceeds the limitation, the port drops it directly. DHCP Snooping controls the rate of DHCP packet by software. Part of our products support hardware-based CPP rate limit for DHCP packet. Being different from DHCP Snooping rate limit, hardware-based CPP rate limit performs security control if the device is under DHCP attack. Therefore, the latter one is prior to the former one. You need to set CPP rate to limit is over or equal to DHCP Snooping rate limit. For the related configuration of CPP, please see the related chapters.

DHCP Snooping checks the validity of DHCP packets that pass through the device, discards illegal DHCP packets, and records user information to create a DHCP Snooping binding database for ARP inspection and query. The following DHCP packets are considered illegal:

1. The DHCP reply packets received on the UNTRUST ports, including DHCPACK, DHCPNACK, DHCPOFFER, etc.

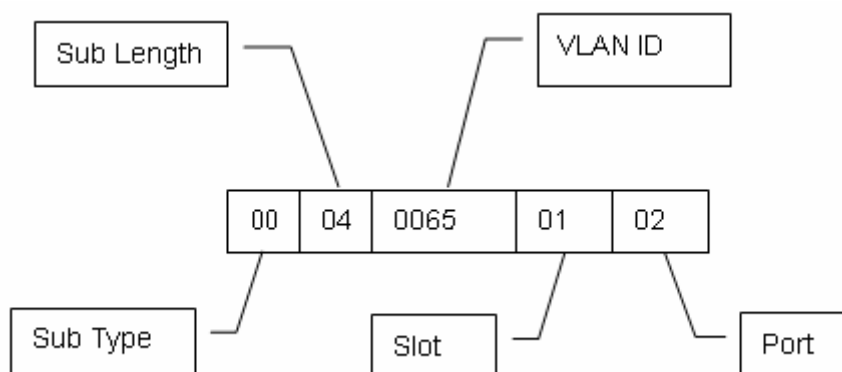


2. The DHCP request packets with network management information [giaddr] received on the UNTRUST ports.
3. DHCP Client values in the source MAC and DHCP packets are in different packets when MAC check is enabled.
4. DHCPRELEASE packets whose port information is inconsistent with that in the the DHCP Snooping binding database.

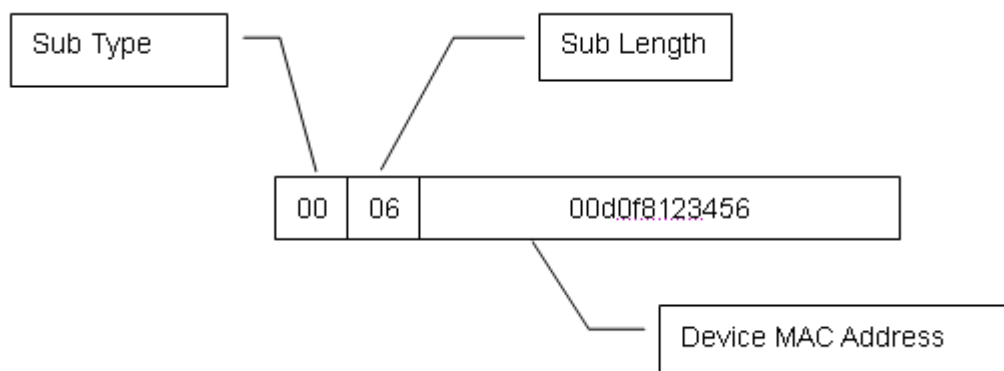
### 14.1.3 Understanding DHCP Snooping Information Option

Some network administrators want to assign IP address to current users upon their positions. That is, they want to assign IP addresses to users according to the information on the network equipments that users connect so that the switch can add the user-related device information to the DHCP request packet in DHCP option way while performing DHCP Snooping. According to RFC3046, the option number used is 82. You can obtain more user information by uploading option82 to the content server. As a result, you can assign IP addresses accurately. The format of option82 uploaded by DHCP Snooping is shown as follows:

**Figure 14-2** Agent Circuit ID



**Figure 14-3** Agent Remote ID





#### 14.1.4 DHCP Snooping Related Security Functions

---

In a DHCP-enabled network, administrators usually suffer from such problem that some users use static IP addresses other than dynamic IP addresses. This makes those users who use dynamic IP addresses cannot use the network normally, and thus making the network application complicated and unmanageable. The DHCP dynamic binding means that the device implements security protection by recording the IP addresses of legal users during DHCP snooping. There are two ways to implement security: hardware-based address binding and software-based DAI (dynamic ARP inspection), verifying the user validity by ARP control..

**Caution**

With hardware-based address binding, the switch can support limited DHCP users. Too many users may cause legal users fail to add the hardware entry and use the network normally. With DAI, the switch performance may be influenced significantly because all the ARP packets are forwarded and processed by CPU.

---

##### 14.1.4.1 Understanding Relationship of Address Binding of DHCP Snooping and IP Source Guard

---

IP Source Guard maintains a database of IP source address by configuring user information [ip,mac] in database as hardware filtering entry. It only permits corresponding users to use network. For the detailed information, please refer to *IP Source Guard Configuration*.

By maintaining a database of user ip and offering the data to be filtered by IP Source Guard, DHCP Snooping only allows those users who obtain IP by DHCP to use network, preventing private IP.

Furthermore, since the address binding of DHCP snooping only filters IP packets other than ARP packets, checking the legality of ARP packets is implemented for the bound users to improve security and prevent ARP sniffer. Refer to *DAI configuration* for the details.

#### 14.1.5 Relationship between DHCP Snooping and ARP Inspection

---

ARP inspection refers to check all the ARP packets that pass the device. DHCP Snooping provides a binding database for ARP inspection. Upon receiving an ARP packet, the DAI function enabled on the device queries the binding database of DHCP snooping. The ARP packet is considered legal and thus to be learnt and forwarded only when its MAC address, IP address and port information all match that in the binding database. Otherwise, the packet will be discarded.



### 14.1.6 Other Precautions on DHCP Snooping Configuration

The DHCP Snooping function and the DHCP Option 82 function of 1x are mutually exclusive.

DHCP Snooping only snoops the DHCP process of users. To restrict users to use the IP addresses assigned by DHCP to access the network, you must use the ARP inspection function. Note that the ARP inspection function affects the overall performance of the device because the ARP inspection module detects all ARP packets.

## 14.2 DHCP Snooping Configuration

### 14.2.1 Enabling and Disabling DHCP Snooping

The DHCP Snooping function of the device is disabled by default. To enable DHCP Snooping and then monitor DHCP packets, execute the following command.

Command	Description
DES-7200# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
DES-7200(config)# <b>[no] ip dhcp snooping</b>	Enable or disable DHCP snooping.

The following example demonstrates how to enable the DHCP snooping function of the device:

```
DES-7200# configure terminal
DES-7200(config)# ip dhcp snooping
DES-7200(config)# end
DES-7200# show ip dhcp snooping
Switch DHCP snooping status           :  ENABLE
DHCP snooping Verification of hwaddr status :  DISABLE
DHCP snooping database write-delay time :    0
DHCP snooping option 82 status         :  DISABLE
Interface           Trusted           Rate limit (pps)
-----
-----
```

### 14.2.2 Configuring Enabled DHCP Snooping VLAN

This command enables DHCP Snooping in corresponding VLAN, adding this VLAN to enabled DHCP Snooping VLAN range.

Command	Description
---------	-------------



DES-7200# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters the global configuration mode.
DES-7200(config)# <b>[no] ip dhcp snooping vlan {vlan-mg   {vlan-min [vlan-max]}}</b>	Configures enabled Snooping VLAN.

Here is an example of configuring DHCP snooping enabled in VLAN1000:

```
DES-7200# configure terminal
DES-7200(config)# ip dhcp snooping vlan 1000
DES-7200(config)# end
DES-7200#
```



#### Caution

By default, when enabling DHCP Snooping, all VLANs on the device will enable DHCP Snooping. If you need to enable or disable DHCP Snooping based on VLAN, adding or deleting this VLAN in the effective range of DHCP Snooping is required.

### 14.2.3 Configuring DHCP Source MAC Address Check Function

After configuring this command, the device will match the MAC address of the DHCP Request packet from the UNTRUST port against the one in the client field and discard unmatched packet. By default, this function is not enabled.

To configure the source MAC address check function, execute the following command:

Command	Description
DES-7200# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
DES-7200(config)# <b>[no]ip dhcp snooping verify mac-address</b>	Enable or disable the source MAC address check function.

The following example shows how to enable the DHCP source MAC address check function:

```
DES-7200# configure terminal
DES-7200(config)# ip dhcp snooping verify mac-address
DES-7200(config)# end
DES-7200(config)# end
DES-7200# show ip dhcp snooping
Switch DHCP snooping status           :  ENABLE
DHCP snooping Verification of hwaddr status :  ENABLE
DHCP snooping database write-delay time   :  0
DHCP snooping option 82 status           :  DISABLE
Interface           Trusted           Rate limit (pps)
-----
```



### 14.2.4 Configuring Static DHCP Snooping Information Option

To add option82 to a DHCP request packet during DHCP snooping, execute the following command.

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
DES-7200(config)# <b>[no] ip dhcp snooping information option</b>	Enable or disable the DHCP snooping information option.

The following configuration enables DHCP snooping information option:

```
DES-7200# configure terminal
DES-7200(config)# ip dhcp snooping information option
DES-7200(config)# end
DES-7200# show ip dhcp snooping
Switch DHCP snooping status           :  ENABLE
DHCP snooping Verification of hwaddr status :  ENABLE
DHCP snooping database write-delay time :    0
DHCP snooping option 82 status         :  ENABLE
Interface           Trusted           Rate limit (pps)
-----
-----
```



#### Caution

After this function is configured, the information option82 function of DHCP relay will not work.

### 14.2.5 Writing the DHCP Snooping Database to Flash Periodically

DHCP Snooping provides a command to write the DHCP Snooping database to the flash periodically in order to prevent loss of DHCP user information when the device restarts due to an electricity failure. By default, the interval is 0, the switch writes the DHCP database to the flash randomly.

Command	Description
DES-7200# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
DES-7200(config)# <b>[no] ip dhcp snooping database write-delay [time]</b>	Specify the interval at which the switch writes the DHCP database to the flash. <i>time</i> : 600s to 86400s. The default value is 0.

The following example sets the interval at which the switch writes the DHCP database to the flash to 3600s:



```
DES-7200# configure terminal
DES-7200(config)# ip dhcp snooping database write-delay 3600
DES-7200(config)# end
DES-7200#
```

**Caution**

You need to set a proper time for writing to the flash since erasing and writing to the flash frequently shortens its life. A shorter time helps to save the device information more effectively. A longer time reduces the times of writing to the flash and increases service life of flash.

### 14.2.6 Writing DHCP Snooping Database to Flash Manually

To prevent loss of DHCP user information when the device restarts due to an electricity failure, you need to write the DHCP Snooping binding database to the flash manually as required in addition to writing the DHCP Snooping binding database to the flash periodically.

Command	Description
DES-7200# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
DES-7200(config)# <b>ip dhcp snooping database write-to-flash</b>	Write the DHCP Snooping binding database to the flash.

The following example demonstrates how to write the DHCP Snooping binding database to the flash:

```
DES-7200# configure terminal
DES-7200(config)# ip dhcp snooping database write-to-flash
DES-7200(config)# end
```

### 14.2.7 Configuring a Port as a TRUST Port

To set a port as a TRUST port, execute the following command. By default, all the ports are UNTRUST ports:

Command	Description
DES-7200# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
DES-7200(config)# <b>interface interface</b>	Enter the interface configuration mode.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>[no] ip dhcp snooping trust</b>	Set the port as a trust port.

The following example shows how to set Port 1 of the device as a TRUST port:

```
DES-7200# configure terminal
DES-7200(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 0/1
DES-7200(config-if)# ip dhcp snooping trust
DES-7200(config-if)# end
DES-7200# show ip dhcp snooping
```



```

Switch DHCP snooping status           :  ENABLE
DHCP snooping Verification of hwaddr status :  DISABLE
DHCP snooping database write-delay time    :  0
DHCP snooping option 82 status           :  DISABLE
Interface           Trusted      Rate limit (pps)
-----
GigabitEthernet 0/1          YES          100

```

**Caution**

When DHCP Snooping is enabled, only the DHCP response packets sent by the servers connected with the TRUST port will be forwarded.

### 14.2.8 Configuring Rate of Receiving DHCP Packet

This command configures rate of receiving DHCP in the corresponding interface:

Command	Description
DES-7200# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enters the global configuration mode.
DES-7200(config)# <b>interface</b> <i>interface</i>	Enters the interface configuration mode.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>[no] ip dhcp snooping limit rate</b> <i>rate-pps</i>	Configures rate of receiving DHCP packet on the port.

The following example shows how to set the rate of receiving DHCP packet on Port 1 of the device as 100:

```

DES-7200# configure terminal
DES-7200(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 0/1
DES-7200(config-if)# ip dhcp snooping limit rate 100
DES-7200(config-if)# end
DES-7200# show ip dhcp snooping
Switch DHCP snooping status           :  ENABLE
DHCP snooping Verification of hwaddr status :  DISABLE
DHCP snooping database write-delay time    :  0
DHCP snooping option 82 status           :  DISABLE
Interface           Trusted      Rate limit (pps)
-----
GigabitEthernet 0/1          NO          100

```

**Caution**

When setting DHCP Snooping rate limit, please confirm the rate limit of DHCP packet configured by CPP; if CPP configuration is low, DHCP packet will still be discarded even if the rate limit is within the rate limit range of DHCP Snooping.



### 14.2.9 Clearing Dynamic User Information from the DHCP Snooping Binding Database

To clear dynamic user information from the DHCP Snooping binding database, execute the following command.

Command	Description
DES-7200# <b>clear ip dhcp snooping binding</b>	Clear information from the current database.

The following example shows how to clear information from the current database manually:

```
DES-7200# clear ip dhcp snooping binding
```

## 14.3 Showing DHCP Snooping Configuration

### 14.3.1 Showing DHCP Snooping

To show DHCP Snooping, execute the following command:

Command	Description
DES-7200# <b>show ip dhcp snooping</b>	Show the configuration of DHCP snooping.

For example:

```
DES-7200# show ip dhcp snooping
Switch DHCP snooping status           :  ENABLE
DHCP snooping Verification of hwaddr status :  DISABLE
DHCP snooping database write-delay time :    0
      DHCP snooping option 82 status      :  DISABLE
Interface          Trusted      Rate limit (pps)
-----
GigabitEthernet 0/1      NO          110
GigabitEthernet 0/2      NO          120
GigabitEthernet 0/3      YES          130
GigabitEthernet 0/11     NO          210
GigabitEthernet 0/12     NO          220
GigabitEthernet 0/13     YES          230
GigabitEthernet 0/21     YES          100
```



### 14.3.2 Showing the DHCP Snooping Binding Database

To show the DHCP Snooping binding database, execute the following command:

Command	Description
DES-7200# <b>show ip dhcp snooping binding</b>	View the static user information in the DHCP Snooping binding database.

For example:

```
DES-7200# show ip dhcp snooping binding
Total number of bindings: 1
  MacAddress      IpAddress      Lease(sec)  Type           VLAN  Interface
  -----
001b.241e.6775    192.168.12.9    863996      dhcp-snooping  1     GigabitEthernet 0/5
```







# 15

## IGMP Snooping Configuration

### 15.1 Overview

---

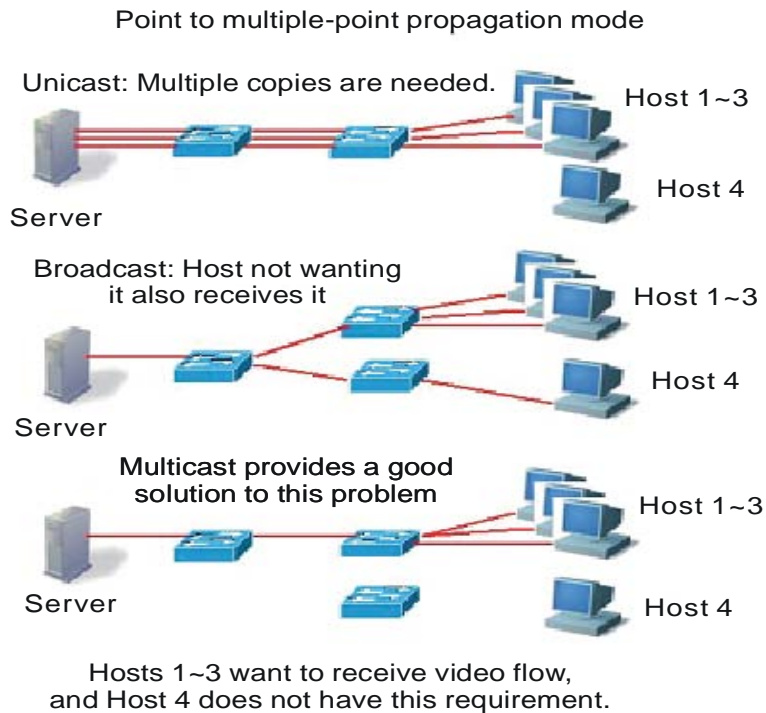
#### 15.1.1 Understanding IGMP

---

Before understanding IGMP, let us first describe the concept and function of IP multicast.

Single-point to multiple-point multimedia services like video conference and video on demand (VOD) becomes more and more important in the information transmission over the Internet. The point-to-point unicast transmission mode cannot accommodate such service transmission feature, since the server must provide every receiver with a same copy of the IP packet. Meanwhile, the repeated transmission of an IP packet in the network occupies enormous resources. Similarly, IP packet broadcast cannot meet such requirements. Although a host is allowed to broadcast an IP packet to all the hosts of the network, the network resources are still wasted since not all hosts need such the IP packet. In this case, multicast comes into being, providing a solution for a host to send packets to the specified receivers. See the figure below.



**Figure 15-1**

IP multicast refers to the transmission of an IP packet to a host group which is identified a separated IP address, no matter the host group includes 0 or multiple hosts.

The host group address is also called multicast address, or Class D address, in the range from 224.0.0.0 to 239.255.255.255. 224.0.0.0~224.0.0.255 are reserved, wherein:

- 224.0.0.1 – all hosts in the network segment that support multicast.
- 224.0.0.2 – all routers in the network segment that support multicast.

The layer 2 multicast address (multicast MAC address) is mapped by performing OR operation on the last 23 bits of the multicast IP address and 01-00-5e-00-00-00. For example, the multicast IP address is 224.255.1.1 and e0-ff-01-01 in hex system. The last 23 bits is 7f-01-01. After performing OR operation with 01-00-5e-00-00-00, the result is: 01-00-5e-7f-01-01. 01-00-5e-7f-01-01 is the multicast MAC address of the group 224.255.1.1.

The IGMP (Internet Group Management Protocol) runs between a host and the multicast router connected to the host. The host tells the local router its intention to join a multicast group and receive the messages of the multicast group through the IGMP protocol. At the same time, the router periodically checks whether a member of a multicast group in the LAN is active or not (that is, whether a member of the multicast group is still in the network segment) to collect and maintain the membership of the network connected. Currently, there are three versions of IGMP: IGMPv1 is described in RFC1112, IGMPv2 is described in RFC2236, and IGMPv3 is described in RFC3376.



The following presents how a host joins or leaves a multicast group in IGMPv1 or IGMPv2 respectively (suppose that the host joins the multicast group 224.1.1.1).

In IGMPv1, the host sends the IGMP Report message of the multicast group 224.1.1.1 to a certain interface on the router to ask for joining this group. If the router receives this message, it considers there is some multicast member under the interface and then forward the messages of the multicast group through the interface. The the router periodically sends the IGMP Query message to 224.0.0.1 (all hosts). If a host wants to continue to receive the messages of this multicast group, it should respond with an IGMP Report message. The interface will be considered there is no multicast member if it cannot receive the IGMP Report message from any host. As a result, the messages of the multicast group are not forwarded to the interface.

IGMPv2 is downward compatible with IGMPv1. It extends IGMP messages by adding the IGMP Leave message. Consequently, a host can unsolicitedly leave a multicast group. As with IGMPv1, in IGMPv2, a host sends an IGMP Report message to request for joining a multicast group. The router periodically sends the IGMP Query message to 224.0.0.1. If the host wants to continue to receive the messages of this multicast group, it should respond with an IGMP Report message. The router will revoke this multicast group when it has not received any IGMP Report message from any host. Moreover, the host can unsolicitedly leave a multicast group. When the host does not need the messages of a multicast group, it sends an IGMP Leave message to the router. Upon the receipt of this message, the router sends an IGMP Query message to check whether there is a host needing to receiving the messages of this multicast group. If other hosts need to receive messages of the multicast group, they respond with the IGMP Report message. If the router fails to receive the response from any host, it revokes the multicast group.

On the basis of the IGMPV1/V2, IGMPV3 provides an additional source filtering multicast function. IGMPv3 is similar to IGMPv1/IGMPv2 in terms of interaction with the router. In IGMPv1/v2, a host determines to join a multicast group based on its IP address and receive the multicast flows from any source to the multicast group address. On contrary, in IGMPv3, the host notifies the desired multicast group to join and also the addresses of the multicast sources to receive. The host can indicate the sources from which it wants to receive multicast flows through an inclusion list or an exclusion list. At the same time, another benefit of the IGMP v3 is that it saves bandwidth by preventing unnecessary, invalid multicast data flows from occupying network bandwidth. It is particularly useful in the case where multiple multicast sources share one multicast address.

Compared with IGMPv2, IGMPv3 specifies two types of messages: Membership Query and Version 3 Membership Report. There are three types of Membership Query messages:

- General Query: Query all the multicast members under the interface:
- Group-Specific Query: Query the members of the specified group under the interface:
- Group-and-Source-Specific Query: New message in the IGMPv3, query if any member under the interface needs to receive the multicast traffic of the particular group from the sources of the specified source list.



IGMPv3 is backward compatible with IGMPv1 and IGMPv2.

For more information about IP multicast, refer to RFC1112, RFC2236 and RFC3376.

### 15.1.2 Understanding IGMP Snooping

A multicast frame is forwarded in the broadcast form on a layer2 device. This may easily lead to multicast flow storm and a waste of network bandwidth. A typical multicast frame on the network is video flow. In a VLAN, if a user subscribes video flow, all the members in this VLAN will receive this video flow, no matter whether they want it or not.

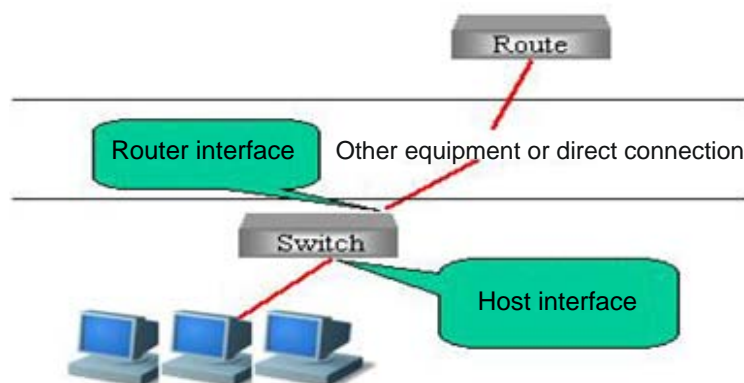
IGMP Snooping can solve this problem by forwarding the video flow only to the port where the subscriber is located without influencing other users.

IGMP Snooping is the multicast restriction mechanism running on the Ethernet switch to monitor the IGMP packets between the router and user to manage and control the multicast group. The meaning of Snooping is “eavesdrop”. From the meaning, we can easily understand its operation process: the switch “snoops” the interactive message between the user host and the router, and tracks the group information and the applied port. When the switch snoops the IGMP report (request) message that the host sends to the router, the switch adds this port into the multicast forwarding table. The switch deletes this port from the table when it “snoops” the IGMP Leave message. The router will periodically send the IGMP Query message. If the switch receives no IGMP Report packet from the host within a certain period of time, the switch deletes this port from the table.

### 15.1.3 Understanding the Router Connection Interface

The router connection interface is the port connecting the multicast router, as shown below.

Figure 15-2



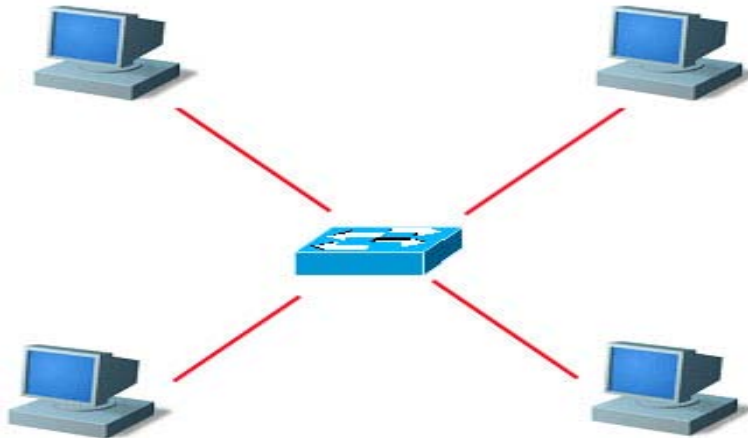
The messages from the host, such as the IGMP Report message and the IGMP Leave message will be forwarded through this port to the router. Only the IGMP Query messages received from this port will be deemed as legal messages and forwarded to the host port,



and the IGMP Query messages received from the non-router interface will be discarded. For the information on how to configure the router interface, see the section *Configuring the Router Interface*.

Note: In some network environments without multicast routers, it is unnecessary to configure the router interface, and the IGMP snooping can still operate normally, as shown in the following diagram:

**Figure 15-3**

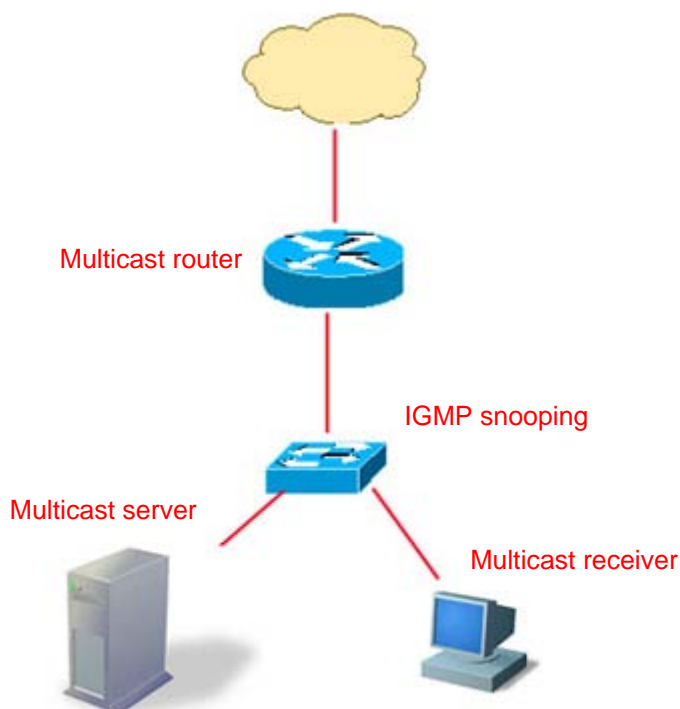


As you can see, no multicast router is configured in the network. Four PCs can be both the sender and receiver of multicast flows. In this case, the switch can address their requirements by enabling the IGMP snooping, without having to set any port as a router interface.

In addition, the router interface is defaulted to become the receiver of multicast flows within this VLAN, as shown below.



Figure 15-4



In order to forward multicast flows to other network by the multicast router, the IGMP Snooping-supported switch needs to forward multicst flows not only to the receiver but also to the router interface. However, it is possible that administrator does not want the higher level multicast router to know a certain batch of multicast flows. You can configure the router interface to forward or filter multicast packets according to some criteria on the switch to address administrator's particular requirements.

**Caution**

In the above network topology, if there is no multicast flow receiver, the switch will automatically create a multicast forwarding entry to the multicast router. However, such a multicast forwarding entry generated by the multicast flow may be unstable. The change of the router interface will delete the multicast forwarding entries generated by the multicast flow. The administrator is recommended to directly configure one static multicast forwarding entry to the router interface (see Configuring IGMP snooping Static Member) to ensure the stable forwarding of multicast flows.

#### 15.1.4 Understanding IGMP Snooping Operation Modes

There are three kinds of IGMP Snooping operation modes:

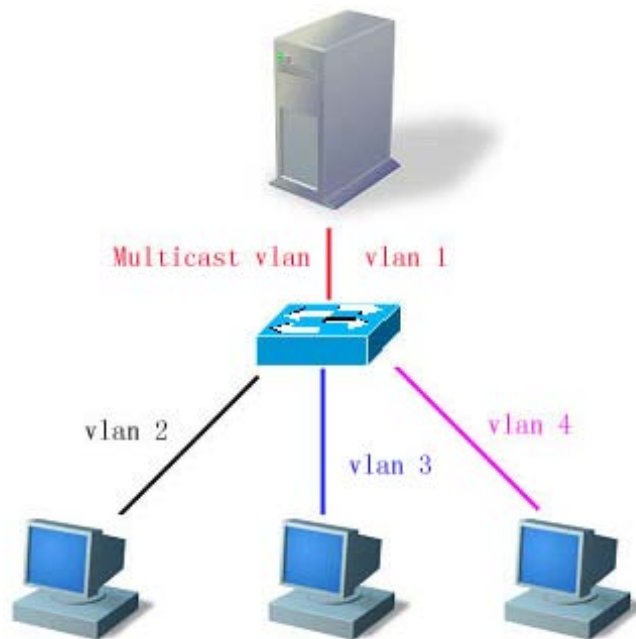


**DISABLE:** The IGMP Snooping does not work in this mode. That is, the switch does not snoop the IGMP messages between the host and the router. Multicast frames are forwarded in the VLAN in the broadcast form.

**IVGL:** In this mode, the multicast flows in different VLANs are independent. A host can only request multicast flows to the router interface in the same VLAN.

**SVGL:** In this mode, the hosts in different VLANs share the same multicast flow. A host can request multicst flows across VLANs. By designating a multicst VLAN, you can forward the multicast flows received in this VLAN to other hosts in different VLANs, as shown below.

**Figure 15-5**



As long as the VID of the multicast flows is the multicast VLAN (or the native VLAN of the port receiving untagged flows is the multicast VLAN), the multicast flows will be forwarded to the member ports of this multicast address, no matter whether these member port are within this VLAN or not. The VID of the generated multicast forwarding table will be the multicast VLAN. In the SVGL mode, besides the router interface, the multicast flows sent from a port can be forwarded in the VLAN only when it is in the multicast VLAN.

IVGL and SVGL modes can coexist. You can configure a set of multicast addresses to work in SVGL mode. The multicast forwarding table (GDA table) is forwarded across VLANs for the set of multicast addresses. Meanwhile, you can configure other multicast addresses to work in IVGL mode.

The IVGL mode and SVGL mode of IGMP Snooping enhances the flexibility of network applications.



### **15.1.5 Understanding Source Port Check**

---

The source port check function refers to strictly managing the inbound port of IGMP multicast flows. When the function is disabled, the video flows from any port are considered legal and the switch will forward them to the registered ports. When the source port check function is enabled, only the video flows from the router interface are considered legal and the switch forwards them to the registered ports while discarding the video flows from other ports.

### **15.1.6 Understanding fast-leave**

---

According to the IGMP protocol, a port cannot leave a multicast group immediately after the host sends the IGMP Leave message. Instead, the multicast router should first send an IGMP Query packet and let a port leave the group only when the host does not respond. However, in specific environments (for example, one port is connected to only one multicast user), the port can immediately leave the multicast group after the multicast router receives the IGMP Leave message, a mechanism known as Fast Leave.

### **15.1.7 Understanding IGMP Snooping Suppression**

---

For IGMP Snooping-enabled devices, a multicast group address may have multiple IGMP users. When a user joins the multicast group and receives the IGMP Query message, he or she will send an IGMP Report message. DES-7200 will forward every IGMP Query message to the multicast router. In this way, the multicast router will receive multiple IGMP Report messages when it sends an IGMP Query message to the ports on the IGMP Snooping-enabled devices. To reduce the pressure of the server on processing the IGMP Report messages, the switch only forwards the first received IGMP Report message to the router port while suppressing other IGMP Report messages. This is called IGMP Snooping Suppression.

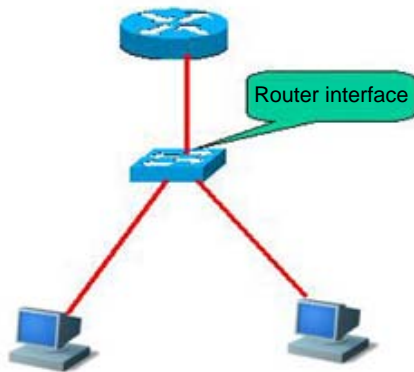
Due to the special form of the IGMPv3 Report message, IGMP Snooping Suppression only supports suppression of IGMPv1 and IGMPv2 Report messages.

### **15.1.8 Typical Application**

---

Multicast technology is now widely used in campus networks and residential community networks for offering services like weather forecast, news broadcasting, and VOD. Currently the most common form is VOD. The following figure shows the common network topology.



**Figure 15-6**

Equipment requirement: The switch supports IGMP Snooping.

Required settings:

1. Enable IGMP Snooping.
2. Set the uplink interface as the router interface.

Highlights:

1. Simple configuration;
2. Effectively reduce broadcast storm and improve network bandwidth utilization.

## **15.2 Configuring IGMP Snooping**

We will describe how to configure IGMP snooping in the following sections

- IGMP Snooping Default Configuration
- Configuring IGMP Profiles
- Configuring the Router Interface
- Configuring the Range of Multicast Frames Forwarded by the Router Interface
- Configuring the IVGL Mode
- Configuring the SVGL Mode
- Configuring the Coexistence of the IVGL and SVGL modes
- Configuring the DISABLE Mode
- Configuring Maximum Response Time of the IGMP Query Message
- Configuring Source Port Check
- Configuring Source IP Address Check
- Configuring IGMP Snooping Static Member
- Configuration IGMP Filtering



### 15.2.1 IGMP Snooping Default Configuration

IGMP snooping status	DISABLE status
Router interface	All interfaces are not the router interface, and do not conduct dynamic learning.
Source port check	Off
IGMP Profile	No entry; Deny by default.
SVGL's Multicast Vlan	VLAN 1
IGMP Filtering	None
Static members of GMP Snooping	None



#### Caution

You are recommended to configure the VLAN, port access, trunk, and AP parameters before configuring IGMP Snooping, because these parameters are the basis of the switch. Modifying these parameters after the generation of the multicast forwarding table may cause abnormal forwarding.

In addition, the switch does not support IGMP Snooping in the private VLAN mode.

Possibly, there is Hash confliction in the IGMP Snooping multicast addresses. If the number of multicast addresses created in the switch does not exceed the threshold yet fail to add a new multicast address, hash confliction may occur.

### 15.2.2 Configuring IGMP Profiles

Let us first describe an IGMP Profile entry. An IGMP Profile entry defines a set of multicast address range and permit/deny activity for the functions like multicast address range for SVGL mode, multicast data range filtered on the router interface, and IGMP Filtering range. Note that modifying an IGMP Profile after associating it with a function will influence the multicast forwarding table generated by the function.

To configure an IGMP profile, execute the following commands:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>ip igmp profile</b> <i>profile-number</i>	Enter the IGMP Profile mode. Assign a number in the range of 1 to 65535 to identify.



Command	Function
DES-7200(config-profile)# <b>permit</b>   <b>deny</b>	(Optional) Permit or deny this range of multicast addresses while deny or permit other multicast addresses. The default value is deny.
DES-7200(config-profile)# <b>range</b> <i>ip</i> <i>multicast-address</i>	Add one or more multicast address ranges.
DES-7200# <b>end</b>	Return to the privileged mode.

To delete an IGMP Profile, use **no ip igmp profile** *profile-number*.

To delete a range of the IGMP Profile, use **no range** *ip multicast address*.

This example shows the IGMP Profile configuration process:

```
DES-7200(config)# ip igmp profile 1
DES-7200(config-profile)# permit
DES-7200(config-profile)# range 224.1.1.1 225.1.1.1
DES-7200(config-profile)# range 226.1.1.1
DES-7200(config-profile)# end
DES-7200# show ip igmp profile 1
IGMP Profile 1
permit
range 224.1.1.1 225.1.1.1
range 226.1.1.1
```

As you can see, the rule of the IGMP Profile is to permit the multicast addresses from 224.1.1.1 to 225.1.1.1, and 226.1.1.1, while all other multicast addresses are denied.

### 15.2.3 Configuring the Router Interface

The router interface is the port through which the switch connects to the multicast router, not the port through which the switch connects to the video server. Once the source port check function is enabled, the switch forwards only the video flows from the router interface while discarding other video flows. You can statically configure the router interface, or let the switch dynamically snoop the IGMP Query/dvmrp message or PIM message to automatically recognize the router interface.

To configure a router interface, execute the following command:



Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>ip igmp Snooping</b> <b>vlan</b> <i>vlan-id</i> <b>mrouter</b> { <b>interface</b> <i>interface-id</i>   <b>learnpim-dvmrp</b> }	Set the interface as the router interface. Use the <b>no</b> form of this command to delete a router interface.  You can also configure the switch to dynamically learn the router interface. Use the <b>no</b> form of the <b>learnpim-dvmrp</b> command to disable the dynamic learning and clear all the router interfaces learned dynamically. By default, dynamic learning is disabled
DES-7200(config)# <b>end</b>	Return to the privileged mode.

This example sets GigabitEthernet 1/1 as the router interface and enables dynamic learning of the router interface:

```
DES-7200# configure terminal
DES-7200(config)# ip igmp snooping vlan 1 mrouter interface gigabitEthernet 0/7
DES-7200(config)# ip igmp snooping vlan 1 mrouter learn pim-dvmrp
DES-7200(config)# end
DES-7200# show ip igmp snooping mrouter
Vlan      Interface          State      IGMP profile
----      -
1  GigabitEthernet 0/7  static      0
1  GigabitEthernet 0/12 dynamic      0
DES-7200# show ip igmp snooping mrouter learn
Vlan      learn method
----      -
1         pim-dvmrp
```

#### 15.2.4 Configuring the Range of Multicast Frames Forwarded on the Router Interface

By default, the multicast frames for the members of all the multicast addresses in the VLAN will be forwarded on the router interface. Sometimes, some multicast frames may be not expected to be forwarded to the multicast router. In this case, the administrator can use the IGMP Profile to filter the range of multicast frames to be forwarded on the router interface.

To configure the range of the multicast frames forwarded on the router interface, execute the following command:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>ip igmp snooping</b> <b>vlan</b> <i>vlan-id</i> <b>mrouter interface</b> <i>interface-id</i> <b>profile</b> <i>profile name</i>	Set the port as the router interface, and set the associated profile. Only the multicast frames complying with this profile can be forwarded on this router interface.
DES-7200(config)# <b>end</b>	Return to the privileged mode.



You can delete the association with the profile by using the **no ip igmp snooping vlan *vlan-id* mrouter interface *interface-id* profile *profile name*** command.

This example configures the range of multicast frame forwarding by the router interface:

```
DES-7200# configure terminal
DES-7200(config)# ip igmp Snooping vlan 1 mrouter interface gigabitEthernet 0/7 profile
1
DES-7200(config)# end
DES-7200# show ip igmp Snooping mrouter
```

Vlan	Interface	State	IGMP profile
1	GigabitEthernet 0/7	static	1
1	GigabitEthernet 0/12	dynamic	0

### 15.2.5 Configuring the Aging Time of the Router Interface Learned Dynamically

When dynamic learning is enabled for the router interface, the aging time of the dynamically learned router interface is 300 seconds by default. If no packets are received from the dynamically learned Mrtoue within the aging time, the router interface will be deleted. The following commands can set the aging time in the range of 1 to 3600s.

To configure the aging time of the dynamically learned router interface, execute the following commands in the global configuration mode.

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>ip igmp snooping dyn-mr-aging-time <i>time</i></b>	Configure the aging time of the dynamically learned router interface.  <i>Time</i> : aging time in the range of 1 to 3600s. Default value: 300s.
DES-7200(config)# <b>end</b>	Return to the privileged mode.

You can use the **no ip igmp snooping dyn-mr-aging-time** command to restore the aging time to the default value.

The following example configures the aging time of the dynamically learned router interface to 100s:

```
DES-7200# configure terminal
DES-7200(config)# ip igmp snooping dyn-mr-aging-time 100
DES-7200(config)# end
```



### 15.2.6 Configuring the IVGL Mode

To enable the IGMP Snooping and set it to the IVGL mode, execute the following commands in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>ip igmp Snooping ivgl</b>	Enable the IGMP Snooping and set it to the IVGL mode.
DES-7200(config)# <b>end</b>	Return to the privileged mode.

This examples enables IGMP Snooping and sets it to the IVGL mode:

```
DES-7200# configure Terminal
DES-7200(config)# IP igmp Snooping ivgl
DES-7200(config)# end
```

### 15.2.7 Configuring the SVGL Mode

To enable the IGMP Snooping and set it to the SVGL mode, execute the following commands in the global configuraiton mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>ip igmp snooping svgl</b>	Enable IGMP Snooping and set it to the SVGL mode.
DES-7200(config)# <b>end</b>	Return to the privileged mode.

This example enables IGMP Snooping and sets it to the SVGL mode.

```
DES-7200# configure Terminal
DES-7200(config)# iP igmp snooping svgl
DES-7200(config)# end
```



#### Note

If the user switches over from the SVGL mode to other modes, the configuration related to the SVGL mode will lose automatically.

### 15.2.8 Configuring Coexistence of the IVGL Mode and the SVGL Mode

To enable IGMP Snooping and set it to the coexistence of the IVGL mode and the SVGL mode, execute the following commands in the global configuration mode:



Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>ip igmp snooping ivgl-svgl</b>	Enable IGMP Snooping and set it to the coexistence of the IVGL mode and the SVGL mode.
DES-7200(config)# <b>end</b>	Return to the privileged mode.

This examples enables IGMP Snooping and sets it to the coexistence of the IVGL mode and the SVGL mode:

```
DES-7200# configure Terminal
DES-7200(config)# ip igmp snooping ivgl-svgl
DES-7200(config)# end
```



#### Note

If the user switches over from IVGL-SVGL to other modes, the configuration related to the coexistence of the IVGL mode and the SVGL mode will lose automatically.

## 15.2.9 Configuring the DISABLE Mode

To enable IGMP Snooping and set it to the DISABLE mode, execute the following commands in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>no ip igmp snooping</b>	Disable IGMP Snooping.
DES-7200(config)# <b>end</b>	Return to the privileged mode.

## 15.2.10 Configuring the Maximum Response Time of the IGMP Query Message

The multicast router periodically sends an IGMP Query message to query whether a multicast member exists or not. If the multicast router has not received the IGMP Report message from a host within a period of time, the switch will think this port no longer receives multicast frames, and delete this port from the multicast forwarding table. The default time is 10 seconds.

To configure the maximum response time of the IGMP Query message, execute the following commands in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>ip igmp Snooping query-max-response-time seconds</b>	Set the maximum response time of the IGMP Query message in the range of 1 to 65535 seconds. The default time is 10 seconds.



Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>end</b>	Return to the privileged EXEC mode.

Use **no ip igmp snooping query-max-response-time** to restore the maximum response time to the default value.

### 15.2.11 Configuring Source Port Check

To enable source port check, execute the following commands in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>ip igmp Snooping source-check port.</b>	Enable source port check.
DES-7200(config)# <b>end</b>	Return to the privileged EXEC mode.

You can disable source port check by using the **no ip igmp snooping source-check port** command.

### 15.2.12 Configuring Source IP Check

To enable source IP check, execute the following commands in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>ip igmp snooping source-check default-server</b> <i>address</i>	Enable source IP check. And add multicast—source IP corresponding entry
DES-7200(config)# <b>ip igmp snooping limit-ipmc vlan</b> <i>vid</i> <b>address</b> <i>address</i> <b>server</b> <i>address</i>	Add a multicast group addresses—source IP address (multicast server address) corresponding entry
DES-7200(config)# <b>end</b>	Return to the privileged EXEC mode.

You can disable source IP check by using the **no ip igmp snooping source-check default-server** command.

The following example enables source IP check and set the default source IP address to 192.1.1.1. In the example, a multicast group address-source IP address entry is added, where vid is 1, group IP address is 224.1.1.1, and source ip address is 192.1.2.3.

```
DES-7200# configure Terminal
DES-7200(config)# ip igmp snooping source-check default-server 192.1.1.1
DES-7200(config)# ip igmp snooping limit-ipmc vlan 1 address 224.1.1.1 server 192.1.2.3
DES-7200(config)# end
```



### 15.2.13 Configuring Fast-Leave

To enable fast-leave, execute the following commands in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>ip igmp snooping fast-leave enable</b>	Enable the fast-leave function.
DES-7200(config)# <b>end</b>	Return to the privileged EXEC mode.

You can disable the fast-leave function by using the **no ip igmp snooping fast-leave enable** command.

The following example enables the fast-leave function:

```
DES-7200# configure Terminal
DES-7200(config)# ip igmp snooping fast-leave enable
DES-7200(config)# end
```

### 15.2.14 Configuring IGMP Snooping Suppression

To enable IGMP Snooping suppression, execute the following commands in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>ip igmp snooping suppression enable</b>	Enable IGMP Snooping suppression.
DES-7200(config)# <b>end</b>	Return to the privileged EXEC mode.

You can disable the IGMP Snooping suppression function by using the **no ip igmp snooping suppression enable** command.

The following example enables the IGMP Snooping suppression function:

```
DES-7200# configure Terminal
DES-7200(config)# ip igmp snooping suppression enable
DES-7200(config)# end
```



#### Caution

When the IGMP Snooping suppression is enabled, the DES-7200 series may leak some IGMP Report message to the router interface during the master-slave switching.



### 15.2.15 Configuring Static Members of IGMP Snooping

When IGMP Snooping is enabled, you can statically configure a port to receive a specific multicast flow in disregard of various IGMP packets.

To configure a static member of IGMP Snooping, execute the following commands in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>ip igmp Snooping ivgl</b>	Enable IGMP Snooping and set it as the IVGL mode.
DES-7200(config)# <b>ip igmp snooping vlan <i>vlan-id</i> static <i>ip-addr</i> interface [<i>interface-id</i>]</b>	Statically configure a port to receive a certain multicast flow. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>vlan-id</i>: vid of multicast flow</li> <li>• <i>ip-addr</i>: multicast group address</li> <li>• <i>interface-id</i>: Interface ID</li> </ul>
DES-7200(config)# <b>end</b>	Return to the privileged EXEC mode.

Use **no ip igmp snooping vlan *vlan-id* static *ip-addr* interface *interface-id*** to delete the static member of IGMP Snooping.

This example configures a static member of IGMP snooping:

```
DES-7200# configure Terminal
DES-7200(config)# ip igmp snooping vlan 1 static 224.1.1.1 interface GigabitEthernet 0/7
DES-7200(config)# end
DES-7200(config)# show ip igmp snooping gda
Abbr: M - mrouter
      D - dynamic
      S - static
VLAN  Address                Member ports
----  -
1      224.1.1.1              GigabitEthernet 0/7(S)
```

### 15.2.16 Configuring IGMP Filtering

In some cases, you may need to limit a port to receive a specified set of multicast data flows, and control the maximum number of multicast groups that the port is allowed to join dynamically. IGMP Filtering can address this requirement.

You can apply one IGMP Profile to a port. If the port receives the IGMP Report message, the switch will check if the IP address of the multicast group that the port wants to join is permitted by the IGMP Profile. If so, the switch allows it to join the multicast group.



You can also configure the maximum number of multicast groups that the port is allowed to join. If the number of the multicast groups that the port joins exceeds the threshold, the switch will no longer receive or handle the IGMP Report message.

To enable IGMP Filtering, execute the following commands in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>interface</b> <i>interface-id</i>	Enter the interface configuration interface.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>ip igmp snooping filter</b> <i>profile-number</i>	(Optional) Apply a profile to the interface. The profile number ranges from 1 to 65535.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>ip igmp snooping</b> <i>max-groups number</i>	(Optional) Specify the maximum number of multicast groups that the interface can join, in the range of 0 to 4294967294.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>end</b>	Return to the privileged EXEC mode.

## 15.3 Viewing IGMP Snooping Information

You can view the following IGMP Snooping information:

- Current operation mode
- Router interface
- Dynamic forwarding table
- Source port check
- IGMP Profile
- IGMP Filtering

### 15.3.1 Viewing Current Mode

To view the current operation mode and global configuration of IGMP Snooping, execute the following command in the privileged mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>show ip igmp snooping</b>	View the current operation mode and global configuration of IGMP Snooping.

The following example uses the **show ip igmp snooping** command to view the IGMP Snooping configuration information:

```
DES-7200# show ip igmp snooping
Igmp-snooping mode      : IVGL
SVGL vlan-id            : 1
SVGL profile number     : 0
Source check port       : Disabled
```



Query max response time : 10(Seconds)

### 15.3.2 Viewing and Clearing IGMP snooping Statistics

To view and clear the IGMP Snooping statistics, execute the following commands in the privileged mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>show ip igmp snooping statistics</b> [vlan <i>vlan-id</i> ]	View the IGMP Snooping statistics
DES-7200# <b>clear ip igmp snooping statistics</b>	Clear the IGMP Snooping statistics

The following example uses the **show ip igmp snooping statistics** command to view the IGMP Snooping statistics:

```
DES-7200# show ip igmp snooping statistics
GROUP      Interface      Last report      Last leave      Last
              time              time              reporter
-----
224.1.1.2  VL1:Gi4/2      0d:0h:0m:7s      ----          192.168.9.250
              Report pkts: 1      Leave pkts: 0
```

### 15.3.3 Viewing the Router Interface

To view the router interface information of IGMP Snooping, execute the following commands in the privileged mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>show ip igmp snooping mrouter</b>	Show the router interface information of IGMP Snooping

The following example uses the **show ip igmp snooping** command to view the router interface information of IGMP Snooping:

```
DES-7200# show ip igmp snooping mrouter
Vlan      Interface      State      IGMP profile number
----
1  GigabitEthernet 0/7  static      1
1  GigabitEthernet 0/12  dynamic     0
```

### 15.3.4 Viewing Dynamic Forwarding Table

To view the forwarding rule of each port in the multicast group, that is, the GDA table, execute the following commands in the privileged mode:



Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>show ip igmp snooping gda-table</b>	Show the forwarding rule of each port in the multicast group.

This example shows the information on various multicast groups of the GDA table and the information on all the member ports of one multicast group:

```
DES-7200# show ip igmp snooping gda-table
```

```
Abbr: M - mrouter
```

```
      D - dynamic
```

```
      S - static
```

```
VLAN  Address                Member ports
-----
1      224.1.1.1              GigabitEthernet 0/7(S)
```

### 15.3.5 Viewing Source Port Check Status

To view the current source port check status of IGMP Snooping, execute the following command in the privileged mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>show ip igmp snooping</b>	View the current operation mode and global configuration of IGMP Snooping.

### 15.3.6 Viewing IGMP Profile

To view the IGMP Profile information, execute the following command in the privileged mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>show ip igmp profile</b> <i>profile-number</i>	View the IGMP Profile information.

### 15.3.7 Viewing IGMP Filtering

To view the IGMP Filtering information, execute the following command in the privileged mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>show ip igmp snooping</b> <b>interface</b> <i>interface-id</i>	View IGMP Filtering information.

The following example views the IGMP Filtering information.

```
DES-7200# show ip igmp snooping interface GigabitEthernet 0/7
```

```
Interface          Filter Profile number    max-groups
```



```
-----  
GigabitEthernet 0/7          1          4294967294
```

## 15.4 Configuring Other Restrictions of IGMP Snooping

---

The IGMP Snooping source port check needs to use filtering domain masks. For detailed definition of filtering domain masks, see *“ACL Configuration”*. Address binding, source port check and ACL share the filtering domain masks. The total number of templates available depends on the specific products. As the number of filtering domain masks is limited, these three functions will influence one another. Enabling the address binding function needs to occupy two masks, enabling the source port check occupies two masks, and the usable masks of the ACL depend on whether these two kinds of functions are enabled. By default, the ACL can use 8 masks. If any of the address binding and source port check functions is enabled, the ACL reduces two masks. If the address binding and source port check are concurrently enabled, then the number of usable masks by ACL is reduced by 4, and only four are left. Contrarily, if the ACL uses multiple masks and the remaining masks cannot satisfy the requirement of these two functions, the system will prompt a message “The masks are used up.” when enabling the address binding or source port check function. When any of these three functions cannot operate normally due to short of masks, you can enable this function by reducing the masks occupied by other two functions. For example, when you enable the source port check, the system prompts that the mask will be used up. In this case, you can disable the address binding function (deleting all address bindings) or delete the ACEs of the ACL occupying multiple masks to enable the source port check function.

If the source port check is enabled when you enable the IGMP Snooping or set the router interface, the source port check function may fail due to short of masks. At this time, the system prompts “Source port check applying failed for hardware out of resources.” In this case, you should release other masks, disable and then enable the source port check.



# 16

## PIM-Snooping Configuration

This chapter will describe how to configure the protocol-independent multicast snooping on the DES-7200 series switches. It will cover the contents below:

- Understand the PIM snooping principle.
- Default PIM snooping configuration.
- PIM snooping configuration guide and limit.
- Configure the PIM snooping.

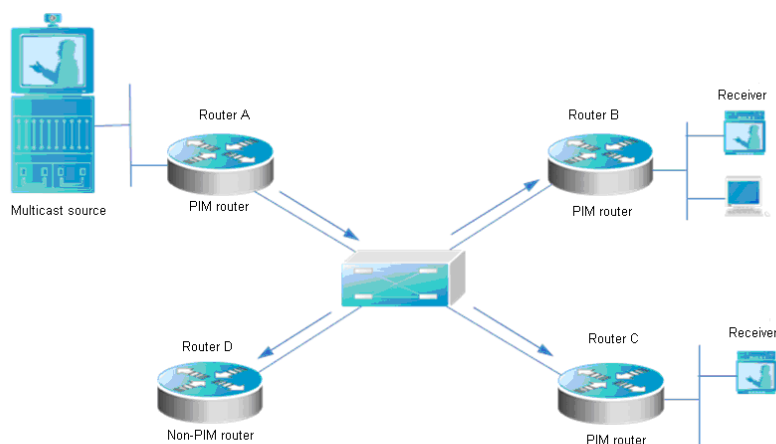
### 16.1 Understanding PIM Snooping Principle

Within the network that the L2 switches connect with several routers, the switches will flood multicast frames to all the ports of these routers, even though the multicast function is not enabled in the downstream direction. When the PIM snooping is enabled, the switches will limit multicast frames to the ports connecting the multicast-enabled routers.

The figure below shows the flooding of multicast frames before the PIM snooping is enabled and the restriction of multicast frames after the PIM snooping is enabled.

As shown in Figure 16-1, multicast frames is flooded to all the ports of the switch when the PIM snooping is not enabled.

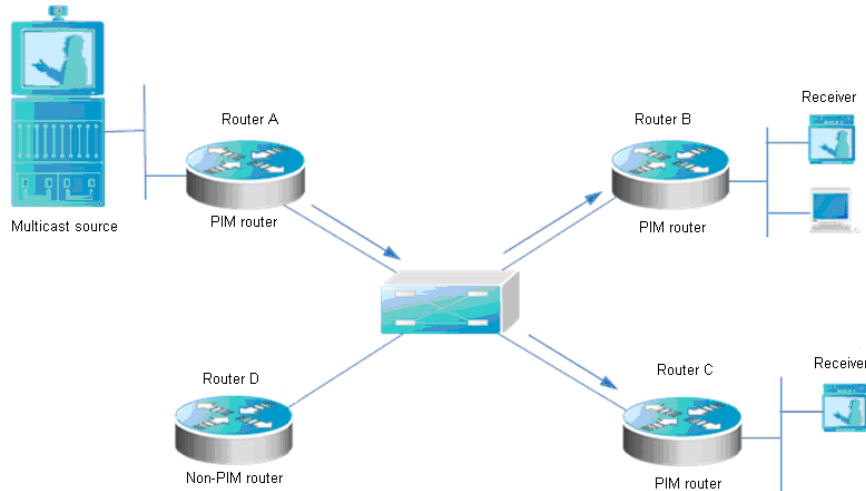
**Figure 16-1** Multicast flow When the PIM Snooping is not enabled





As shown in the Figure 16-2, multicast frames flow only to the ports that connect with the multicast routers B and C, but not to the router D.

**Figure 16-2** Multicast flow after the PIM Snooping is enabled



Snooping means “eavesdrop”, from which we can understand the working process easily. When the L2 multicast device “eavesdrops” Hello message from router, it will add the interface to the multicast forwarding table. In a certain time, if the L2 multicast device does not receive Hello message, the interface will be removed from the forwarding table.

## 16.2 PIM Snooping Default Configuration

By default, the PIM snooping is disabled.

## 16.3 PIM Snooping Configuration Guide and Limit

- The PIM snooping is applicable for PIM-DM and PIM-SM at the same time.
- The PIM snooping can be enabled or disabled on SVI individually.
- The PIM snooping can take real effect for the forwarding of the multicast flows only when the multicast route and PIM are enabled, .
- The neighbor information of the PIM snooping will be timed out upon the hold time of the Hello message.
- The neighbor information of the PIM snooping will be removed only for timeout. However, the change of the port status has no direct effect on the neighbors of this port.



## 16.4 Configuring the PIM Snooping

This section will describe how to configure the PIM snooping.

- Enable the PIM snooping globally.
- Enable the PIM snooping on SVI.

### 16.4.1 Enable the PIM Snooping Globally

To enable the PIM snooping globally, execute the following commands:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>ip pim snooping</b>	Enable the PIM snooping.
DES-7200(config)# <b>no ip pim snooping</b>	Disable the PIM snooping.
DES-7200(config)# <b>end</b>	Exit the global configuration mode.
DES-7200# <b>show ip pim snooping</b>	Verify the configuration.

The following example will show how to enable the PIM Snooping globally and verify the configuration.

```
DES-7200(config)# ip pim snooping
DES-7200(config)# end
DES-7200# show ip pim snooping
```

### 16.4.2 Configuring PIM Snooping on the Interface

PIM Snooping must be enabled in each SVI interface respectively. After enabling PIM Snooping on the interface, you can snoop PIM packet, maintain and renew L2 multicast forwarding list.

In the interface configuration mode, execute the following command to configure PIM Snooping on the interface:

Command	Description
DES-7200(config)# <b>interface vlan</b> <i>vlan_ID</i>	Enter SVI interface configuration mode.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>ip pim</b> <b>snooping</b>	Enable PIM Snooping on the interface.

The following example shows how to enable and verify the configuration on the interface.

```
DES-7200(config)# interface vlan 199
DES-7200(config-if)# ip pim snooping
```



```
DES-7200(config-if)# end
DES-7200# show ip pim snooping
```

## 16.5 Monitoring and Maintaining PIM-Snooping

PIM Snooping offers command **show** to monitor and maintain PIM Snooping. You can view PIM Snooping information such as global configuration,neighboring list by executing command **show**.

### 16.5.1 Viewing PIM-Snooping

Use the following command to view PIM Snooping running status information:

Command	Function
<b>show ip pim snooping</b>	Show global configuration information of PIM Snooping.
<b>show ip pim snooping vlan</b>	Show PIM Snooping in a VLAN.

For the detailed usage of the above command, please refer to *PIM-Snooping Command Reference*.

Here is an example:

```
DES-7200#show ip pim snooping
PIM Snooping table: 2 neighbours, Memory:16
Interface VLAN 7(4103), PC:2
Port GigabitEthernet 0/7(7), NC:1
Neighbour 4.4.4.1, GenID 0X2f853a91, Holdtime 105s, NLT 79s
Port GigabitEthernet 0/8(8), NC:1
Neighbour 4.4.4.2, GenID 0X38545b24, Holdtime 105s, NLT 81s
```

The example above explains how to configure PIM Snooping globally. The user configures PIM Snooping and learns two PIM neighbours in VLAN 7.

## 16.6 Examples of PIM-Snooping Configuration

### 16.6.1 Configuration requirement

As the following figure shows, multicast flow arrives on the interface of L3 switch in VLAN 2. In VLAN 3, being the routers in the downward direction, only router B configures PIM protocol while router A does not.



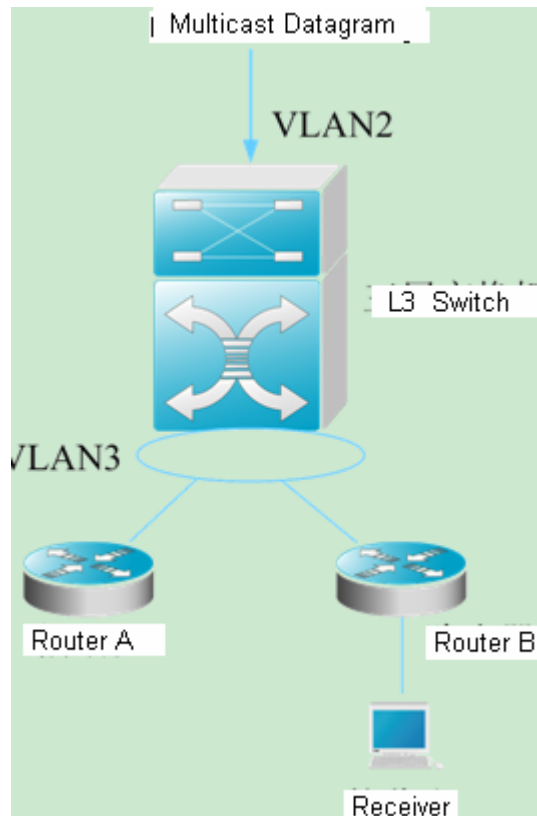


Figure16-3 Topology Structure of PIM-Snooping Configuration Example

### 16.6.2 Device configuration

The following example explains how to configure PIM Snooping on L2 multicast device:

```
DES-7200(config)# ip pim snooping
DES-7200(config)# interface vlan 3
DES-7200(config-if)# ip pim snooping
DES-7200(config-if)# end
```

You can configure PIM Snooping for L2 multicast device in VLAN 3 according to above steps and view the running status of PIM Snooping by command **show**.



# 17

## MSTP Configuration

### 17.1 MSTP Overview

---

#### 17.1.1 STP and RSTP

---

##### 17.1.1.1 STP and RSTP Overview

---

DES-7200 series supports both the STP protocol and the RSTP protocol, as well as complying with the IEEE 802.1D and IEEE 802.1w standards.

The STP protocol can prevent broadcast storm caused by link loops and provide link redundancy and backup.

For the layer 2 Ethernet, there is only one active channel between two LANs to avoid broadcast storm. However, it is necessary to set up redundant links to improve the reliability of a LAN. Furthermore, some channels should be in the backup status in order to take up its work when a link fails. It is obviously hard to control this process by manual. The STP protocol can complete this work automatically. It enables a device in a LAN to:

- Discover and activate an optimal tree-type topology of the LAN.
- Detect and fix failures and automatically update the network topology to offer the possible optimal tree-type structure at any time.

The LAN topology is automatically calculated by a set of bridge parameters set by the administrator. The proper configuration of these parameters is helpful to offer an optimal solution.

The RSTP protocol is completely compatible with the 802.1D STP protocol downward. As with traditional protocol, the RSTP protocol can prevent loop and offer link redundancy. The most critical feature of the RSTP protocol is quickness. If the bridges in a LAN support the RSTP protocol and are configured appropriately by administrators, it will take no more than 1 second to re-span the topology tree once the network topology changes (it takes about 50 seconds for traditional STP protocol to re-span the topology tree).

##### 17.1.1.2 Bridge Protocol Data Units (BPDU):

---

A stable tree-type topology depends on the following elements :

- The unique bridge ID of each bridge consists of the bridge priority and the MAC address.
- The root path cost refers to the cost from a bridge to the root bridge.



- Each port ID consists of the port priority and port number.

By exchanging the Bridge Protocol Data Units (BPDU) frame destined to the multicast address 01-80-C2-00-00-00 (in hex), bridges get the information necessary for building the optimal tree-type topology.

A BPDU is comprised of the following elements:

- Root Bridge ID (root bridge ID that a bridge considers)
- Root Path cost (Root Path cost of a bridge).
- Bridge ID (ID of a bridge).
- Message age (the live time of the message)
- Port ID (port ID sending the message).
- Forward-Delay Time, Hello Time and Max-Age: time parameters.
- Other flag bits, such as network topology change and port status.

Once a port of a bridge receives a BPDU message whose priority is higher than its priority (or smaller bridge ID and smaller root path cost), the bridge will store this message on the port while updating and propagating them to all other ports. If the BPDU with lower priority is received, the bridge will discard this message.

This mechanism propagates a BPDU message of higher priority in the whole network. As a result:

- A bridge is elected to be the root bridge in the network.
- Each bridge other than the root bridge has a root port that offers a shortest path to the root bridge.
- Each bridge will calculate the shortest path to the root bridge.
- Each LAN has a designated bridge that lies in the shortest path between this LAN and the root bridge. The port for connecting the designated bridge and the LAN is referred to as the designated port.
- The root port and the designated port are in the forwarding status.
- Other ports beyond the spanning tree are in the discarding status.

### 17.1.1.3 Bridge ID

As specified in IEEE 802.1W standard, each bridge has a unique bridge ID based on which the root bridge is elected in spanning tree algorithm. The bridge ID consists of eight bytes, in which the last six bytes are the MAC address of the bridge, and the first two bytes are shown in the table below. Of which, the first four bits denote the priority, while the last eight bits denote the system ID for extending the protocol in the future. This value is 0 in the RSTP, so the priority of the bridge should be configured as the multiple of 4096.

	Priority value				System ID											
Bit	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1



	Priority value				System ID											
Value	32768	16384	8192	4096	2048	1024	512	256	128	64	32	16	8	4	2	1

#### 17.1.1.4 Spanning-Tree Timers

The following describes three timers impacting the performance of spanning tree.

- Hello timer: Interval to send the BUDU message.
- Forward-Delay timer: Interval to change the port status, that is, the time interval at which the port switches from the listening status to the learning status and vice versa when the RSTP protocol runs in the compatible STP protocol mode.
- Max-Age timer: The longest time for the BPDU message. The system will discard the message when the timer times out.

#### 17.1.1.5 Port Roles and Status

A port plays a role to present its function in the network topology.

- Root port: The port that provides the shortest path to the root bridge.
- Designated port: The port through which each LAN is connected to the root bridge.
- Alternate port: The alternate port of the root port that will take up its work when the root port fails.
- Backup port: The backup port of the designated port. If two ports of a bridge are connected to a LAN, the port with higher priority is the designated port and the other one is the backup port.
- Disable port: The port that is not in the active status, namely, the ports whose operation status is down.

Figure 17-1, Figure 17-2 and Figure 17-3 below show the roles of various ports:

R = Root port    D = Designated port    A = Alternate port    B = Backup port

Unless otherwise stated, the priorities of these ports are in the descending order from left to right.

**Figure 17-1**

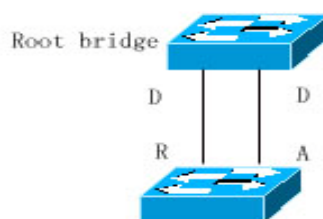




Figure 17-2

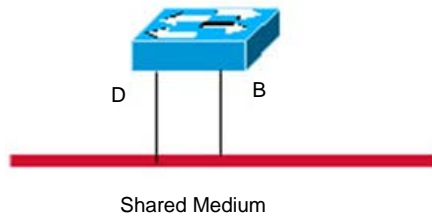
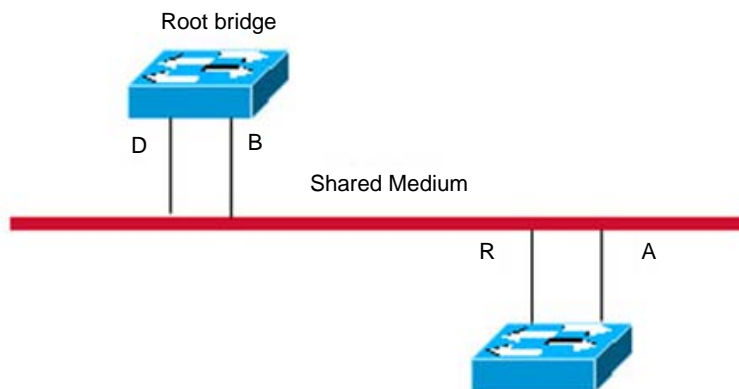


Figure 17-3



There are three port states for every port to indicate whether the data packet is forwarded and control the topology of the whole spanning tree.

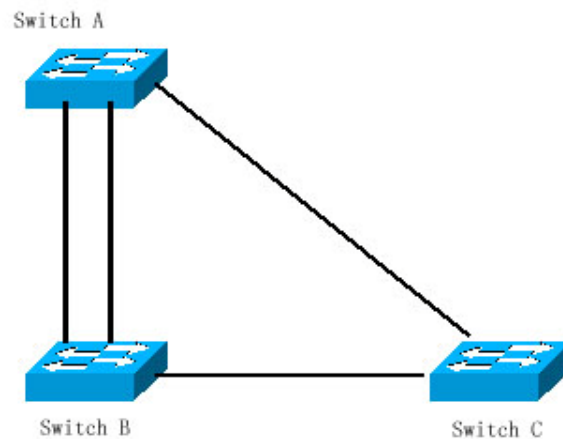
- Discarding: Neither forward the received frame nor learn about the source Mac address.
- Learning: Do not forward the received frame, but learn about the source Mac address, so it is a transitional status.
- Forwarding: Both forward the received frame and learn about the source Mac address.

For the stable network topology, only the root port and designated port can be the forwarding status, while other ports are only in the discarding status.

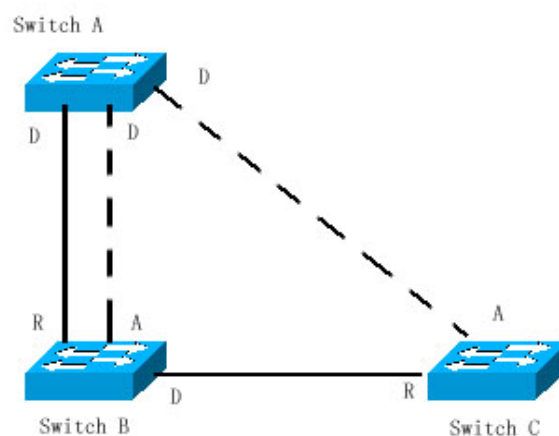
#### 17.1.1.6 Generating a Network Topology Tree (Typical Application Solution)

We now describe how the STP and RSTP protocols span a tree-type structure by the mixed network topology. As shown in Figure 17-4, the bridge IDs of Switches A, B and C are assumed in the ascending order. Namely, Switch A presents the highest priority. There is the 1000M link between switch A and switch B, and the 100M link between switch A and switch C, while it is the 10M link between switch B and switch C. Switch A acts as the backbone switch of this network and implements the link redundancy for both Switch B and Switch C. Obviously, broadcast storm would occur if all these links are active.



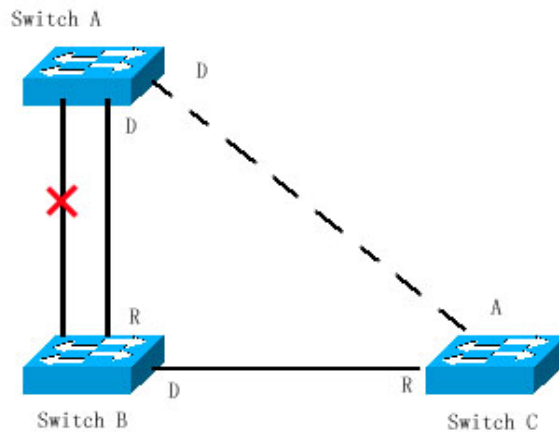
**Figure 17-4**

If all of these three switches enable the Spanning Tree protocol, they will select switch A as the root bridge by exchanging BPDU message. Once Switch B detects that two ports are connected to Switch A, it will select the port with the highest priority as the root port, while another one is selected as the alternate port. Meanwhile, Switch C detects that it can reach Switch A through Switch B or directly. However, Switch C discovers that the cost of the path from Switch B to Switch A is lower than that directly (For the costs corresponding to various paths, refer to table \*\*\*), so Switch C selects the port connected with Switch B as the root port, while the one that connected with Switch A as the alternate port. Various ports enter the corresponding status after their roles are determined. As a result, the network topology is generated as shown in Figure 17-5.

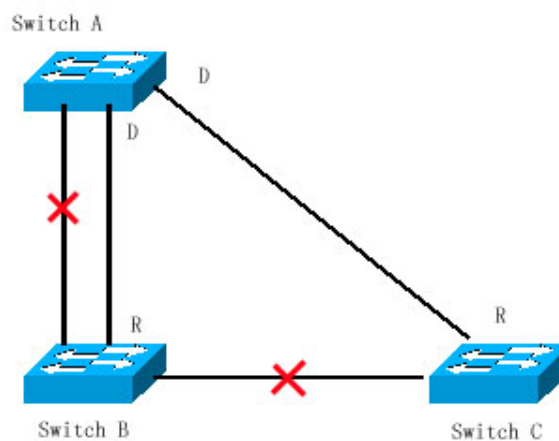
**Figure 17-5**

If the active path between Switch A and Switch B fails, the backup path will work. Consequently, the network topology is generated as shown in Figure 17-6.



**Figure 17-6**

If the path between Switch B and Switch C fails, Switch C will automatically switch the alternate port to the root port. Consequently, the network topology is generated as shown in Figure 17-7.

**Figure 17-7**

#### 17.1.1.7 Rapid Convergence of RSTP

The following introduces the special function of RSTP: enabling rapid forwarding on a port.

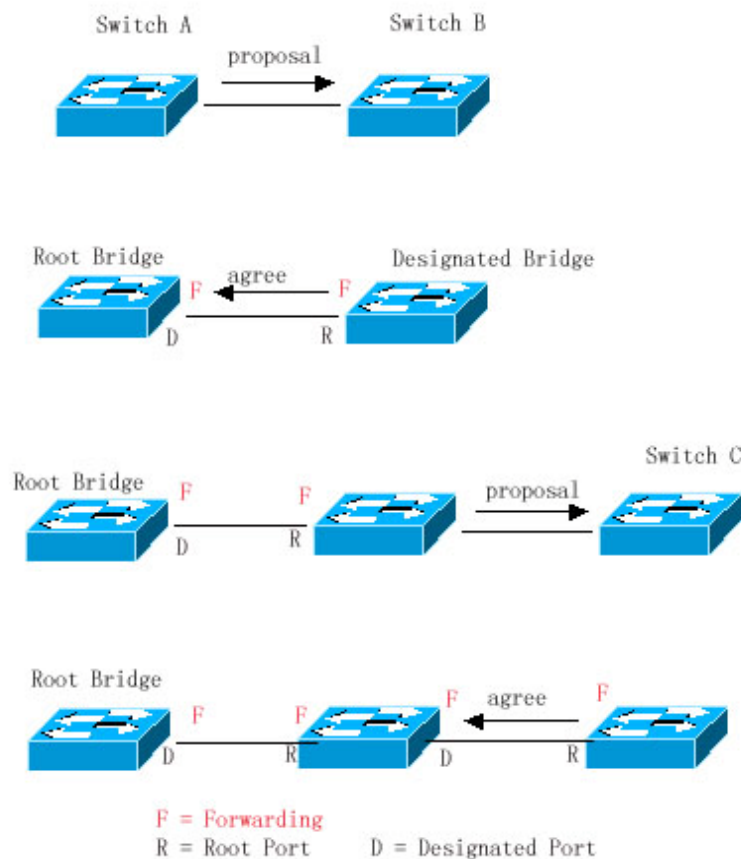
The STP protocol will forward packets after 30s since the port roles are selected. Furthermore, the root port and designated port of each bridge will carry out the forwarding again after 30s, so it will take about 50s to stabilize the tree-type structure of the whole network topology.

The forwarding procedure of the RSTP protocol is different from that of the STP protocol. As shown in Figure 17-8, Switch A sends the specific proposal message of the RSTP protocol. Switch B detects that the priority of Switch A is higher than itself, takes the Switch A as the root bridge and the port that receives the message as the root port and forwards the



proposal message. Then it sends the Agree message to Switch A through the root port. Upon the receipt of the proposal message, Switch A will forward the message through its designated port. After that, Switch sends the proposal message through the designated port to extend the spanning tree in turn. In theory, the RSTP protocol can immediately restore the tree-type network structure to implement rapid convergence when the network topology changes.

Figure 17-8

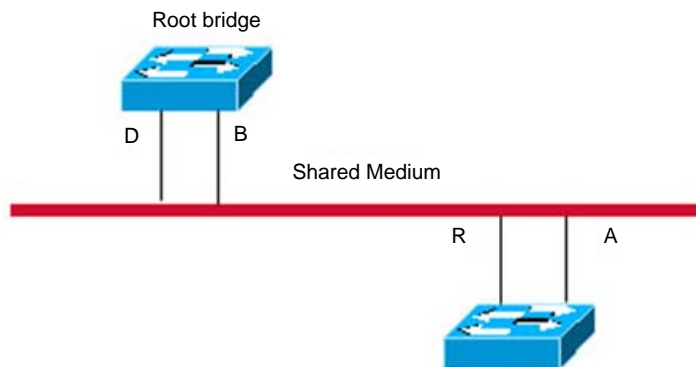
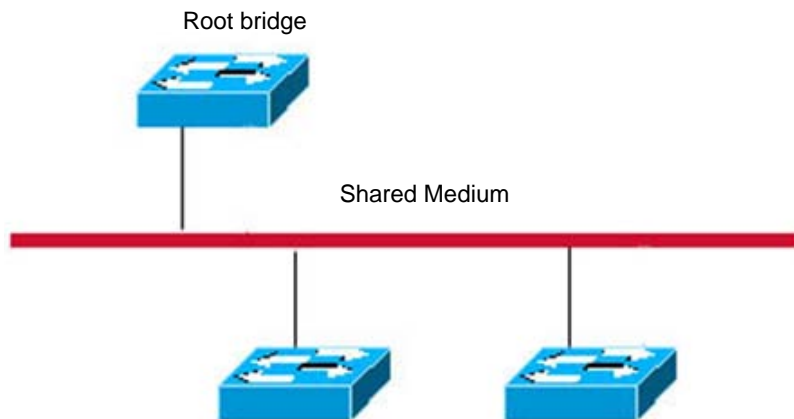
**Caution**

“Point-to-point Connection” between ports is required for the above “handshaking” process. In order to make full use of you device, do not use non-point-to-point connection between devices.

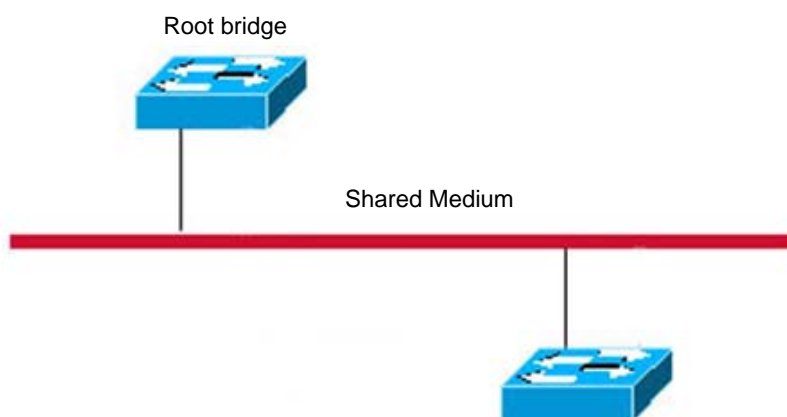
Other than Figure 17-9, other schematics in this chapter are the point-to-point connection. The following lists the example figure of the non point-to-point connection.

Example of Non Point-to-point Connection:



**Figure 17-9****Figure 17-10**

In addition, the following figure is a point-to-point connection and should be differentiated by users carefully.

**Figure 17-11**



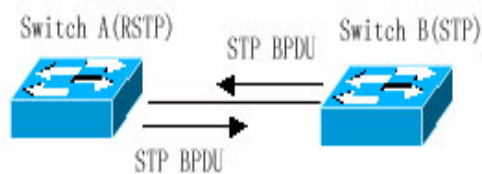
### 17.1.1.8 Compatibility of RSTP and STP

The RSTP protocol is completely compatible with the STP protocol. It will judge whether the connected bridge supports the STP protocol or the RSTP protocol by the version number of the received BPDU message automatically. Only the forwarding process of the STP protocol is executed in the case of that the bridge supports the STP protocol. This cannot maximize the performance of the RSTP protocol.

Furthermore, using the RSTP protocol and the STP protocol will cause a problem. As shown in Figure 17-12, Switch A supports the RSTP protocol, while Switch B supports the STP protocol. Both switches are connected with each other. Switch A will send the STP BPDU message to Switch B for compatibility. However, if Switch A is connected with the RSTP-enabled Switch C, Switch A still sends the STP BPDU message, and thus causing that Switch C considers Switch A a STP-enabled bridge. As a result, two RSTP-supported switches run the STP protocol, reducing their efficiency greatly.

For this reason, the RSTP protocol provides the protocol-migration function to send the RSTP BPDU message forcibly. In this way, Switch C will detect the bridge connected with it supports the RSTP protocol, so both two devices can run the RSTP protocol as shown in Figure 17-13.

**Figure 17-12** Protocol Migration



**Figure 17-13**



### 17.1.2 MSTP Overview

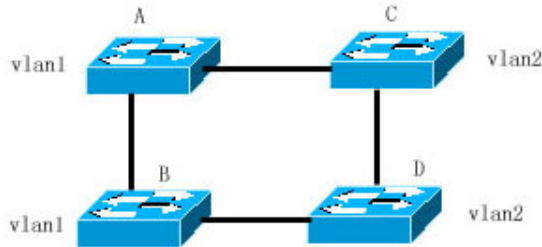
DES-7200 series supports the MSTP protocol, a new spanning-tree protocol derived from the traditional STP and RSTP protocols that includes the rapid forwarding mechanism of the RSTP protocol itself.

Since traditional spanning tree protocols are not related to a VLAN, the following problems may occur in a specific network topology.



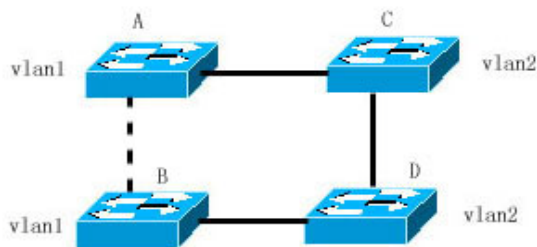
As shown in Figure 17-14, Switches A and B are located in Vlan1, and switches C and D in Vlan2. They form a loop.

**Figure 17-14**



If the cost of the path from Switch A through Switch C, Switch D to Switch B is smaller than that of the direct path from Switch A to Switch B, the latter path will be torn down, as shown in Figure 17-15. Packets in Vlan1 can not be forwarded because Switches C and D do not contain Vlan1. In this way, Vlan1 of Switch A cannot communicate with Vlan1 of Switch B.

**Figure 17-15**

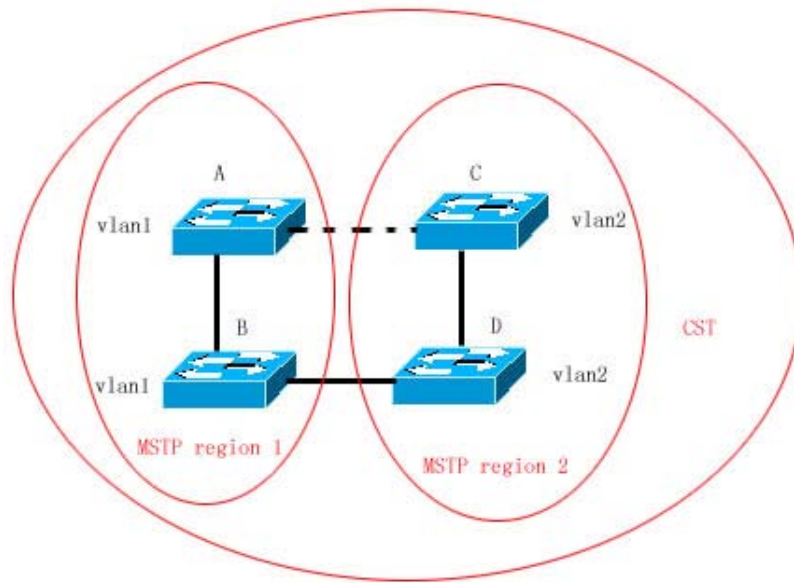


The MSTP protocol is developed to address this problem. It partitions one or more vlans of the switch into an instance, so the switches with the same instance configuration form a region (MST region) to run a separated spanning tree (this internal spanning-tree is referred to as the IST). The MST region is equivalent to a large device, which executes the spanning tree algorithm with other MST regions to obtain a whole spanning tree, referred to as the common spanning tree (CST).

With this algorithm, the above mentioned network can form the topology shown in Figure 17-16. Switches A and B are within the MSTP region 1 without a loop, so no path is discarded. This is also the case in the MSTP region 2. Region 1 and region 2 serve as two large devices respectively. There is a loop between them, so one path is discarded according to related configuration.



Figure 17-16



In this way, no loop occurs and the communication between the devices in a VLAN works as well.

#### 17.1.2.1 How to Partition MSTP regions

According to above description, MSTP regions should be partitioned rationally and the switches in a MSTP region should be configured similarly for the MSTP protocol to work properly.

The MST configuration information contains:

- MST region name (name): A string of up to 32 bytes identifying the MSTP region.
- MST revision number: A revision number of 16 bits identifying the MSTP region.
- MST instance-vlan table: Each device can create up to 64 instances with IDs ranging from 1 to 64). Instance 0 always exists, so the system totally supports 65 instances. You can allocate 1 to 4094 VLANs for different instances (0 to 64) as needed, and the unallocated VLANs belong to instance 0 by default. In this way, each MSTI (MST instance) is a VLAN group and executes the spanning tree algorithm within the MSTI according to the MSTI information of the BPDU without the effect of the CIST and other MSTIs.

You can use the **spanning-tree mst configuration** command in the global configuration mode to enter the MST configuration mode and configure above information.

The MSTP BPDU carries above information. If a device has received the same MST configuration information of the BPDU as that of itself, it considers that the device connecting to this port belong to the same MST region as itself.



You are recommended to configure the instance-vlan table while the STP protocol is disabled, and then enable the MSTP protocol to ensure the stability and convergence of the network topology.

### 17.1.2.2 Spanning Tree within a MSTP region (IST)

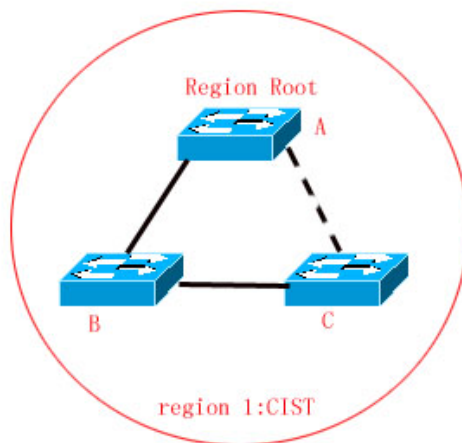
After MSTP regions are partitioned, a root bridge is elected for every instance within a region and the port role is determined for every port on a switch. A port is forwarded or discarded within an instance depends on its role.

In this way, the IST (Internal Spanning Tree) is formed by exchanging the MSTP BPDU message, and various instances have their own spanning trees (MSTI). The spanning tree corresponding to the instance 0 is referred to as the CIST (Common Instance Spanning Tree) in conjunction with CST. That is to say, each instance provides each VLAN group with a single network topology without loop.

As shown in the following figure, Switches A, B and C form a loop within the region 1.

Switch A with the highest priority is selected as the region root in the CIST (instance 0). Then, the path between Switches A and C is discarded according to other parameters. Hence, for the VLAN group of instance 0, only the path from switch A to B and switch B to switch C are available, which break the loop of the VLAN group.

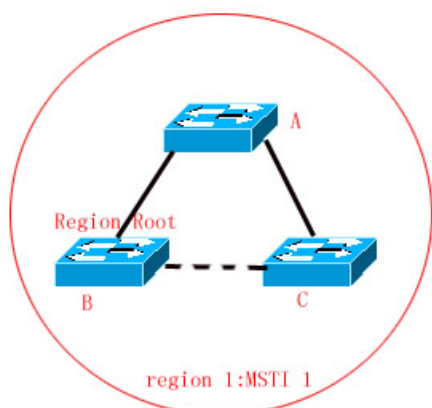
Figure 17-17



As shown in Figure 17-18, switch C with the highest priority is selected as the region root in the MSTI 1 (instance 1). Then, the path between switch A and B is discarded according to other parameters. Hence, for the VLAN group of instance 1, only the path from switch A to switch B and switch A to switch C are available, which break the loop of the VLAN group.

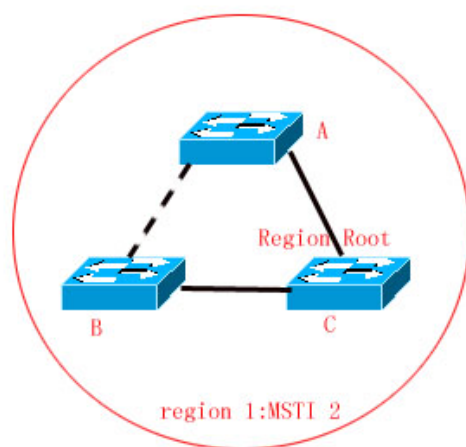


Figure 17-18



As shown in Figure 17-19, switch B with the highest priority is selected as the region root in the MSTI 2 (instance 2). Then, the path between switch B and switch C is discarded according to other parameters. Hence, for the VLAN group of instance 2, only the path from switch A to switch B and switch B to switch C are available, which break the loop of the VLAN group.

Figure 17-19



It should note that the MSTP protocol is not concerned on which VLAN a port belongs to, so users should configure corresponding path costs and priorities for ports according to actual VLAN configuration to prevent the MSTP protocol from breaking the loop unnecessarily.

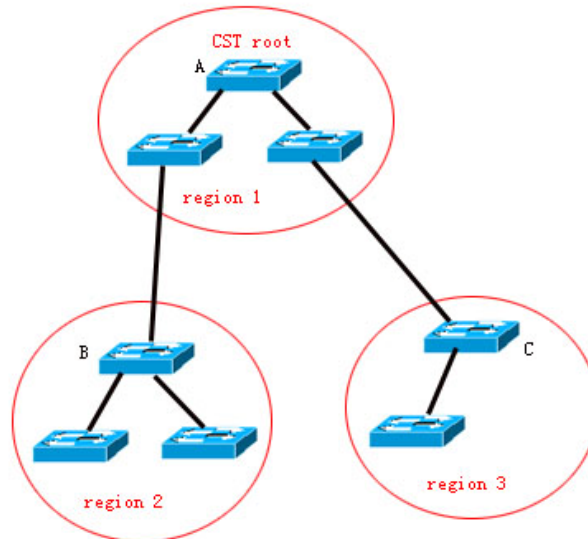
### 17.1.2.3 Spanning Tree between MSTP regions (CST)

For CST, each MSTP region is equivalent to a large-sized device, and different MSTP regions also form a large-sized network topology tree, referred to as CST (common spanning tree). As shown in Figure 17-20, for CST, switch A with the smallest bridge ID is



selected as the root of the entire CST (CST Root) and the CIST Regional Root in this region. In Region 2, since the root path cost from switch B to the CST root is the lowest one, switch B is selected as the CIST Regional Root in this region. Similarly, switch C is selected as the CIST Regional Root in Region 3.

Figure 17-20



The CIST Regional Root is not necessarily the device with the smallest bridge ID in that region. It is the device in the region that has the lowest root path cost to the CST root.

At the same time, the root port of the CIST regional root takes a new port role for the MSTI, namely the **Master port**, as the outlet of all instances, which is forwarded to all instances. In order to make the topology more stable, it is recommended to configure the outlet of the regions to the CST root on one device of this region as much as possible!

#### 17.1.2.4 Hop Count

The IST and MSTI will not take the message age and Max age to calculate whether the BPDU message is timeout. Instead, they use the mechanism similar to the TTL of IP packets, namely hop count.

You can set it by using the **spanning-tree max-hops** command in the global configuration mode. The hop count is reduced by 1 when the BPDU message passes through a device in a region starting from the region root bridge until it is 0, which means the BPDU message is timeout. A device will discard the BPDU message whose hop count is 0.

In order to be compatible with the STP protocol and the RSTP protocol out a region, the MSTP protocol still remains the Message age and Max age mechanisms.



### 17.1.2.5 Compatibility of MSTP with RSTP and STP

---

For the STP protocol, the MSTP protocol will send the STP BPDU to be compatible with it like the RSTP protocol. For detailed information, refer to the Compatibility of RSTP and STP section.

For the RSTP protocol, it will process the CIST part of the MSTP BPDU, so it is not necessary for the MSTP to send the RSTP BPDU to be compatible with it.

Each device that runs the STP or RSTP protocol is an independent region, and does not form the same region with any other device.

## 17.2 Overview of Optional Features of MSTP

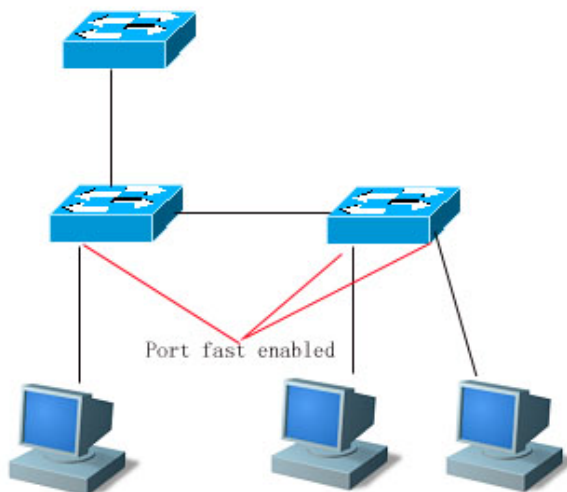
---

### 17.2.1 Understanding Port Fast

---

If a port of a device is connected with the network terminal directly, this port can be set as the Port Fast to forward packets directly. The port does not need to wait 30 seconds before forwarding packets, which is the case when the port is not set to Port Fast. The following figure indicates which ports of a device can be set to Port Fast.

Figure 17-21



If the BPDU message is received from the Port Fast enabled port, its Port Fast operational state is disabled. At this time, this port will execute the forwarding by normal STP algorithm.



### 17.2.2 Understanding BPDU Guard

---

The BPDU guard can be enabled globally or on individual interface. There are some slightly difference between these two ways.

You can use the **spanning-tree portfast bpduguard default** command to open the global BPDU guard enabled status in the privileged mode. In this status, if the BPDU message is received through a Port Fast-enabled port, this port will enter the error-disabled status, indicating the configuration error. At the same time, the port will be closed to show that some illegal users may add a network device to the network, which change the network topology.

You can also use the **spanning-tree bpduguard enable** command to enable BPDU guard on individual interface in the interface configuration mode (it is not related to whether this port enables the Port Fast). Under this situation, it will enter the error-disabled status if this interface receives the BPDU message.

### 17.2.3 Understanding BPDU Filter

---

The BPDU filter can be enabled globally or on individual interface. There are some slightly difference between these two ways.

You can use the **spanning-tree portfast bpdufilter default** command to enable the BPDU filter globally in the privileged mode. In this status, a Port Fast enabled port will not receive or transmit the BPDU message, so the device directly connecting the port cannot receive the BPDU message. The BPDU filter will be disabled when the Port Fast is disabled for the port receives the BPDU message.

You can also use the **spanning-tree bpdufilter enable** command to enable the BPDU filter on individual interface in the interface configuration mode (it is not related to whether this port enables the Port Fast). In this situation, this interface will not receive or transmit the BPDU message, but execute the forwarding directly.

### 17.2.4 Understanding Tc-protection

---

Tc-protection can only be enabled or disabled globally. It is enabled by default.

Once Tc-protection is enabled, the switch will delete the message within a certain period of time (usually 4 seconds) after receiving the TC-BPDU message while monitoring the TC-BPDU message. If it receives the TC-BPDU message during this period, it will perform the delete operation again after this period expires. This eliminates the need of frequently deleting MAC address entries and ARP entries.



### 17.2.5 Understanding TC Guard

The Tc-Protection function can reduce the removal of MAC address entries and ARP entries when a lot number of TC messages are generated in a network. However, you need to do more delete operations in case of TC message attack. Furthermore, the TC message is propagated and will have an effect on the whole network. The TC Guard function allows you to disable the propagation of the TC message globally or on ports. When TC Guard function is configured globally or on a port, the port will shield the TC messages received or produced to prevent from propagating them to other ports. In this way, this function can manage TC message attack in the network and maintain the network stability. Moreover, this function can prevent from interrupting core routes due to the oscillation of the devices on the access layer.



#### Caution

1. Network communication will be broken off if you use tc-guard function incorrectly.
2. You are recommended to enable this function when you ensure that there is illegal tc message attack in the network.
3. If you enable global tc-guard, then all the ports will not spread tc message. It is applicable for those devices that are accessed on the desk to enable this function.
4. If you enable interface tc-guard, then the topology change and tc message received on this port will not be spreaded to other ports. It is applicable for up-link ports especially aggregated ports to enable this function.

### 17.2.6 Understanding BPDU Source MAC Check

The global of the BPDU source MAC check function is to prevent malicious attack on the switch by sending the BPDU message manually and thus cause the MSTP protocol work abnormally. When the peer switch connected to a port in the point-to-point mode is determined, enabling the BPDU source MAC check function can receive only the BPDU message from the remote switch and discard all other BPDU messages to protect against malicious attacks. You can configure the corresponding MAC addresses for the BPDU source MAC check function on a specific port in the interface mode. Only one MAC address is configured for one port. BPDU source MAC check can be disabled by using the **no bpdu src-mac-check** command. In this case, any BPDU message is received on the port.



### 17.2.7 Understanding Invalid Length Filtering for BPDU

---

When the Ethernet length field of the BPDU message exceeds 1500 bits, this BPDU message is discarded in order to avoid receiving invalid BPDU messages.

### 17.2.8 Understanding Automatic Identification of Edge Ports

---

If the specified port doesn't receive the BPDU message sent by the downstream port within a certain period of time (3 seconds), the port will be considered that it connects a network device and set as an edge port to enter the Forwarding status directly. An edge port will be automatically identified as a non-edge port after receiving the BPDU message.

You can cancel the automatic identification function of the edge port by the **spanning-tree autoedge disabled** command.

This function is enabled by default.



#### Caution

When the automatic identification function of the edge port conflicts with the manual Port Fast, it will take the manual Port Fast as the standard.

This function can be used for rapid negotiation forwarding between the designated port and the downstream port, so the STP protocol doesn't support this function. If the designated port is in the forwarding status, Autoedge does not take effect on the port. It will take effect during repaid renegotiation such as plugging/unplugging network cables.

If a port enables the BPUD Filter, it forwards the BPDU message directly, but not be identified as the edge port automatically.

This function is only applicable for the designated port.

### 17.2.9 Understanding ROOT Guard

---

In network design, root bridge and backup root bridge are always divided in the same region. Due to error configuration of accendant and malicious attack in the network, it is possible that root bridge receives configuration message of higher priority and loses the current root bridge position, leading to error turbulence of network topology, which Root Guard function can prevent from occurring.

When enabling Root Guard, it enforces the port role of all the instances as specified port. Once the port receives configuration message of higher priority, Root Guard will set the interface as root-inconsistent (blocked). If there is no configuration message of higher priority during the time long enough, the port will be restored to be the original normal status.





1. Incorrectly using ROOT Guard leads to network link breakdown.
2. If you enable ROOT Guard on non-designated port, the non-designated port will be enforced as designated port and show BKN status.
3. If MST0 enters BKN status because it receives configuration message of higher priority, ROOT Guard will enforce the ports in all the other instances to enter BKN status.
4. ROOT Guard or LOOP Guard takes effect at the same time. That is , they can not both take effect at the same time .

### 17.2.10 Understanding LOOP Guard

Due to breakdown of one-way link, root port or backup port becomes designated port, being ready to forward because they can not receive BPDU, causing the loop in the network, which Loop Guard function can prevent.

For the ports configured loop guard, if they can not receive BPDU, the port roles will be migrated. However, the port state is always set as discarding till the port receive BPDU again and recalculate spanning tree.



1. You can enable LOOP Guard based on global or interface.
2. ROOT Guard or LOOP Guard takes effect at the same time. That is , they can not both take effect at the same time .

## 17.3 Configuring MSTP

### 17.3.1 Default Spanning Tree Configuration

The following table lists the default configuration of the Spanning Tree protocol.

Item	Default value
Enable State	Disable
STP MODE	MSTP
STP Priority	32768
STP port Priority	128
STP port cost	Automatically determine according to port rate.



Item	Default value
Hello Time	2 seconds
Forward-delay Time	15 seconds
Max-age Time	20 seconds
Default calculation method of the Path Cost	Long
Tx-Hold-Count	3
Link-type	Automatically determine by the duplex status of the port.
Maximum hop count	20
Corresponding relationship between vlan and instance	All VLANs belong to instance 0 Only instance 0 exists

You can restore the STP parameters to its default configuration (except for disabling STP) by using the **spanning-tree reset** command.

### 17.3.2 Enabling and Disabling the Spanning Tree Protocol

By default, DES-7200 series runs the MSTP protocol.

The spanning tree protocol is disabled on the device by default.

To enable the spanning tree protocol, execute the following command in the privileged mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
DES-7200(config)# <b>spanning-tree</b>	Enable the spanning tree protocol.
DES-7200(config)# <b>end</b>	Return to the privileged EXEC mode.
DES-7200# <b>show spanning-tree</b>	Verify the configuration.
DES-7200# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Save the configuration.

To disable the spanning tree protocol, use the **no spanning-tree** command in the global configuration mode.



### 17.3.3 Configuring the Spanning Tree Mode

According to the 802.1-related protocols, it is not necessary for administrators to set much for three versions of the spanning tree protocols such as the STP, RSTP and MSTP. These versions are compatible with one another naturally. However, given that some manufacturers will not develop the spanning tree protocol by standards, it may cause some compatibility problem. Hence, we provide a command to facilitate administrators to switch to the lower version of the spanning tree protocol for compatibility when they detect that this device is not compatible with that of other manufacturers.

Note: When you switch to the RSTP or STP version from the MSTP version, all information about MSTP Region will be cleared.

The default mode of the device is MSTP.

To enable the spanning tree protocol, execute the following command in the privileged mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
DES-7200(config)# <b>spanning-tree mode mstp/rstp/stp</b>	Switch the spanning tree version.
DES-7200(config)# <b>end</b>	Return to the privileged EXEC mode.
DES-7200# <b>show spanning-tree</b>	Verify the configuration.
DES-7200# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Save the configuration.

To restore the spanning tree mode to the default value, use the **no spanning-tree mode** command in the global configuration mode.

### 17.3.4 Configuring Switch Priority

Switch priority allows you to select the root and draw the topology of a network. It is recommended that administrators set the core device with higher priority (or smaller value) to facilitate the stabilization of the whole network. You can assign different switch priorities for various instances so that various instances can run separate spanning tree protocol. Only the priority of CIST (Instance 0) is related to the devices between different regions.

As mentioned in Bridge ID, there are 16 values for the priority, and all of them are multiples of 4096, which are 0, 4096, 8192, 12288, 16384, 20480, 24576, 28672, 32768, 36864, 40960, 45056, 49152, 53248, 57344, and 61440. The default value is 32768.



To configure switch priority, execute the following command in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
DES-7200(config)# <b>spanning-tree</b> [ <i>mst instance-id</i> ] <b>priority</b> <i>priority</i>	Configure different switch priorities for different instances. This command configures the switch priority for instance 0 without the instance-id parameter. <i>instance-id</i> : ID of the instance in the range from 0 to 64. <i>priority</i> : switch priority in the range from 0 to 61440 and is increased by the integral multiple of 4096, 32768 by default.
DES-7200(config)# <b>end</b>	Return to the privileged EXEC mode.
DES-7200# <b>show running-config</b>	Verify the configuration.
DES-7200# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Save the configuration.

To restore the switch priority to the default value, use the **no spanning-tree mst *instance-id* priority** command in the global configuration mode.

### 17.3.5 Configuring Port Priority

When two ports are connected to the shared media, the device will set the one of the higher priority (or smaller value) to be the forwarding status and the one of the lower priority (or larger value) to be the discarding status. If the two ports are of the same priority, the device will set the one with the smaller port number to the forwarding status. You can assign different port priorities to various instances on one port, by which various instances can run the separated spanning tree protocols.

Same as device priority, it has 16 values, all a multiple of 16. They are 0, 16, 32, 48, 64, 80, 96, 112, 128, 144, 160, 176, 192, 208, 224, and 240 respectively. The default value is 128.

To configure a port priority, execute the following commands in the privileged mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
DES-7200(config)# <b>interface</b> <i>interface-id</i>	Enter the interface configuration mode. A legal interface contains a physical port and an aggregate Link.



Command	Function
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>spanning-tree</b> [mst <i>instance-id</i> ] <b>port-priority</b> <i>priority</i>	Configure different priorities for different instances. The command without the <i>instance-id</i> parameter will configure a port priority for instance 0. <i>instance-id</i> : Interface ID in the range of 0 to 64. <i>priority</i> : Port priority of an instance in the range 0 to 240. Furthermore, it is increased by the integral multiple of 16, 128 by default.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>end</b>	Return to the privileged EXEC mode.
DES-7200# <b>show spanning-tree</b> [mst <i>instance-id</i> ] <b>interface</b> <i>interface-id</i>	Verify the configuration.
DES-7200# <b>copy running-config</b> <b>startup-config</b>	Save the configuration.

To restore the port priority to the default value, execute the **no spanning-tree mst *instance-id* port-priority** command in the interface configuration mode.

### 17.3.6 Configuring Path Cost of a Port

The switch determines a root port upon the total of the path costs along the path from a port to the root bridge. The port the total of paths costs from the port to the root bridge is the smallest is elected the root port. Its default value is calculated by the media speed of the port automatically. The higher the media speed, the smaller the cost is. It is not necessary for administrators to change it for the path cost calculated in this way is most scientific. You can assign different cost paths for various instances on one port, by which various instances can run the separated spanning tree protocols.

To configure the path cost of a port, execute the following commands in the privileged mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
DES-7200(config)# <b>interface</b> <i>interface-id</i>	Enter the interface configuration mode. A legal interface contains a physical port and an aggregate Link.



Command	Function
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>spanning-tree</b> [mst <i>instance-id</i> ] <b>cost</b> <i>cost</i>	Configure different priorities for different instances. The command without the <i>instance-id</i> parameter will configure a port priority for instance 0. <i>instance-id</i> : Interface ID in the range of 0 to 64. <i>cost</i> : Path cost of the port in the range of 1 to 200,000,000. The default value is calculated by the media rate of the port automatically.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>end</b>	Return to the privileged EXEC mode.
DES-7200# <b>show spanning-tree</b> [mst <i>instance-id</i> ] <b>interface</b> <i>interface-id</i>	Verify the configuration.
DES-7200# <b>copy running-config</b> <b>startup-config</b>	Save the configuration.

To restore the path cost of a port to the default value, execute the **no spanning-tree mst cost** command in the interface configuration mode.

### 17.3.7 Configuring the Default Calculation Method of Path Cost (path cost method)

If the path cost of a port is the default value, the device will calculate the path cost of this port by port rate. However, IEEE 802.1d and IEEE 802.1t specify different path cost values for a port rate respectively. The value range of the 802.1d is short (1 to 65535), while the value range of the 802.1t is long (1 to 200,000,000). Administrators should unify the path cost standard of the whole network. The default mode is long (IEEE 802.1t Mode).

The following table lists the path costs set for different port rates in two standards.

Port Rate	Interface	IEEE 802.1d (short)	IEEE 802.1t (long)
10M	Common Port	100	2000000
	Aggregate Link	95	1900000
100M	Common Port	19	200000
	Aggregate Link	18	190000
1000M	Common Port	4	20000
	Aggregate Link	3	19000

To configure the default calculation method of path cost, execute the following commands in the privileged mode:



Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
DES-7200(config)# <b>spanning-tree pathcost method long/short</b>	Configure the default calculation method of the port path cost as long or short, with long by default.
DES-7200(config)# <b>end</b>	Return to the privileged EXEC mode.
DES-7200# <b>show running-config</b>	Verify the configuration.
DES-7200# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Save the configuration.

To restore the setting to the default value, execute the **no spanning-tree pathcost** method command in the global configuration mode.

### 17.3.8 Configuring Hello Time

Configure the interval of sending the BPDU message. The default value is 2s.

To configure the Hello Time, execute the following commands in the privileged mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
DES-7200(config)# <b>spanning-tree hello-time seconds</b>	Configure the hello time ranging from 1 to 10s, 2s by default.
DES-7200(config)# <b>end</b>	Return to the privileged EXEC mode.
DES-7200# <b>show running-config</b>	Verify the configuration.
DES-7200# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Save the configuration.

To restore the hello time to the default value, execute the **no spanning-tree hello-time** command in the global configuration mode.

### 17.3.9 Configuring Forward-Delay Time

Configure the interval for changing port status. The default value is 15s.

To configure the forward-delay time, execute the following commands in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
DES-7200(config)# <b>spanning-tree forward-time seconds</b>	Configure the forward delay time ranging from 4 to 30s, 15s by default.



Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>end</b>	Return to the privileged EXEC mode.
DES-7200# <b>show running-config</b>	Verify the configuration.
DES-7200# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Save the configuration.

To restore the forward-delay time to the default value, execute the **no spanning-tree forward-time** command in the global configuration mode.

### 17.3.10 Configuring Max-Age Time

Configure the maximum period of time before the BPDU message is aged out. The default value is 20s.

In the privilege mode, perform these steps to configure the Max-Age Time:

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
DES-7200(config)# <b>spanning-tree max-age</b> <i>seconds</i>	Configure the max age time ranging from 6 to 40s, 20s by default.
DES-7200(config)# <b>end</b>	Return to the privileged EXEC mode.
DES-7200# <b>show running-config</b>	Verify the configuration.
DES-7200# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Save the configuration.

To restore the max age time to the default value, execute the **no spanning-tree max-age** command in the global configuration mode.



#### Caution

Hello Time, Forward-Delay Time and Max-Age Time have their own value ranges. Meanwhile, the following condition must be addressed:  $2 * (\text{Hello Time} + 1.0 \text{ seconds}) \leq \text{Max-Age Time} \leq 2 * (\text{Forward-Delay} - 1.0 \text{ second})$ . Otherwise, it may cause the topology instability

### 17.3.11 Configuring Tx-Hold-Count

Configure the maximum number of the BPDU message sent per second, 3 by default.

To configure the Tx-Hold-Count, execute the following commands in the global configuration mode:



Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
DES-7200(config)# <b>spanning-tree tx-hold-count</b> <i>numbers</i>	Configure the maximum number of the BPDU message sent per second in the range of 1 to 10, 3 by default.
DES-7200(config)# <b>end</b>	Return to the privileged EXEC mode.
DES-7200# <b>show running-config</b>	Verify the configuration.
DES-7200# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Save the configuration.

To restore the Tx-Hold-Count to the default value, execute the **no spanning-tree tx-hold-count** command in the global configuration mode.

### 17.3.12 Configuring Link-type

Configure the link-type of a port. This is crucial for rapid RSTP convergence. For details, refer to Rapid RSTP Convergence. Without configuration, the device will set the link type of a port according to its duplex status automatically, with point-to-point for the full duplex port and shared for the half duplex port.

To configure the link type of a port, execute the following commands in the interface configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
DES-7200(config)# <b>interface</b> <i>interface-id</i>	Enter the interface configuration mode.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>spanning-tree link-type point-to-point/shared</b>	Configure the link type of the interface, with point-to-point for the full duplex port and shared for the half duplex port. Point-to-point indicates the rapid forwarding is enabled on the port.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>end</b>	Return to the privileged EXEC mode.
DES-7200# <b>show running-config</b>	Verify the configuration.
DES-7200# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Save the configuration.

To restore the link type of a port to the default value, execute the **no spanning-tree link-type** command in the interface configuration mode.



### 17.3.13 Configuring Protocol Migration Processing

This command is to check the version globally or on individual port. For related information, refer to Compatibility of RSTP and STP.

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>clear spanning-tree detected-protocols</b>	Forcibly check the version on all ports.
DES-7200# <b>clear spanning-tree detected-protocols interface</b> <i>interface-id</i>	Check the version forcibly on the port.

### 17.3.14 Configuring a MSTP Region

To deploy several devices in the same MSTP Region, you have to configure these devices with the same name, the same revision number, and the same Instance-VLAN table.

You can assign a VLAN to instances 0 to 64 respectively as required. The remaining VLANs will be automatically assigned to instance 0. One vlan can only be of an instance.

It is recommended to configure the Instance-VLAN table when the MSTP protocol is disabled. After configuration, you should enable the MSTP protocol again to ensure the stability and convergence of the network topology.

To configure a MSTP region, execute the following commands in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
DES-7200(config)# <b>spanning-tree mst configuration</b>	Enter the MST configuration mode.
DES-7200(config-mst)# <b>instance</b> <i>instance-id</i> <b>vlan</b> <i>vlan-range</i>	<p>Add a VLAN group to a MST instance.</p> <p><i>instance-id</i>: Instance ID ranging from 0 to 64.</p> <p><i>vlan-range</i>: VLAN range in the range 1 to 4094.</p> <p>For instance:</p> <p>The <b>instance 1 vlan 2-200</b> command is to add VLAN 2-200 to instance 1.</p> <p>The <b>instance 1 vlan 2,20,200</b> command is to add VLAN 2, VLAN 20 and VLAN 200 to instance 1.</p> <p>You can use the <b>no</b> option of this command to delete a VLAN from an instance, and the deleted VLAN will be added</p>



Command	Function
	to instance 0 automatically.
DES-7200(config-mst)# <b>name</b> <i>Name</i>	Specify the MST configuration name, a string of up to 32 bytes.
DES-7200(config-mst)# <b>revision</b> <i>Version</i>	Specify the MST revision number in the range 0 to 65535. The default value is 0.
DES-7200(config-mst)# <b>show</b>	Verify the configuration.
DES-7200(config-mst)# <b>end</b>	Return to the privileged EXEC mode.
DES-7200# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Save the configuration.

To restore the MST region configuration to the default value, execute the **no spanning-tree mst configuration** command in the global configuration mode. You can use the **no instance** *instance-id* command to delete an instance. Similarly, the **no name** and **no revision** commands can be used to restore the MST name and MST revision number settings to the default value, respectively.

The following is the example of configuration:

```
DES-7200(config)# spanning-tree mst configuration
DES-7200(config-mst)# instance 1 vlan 10-20
DES-7200(config-mst)# name region1
DES-7200(config-mst)# revision 1
DES-7200(config-mst)# show
Multi spanning tree protocol : Enable Name [region1]
Revision 1
Instance Vlans Mapped
-----
0 1-9,21-4094
1 10-20
-----
DES-7200(config-mst)# exit
DES-7200(config)#
```



#### Caution

Before configuring vlan and instance mapping relationship, please ensure that all configured VLANs have been created. Otherwise, the association of vlan and instance on part of the products may be failed.

### 17.3.15 Configuring Maximum-Hop Count

Maximum-Hop Count means how many devices the BPDU message will pass through in a MSTP region before being discarded. This parameter takes effect for all instances.



To configure the Maximum-Hop Count, execute the following commands in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
DES-7200(config)# <b>spanning-tree max-hops hop-count</b>	Configure the Maximum-Hop Count ranging from 1 to 40, 20 by default.
DES-7200(config)# <b>end</b>	Return to the privileged EXEC mode.
DES-7200# <b>show running-config</b>	Verify the configuration.
DES-7200# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Save the configuration.

To restore the Maximum-Hop Count to the default value, execute the **no spanning-tree max-hops** command in the global configuration mode.

### 17.3.16 Configuring Interface Compatibility Mode

In interface compatibility mode, when a port sends BPDU, it will carry different MSTI information according to the current port attribute to realize interconnection with other vendors.

To configure the interface compatibility mode, execute the following commands in the privileged mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
DES-7200(config)# <b>interface interface-id</b>	Enter the Interface configuration mode.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>spanning-tree compatible enable</b>	Enable interface compatibility mode.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>end</b>	Return to the privileged mode.
DES-7200# <b>show running-config</b>	Check configuration items.



DES-7200# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Save the configuration.
---	-------------------------

To remove the settings, you can execute command **no spanning-tree compatible enable**.

## 17.4 Configuring Optional MSTP Features

### 17.4.1 Default Setting of Optional Spanning Tree Features

All the optional features are disabled by default, except for automatic identification of edge port.

### 17.4.2 Enabling Port Fast

Enabling Port Fast lets a port directly forward the BPDU message. When Port Fast is disabled due to the receipt of the BPDU message, the port will participate in the STP algorithm and forward the BPDU message normally.

To enable Port Fast, execute the following commands in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
DES-7200(config)# <b>interface</b> <i>interface-id</i>	Enter the interface configuration mode. A legal interface contains a physical port and an Aggregate Link.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>spanning-tree Portfast</b>	Enable Port Fast on the interface.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>end</b>	Return to the privileged EXEC mode.
DES-7200# <b>show spanning-tree interface</b> <i>interface-id</i> <b>portfast</b>	Verify the configuration.
DES-7200# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Save the configuration.

To disable Port Fast, execute the **spanning-tree portfast disable** command in the interface configuration mode.



You can use the **spanning-tree portfast default** command in the global configuration mode to enable Port Fast on all ports.

### 17.4.3 Enabling BPDU Guard

After BPDU Guard is enabled, a port will in the error-disabled status after receiving the BPDU packet.

To configure the BPDU guard, execute the following commands in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
DES-7200(config)# <b>spanning-tree portfast Bpduguard default</b>	Enable the BPDU Guard globally.
DES-7200(config)# <b>interface interface-id</b>	Enter the interface configuration mode. A legal interface contains a physical port and an aggregate link.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>spanning-tree portfast</b>	Enable Port Fast on the interface.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>end</b>	Return to the privileged EXEC mode.
DES-7200# <b>show running-config</b>	Verify the configuration.
DES-7200# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Save the configuration.

To disable BPDU Guard, execute the **no spanning-tree portfast bpduguard default** command in the global configuration command.

To enable or disable BPDU Guard on an interface, execute the **spanning-tree bpduguard enable** command or the **spanning-tree bpduguard disable** command on the interface respectively.

### 17.4.4 Enabling BPDU Filter

A port neither transmit nor receive the BPDU message after the BPDU filter is enabled.

To configure the BPDU Filter, execute the following commands in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
DES-7200(config)# <b>spanning-tree portfast bpdufilter default</b>	Enable BPDU filter globally.



Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>interface</b> <i>Interface-id</i>	Enter the interface configuration mode. A legal interface contains a physical port and an aggregate link.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>spanning-tree Portfast</b>	Enable portfast on this interface.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>end</b>	Return to the privileged EXEC mode.
DES-7200# <b>show running-config</b>	Verify the configuration.
DES-7200# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Save the configuration.

To disable BPDU Filter, execute the **no spanning-tree portfast bpdufilter default** command in the global configuration mode.

To enable or disable BPDU Filter on an interface, execute the **spanning-tree bpdufilter enable** command or the **spanning-tree bpdufilter disable** command in the interface configuration mode.

#### 17.4.5 Enabling Tc\_Protection

To configure Tc\_Protection, execute the following commands in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
DES-7200(config)# <b>spanning-tree tc-protection</b>	Enable Tc-Protection
DES-7200(config)# <b>end</b>	Return to the privileged EXEC mode.
DES-7200# <b>show running-config</b>	Verify the configuration.
DES-7200# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Save the configuration.

To disable Tc\_Protection, execute the **no spanning-tree tc-protection** command in the global configuration mode.

#### 17.4.6 Enabling TC Guard

To enable TC Guard globally, execute the following commands in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.



Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>spanning-tree tc-protection tc-guard</b>	Enable TC Guard globally.
DES-7200(config)# <b>end</b>	Return to the privileged EXEC mode.
DES-7200# <b>show running-config</b>	Verify the configuration.
DES-7200# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Save the configuration.

To configure TC Guard on an interface, execute the following commands in the interface configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
DES-7200(config)# <b>interface</b> <i>Interface-id</i>	Enter the interface configuration mode. A legal interface includes a physical port and an aggregate link.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>spanning-tree tc-guard</b>	Enable TC Guard on this interface.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>end</b>	Return to the privileged mode.
DES-7200# <b>show running-config</b>	Verify the configuration.
DES-7200# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Save the configuration.

#### 17.4.7 Enable BPDU Source MAC check

After the BPDU source MAC check is enabled, the switch accepts only the BPDU message from the specified MAC address.

To configure the BPDU source MAC check, execute the following commands in the interface configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
DES-7200(config)# <b>interface</b> <i>interface-id</i>	Enter the interface configuration mode. A legal interface includes a physical port and an aggregate link.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>bpdu src-mac-check</b> H.H.H	Enable BPDU source MAC check.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>end</b>	Return to the privileged mode.



Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>show running-config</b>	Verify the configuration.
DES-7200# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Save the configuration.

To disable BPDU source MAC check, execute the **no bpdu src-mac-check** command in the interface mode.

#### 17.4.8 Disabling Automatic Recognition of Edge Ports

If the designated port has not received the BPDU message in certain time (3 seconds), the port will be automatically recognized as an edge port. However, Port Fast is disabled on the port upon the receipt of the BPDU message. This function is enabled by default.

To configure Autoedge, execute the following commands in privileged EXEC mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enter global configuration mode.
DES-7200(config)# <b>interface interface-id</b>	Enter the interface configuration mode. A legal interface includes a physical port and an aggregate link.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>spanning-tree Autoedge</b>	Enable Autoedge on the interface.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>end</b>	Return to the privileged mode.
DES-7200# <b>show spanning-tree interface interface-id</b>	Verify the configuration.
DES-7200# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Save the configuration

To disable Autoedge, execute the **spanning-tree autoedge disabled** command in the interface configuration mode.

#### 17.4.9 Enabling Root Guard

To configure interface ROOT Guard, execute the following commands in the privileged mode:

Command	Function
---------	----------



DES-7200# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode,
DES-7200(config)# <b>interface</b> <b>Interface-id</b>	Enter the interface configuration mode. Valid interface includes physical port and Aggregate Link.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>spanning-tree guard root</b>	Enable interface ROOT Guard.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>end</b>	Return to the privileged mode.
DES-7200# <b>show running-config</b>	Verify the configuration.
DES-7200# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Save the configuration.

#### 17.4.10 Enabling Loop Guard

To configure global LOOP Guard, execute the following commands in the privileged mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode,
DES-7200(config)# <b>spanning-tree</b> <b>Loopguard default</b>	Enable global LOOP Guard.
DES-7200(config)# <b>end</b>	Return to the privileged mode.
DES-7200# <b>show running-config</b>	Verify the configuration.
DES-7200# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Save the configuration.



To configure interface LOOP Guard, execute the following commands in the privileged mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
DES-7200(config)# <b>interface</b> <i>Interface-id</i>	Enter the interface configuration mode. Valid interface includes physical port and Aggregate Link.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>spanning-tree guard loop</b>	Enable interface Loop Guard.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>end</b>	Return to the privileged mode.
DES-7200# <b>show running-config</b>	Verify the configuration.
DES-7200# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Save the configuration.

#### **17.4.11 Disabling Interface Guard**

To disable interface ROOT or LOOP Guard, execute the following commands in the privileged mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode,
DES-7200(config)# <b>interface</b> <i>Interface-id</i>	Enter the interface configuration mode. Valid interface includes physical port and Aggregate Link.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>spanning-tree guard none</b>	Disable interface Loop Guard.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>end</b>	Return to the privileged mode.
DES-7200# <b>show running-config</b>	Verify the configuration.



DES-7200# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Save the configuration.
---	-------------------------

## 17.5 Showing MSTP Configuration and Status

You can use the following show commands to view the configuration of MSTP:

Command	Meaning
DES-7200# <b>show spanning-tree</b>	Show the information on the parameters and topology of MSTP.
DES-7200# <b>show spanning-tree summary</b>	Show the information on various instances and port forwarding status of MSTP.
DES-7200# <b>show spanning-tree inconsistentports</b>	Show the block port due to root guard or loop guard.
DES-7200# <b>show spanning-tree mst Configuration</b>	Show the configuration information of the MST region.
DES-7200# <b>show spanning-tree mst instance-id</b>	Show the MSTP information of an instance.
DES-7200# <b>show spanning-tree mst instance-id interface interface-id</b>	Show the MSTP information of the specified instance of the interface.
DES-7200# <b>show spanning-tree interface interface-id</b>	Show the MSTP information of all the instances of the interface.
DES-7200# <b>show spanning-tree forward-time</b>	Show forward-time.
DES-7200# <b>show spanning-tree Hello Time</b>	Show Hello time.
DES-7200# <b>show spanning-tree max-hops</b>	Show max-hops.
DES-7200# <b>show spanning-tree tx-hold-count</b>	Show tx-hold-count.
DES-7200# <b>show spanning-tree pathcost Method</b>	Show pathcost method.







# 18

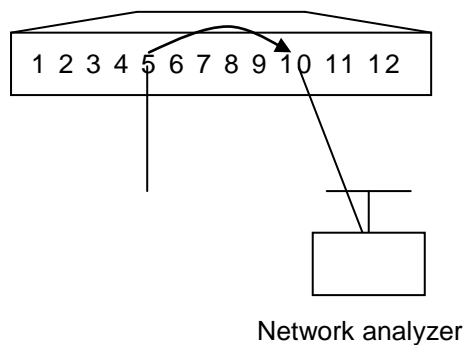
## SPAN Configuration

### 18.1 Overview

With SPAN, you can analyze the communications between ports by copying a frame from one port to another port connected with a network analysis device or RMON analyzer. The SPAN mirrors all the packets sent/received at a port to a physical port for analysis.

For example, all the frames on the GigabitEthernet port 5 are mirrored to the GigabitEthernet port 10, as shown in Figure 18-1. Although the network analyzer connected to port 10 is not directly connected to port 5, it can receive all the frames from port 5.

**Figure 18-1** SPAN Configuration Example



The SPAN allows you to monitor all the frames incoming/outgoing the source port, including the route input frames.

The SPAN does not affect the normal packet switching of the switch. Instead, it copies the frames incoming/outgoing the source port to the destination port. However, the frames may be discarded on an overflowed destination port, for example, when an 100Mbps port monitors an 1000Mbps port.



**Caution**

- For DES-7200 series, the packets sent to port A cannot be forwarded or mirrored to the mirrored destination port if the vid in the tags of the packets is inconsistent with the vid of the VLAN of port A.
- For DES-7200 series, if IGMP Snooping function is enabled, the IGMP protocol messages cannot be mirrored to the designated port and the unknown multicast packets can not be mirrored neither.
- For DES-7200 series, if the mirrored destination port is congested (for example, an 100Mbps destination port monitors an 1000mbps source port), the source port will send Pause frames.
- For DES-7200 series, BPDU messages from CPU can not be mirrored to the mirrored destination port.
- For DES-7200 series, by default, other ports can not send the packets to the mirrored destination port whose address can not be learned, while the mirrored destination port can send the packets to other ports. You can switch the packets via configuring the mirrored destination port, allowing other ports to send the packets to the mirrored destination port and thus leading to address learning on the mirrored destination port.

## 18.2 SPAN Concepts and Terms

This section describes the concepts and terms related to SPAN configuration.

### 18.2.1 SPAN Session

One SPAN session is the combination of one destination port and source port. You can monitor the inbound, outbound, and bi-directional frames of one or multiple interfaces.

You can set up one or multiple SPAN sessions. Switched port and routed port can be configured with only one SPAN session. However, switched port, routed port, and AP can be configured as source port and destination port. The SPAN session does not affect the normal operation of the switch.

You can configure the SPAN session on one disabled port, but the SPAN does not take effect until you enable the destination and source ports. The **Show monitor session *session number*** command allows you to show the operation status of the SPAN session. One SPAN session does not take effect immediately after the switch is powered on until the destination port is active.

### 18.2.2 Frame Type

The SPAN session includes the following frame types:

- **Received frames**



Received frames include all known unicast frames and routing frames, and each received frame is copied to the destination port. In one SPAN session, you can monitor the the frames inputted from one or multiple source ports. Although a frame inputted from the source port is dropped due to some reasons, for example, port security, it is still sent to the destination port. This does not affect the function of the SPAN.

#### ■ Transmitted frames

All the frames sent from the source port are copied to the destination port. In one SPAN session, you can monitor the frames input from one or multiple source ports. If a frame from a port to the source port is dropped due to some reasons, the frame will not be sent to the destination port as well. Moreover, the format of the frames destined to the source port may change, for example, routed frames, source MAC address, destination MAC address, VLAN ID and TTL. Similarly, the format of the frames copied to the destination port will change.

#### ■ Bi-directional frames

Bi-directional frames include the above mentioned two frames. In one SPAN session, you can monitor the frames received and transmitted from/to one or multiple source ports.

### 18.2.3 Source Port

---

A source port (also known as monitored interface) is a switched port or routed port monitored for network analysis. In one SPAN session, you can monitor received, transmitted and bi-directional frames. There is no limit on the maximum number of the source ports.

A source port has the following features:

- It can be a switched port, routed port or AP.
- It cannot be a destination port at the same time.
- It can specify the inbound or outbound direction of the monitored frames.
- The source port and the destination port can reside in the same VLAN or different VLANs.

### 18.2.4 Destination Port

---

The SPAN session has a destination port (also known as the monitoring port) used to receive the frames copied from the source port.

The destination port has the following features:

- It can be a Switched Port , Routed Port or AP.

### 18.2.5 SPAN Traffic

---

You can use the SPAN to monitor all network communications, including multicast frames and BPDU frames.



### 18.2.6 Interaction between the SPAN and Other Functions

---

The SPAN interacts with the following functions.

Spanning Tree Protocol (STP) — the destination port of SPAN participates in the STP.

## 18.3 Configuring SPAN

---

This section describes how to configure the SPAN on your switch.

### 18.3.1 Configuring SPAN

---

#### 18.3.1.1 Default SPAN Configuration

---

Function	Default Configuration
SPAN status	Disabled

### 18.3.2 SPAN Configuration Guide

---

To configure the SPAN, do the following steps:

Connect the network analyzer to the monitoring port.

The destination port cannot be the source port, and the source port cannot be the destination port.

You can configure one disabled port as a destination port or source port, but the SPAN does not take effect until the destination port or the source port is enabled again.

The **no monitor session** *session\_number* command allows you to delete the source or destination port from the SPAN session in the global configuration mode.

The destination port of SPAN participates in the STP.

When the SPAN is enabled, the configuration change has the following result.

- If you change the VLAN configuration of the source port, the configuration takes effect immediately.
- If you change the VLAN configuration of the destination port, the configuration takes effect immediately.
- If you have disabled the source port or destination port, the SPAN does not take effect.
- If you add the source or destination port to an AP, this will remove the source port or destination port from the SPAN.



### 18.3.3 Creating a SPAN Session and Specifying the Monitoring Port and Monitored Port

To set up a SPAN session and specify the destination port and the source port, execute the following commands.

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>monitor session</b> <i>session_number</i> <b>source interface</b> <i>interface-id</i> [,  -] { <b>both</b>   <b>rx</b>   <b>tx</b> }	Specify the source port. <i>interface-id</i> : Specify corresponding interface id.
DES-7200(config)# <b>monitor session</b> <i>session_number</i> <b>destination interface</b> <i>interface-id</i> [ <b>switch</b> ]	Specify the destination port. <i>interface-id</i> : Specify corresponding interface id. The <b>switch</b> parameter supports exchange on the mirrored destination port.

To delete a SPAN session, use the **no monitor session** *session\_number* command in the global configuration mode. To delete all the SPAN sessions, use the **no monitor session all** command in the global configuration mode. You can use the **no monitor session** *session\_number* **source interface** *interface-id* command or the **no monitor session** *session\_number* **destination interface** *interface-id* command to delete the source port or destination port in the global configuration mode.

The following example shows how to create session 1. First, clear the configuration of session 1, and then mirror the frames from port 1 to port 8. The **Show monitor session** command allows you to verify your configuration.

```
DES-7200(config)# no monitor session 1
DES-7200(config)# monitor session 1 source interface gigabitEthernet 3/1 both
DES-7200(config)# monitor session 1 destination interface gigabitEthernet 3/8
DES-7200(config)# end
DES-7200# show monitor session 1
sess-num: 1
src-intf:
GigabitEthernet 3/1 frame-type Both
dest-intf:
GigabitEthernet 3/8
```



### 18.3.4 Deleting a Port from the SPAN Session

To delete a port from a SPAN session, execute the following commands:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>no monitor session</b> <i>session_number</i> <b>source interface</b> <i>interface-id</i> [,  -] [ <b>both</b>   <b>rx</b>   <b>tx</b> ]	Specify the source port to delete. For <i>interface-id</i> : Specify corresponding interface id.

You can use the **no monitor session** *session\_number* **source interface** *interface-id* command to delete the source port from a SPAN session in the global configuration mode. The following example shows how to delete port 1 from session 1 and verify your configuration.

```
DES-7200(config)# no monitor session 1 source interface gigabitethernet 1/1 both
DES-7200(config)# end
DES-7200# show monitor session 1
sess-num: 1
dest-intf:
GigabitEthernet 3/8
```

### 18.3.5 Configuring Flow-based Mirror

To set the flow-based mirror, execute the following command in the privileged mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# [ <b>no</b> ] <b>monitor session</b> <i>session_number</i> <b>source interface</b> <i>interface-id</i> <b>rx</b> <b>acl</b> <i>name</i>	Set the matching acl name of the flow which require mirror and source and destination port of the mirror.

It only supports entrance mirror.

For Acl configuration command, please refer to related configuration manual.

### 18.3.6 Configuring One-to-Many Mirror

To mirror one same source port to multiple destination ports, execute as following steps:

- Configure RSPAN Session(you can refer to RSPAN configuration manual). The RSPAN source port is of one-to –many mirror. Forwarding port is other Ethernet port of non-multiple



mirror destination.

- Set MAC loopback of forwarding port in the interface of RSPAN forwarding port mode.
- Add forwarding port and destination port of one-to-many mirror in Access mode to RSPAN VLAN;

Command	Function
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>mac-loopback</b>	Set interface MAC loopback.

**Caution**

It is better that there is no other configuration and network cable available on RSPAN forwarding port.

Please do not set RSPAN forwarding port to join switching.

## 18.4 Showing the SPAN Status

The **show monitor** command shows the current SPAN status. The following example illustrates how to show the current status of SPAN session 1.

```
DES-7200# show monitor session 1  
sess-num: 1  
src-intf:  
GigabitEthernet 3/1 frame-type Both  
dest-intf:  
GigabitEthernet 3/
```





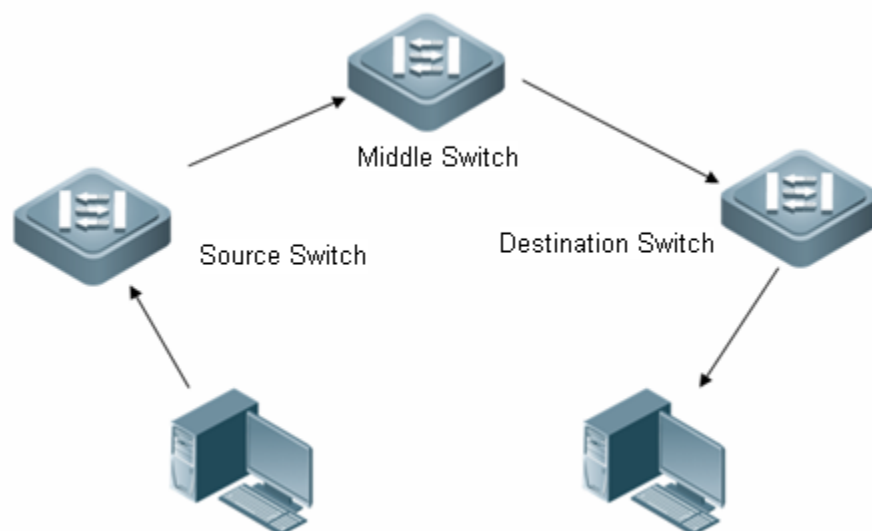


# 19

## RSPAN Configuration

RSPAN is the expansion of SPAN, which is able to remote monitor multiple devices. Each RSPAN Session is set up in specific RSPAN Vlan. Remote mirroring breaks the restriction that mirrored port and mirroring port must be on the same device, thus making them across multiple network devices and enabling accendant to observe the data package remote nirrored by analyzer in the center machine room.

All the mirrored packages are transmitted to the remote mirroring port via a special RSPAN Vlan. The following is the group network figure of device.



**Figure 1 :**

There are three types of the switch with remote mirroring funtion:

- Source switch: where the nirrored port is. It is responsible for copying mirroring flows to Remote VLAN and forwarding them to middle switch or destination switch.
- Middle switch: it is between source switch and destination switch. It transmmits the mirroring flows to next middle switch or destination switch via Remote VLAN. If the source switch is directly connected with destination switch, then there is no middle swith.



- Destination switch: where the mirroring destination port is. It forwards the mirroring flows received from Remote VLAN to the monitoring device via mirroring destination port.

The table below presents ports that participate mirroring on the switch:

Switch	Mirrored Port	Function
Source switch	Source Port	Monitored user port copies UDP to designated output port or reflector port via local port mirror. There are several source ports.
	Reflector port	Receive mirrored UDP of local port.( DES-7200 Series are not required to configure reflector port. )
	Output port	Send mirrored packets to middle switch or destination switch.
Middle switch	Ordinary port	Send mirrored packets to destination switch.  You are recommended to configure two Trunk ports to connect with two neighbouring devices in middle switch.
Destination switch	Source port	Receive remote mirrored packets.
	Destination port	Monitoring port of remote mirrored packets.

A special VLAN, Remote VLAN is defined to realize the function of remote port mirror, which is only used to transmit mirror packet and not used to bear the normal service data. Remote VLAN transmits all the mirrored packets from source switch to the designated port of the destination switch, realizing the function of monitoring the package on the remote port of the source switch from destination switch.



#### Caution

1. You are recommended to configure mirrored source port and reflector port in different VLAN.
2. Do not support to set AP as reflector port.
3. Remote-span Vlan can neither be Vlan 1 nor Private Vlan
4. Remote-span Vlan does not join GVRP.
5. Middle switch must work with enhanced I/O modules.



## 19.2 Configuring RSPAN Session

### 19.2.1 Configuration Preparation

- Determine source switch, middle switch and destination switch.
- Determine mirrored source port, reflector port, mirrored destination port and Remote VLAN.
- Guarantee L2 interconnectivity from source switch to destination switch in Remote VLAN via configuration.
- Determine the direction of monitored packets.
- Enable Remote VLAN

### 19.2.2 Configuration Process on Source Switch

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>configure</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
DES-7200(config)# <b>vlan</b> <i>vlan-id</i>	Enter Vlan configuration mode.
DES-7200(config-Vlan)# <b>remote-span</b>	Set Vlan as remote-span Vlan.
DES-7200(config-Vlan)# <b>exit</b>	Return to the global configuration mode.
DES-7200(config)# <b>monitor</b> <b>session</b> <i>session_num</i> <b>remote-source</b>	Configure remote source mirror.
DES-7200(config)# <b>monitor</b> <b>session</b> <i>session-num</i> <b>source interface</b> <i>interface-name</i> [ <b>rx</b>   <b>tx</b>   <b>both</b> ]	Configure remote mirrored source port(rx,tx of the source port can be set to the same or different destination port; but each of them is set to one destination port only. )



DES-7200(config)# <b>monitor session</b>  <i>session_num</i> <b>destination remote</b> <b>vlan</b> <i>remote_vlan-id</i> [ <b>reflector-port</b> ] <b>interface</b> <i>interface-name</i>	Configure Remote VLAN of remote source mirror group and remote reflector port.  Reflector port must join Remote VLAN.  It is not required to set reflector port for DES-7200 Series. All you need to do is to configure output destination port without keying in keyword reflector-port.
DES-7200(config)# <b>monitor session</b>  <i>session_number</i> <b>source interface</b> <i>interface-id rx</i> <b>acl</b> <i>name</i>	Set the matching acl name of the flow required for mirror.

- The reflector port can not forward the flow as the normal port. Therefore, it is recommended that you can set the DOWN port as reflector port and do not add other settings to the port.

- It is not recommended that you add the ordinary port to Remote VLAN.



#### Caution

- Do not set mirror source port on the port that is connected to the middle switch or the destination switch, or it will possibly cause the flow confusion in the network.

- In a RSPAN session, source switch only can set RX or TX mirror at a same time if the middle switch uses the port of non-E line cards as the forwarding port. And if the source switch alternatively set RX and TX mirror, it is required for the middle switch to clear the mac address in remote-span vlan.

### 19.2.3 Configuration Process on Middle Switch

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>configure</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
DES-7200(config)# <b>vlan</b> <i>vlan-id</i>	Enter Vlan configuration mode.
DES-7200(config-Vlan)# <b>remote-span</b>	Set Vlan as remote-span Vlan.



DES-7200(config-Vlan)# <b>exit</b>	Return to the global configuration mode.
------------------------------------	--

### 19.2.4 Configuration process on destination switch

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>configure</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
DES-7200(config)# <b>vlan</b> vlan-id	Enter Vlan configuration mode.
DES-7200(config-Vlan)# <b>remote-span</b>	Set Vlan as remote-span Vlan.
DES-7200(config-Vlan)# <b>exit</b>	Return to the global configuration mode.
DES-7200(config)# <b>monitor session</b> session_num <b>remote-destination</b>	Configure remote destination mirror.
DES-7200(config)# <b>monitor session</b> session-num <b>destination remote</b> <b>vlan</b> vlan-id <b>interface</b> interface-name	Configure Remote VLAN and remote mirrored destination port.

### 19.2.5 Examples

Device topology is shown as the following figure:



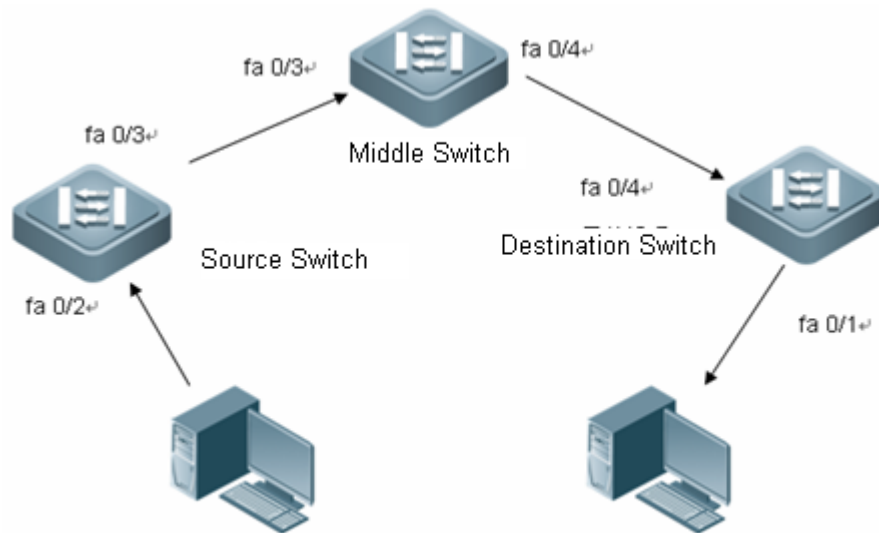


Figure 2:

Source switch configuration:

```

DES-7200# configure
DES-7200(config)# Vlan 7
DES-7200(config-Vlan)# remote-span
DES-7200(config-Vlan)# exit
DES-7200(config)#Interface fastEthernet 0/3
DES-7200(config-if)#switchport mode trunk
DES-7200(config-if)#switchport trunk allowed vlan add 7
DES-7200(config-if)# exit
DES-7200(config)# monitor session 2 remote-source
DES-7200(config)# monitor session 2 source interface fastEthernet 0/2

```

(do not support device with reflector port)

```

DES-7200(config)#monitor session 2 destination remote vlan 7 interface fastEthernet 0/3

```

(support device with reflector port)

```

DES-7200(config)#Interface fastEthernet 0/1
DES-7200(config-if)#switchport access vlan 7
DES-7200(config)#monitor session 2 destination remote vlan 7 reflector-port interface
fastEthernet 0/1

```

Middle switch configuration:

```

DES-7200# configure
DES-7200(config)# Vlan 7
DES-7200(config-Vlan)# remote-span
DES-7200(config-Vlan)# exit
DES-7200(config)#Interface fastEthernet 0/3
DES-7200(config-if)#switchport mode trunk
DES-7200(config-if)#switchport trunk allowed vlan add 7

```



```
DES-7200(config-if)#exit
DES-7200(config)#Interface fastEthernet 0/4
DES-7200(config-if)#switchport mode trunk
DES-7200(config-if)#switchport trunk allowed vlan add 7
```

#### Destination switch configuration:

```
DES-7200# configure
DES-7200(config)# Vlan 7
DES-7200(config-Vlan)# remote-span
DES-7200(config-Vlan)# exit
DES-7200(config)#Interface fastEthernet 0/4
DES-7200(config-if)#switchport mode trunk
DES-7200(config-if)#switchport trunk allowed vlan add 7
DES-7200(config-if)# exit
DES-7200(config)# monitor session 2 remote- destination
DES-7200(config)#monitor session 2 destination remote vlan 7 interface fastEthernet 0/1
```

## 19.3 Displaying RSPAN Session

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>show monitor</b>	Show mirror.

#### For example:

```
DES-7200# show monitor
sess-num: 1
src-intf:
GigabitEthernet 0/4 frame-type Both
dest-intf:
GigabitEthernet 0/6
remote vlan 3
```



# 20 IP Address and Service Configuration

## 20.1 IP Address Configuration

### 20.1.1 IP Address Overview

IP address is made up of 32 binary bits and expressed in the dotted decimal format for the convenience of writing and description. In the dotted decimal format, the 32 binary bits are broken into four octets (1 octet equals to 8 bits). Each octet is separated by a period (dot) in the range from 0 to 255. For example, 192.168.1.1 is an IP address in the dotted decimal format.

An IP address is an address that IP protocols use to connect one another. A 32-bit IP address consists of two parts: network address and local address. According to the first several bits of the network address of an IP address, an IP address is divided into four categories.

Class A: Total of 128 class-A IP addresses. The highest bit is 0 followed by seven bits identifying Network ID, and the remaining 24 bits identify Host ID.

			8								16								24								32								
Class	A	IP	0	Network ID								Host ID																							
address																																			







Class	Address Range	Status
Class D	224.0.0.0 to 239.255.255.255	Available
Class E	240.0.0.0 to 255.255.255.254	Reserved
	255.255.255.255	Multicast

There are three blocks of IP addresses reserved for private networks that are not used in the Internet. Address translation is required for a private network using one of these IP addresses to access the Internet. The following table details these addresses, which are defined in RFC 1918.

Class	IP Address Range	Network Numbers
Class A	10.0.0.0 to 10.255.255.255	1
Class B	172.16.0.0 to 172.31.255.255	16
Class C	192.168.0.0 to 192.168.255.255	256

For the information on the assignment of IP address, TCP/UDP port and other codes, please refer to RFC 1166.

## 20.1.2 IP Address Configuration Task List

The IP address configuration task list includes the following tasks, only the first one is required, others are optional depending on your network requirements.

- Assigning IP Addresses to Network Interfaces (Required)
- Configuring Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) (Optional)
- Configuring IP address to WAN Address Translation (Optional)
- Disabling IP Routing (Optional)
- Handling Broadcast Packets (Optional)

### 20.1.2.1 Assigning IP Addresses to Network Interfaces

Only a host has an IP address configured can it receive and send IP packets. If an interface is configured with an IP address, this means that the interface supports running the IP protocol.

To assign an IP address to an interface, execute the following commands in the interface configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>ip address</b> <i>ip-address</i> <i>mask</i>	Assign an IP address for the interface.



Command	Function
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>no ip address</b>	Remove the IP address configuration for the interface.

A 32-bit mask identifies the network part of an IP address. In a mask, the IP address bit corresponding to 1 represents network ID and the IP address bit corresponding to 0 represents host ID. For example, the mask corresponding a Class A IP address is 255.0.0.0. You can partition a network into multiple segments with a mask. The goal of network partition is to use some bits of the host address of an IP address as the network address to reduce hosts and increase networks. At this point, the mask is called subnet mask.

**Note**

Theoretically, any bit of the host address of an IP address can be used as the subnet mask. Our product only supports continuous subnet masks from left to right starting from the network ID.

The interface-related IP address configuration task list includes the following tasks, only the first one is required, others are optional depending on your network requirements.

- Assigning multiple IP addresses to an interface

Our product supports assigning multiple IP addresses for an interface with one being the primary IP address and others being the secondary addresses. Theoretically, you can configure secondary addresses up your mind. A secondary IP address can reside in the same or different network with the primary IP address. The secondary IP address will be used frequently during the building of a network, for example, in the following cases:

- There may not enough host addresses for a network. For example, a LAN requires a Class C IP address to support up to 254 hosts. However, when there are more than 254 hosts in the LAN, another Class C IP address is necessary. Therefore, a host needs to connect two networks and thus needs configuring multiple IP addresses.
- Many older networks were built based on layer 2 bridges without partition. The use of secondary IP addresses makes them easy to upgrade to IP-based routing networks. An IP address is assigned for every device in a subnet.
- Two subnets of a network might otherwise be separated by another network. By creating a subnet in each separated subnets, you can connect the two separated subnets together by assigning secondary IP addresses. One subnet cannot appear on two or more interfaces in a device.

**Note**

Before configuring secondary IP addresses, you need to confirm that the primary IP address has been configured. All the devices in a network should have the same secondary IP address. If you assign a secondary IP address to a device but do not assign IP addresses for other devices, you can set it to the primary IP address for them.

To assign a secondary IP address to an interface, execute the following command in the interface configuration mode:



Command	Function
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>ip address</b> <i>ip-address</i> <i>mask</i> <b>Secondary</b>	Assign a secondary IP address to the interface.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>no ip address</b> <i>ip-address</i> <i>mask</i> <b>secondary</b>	Remove the secondary IP address configuration for the interface.

### 20.1.2.2 Configuring Address Resolution Protocol (ARP)

Every device in a LAN has two addresses: local address and network address. Local address is contained in the header of the frames on the data link layer. Disputably, the correct term is data link layer address. Since this local address is handled in the MAC sub-layer of the data link layer, it is normally called MAC address representing an IP network device in a network. Network address represents a device in the Internet and indicates the network to which the device belongs.

For inter-communication, a device in a LAN must know the 48-bit MAC address of another device. The ARP can resolve the MAC address upon an IP address and the reversed ARP (RARP) can resolve the IP address upon a MAC address. You can resolve the MAC address in two ways: ARP and Proxy ARP. For the information on ARP, Proxy ARP and RARP, refer to RFC 826, RFC 1027, and RFC 903.

ARP binds the IP and MAC Address. It can resolve the MAC address upon an IP address. Then, the relationship between the IP address and the MAC address is stored in the ARP cache. With the MAC address, a device can encapsulate the frames of the data link layer and send them to the LAN in the Ethernet II-type by default. However the frames can also be encapsulated into other types of Ethernet frame (for example, SNAP).

The principle of RARP is similar to ARP. RARP resolves the IP address upon a MAC address. RARP is configured on non-disk workstation in general.

Normally, a device can work without any special address resolution configuration. Our product can manage address resolution by.

- Configuring ARP Statically
- Setting ARP Encapsulations
- Setting ARP Timeout

#### 20.1.2.2.1 Configuring ARP Statically

The ARP offers dynamic IP address to MAC address mapping. It is not necessary to configure ARP statically in most cases. By configuring ARP Sstatically, our product can respond to the ARP request from other IP addresses.



To configure static ARP, execute the following command in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>arp</b> <i>ip-address mac-address arp-type</i>	Define static ARP. Only arpa type is supported for arp-type.
DES-7200(config)# <b>no arp</b> <i>ip-address</i>	Remove static ARP

#### 20.1.2.2.2 Setting ARP Encapsulations

So far our products only support Ethernet II type ARP encapsulations, also known as ARPA keyword.

#### 20.1.2.2.3 ARP Timeout Setting

ARP timeout takes effect for only the dynamically learned IP address to MAC address mapping. The shorter the timeout, the truer the mapping table saved in the ARP cache is , but the more network bandwidth the ARP occupies. Hence the advantages and disadvantages should be weighted. Generally it is not necessary to configure the ARP timeout time unless there is a special requirement.

To configure ARP timeout time, execute the following command in the interface configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>arp timeout</b> <i>seconds</i>	Configure the ARP timeout time in the range from 0 to 2147483, with 0 not being aged.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>no arp timeout</b>	Remove the configuration.

By default, timeout time is 3600 seconds, that is, 1 hour.

#### 20.1.2.3 Disabling IP Routing

IP routing feature is enabled by default. Do not execute this command unless you sure that IP routing is not needed. Disabling IP routing will make the equipment lose all the routes and the route forwarding function.

To disable IP routing, execute the following commands in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>no ip routing</b>	Disable IP routing.
DES-7200(config)# <b>ip routing</b>	Enable IP routing



#### 20.1.2.4 Handling Broadcast Packets

---

A broadcast packet is destined for all hosts in a physical network. Our product supports two kinds of broadcast packets: directed broadcast and flooding. A directed broadcast packet is sent to all the hosts in a specific network that the host IDs of their IP addresses are all set to 1. While a flooding broadcast packet is sent to all the hosts whose IP addresses are all set to 1. Broadcast packets are heavily used by some protocols, including the Internet protocol. Therefore, it is the basic responsibility for a network administrator to manage and control broadcast packets.

Forwarding flooding broadcast packets may make the network overburden and thus influencing network operation. This is known as broadcast storm. There are some ways to suppress and restrict broadcast storm in the local network. However, layer 2 network devices like bridges and switches will forward and propagate broadcast storm.

The best solution to solve the broadcast storm problem is to specify a broadcast address for each network, that is, directed broadcast. This requires the IP protocol to use directed broadcast instead of flooding broadcast if possible.

For detailed description about broadcast, refer to RFC 919 and RFC 922.

To handle broadcast packets, perform the following tasks according to the network requirement.

- Enabling Directed Broadcast-to-Physical Broadcast Translation
- Establishing an IP Broadcast Address

##### 20.1.2.4.1 Enabling Directed Broadcast-to-Physical Broadcast Translation

A directed broadcast IP packet is the one destined to the broadcast address of an IP subnet. For instance, the packet destined to 172.16.16.255 is a directed broadcast packet. However, the node that generates this packet is not a member of the destination subnet.

Upon the receipt of directed broadcast IP packets, the device indirectly connecting the destination subnet will forward the packets in the same way as forwarding unicast packets. After the directed broadcast IP packets arrive the device directly connecting the subnet, the device transforms them into flooding broadcast IP packets (whose destination address is all 1s in general), and then send them to all the hosts within the subnet by means of broadcast on the link layer.

Enabling directed broadcast to physical broadcast translation on an interface allows the interface to forward the directed broadcast IP packets to the directly connected network. This command will only affect the transmission of the directed broadcast IP packets to the final destination subnet, not other directed broadcasts.

You can forward directed broadcast IP packets as required on an interface by defining ACLs. Only those IP packets matching the ACLs are translated from directed broadcasts to physical broadcasts.



To configure the directed broadcast-to-physical broadcast translation, execute the following command in the interface configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>ip directed-broadcast</b> [ <i>access-list-number</i> ]	Enable directed broadcast to physical broadcast translation on the interface.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>no ip directed-broadcast</b>	Disable the translation.

#### 20.1.2.4.2 Establishing an IP Broadcast Address

Currently, the most popular way is the destination address consisting of all 1s (255.255.255.255). Our product can be configured to generate any form of IP broadcast address and receive any form of IP broadcast packets.

To set a broadcast IP address other than 255.255.255.255, execute the following command in the interface configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>ip broadcast-address</b> <i>ip-address</i>	Create a broadcast address.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>no ip broadcast-address</b>	Remove the configuration.

### 20.1.3 Monitoring and Maintaining IP Address

To monitor and maintain your network, perform the tasks described in the following sections.

- Clearing Caches and Tables
- Displaying System and Network Status

#### 20.1.3.1 Clearing Caches and Tables

You can remove all contents of a particular cache, table, or database, including: 1) Clearing ARP cache; 2) Clearing the hostname to IP address mapping table; 3) Clearing the routing tables.

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>clear arp-cache</b>	Clear the ARP cache.
DES-7200# <b>clear ip route</b> { <i>network</i> [ <i>mask</i> ]   *}	Clear the routing table.

#### 20.1.3.2 Displaying System and Network Status

You can show the contents of the IP routing table, cache, and database. Such information is very helpful in troubleshooting the network. You also can display information about



reachability of local network and discover the routing path that the packets of your device are taking through the network.

To display system and network status, execute the following commands in the privileged mode :

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>show arp</b>	Show the ARP table.
DES-7200# <b>show ip arp</b>	Show the IP ARP table.
DES-7200# <b>show ip interface</b> [ <i>interface-type</i> <i>interface-number</i> ]	Show the interface information.
DES-7200# <b>show ip route</b> [ <i>network</i> [ <i>mask</i> ] ]	Show the routing table.
DES-7200# <b>show ip route</b>	Show the brief information of the routing table.
DES-7200# <b>ping</b> <i>ip-address</i> [ <i>length bytes</i> ] [ <i>ntimes times</i> ] [ <i>timeout seconds</i> ]	Test network reachability.

### 20.1.4 IP Address Configuration Examples

This chapter provides some IP address configuration examples as follows:

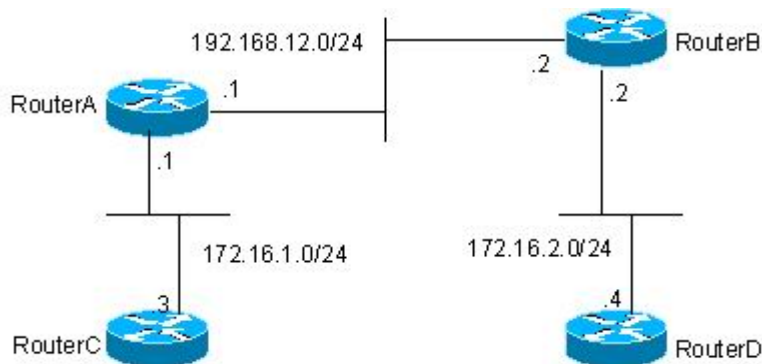
#### ■ Secondary IP Address Configuration Example

##### 20.1.4.1 Secondary IP Address Configuration Example

#### ■ Configuration requirements:

Figure 19-1 shows IP address assignment and network device connection.

**Figure 20-1** Secondary IP address configuration example



Configure RIPv1. You can see the routes of 172.16.2.0/24 on router C and the routes of 172.16.1.0/24 on router D.



### ■ Configuration of the Routers:

RIPv1 does not support classless-based routes. This means masks are not carried with routing advertisement. 172.16.1.0/24 and 172.16.2.0/24 that belong to the same network are separated by the Class C network 192.168.12.0/24. Generally, router C and router D cannot routes from each other. According to one feature of RIP, the mask of the route to be received should be set to the same value as that of the interface network if the route and the interface network belong to the same network. By configuring routers A and B, you can build a secondary network 172.16.3.0/24 on the network 192.168.12.0/24 to link the two separated subnets. The following presents a configuration description of routers A and B.

#### Router A:

```
interface FastEthernet 0/0
ip address 172.16.3.1 255.255.255.0 secondary
ip address 192.168.12.1 255.255.255.0
!
interface FastEthernet 0/1
ip address 172.16.1.1 255.255.255.0
!
router rip
network 172.16.0.0
network 192.168.12.0
```

#### Router B:

```
interface FastEthernet 0/0
ip address 172.16.3.2 255.255.255.0 secondary
ip address 192.168.12.2 255.255.255.0
!
interface FastEthernet 0/1
ip address 172.16.2.1 255.255.255.0
!
router rip
network 172.16.0.0
network 192.168.12.0
```

## 20.2 IP Service Configuration

---

### 20.2.1 IP Services Configuration Task List

---

IP service configuration includes the following tasks which are all optional. You can perform IP connection management according to the actual requirement.

### 20.2.2 Managing IP Connections

---

The IP protocol stack offers a number of services to control and manage IP connections. Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP) provides many of these services. Once a network



problem occurs, a router or access server will send an ICMP message to the host or other routers. For detailed information on ICMP, see RFC 792.

To manage various aspects of IP connections, perform the optional tasks described in the following sections:

- Enabling ICMP Protocol Unreachable Messages
- Enabling ICMP Redirect Messages
- Enabling ICMP Mask Reply Messages
- Setting the IP MTU
- Configuring IP Source Routing

#### 20.2.2.1 Enabling the ICMP Protocol Unreachable Message

When a router receives a non-broadcast packet destined to it, and this packet uses an IP protocol that it cannot handle, it will return an ICMP protocol unreachable message to the source address. Similarly, if the router is unable to forward the packet because it knows of no route to the destination address, it sends an ICMP host unreachable message. This feature is enabled by default.

To enable this service, execute the following command in the interface configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>ip unreachable</b>	Enable the ICMP protocol unreachable and host unreachable messages.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>no ip unreachable</b>	Disable the ICMP protocol unreachable and host unreachable messages.

#### 20.2.2.2 Enabling the ICMP Redirect Message

Routes are sometimes less than optimal. For example, it is possible for the device to be forced to resend a packet through the same interface on which it was received. If the device resends a packet through the same interface on which it was received, it sends an ICMP redirect message to the originator of the packet telling the originator that the gateway to this destination address is another device in the same subnet. Therefore the originator will transmit the packets based on the optimized path afterwards. This feature is enabled by default.

To enable the ICMP redirect message, execute the following command in the interface configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>ip redirects</b>	Enable the ICMP redirect message. It is enabled by default.



Command	Function
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>no ip redirects</b>	Disable the ICMP redirect message.

### 20.2.2.3 Enabling the ICMP Mask Reply Message

Occasionally, a network device needs to know the mask of a subnetwork in the Internet. To obtain this information, the device can send the ICMP mask request message. The receiving device will send the ICMP mask reply message. Our product can respond the ICMP mask request message. This function is enabled by default.

To enable the ICMP mask reply message, execute the following command in the interface configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>ip mask-reply</b>	Enable the ICMP mask reply message.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>no ip mask-reply</b>	Disable the ICMP mask reply message.

### 20.2.2.4 Setting the IP MTU

All interfaces have a default MTU (Maximum Transmission Unit) value. All the packets which are larger than the MTU have to be fragmented before sending. Otherwise it is unable to be forwarded on the interface.

Our product allows you to adjust the MTU on an interface. Changing the MTU value can affect the IP MTU value, and the IP MTU value will be modified automatically to match the new MTU. However, changing the IP MTU value has no effect on the value of MTU.

The interfaces of a device in a physical network should have the same MTU for a protocol.

To set the IP MTU, execute the following command in the interface configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>ip mtu bytes</b>	Set the MTU in the range 68 to 1500 bytes.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>no ip mtu</b>	Restore the setting to the default.

### 20.2.2.5 Configuring IP Source Routing

Our product supports IP source routing. Upon receiving an IP packet, the device will check its IP header like strict source route, loose source route and recorded route, which are defined in RFC 791. If one of these options is enabled, the device performs appropriate action. Otherwise, it sends an ICMP error message to the source and then discards the packet. Our product supports IP source routing by default.

To enable IP source routing, execute the following command in the interface configuration mode:



Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>ip source-route</b>	Enable IP source routing.
DES-7200(config)# <b>no ip source-route</b>	Disable IP source routing.

**Caution**

For DES-7200 series, execute the **trap ip option packet** command to inform the hardware of sending the packets with options to the software due to the restriction of the hardware CMOS chip.



# 21

## DHCP Configuration

### **21.1 Introduction to DHCP**

---

The DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol), specified in RFC 2131, provides configuration parameters for hosts over the Internet. The DHCP works in the client/server mode. The DHCP server assigns IP addresses for the hosts dynamically and provides configuration parameters.

The DHCP assigns IP address in three ways:

1. Assign IP addresses automatically. The DHCP server assigns permanent IP addresses to the clients;
2. Assign IP addresses dynamically. The DHCP server assigns IP addresses that will expire after a period of time to the clients (or the clients can release the addresses by themselves);
3. Configure IP addresses manually. Network administrators specify IP addresses and send the specified IP addresses to the clients through the DHCP.

Among the above mentioned three methods, only dynamic assignment allows reuse of the IP address that the client does not need any more.

The format of DHCP message is based on that of BOOTP (Bootstrap Protocol) message. Hence, it is necessary for the device to be able to act as the BOOTP relay agent and interact with the BOOTP client and the DHCP server. The function of BOOTP relay agent eliminates the need of deploying a DHCP server in every physical network. The DHCP is detailed in RFC 951 and RFC 1542.

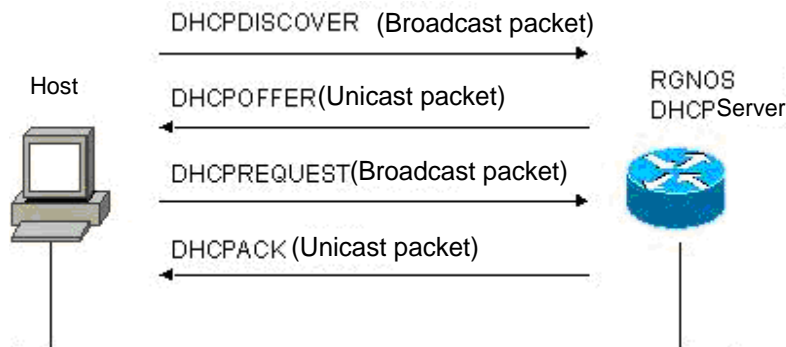
### **21.2 Introduction to the DHCP Server**

---

As specified in RFC2131, the DHCP server of our company is implemented to assign and manage IP addresses for the DHCP clients. The DHCP operation process is shown in Figure 21-1.

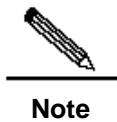


Figure 21-1



Process of requesting an IP address:

1. The host broadcasts a DHCPDISCOVER packet in the network to locate the DHCP server;
2. The DHCP server sends a DHCPOFFER packet in unicast form to the host, including IP address, MAC address, domain name and address lease period;
3. The host sends a DHCPREQUEST packet in broadcast form to formally request the server to assign the provided IP address;
4. The DHCP server sends a DHCPACK packet in unicast form to the host to confirm the request.



#### Note

The DHCP client may receive the DHCPOFFER packets from multiple DHCP servers, and accept any DHCPOFFER packet. However, the DHCP client usually accepts the first received DHCPOFFER packet only. The address specified in the DHCPOFFER packet from the DHCP server is not necessarily the finally assigned address. Generally, the DHCP server reserves this address until the client sends a formal request.

The goal of broadcasting the DHCPREQUEST packet is to let all the DHCP servers that send the DHCPOFFER packet receive this packet and then release the IP address specified in the DHCPOFFER packet.

If the DHCPOFFER packet sent to the DHCP client contains invalid parameters, the DHCP client sends the DHCPDECLINE packet to refuse the assigned configuration.

During negotiation, if the DHCP client does not respond to the DHCPOFFER packet in time, the DHCP server will send the DHCPNAK packet to the DHCP client, initiating the address request process again.

The advantages of using the DHCP server on our products for network construction are:

- Decrease network access cost. Generally, dynamic address assignment costs less than static address assignment.



- Simplify configuration tasks and reduce network construction cost. Dynamic address assignment significantly simplifies equipment configuration, and even reduces deployment cost if devices are deployed in the places where there are no professionals.
- Centralized management. During configuration management on several subnets, any configuration parameter can be changed simply by modifying and updating configurations in the DHCP server.

### 21.3 Introduction to the DHCP Client

---

The DHCP client can obtain IP addresses and other configuration parameters from the DHCP server automatically. The DHCP client brings the following advantages:

- Save device configuration and deployment time.
- Reduce the possibility of configuration errors.
- Centrally manage IP address assignment.

### 21.4 Introduction to the DHCP Relay Agent

---

The DHCP relay agent forwards DHCP packets between the DHCP server and the DHCP clients. When the DHCP clients and the server are not located in the same subnet, a DHCP relay agent must be available for forwarding the DHCP request and response messages. Data forwarding by the DHCP relay agent is different from general forwarding. In general forwarding, IP packets are unaltered and the transmission is transparent. However, upon receiving a DHCP message, the DHCP relay agent regenerates and forwards a DHCP message.

From the perspective of the DHCP client, the DHCP relay agent works like a DHCP server. From the perspective of the DHCP server, the DHCP relay agent works like a DHCP client.

### 21.5 Configuring DHCP

---

To configure DHCP, perform the following tasks, of which the first three tasks are mandatory.

- Enabling the DHCP Server and the DHCP Relay Agent (required)
- Configuring DHCP Excluded Addresses (required)
- Configuring DHCP Address Pool (required)
- Binding Address Manually (optional)
- Configuring the Ping Times (optional)
- Configuring Ping Packet Timeout (optional)
- Ethernet interface DHCP client configuration (optional)
- DHCP client configuration of the PPP encapsulation link (optional).
- DHCP client configuration of the FR encapsulation link (optional).



- DHCP client configuration of the HDLC encapsulation link (optional).

### 21.5.1 Enabling the DHCP Server and the DHCP Relay Agent

To enable the DHCP server and the DHCP relay agent, execute the following commands in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>service dhcp</b>	Enable the DHCP server and the DHCP relay agent.
DES-7200(config)# <b>no service dhcp</b>	Disable the DHCP server and the DHCP relay agent.

### 21.5.2 Configuring DHCP Excluded Addresses

Unless configured particularly, the DHCP server tries to assign all the subnet addresses defined in the address pool to the DHCP clients. If you want to reserve some addresses, such as those that have been assigned to servers or devices, you must define clearly that these addresses cannot be assigned to the DHCP clients.

To configure the addresses that cannot be assigned to the DHCP clients, execute the following commands in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>ip dhcp excluded-address</b> <b>low-ip-address [ high-ip-address ]</b>	Define a range of IP addresses that the DHCP server will not assign to the DHCP clients.
DES-7200(config)# <b>no ip dhcp excluded-address</b> <b>low-ip-address [ high-ip-address ]</b>	Remove the configuration.

A good practice in configuring the DHCP server is to prohibit the DHCP server from assigning any address that has been assigned specifically. This provides two advantages: 1) No address conflict will occur; 2) When DHCP assigns addresses, the time for detection is shortened and thus DHCP will perform assignment more efficiently.

### 21.5.3 Configuring DHCP Address Pool

Both DHCP Address assignment and DHCP parameters sent to the client should be defined in the DHCP address pool. If no DHCP address pool is configured, addresses cannot be



assigned to the DHCP clients even though the DHCP server has been enabled. However, if the DHCP server has been enabled, the DHCP relay agent is always working regardless of the DHCP address pool.

You can give a meaningful name that can be memorized easily to the DHCP address pool. The name of address pool contains characters and digits. Our product allows you to define multiple address pools. The IP address of the DHCP relay agent in the DHCP request packet is used to determine which address pool is used for address assignment.

- If the DHCP request packet does not contain the IP address of the DHCP relay agent, the address that is in the same subnet or network as the IP address of the interface that receives the DHCP request packet is assigned to the DHCP client. If no address pool is defined for this network segment, address assignment fails.
- If the DHCP request packet contains the IP address of the DHCP relay agent, the address that is in the same subnet or network as this address is assigned to the DHCP client. If no address pool is defined for this network segment, address assignment fails.

To configure a DHCP address pool, perform the following tasks as appropriate, of which the first three tasks are mandatory:

- Configure an address pool name and enter its configuration mode (required)
- Configure a subnet and its mask for the address pool (required)
- Configure the default gateway for the DHCP client (required)
- Configure the address lease period (optional)
- Configure the domain name of the DHCP client (optional)
- Configuring the domain name server (optional)
- Configure the NetBIOS WINS server (optional)
- Configure the NetBIOS node type for the DHCP client (optional)

#### 21.5.3.1 Configuring an Address Pool Name and Enter Its Configuration Mode

---

To configure an address pool name and enter the address pool configuration mode, execute the following command in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>ip dhcp pool</b> <i>dhcp-pool</i>	Configuring an address pool name and enter the address pool configuration mode

The address pool configuration mode is shown as "DES-7200(dhcp-config)#".

#### 21.5.3.2 Configuring the Boot File for the DHCP Client

---

The boot image file is the one used when the client starts. The boot image file is often the operation system to be downloaded by the DHCP client.



To configure the boot file for the DHCP client, execute the following command in the address pool configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(dhcp-config)# <b>bootfile</b> <i>filename</i>	Configure the name of the boot file for the DHCP client.

### 21.5.3.3 Configuring the Default Gateway for the DHCP Client

---

The IP address of the default gateway must be in the same network as the IP address of the DHCP client.

To configure the default gateway for the DHCP client, execute the following command in the address pool configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(dhcp-config)# <b>default-router</b> <i>address</i> [ <i>address2</i> ... <i>address8</i> ]	Configure the default gateway.

### 21.5.3.4 Configuring the Address Lease Period

---

The lease for the address that the DHCP server assigns to the client is one day by default. The client should request to renew when the lease period is going to expire. Otherwise, it cannot use this address when the lease period expires.

To configure the address lease period, execute the following command in the address pool configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(dhcp-config)# <b>lease</b> { <i>days</i> [ <i>hours</i> ] [ <i>minutes</i> ]   <b>infinite</b> }	Configure the address lease period.

### 21.5.3.5 Configuring the Domain Name of the DHCP Client

---

The domain name of the DHCP client can be specified. In this way, the domain name suffix will be automatically added to the incomplete host name to form a complete host name when the DHCP client accesses the network resources using the host name.

To configure the domain name of the DHCP client, execute the following command in the address pool configuration mode:



Command	Function
DES-7200(dhcp-config)# <b>domain-name</b> <i>domain</i>	Configure the domain name.

### 21.5.3.6 Configuring the Domain Name Server

A DNS server should be specified for domain name resolution when the DHCP client accesses the network resources using a host name.

To configure a domain name server for the DHCP client, execute the following command in the address pool configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(dhcp-config)# <b>dns-server</b> <i>address</i> [ <i>address2...address8</i> ]	Configure a DNS server.

### 21.5.3.7 Configuring the NetBIOS WINS Server

WINS is a domain name resolution service from Microsoft that the TCP/IP network uses to resolve a NetBIOS name to an IP addresses. The WINS server runs in Windows NT. After started, the WINS server will receive a registration request from the WINS client. When the WINS client is being shut down, it will send a name release message to the WINS server to guarantee the consistency of available computers between the WINS database and the network.

To configure a NetBIOS WINS server for the DHCP client, execute the following command in the address pool configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(dhcp-config)# <b>netbios-name-server</b> <i>address</i> [ <i>address2...address8</i> ]	Configure a DNS server.

### 21.5.3.8 Configuring the NetBIOS Node Type for the DHCP Client

There are four types of NetBIOS nodes for Microsoft DHCP client:

1. Broadcast. The NetBIOS name is resolved in the broadcast mode;
2. Peer-to-peer. The WINS server is asked directly to resolve the NetBIOS name;
3. Mixed. First, the name is resolved in the broadcast mode, and then the WINS server is connected to resolve the name;



4. Hybrid. First the WINS server is asked directly to resolve the NetBIOS name. If there is no response, the NetBIOS name is resolved in the broadcast mode.

By default, the Windows operation systems support broadcast or hybrid type NetBIOS nodes. If no WINS server is configured, the node is of broadcast type. If a WINS server is configured, the node is of hybrid type.

To configure the NetBIOS node type for the DHCP client, execute the following command in the address pool configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(dhcp-config)# <b>netbios-node-type</b> <i>type</i>	Configure the NetBIOS node type.

### 21.5.3.9 Configuring the Network Number and Mask of the DHCP Address Pool

To configure dynamic address binding, you must configure the subnet and its mask for the new address pool. A DHCP address pool provides the DHCP server with an address space that can be assigned to clients. All the addresses in the address pool are available for the DHCP clients unless address exclusion is configured. The DHCP server assigns the addresses in the address pool in sequence. If an address already exists in the binding table or this address is detected to be already present in this network segment, the DHCP server will check the next address until it assigns a valid address.

To configure the subnet and its mask of the DHCP address pool, execute the following commands in the address pool configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(dhcp-config)# <b>network</b> <i>network-number mask</i>	Configure the network number and mask of the DHCP address pool.



#### Caution

For the DHCP dynamic address pool of our products, addresses are assigned based on the physical address and ID of a DHCP client. This means there should not be two leases for the same DHCP client in the DHCP dynamic address pool. If path redundancy occurs between the DHCP client and the DHCP server (the DHCP client can reach the DHCP server by the direct path or relay path), the DHCP server may fail to assign addresses. To solve this problem, administrators should avoid path redundancy between the DHCP clients and the DHCP sever in other ways like adjusting physical links or network paths.



### 21.5.4 Manual Address Binding

Address binding refers to the IP address to MAC address mapping for the DHCP clients. You can bind addresses in two ways.

1. Manual binding: Configure the static IP address to MAC address mapping for the DHCP client on the DHCP server manually. Manual binding actually offers a special address pool;
2. Dynamic binding: Upon receiving a DHCP request from the DHCP client, the DHCP server dynamically assigns an IP address from the DHCP address pool to the DHCP client, and thus mapping the IP address to the MAC address for the DHCP client.

To define manual address binding, you first need to define a host address pool for each manual binding, and then define the IP address and hardware address (MAC address) or ID for the DHCP client. Generally, a client ID instead of a MAC address, is defined for the Microsoft clients. The client ID contains media type and MAC address. For the codes of media types, refer to Address Resolution Protocol Parameters in RFC 1700. The code of Ethernet type is "01".

To configure the manual address binding, execute the following commands in the address pool configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>ip dhcp pool</b> <i>name</i>	Define the name of the DHCP address pool and enter the DHCP configuration mode.
DES-7200(dhcp-config)# <b>host</b> <i>address</i>	Define an IP address for the DHCP client.
DES-7200(dhcp-config)# <b>hardware-address</b> <i>hardware-address type</i>	Define a hardware address for the DHCP client, such as aabb.bbbb.bb88
DES-7200(dhcp-config)# <b>client-identifier</b> <i>unique-identifier</i>	Define an ID for the DHCP client, such as 01aa.bbbb.bbbb.88
DES-7200(dhcp-config)# <b>client-name</b> <i>name</i>	(Optional) Define the client name using standard ASCII characters. Don't include domain name in the client name. For example, if you define the mary host name, do not define as mary.rg.com

### 21.5.5 Configuring Ping Times

By default, when trying to assign an IP address from the DHCP address pool to a DHCP client, the DHCP server will ping the IP address twice (one packet for each time). If there is no response, the DHCP server considers this address an idle address and assigns it to the DHCP client. If there is a response, the DHCP server considers that this address is in use



and tries to assign another address to the DHCP client until an address is assigned successfully.

To configure the number of Ping packets, execute the following commands in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>ip dhcp ping</b> <i>packets number</i>	Configure the number of Ping packets before the DHCP server assigns an address. If it is set to 0, the Ping operation is not performed. The default value is 2.

### 21.5.6 Configuring Ping Packet Timeout

By default, the DHCP server considers the IP address inexistent if it has not received a response within 500 milliseconds after pinging an IP address. You can adjust the Ping packet timeout.

To configure the Ping packet timeout, execute the following commands in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>ip dhcp ping</b> <b>timeout</b> <i>milliseconds</i>	Configure the Ping packet timeout for the DHCP server. The default value is 500ms.

### 21.5.7 Configuring the DHCP Client on the Ethernet Interface

Our products support obtaining the IP address dynamically assigned by the DHCP server on an Ethernet interface.

To configure the DHCP client on the Ethernet port, execute the following command in the interface configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>ip address dhcp</b>	Obtain an IP address through DHCP.

### 21.5.8 Configuring the DHCP Client on the PPP Encapsulated Link

Our products support obtaining the IP address dynamically assigned by the DHCP server on the PPP-encapsulated port.



To configure the DHCP client, execute the following command in the interface configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>ip address dhcp</b>	Obtain an IP address through DHCP.

### 21.5.9 Configuring the DHCP Client on the FR Encapsulated Link

---

Our products support obtaining the IP address dynamically assigned by the DHCP server on the FR-encapsulated port

To configure the DHCP client, execute the following command in the interface configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>ip address dhcp</b>	Obtain an IP address through DHCP.

### 21.5.10 Configuring the DHCP Client on the HDLC Encapsulated Link

---

Our products support obtaining the IP address dynamically assigned by the DHCP server on the HDLC-encapsulated port.

To configure the DHCP client, execute the following command in the interface configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>ip address dhcp</b>	Obtain an IP address through DHCP.

## 21.6 Monitoring and Maintaining Information

---

### 21.6.1 Monitoring and Maintaining the DHCP Server

---

Three types of commands are available for monitoring and maintaining the DHCP server:

1. Clear commands, used to clear such information as DHCP address binding, address conflict and server statistics;
2. Debug commands, used to output necessary debugging information. Such commands are mainly used to diagnose and fix faults;



### 3. Show commands, used to show information about DHCP.

Our products provide three clear commands. To clear information, execute the following commands in the command execution mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>clear ip dhcp binding</b> { address   * }	Clear the DHCP address binding information.
DES-7200# <b>clear ip dhcp conflict</b> { address   * }	Clear the DHCP address conflict information.
DES-7200# <b>clear ip dhcp server statistics</b>	Clear the DHCP server statistics.

To debug the DHCP server, execute the following command in the command execution mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>debug ip dhcp server</b> [events   packet]	Debug the DHCP server.

To show the working status of the DHCP server, execute the following commands in the command execution mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>show ip dhcp binding</b> [address]	Show the DHCP address binding information.
DES-7200# <b>show ip dhcp conflict</b>	Show the DHCP address conflict information.
DES-7200# <b>show ip dhcp server statistics</b>	Show the DHCP server statistics.

## 21.6.2 Monitoring and Maintaining the DHCP Client

There are two types of commands for monitoring and maintaining the DHCP client. The following operations can be performed on the DHCP client:

1. Debug commands, used to output necessary debugging information. Such commands are mainly used to diagnose and clear faults.
2. Show commands, used to show information about DHCP.

To debug the DHCP client, execute the following command in the command execution mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>debug ip dhcp client</b>	Debug the DHCP client.



To show information about the lease that the DHCP client obtains, execute the following command in the command execution mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>show dhcp lease</b>	Show the information about DHCP lease.

## 21.7 Configuration Examples

This section provides three configuration examples:

- Address Pool Configuration
- Manual Binding Configuration
- DHCP Client Configuration

### 21.7.1 Address Pool Configuration Example

In the following configuration, the address pool net172 is defined, the network segment of the address pool is 172.16.1.0/24, the default gateway is 172.16.16.254, the domain name is rg.com, the domain name server is 172.16.1.253, the WINS server is 172.16.1.252, the NetBIOS node is of hybrid type, and the address lease period is 30 days. In this address pool, all the addresses other than 172.16.1.2 to 172.16.1.100 are available for assignment.

```
ip dhcp excluded-address 172.16.1.2 172.16.1.100
!
ip dhcp pool net172
network 172.16.1.0 255.255.255.0
default-router 172.16.1.254
domain-name rg.com
dns-server 172.16.1.253
netbios-name-server 172.16.1.252
netbios-node-type h-node
lease 30
```

### 21.7.2 Manual Binding Configuration

In the following configuration, the IP address assigned to the DHCP client with the MAC address 00d0.df34.32a3 is 172.16.1.101, the mask is 255.255.255.0, the host name is Billy.rg.com, the default gateway is 172.16.1.254, the WINS server is 172.16.1.252, and the NetBIOS node is of the hybrid type.

```
ip dhcp pool Billy
host 172.16.1.101 255.255.255.0
hardware-address 00d0.df34.32a3 ethernet
client-name Billy
default-router 172.16.1.254
domain-name rg.com
dns-server 172.16.1.253
```



```
netbios-name-server 172.16.1.252
netbios-node-type h-node
```

### **21.7.3 DHCP Client Configuration**

---

In the following configuration, FastEthernet 0/0 is automatically assigned an address by DHCP.

```
interface FastEthernet0/0
ip address dhcp
```



# 22

## DHCP Relay Configuration

### 22.1 Overview

---

#### 22.1.1 Understanding DHCP

---

The DHCP protocol is widely used to dynamically allocate the reusable network resources, for example, IP address.

The DHCP Client sends the DHCP DISCOVER packet in broadcast form to the DHCP Server. After the DHCP Server receives the DHCP DISCOVER packet, it allocates resources such as IP address to the the DHCP Client according to the appropriate policy, and sends the DHCP OFFER packet. After the DHCP Client receives the DHCP OFFER packet, it checks if the resources are available. If resources are available, it sends the DHCP REQUEST packet. If not, it sends the DHCP DISCOVER packet. When the DHCP server receives the DHCP REQUEST packet, it checks if the IP addresses (or other limited resources) can be allocated. If yes, it sends the DHCP ACK packet. If not, it sends the DHCP NAK packet. When the DHCP Client receives the DHCP ACK packet, it starts to use the resources allocated by the DHCP server. If it receives the DHCP NAK packet, it may re-send the DHCP DISCOVER packet to request another IP address.

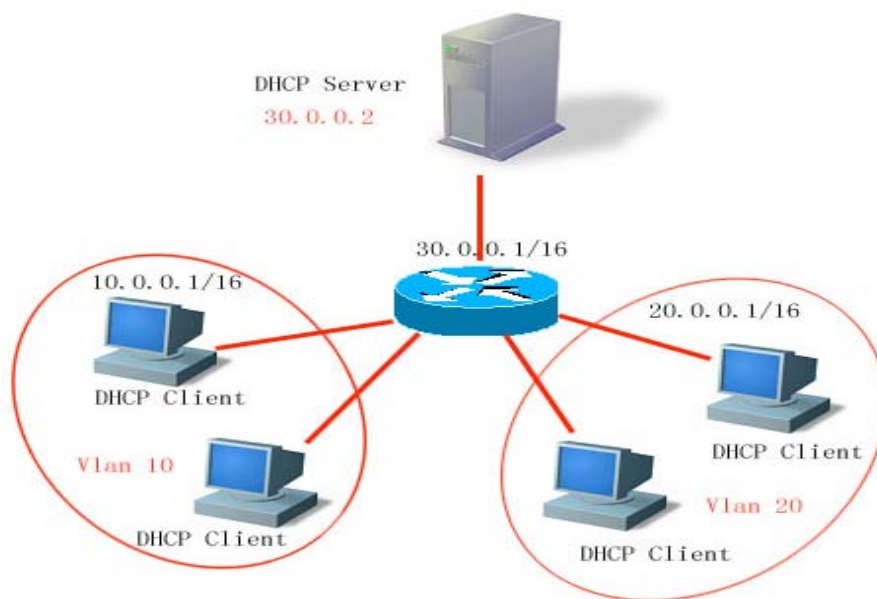
#### 22.1.2 Understanding the DHCP Relay Agent

---

The destination IP address of DHCP REQUEST packet is 255.255.255.255. This type of packets is only forwarded inside the subnet and is not to be forwarded by the devices. For dynamic IP address allocation across network segments, the DHCP Relay Agent is created. It encapsulates the received DHCP REQUEST packet into unicast IP packets and forwards it to the DHCP server. At the same time, it forwards the received DHCP response packet to the DHCP Client. In this way, the DHCP Relay Agent works as a transit station responsible for communicating with the DHCP Clients and the DHCP Server on different network segments. Therefore, one DHCP Server in a LAN can implement the dynamic IP management for all network segments, that is, a dynamic DHCP IP management in the Client - Relay Agent - Server mode.



Figure 22-1



VLAN 10 and VLAN 20 correspond with the 10.0.0.1/16 and 20.0.0.1/16 networks respectively, while the DHCP Server is located on the 30.0.0.1/16 network. To have a dynamic IP management on the 10.0.0.1/16 and 20.0.0.1/16 networks through the DHCP Server at 30.0.0.2, just enable the DHCP Relay Agent on the device that functions as the gateway, and specify the IP address of the DHCP Server to 30.0.0.2.

### 22.1.3 Understanding DHCP Relay Agent Information(option 82)

As specified in RFC3046, when a relay device performs DHCP relay, the network information of the DHCP client can be indicated in detail by adding an option, so that the DHCP server can assign users with IP addresses for different privileges. RFC3046 specifies that the option is numbered 82, so it is also called option82. This option can be used without running other protocol modules. During DHCP relay, the device forms option82 information according to the port that receives the DHCP request message and the physical IP address of the device itself, and uploads the option82 information to the DHCP server. The option is in the following format:



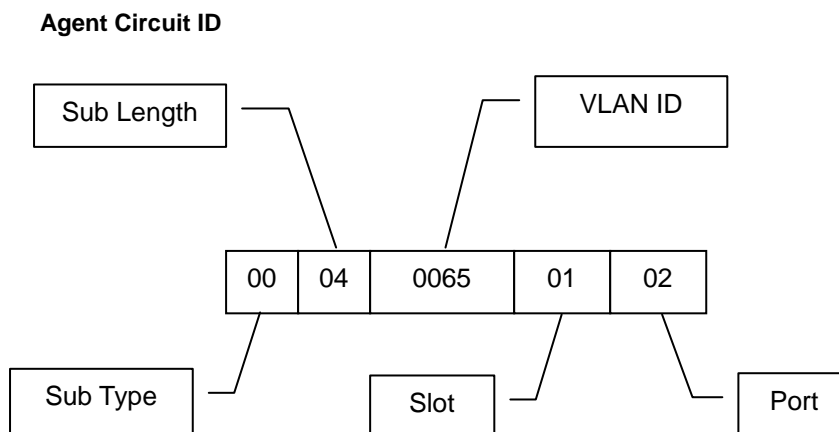
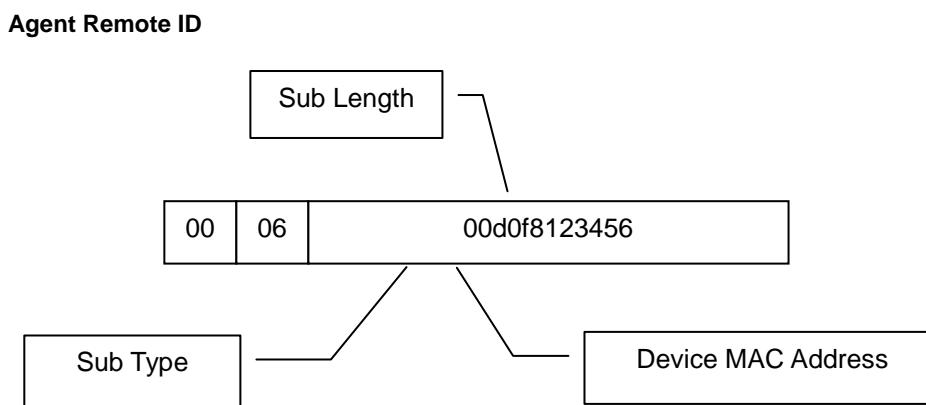


Figure 22-2



#### 22.1.4 Understanding DHCP relay Check Server-id Function

When the DHCP is used, generally multiple DHCP servers are configured for a network for the purpose of backup, so that the network will continue to work even if a server fails. During the four interaction processes of DHCP acquisition, a DHCP server has been selected when the DHCP client sends the DHCP request message. Here, the DHCP request message includes the optional server-id. In some particular application circumstances, we need to enable this option for relay in order to reduce loads on the network server. In this way, the DHCP request message is only sent to the specified DHCP server, instead of to every configured DHCP server. This is the DHCP check server-id function.



## 22.2 Configuring DHCP

### 22.2.1 Configuring the DHCP Relay Agent

To configure the DHCP relay agent, execute the following commands in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>service dhcp</b>	Enable the DHCP agent.
DES-7200(config)# <b>no service dhcp</b>	Disable the DHCP agent.

### 22.2.2 Configuring the IP Address of the DHCP Server

After you have configured the IP address of the DHCP Server, the DHCP request message received by the device will be forwarded to it. At the same time, the DHCP response message received from the DHCP server will also be forwarded to the DHCP Client.

The IP address of the DHCP server can either be configured globally or on the layer 3 interface. Up to 20 IP addresses can be configured for the DHCP server in every mode. When the DHCP request message is received from an interface, the DHCP server of the interface is first used. If no DHCP server is configured on the interface, the DHCP server globally configured will be used.

The DHCP supports vrf-based relay function by adding the vrf parameter to the IP address of the DHCP server.

To configure the IP address of the DHCP server, execute the following commands in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>IP helper-address</b> [vrf] <i>A.B.C.D</i>	Configure the IP address of the DHCP server globally.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>IP helper-address</b> [vrf] <i>A.B.C.D</i>	Configure the IP address of the DHCP server on the interface. This command must be set on the layer 3 interface.
DES-7200(config)# <b>no IP helper-address</b> [vrf] <i>A.B.C.D</i>	Delete the globally configured IP address of the DHCP server.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>no IP helper-address</b> [vrf] <i>A.B.C.D</i>	Delete the IP address of the DHCP server configured on the interface.



### 22.2.3 Configuring DHCP option dot1x

Description in Understanding the DHCP Relay Agent Information shows that we can configure **ip dhcp relay information option dot1x** to enable the **option dot1x** function of the DHCP relay when you need to assign the IP addresses with different privileges to the users of different privileges. When this function is enabled, the device will work with 802.1x to add corresponding option information to the DHCP server when it relays. This function should be used with the dot1x function.

To configure DHCP option dot1x, execute the following commands in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>ip dhcp relay information option dot1x</b>	Enable the DHCP option dot1x function.
DES-7200(config)# <b>no ip dhcp relay information option dot1x</b>	Disable the DHCP option dot1x function.

### 22.2.4 Configuring DHCP option dot1x access-group

In the option dot1x application scheme, the device needs to restrict the unauthorized IP address or the IP address with low privilege to access certain IP addresses, and restrict the access between users with low privileges. To do so, configure the command **ip dhcp relay information option dot1x access-group acl-name**. Here the ACL defined by *acl-name* must be configured in advance. It is used to filter some contents and prohibit unauthorized users from accessing each other. In addition, ACL associated here is applied to all the ports on the device. This ACL has not default ACE and is not conflicted with ACLs associated with other interfaces. For example:

Assign a type of IP addresses for all the unauthorized users, namely 192.168.3.2-192.168.3.254, 192.168.4.2-192.168.4.254, and 192.168.5.2-192.168.5.254. 192.168.3.1, 192.168.4.1, and 192.168.5.1 are gateway addresses that are not assigned to users. In this way, an unauthorized user uses one of the 192.168.3.x-5.x addresses to access the Web portal for downloading client software. Therefore, the device should be configured as follows:

```
DES-7200# config
DES-7200(config)# ip access-list extended DenyAccessEachOtherOfUnauthorize
DES-7200(config-ext-nacl)# permit ip any host 192.168.3.1 //Packet that can be sent
to the gateway
DES-7200(config-ext-nacl)# permit ip any host 192.168.4.1
DES-7200(config-ext-nacl)# permit ip any host 192.168.5.1
DES-7200(config-ext-nacl)# permit ip host 192.168.3.1 any
```



//Permit the packets whose source IP address is the gateway.

```
DES-7200(config-ext-nacl)# permit ip host 192.168.4.1 any
DES-7200(config-ext-nacl)# permit ip host 192.168.5.1 any
DES-7200(config-ext-nacl)# deny ip 192.168.3.0 0.0.0.255 192.168.3.0 0.0.0.255
```

//Prohibit unauthorized users from accessing each other

```
DES-7200(config-ext-nacl)# deny ip 192.168.3.0 0.0.0.255 192.168.4.0 0.0.0.255
DES-7200(config-ext-nacl)# deny ip 192.168.3.0 0.0.0.255 192.168.5.0 0.0.0.255
DES-7200(config-ext-nacl)# deny ip 192.168.4.0 0.0.0.255 192.168.4.0 0.0.0.255
DES-7200(config-ext-nacl)# deny ip 192.168.4.0 0.0.0.255 192.168.5.0 0.0.0.255
DES-7200(config-ext-nacl)# deny ip 192.168.5.0 0.0.0.255 192.168.5.0 0.0.0.255
DES-7200(config-ext-nacl)# deny ip 192.168.5.0 0.0.0.255 192.168.3.0 0.0.0.255
DES-7200(config-ext-nacl)# deny ip 192.168.5.0 0.0.0.255 192.168.4.0 0.0.0.255
DES-7200(config-ext-nacl)# exit
```

Then, apply the command to the global interfaces using the **ip dhcp relay information option dot1x access-group** *DenyAccessEachOtherOfUnauthrize* command.

To configure **DHCP option dot1x access-group**, execute the following commands in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>ip dhcp relay information option dot1x access-group</b> <i>acl-name</i>	Enable DHCP option dot1x acl.
DES-7200(config)# <b>no ip dhcp relay information option dot1x access-group</b> <i>acl-name</i>	Disable DHCP option dot1x acl.

### 22.2.5 Configuring DHCP option 82

When the **ip dhcp relay information option82** command is configured, the device adds **option** in the format as described in Understanding **DHCP Relay Agent Information** to the DHCP server during DHCP relay.

To configure DHCP option82, execute the following commands in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>ip dhcp relay information option82</b>	Enable the DHCP option82 function.
DES-7200(config)# <b>no ip dhcp relay information option82</b>	Disable the DHCP option82 function.



### 22.2.6 Configuring DHCP relay check server-id

After the **ip dhcp relay check server-id** command is configured, the device resolves DHCP SERVER-ID option upon receiving DHCP relay. If this option is set, the DHCP request message is sent to this server only, instead of other configured servers.

To configure **DHCP relay check server-id** function, execute the following commands in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>ip dhcp relay check server-id</b>	Enable the DHCP relay check server-id function.
DES-7200(config)# <b>no ip dhcp relay check server-id</b>	Disable the DHCP relay check server-id function.

### 22.2.7 Configuring DHCP Relay Suppression

After the **ip dhcp relay suppression** command is configured, the port will not relay the DHCP request broadcast packet by transforming it into the unicast form. However, it will not suppress the normal forwarding of broadcast packets received.

To configure DHCP relay suppression, execute the following commands in the interface configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>ip dhcp relay Suppression</b>	Enable the DHCP relay suppression function.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>no ip dhcp relay Suppression</b>	Disable the DHCP relay suppression function.

### 22.2.8 DHCP Configuration Example

The following commands enable the DHCP relay function and add two groups of IP addresses of the DHCP server:

```
DES-7200# configure terminal
DES-7200(config)# service dhcp //Enable the dhcp relay function
DES-7200(config)# ip helper-address 192.18.100.1 //Add an IP address globally
DES-7200(config)# ip helper-address 192.18.100.2 //Add an IP address globally
DES-7200(config)# interface GigabitEthernet 0/3
DES-7200(config-if)# ip helper-address 192.18.200.1 //Add an IP address on the
interface
```



```
DES-7200(config-if)# ip helper-address 192.18.200.2 // Add an IP address on the
interface
DES-7200(config-if)# end
```

## 22.3 Other Precautions on DHCP Relay Configuration

---

For layer 2 network devices, you must enable at least one of the option dot1x, dynamic address binding and option82 functions when the cross-management vlan relay function is required. Otherwise, only the relay function of management VLAN can be enabled for the layer 2 device.

### 22.3.1 Precautions on DHCP option dot1x Configuration

---

1. This command works only when the configuration related to AAA/802.1x is correct.
2. When this scheme is adopted, the IP authorization of the DHCP mode of 802.1x should be enabled.
3. This command cannot be used together with command **dhcp option82** because they are conflicted.
4. When the IP authorization of the DHCP mode of 802.1x is enabled, the MAC address and the IP address will also be bound. Therefore, IP authorization and DHCP dynamic binding function cannot be enabled at the same time.

### 22.3.2 Precautions on DHCP option82 Configuration

---

The DHCP option82 function and the **dhcp option dot1x** function cannot be used at the same time because they are conflicted.

## 22.4 Showing DHCP Configuration

---

Show the DHCP configuration using the **show running-config** command in the privileged mode.

```
DES-7200# show running-config
Building configuration...
Current configuration : 1464 bytes
version 10.1.00(1), Release(11758)(Fri Mar 30 12:53:11 CST 2007 -nprd
hostname D-Link
vlan 1
ip helper-address 192.18.100.1
ip helper-address 192.18.100.2
ip dhcp relay information option dot1x
interface GigabitEthernet 0/1
```



```
interface GigabitEthernet 0/2
interface GigabitEthernet 0/3
no switchport
ip helper-address 192.168.200.1
ip helper-address 192.168.200.2
interface VLAN 1
ip address 192.168.193.91 255.255.255.0
line con 0
exec-timeout 0 0
line vty 0
exec-timeout 0 0
login
password 7 0137
line vty 1 2
login
password 7 0137
line vty 3 4
login
end
```







# 23 DNS Configuration

## 23.1 DNS Overview

---

Each IP address may present a host name consisting of one or more strings separated by the decimal. Then, all you need to do is to remember the host name rather than IP address. This is the function of the DNS protocol.

There are two methods to map from the host name to the IP address: 1) Static Mapping: A device maintains its host name to IP address mapping table and uses it only by itself. 2) Dynamic Mapping: The host name to IP address mapping table is maintained on the DNS server. In order for a device to communicate with others by its host name, it needs to search its corresponding IP address on the DNS server.

The domain name resolution (or host name resolution) is the process that the device obtains IP address which corresponds to the host name by the host name. The DES-7200 series switches support the host name resolution locally or by the DNS. During the resolution of domain name, you can firstly adopt the static method. If it fails, use the dynamic method instead. Some frequently used domain names can be put into the resolution list of static domain names. In this way, the efficiency of domain name resolution can be increased considerably.

## 23.2 Configuring Domain Name Resolution

---

### 23.2.1 Default DNS Configuration

---

The default configurations of DNS are as follows:

Attribute	Default value
Enable/disable the DNS resolution service	Enable
IP address of DNS server	None
Status Host List	None
Maximum number of DNS servers	6



### 23.2.2 Enabling DNS Resolution Service

This section describes how to enable the DNS resolution service.

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>ip domain-lookup</b>	Enable DNS.

The command **no ip domain-lookup** is used to disable DNS.

```
DES-7200(config)# ip domain-lookup
```

### 23.2.3 Configuring the DNS Server

This section describes how to configure the DNS server. The dynamic domain name resolution can be carried out only when the DNS Server is configured.

The **no ip name-server** [*ip-address*] command can be used to remove the DNS server. Where, the **ip-address** parameter indicates the specified DNS server to be removed. If this parameter is omitted, all the DNS servers will be removed.

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>ip name-server</b> <i>ip-address</i>	Add the IP address of the DNS Server. The switch will add a DNS Server when this command is executed every time. If the domain name can't be obtained from the first DNS Server, the switch will send the DNS request to the subsequent several servers until the correct response is received. The system can support six DNS servers at most.

### 23.2.4 Configuring the Host Name to IP Address Mapping Statically

This section describes how to configure the host name to IP address mapping. The switch maintains a host name to IP address corresponding table, which is also referred to as the host name to IP address mapping table. You can obtain the mapping table in two ways: manual configuration and dynamic learning.

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>ip host</b> <i>host-name ip-address</i>	Configure the host name to IP address mapping manually.

This command with the parameter **no** can be used to remove the mapping between the host name and IP address.



### 23.2.5 Clearing the Dynamic Buffer Table of Host Names

This section describes how to clear the dynamic buffer table of host names. If the command **clear host** or **clear host \*** is entered, the dynamic buffer table will be cleared. Otherwise, only the entries of specified domain names will be cleared.

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>clear host</b> [word]	Clear the dynamic buffer table of host names. The host names configured statically will not be removed.

### 23.2.6 Showing Domain Name Resolution Information

This section describes how to display the DNS configuration.

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>show hosts</b>	Show the DNS configuration.

```
DES-7200# show hosts
DNS name server :
192.168.5.134 static
      host          type      address
www.163.com        static    192.168.5.243
www.dlink.com       dynamic   192.168.5.123
```

### 23.2.7 Application examples

**Ping** the host with specified domain name:

```
DES-7200# ping www.dlink.com
Resolving host[www.dlink.com].....
Sending 5,100-byte ICMP Echos to 192.168.5.123,
timeout is 2000 milliseconds.
!!!!
Success rate is 100 percent(5/5)
Minimum = 1ms Maximum = 1ms, Average = 1ms
```







# 24

## NTP Configuration

### 24.1 Understanding NTP

---

Network Time Protocol (NTP) is designed for time synchronization on network devices. A device can synchronize its clock source and the server. Moreover, the NTP protocol can provide precise time correction (less than one millisecond on the LAN and dozens of milliseconds on the WAN, compared with the standard time) and prevent from attacks by means of encryption and confirmation.

To provide precise time, NTP needs precise time source, the Coordinated Universal Time (UTC). The NTP may obtain UTC from the atom clock, observatory, satellite or Internet. Thus, accurate and reliable time source is available.

To prevent the time server from malicious destroying, an authentication mechanism is used by the NTP to check whether the request of time correction really comes from the declared server, and check the path of returning data. This mechanism provides protection of anti-interference.

As a simplified version of NTP, SNTP has the identical message format. The difference is that SNTP simplifies the algorithm of time correction and neglects many possible factors resulting in errors. Therefore, SNTP is not as good as NTP in aspect of precision. The SNTP does not support the security authentication mechanism. The switch supports the NTP for the client at present, that is, the time can be synchronized according to the time server.

### 24.2 Configuring NTP

---

This chapter describes how to configure the NTP client.

- Configure the global NTP authentication mechanism.
- Configure the global NTP authentication key.
- Configure the global NTP trusted key ID.
- Configure the NTP server.
- Disable the interface to receive the NTP message.
- Enable or disable NTP.
- Configure the real-time NTP synchronization.



### 24.2.1 Configuring the Global NTP Authentication Mechanism

---

The NTP client of DES-7200 series supports encrypted communication with the NTP server by means of key encryption.

There are two steps to configure the NTP client to communicate with the NTP server by means of encryption:

Step 1, Authenticate the NTP client and configure the key globally;

Step 2, Configure the trusted key for the NTP server.

To initiate the encrypted communication with the NTP server, you need to set authentication key for the NTP server in addition to performing Step 1.

By default, the NTP client does not use the global security authentication mechanism. Without this mechanism, the communication will not be encrypted. However, enabling the global security authentication does not mean that the encryption is used to implement the communication between the NTP server and the NTP client. You need to configure other keys globally and an encryption key for the NTP server.

To configure the global security authentication mechanism, run the following commands in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
<b>ntp authenticate</b>	Configure the global NTP security authentication mechanism.
<b>no ntp authenticate</b>	Disable the global NTP security authentication mechanism.

The message is verified by the trusted key specified by the **ntp authentication-key** or **ntp trusted-key** command.

### 24.2.2 Configuring the Global NTP Authentication Key

---

The next step to configure the global security authentication for the NTP is to set the global authentication key.

Each key is identified by a unique key-id globally. The customer can use the command **ntp trusted-key** to set the key corresponding to the key-id as a global trusted key.

To specify a global authentication key, run the following commands in the global configuration mode:



Command	Function
<b>ntp authentication-key</b> <i>key-id</i> <b>md5</b> <i>key-string</i> [ <i>enc-type</i> ]	Specify a global authentication key. <i>key-id</i> : in the range of 1 to 4294967295 <i>key-string</i> : Any <i>enc-type</i> : Two types: 0 and 7
<b>no ntp authentication-key</b> <i>key-id</i> <b>md5</b> <i>key-string</i> [ <i>enc-type</i> ]	Remove a global authentication key.

The configuration of global authentication key does not mean the key is effective; therefore, the key must be configured as a global trusted key before using it.

**Caution**

The current NTP version can support up to 1024 authentication keys and only one key can be set for each server for secure communication.

### 24.2.3 Configure the Global NTP Trusted key ID

The last step is to set a global authentication key as a global trusted key. Only by this trusted key the user can send encrypted data and check the validity of the message.

To specify a global trusted key, run the following commands in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
<b>ntp trusted-key</b> <i>key-id</i>	Specify a global trusted key ID.
<b>no ntp trusted-key</b> <i>key-id</i>	Remove a global trusted key ID.

The above-mentioned three steps of settings are the first procedure to implement security authentication mechanism. To initiate real encrypted communication between the NTP client and the NTP server, a trusted key must be set for the corresponding server.

**Caution**

When a global authentication key is removed, its all trusted information are removed.

### 24.2.4 Configuring the NTP Server

No NTP server is configured by default. DES-7200's client system supports simultaneous interaction with up to 20 NTP servers, and one authentication key can be set for each server to initiate encrypted communication with the NTP server after relevant settings of global authentication and key are completed.



NTP version 3 is the default version of communication with the NTP server. Meanwhile, the source interface can be configured to send the NTP message, and the NTP message from the relevant server can only be received on the sending interface.

To configure the NTP server, run the following commands in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
<b>ntp server</b> <i>ip-addr</i> [ <b>version</b> <i>version</i> ][ <b>source</b> <i>if-name number</i> ][ <b>key</b> <i>keyid</i> ][ <b>prefer</b> ]	Configure the NTP server. <i>version</i> (NTP version number): 1 to 3 <i>if-name</i> (interface type): Aggregateport, Dialer GigabitEthernet, Loopback, Multilink, Null, Tunnel, Virtual-ppp, Virtual-template and VLAN <i>keyid</i> : 1 to 4294967295
<b>no ntp server</b> <i>ip-addr</i>	Remove the NTP server.

Only when the global security authentication and key setting mechanisms are completed, and the trusted key for communicating with server is set, can the NTP client initiate the encrypted communication with the NTP server. To this end, the NTP server should have the same trusted key configured.

### 24.2.5 Disabling the Interface to Receiving the NTP Message

The function of this command is to disable the interface to receive the NTP message.

By default, the NTP messages received on any interface are available to the NTP client for clock synchronization. This function can shield the NTP messages received on the relevant interface.



#### Caution

This command takes effect only for the interface whose IP address can be configured to receive and send packets.

To disable the interface to receive the NTP message, run the following commands in the interface configuration model:

Command	Function
<b>interface</b> <i>interface-type number</i>	Enter the interface configuration mode.
<b>ntp disable</b>	Disable the function of receiving NTP messages on the interface.

To enable the function of receiving NTP messages on the interface, use the command **no ntp disable** in the interface configuration mode.



### 24.2.6 Enabling or Disabling NTP

The **no ntp** command is to disable the NTP synchronization service, stop the time synchronization, and clear relevant information of NTP configuration.

The NTP function is disabled by default, but may be enabled as long as the NTP server or NTP security authentication mechanism is configured.

To disable the NTP, run the following commands in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
<b>no ntp</b>	Disable the NTP function.
<b>ntp authenticate</b> or <b>ntp server</b> <i>ip-addr</i> [ <b>version</b> <i>version</i> ][ <b>source</b> <i>if-name number</i> ][ <b>key</b> <i>keyid</i> ][ <b>prefer</b> ]	Enable the NTP function.

### 24.2.7 Configure the Real Time NTP Synchronization

For higher accuracy, the interaction of eight messages will be completed consecutively between the NTP client and the NTP server during the first synchronization. In subsequent synchronization, the time interval of NTP synchronization is one minute, that is, from the end of this synchronization to the automatic initiation of next clock synchronization. When the users want to implement real time synchronization manually, this command can be used.

To implement the real time NTP synchronization, run the following commands in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
<b>ntp synchronize</b>	Enable real time synchronization.
<b>no ntp synchronize</b>	Disable real time synchronization.

DES-7200 client system is set to conduct next synchronization in 30 minutes after the completion of each synchronization. Real time synchronization will be triggered when new servers are added and when the NTP clients stop synchronization. There is no effect to use the command during synchronization.

Both the command to disable real time synchronization and the command to disable the NTP can stop the clock synchronization (during the synchronization) or disable the clock synchronization (between synchronization processes). The difference is that the latter can not only disable the NTP synchronization function, but also clear relevant NTP configuration information.



## 24.3 Showing NTP Information

### 24.3.1 NTP Debugging

If you want to debug the NTP function, this command may be used to output necessary debugging information for troubleshooting.

To debug the NTP function, run the following commands in the privilege mode:

Command	Function
<b>debug ntp</b>	Enable the debugging function.
<b>no debug ntp</b>	Disable the debugging function.

### 24.3.2 Showing NTP Information

Execute the **show ntp status** command in the privileged mode to show the current NTP information.

To display the NTP function, run the following command in the privileged mode:

Command	Function
<b>show ntp status</b>	Show the current NTP information.

Only when the relevant communication server is configured can this command be used to print the display information.

```
Switch# show ntp status
```

```
Clock is synchronized, stratum 9, reference is 192.168.217.100
nominal freq is 250.0000 Hz, actual freq is 250.0000 Hz, precision is 2**18
reference time is AF3CF6AE.3BF8CB56 (20:55:10.000 UTC Mon Mar 1 1993)
clock offset is 32.97540 sec, root delay is 0.00000 sec
root dispersion is 0.00003 msec, peer dispersion is 0.00003 msec
```



#### Note

The stratum indicates the level of current clock, reference indicates the address of the server used for synchronization, freq indicates the clock frequency of current system, precision indicates the precision of current system clock, reference time indicates the UTC time of reference clock on the synchronization server, clock offset indicates the offset of current clock, root delay indicates the delay of current clock, root dispersion indicates the precision of top server, peer dispersion indicates the precision of synchronization server.



## 24.4 Configuration Examples

---

In the following configuration, there is an NTP server specified as the master in the network, relevant authentication mechanism is enabled, a key with the key-id of 6 and the key-string of woooooop is configured as the trusted key for the server. To configure the DES-7200 client to synchronize the time with the NTP server on the network, configure the NTP client as follows: enable security authentication, configure the same key as that for the NTP server, set this NTP server to synchronize the time, and begin to synchronize the time.

```
DES-7200(config)# no ntp
DES-7200(config)# ntp authentication-key 6 md5 woooooop
DES-7200(config)# ntp authenticate
DES-7200(config)# ntp trusted-key 6
DES-7200(config)# ntp server 192.168.210.222 key 6
DES-7200(config)# ntp synchronize
DES-7200(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 0/1
DES-7200(config-if)# ntp disable
DES-7200(config-if)# no ntp disable
```







# 25

## UDP-Helper Configuration

### 25.1 UDP-Helper Configuration

#### 25.1.1 UDP-Helper Overview

The main function of UDP-Helper is to implement the relay and forward of UDP broadcast packets. By configuring the destination server for the UDP broadcast packets to be forwarded, the UDP-Helper can convert the UDP broadcast packets into the unicast packets and then send them to the specified destination server. The UDP-Helper acts like a relay.

Once enabled, the UDP-Helper will check to see whether the destination UDP port number of the received broadcast packets matches the port number to be forwarded. If so, it modifies the destination IP address of packets as the IP address of the specified destination server, and send the packets to the destination server in unicast form.

When the UDP-Helper is enabled, the broadcast messages from Ports 69, 53, 37, 137, 138 and 49 are relayed and forwarded by default.

**Note**

The relay of BOOTP/DHCP broadcast packet is implemented through the UDP Port 67 and 68 by the DHCP Relay module; therefore, the two ports can not be configured as the relay port of UDP-Helper.

### 25.2 Configuring UDP-Helper

#### 25.2.1 Default UDP-Helper Configuration

**Table 25-1** Default UDP-Helper configuration

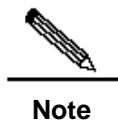
Attribute	Default value
Relay and forwarding	Disabled
UDP port for relay and forwarding	When the UDP-Helper is enabled, the UDP broadcast packets from Ports 69, 53, 37, 137, 138 and 49 are relayed and forwarded by default.
Destination server for delay and forward	None



### 25.2.2 Enable the Relay and Forward Function of the UDP-Helper

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>udp-helper enable</b>	Enable the relay and forward function of UDP broadcast packets. This function is disabled by default.

The **no udp-helper enable** command is used to disable the relay and forward function of the UDP-Helper.



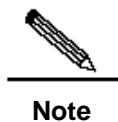
#### Note

1. The relay and forwarding function is disabled by default.
2. When the UDP-Helper is enabled, the broadcast packets from UDP Ports 69, 53, 37, 137, 138 and 49 are relayed and forwarded by default.
3. When the UDP-Helper is disabled, all of the configured UDP ports including the default ports are cancelled.

### 25.2.3 Configuring the Destination Server for Relay and Forwarding

Command	Function
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>ip helper-address</b> <i>IP-address</i>	Configure the destination server to which the UDP broadcast packets are relayed and forwarded. By default, it is not configured.

The **no ip helper-address** command can be used to remove the destination server for relay and forwarding.



#### Note

1. At most 20 destination servers can be configured for an interface.
2. If the destination server for relay and forwarding is configured on a specified interface, when the UDP-Helper is enabled, the broadcast packets of the specified UDP port received from this interface will be sent to the destination server configured for this interface in unicast form.



### 25.2.4 Configuring the UDP Port for Relay and Forwarding

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>ip forward-protocol udp ID</b>	<p>Configure the UDP port for relay and forwarding.</p> <p>If only the UDP parameter is specified, the default port will be used for relay and forwarding; otherwise, the port can be configured upon necessary.</p> <p>When the UDP-Helper is enabled, the broadcast packets from Ports 69, 53, 37, 137, 138 and 49 are relayed and forwarded by default.</p>

The **no ip forward-protocol udp port** command can be used to disable the UDP port for relay and forwarding.



#### Note

- Only when the function of relay and forwarding is enabled for the UDP-Helper and the destination server is configured for the relay and forwarding, can the UDP port be configured for relay and forwarding. Otherwise, the error prompts will appear.
- When the relay and forwarding function of the UDP-Helper is enabled, the function of forwarding the broadcast UDP packets from the default ports 69, 53, 37, 137, 138 and 49 will be enabled right now without any configuration.
- At most 256 UDP ports are supported for relay and forwarding by the switch.
- Two ways can be used to configure the default ports, for example, the **ip forward-protocol udp domain** and **ip forward-protocol udp 53** commands do the same thing.







# 26

## SNMP Configuration

### 26.1 SNMP Related Information

---

#### 26.1.1 Overview

---

As the abbreviation of Simple Network Management Protocol, SNMP has been a network management standard (RFC1157) since the August, 1988. So far, the SNMP becomes the actual network management standard for the support from many manufacturers. It is applicable to the situation of interconnecting multiple systems from different manufacturers. Administrators can use the SNMP protocol to query information, configure network, locate failure and plan capacity for the nodes on the network. Network supervision and administration are the basic function of the SNMP protocol.

As a protocol in the application layer, the SNMP protocol works in the client/server mode, including three parts as follows:

- SNMP network manager
- SNMP agent
- MIB (management information base)

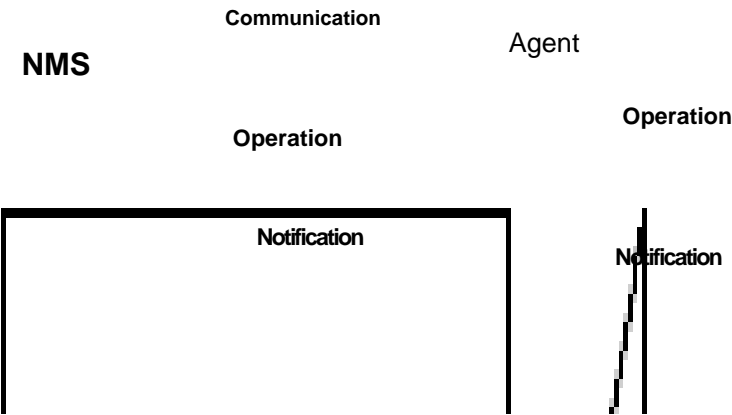
The SNMP network manager, also referred to as NMS (Network Management System), is a system to control and monitor the network using the SNMP protocol. HP OpenView, CiscoView and CiscoWorks 2000 are the typical network management platforms running on the NMS. D-Link has developed a suit of software (D-View) for network management against its own network devices. These typical network management software are convenient to monitor and manage network devices.

The SNMP Agent is the software running on the managed devices. It receives, processes and responds the monitoring and controlling messages from the NMS, and also sends some messages to the NMS.

The relationship between the NMS and the SNMP Agent can be indicated as follows:

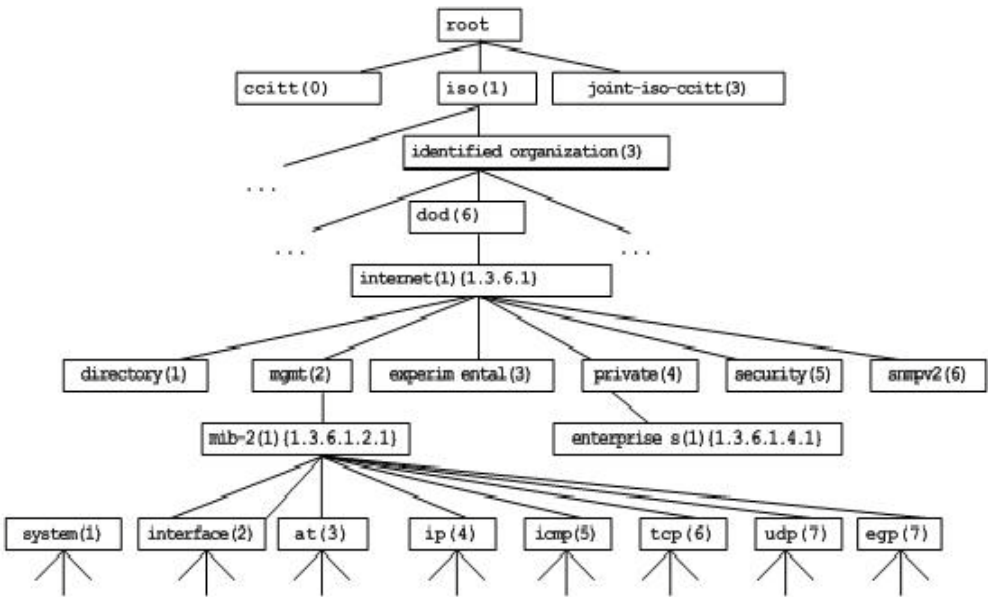


Figure 26-1 Relationship between the NMS and the SNMP Agent



The MIB (Management Information Base) is a virtual information base for network management. There are large volumes of information for the managed network equipment. In order to uniquely identify a specific management unit in the SNMP message, the tree-type hierarchy is used to by the MIB to describe the management units in the network management equipment. The node in the tree indicates a specific management unit. Take the following figure of MIB as an example to name the objectives in the tree. To identify a specific management unit system in the network equipment uniquely, a series of numbers can be used. For instance, the number string {1.3.6.1.2.1.1} is the object identifier of management unit, so the MIB is the set of object identifiers in the network equipment.

Figure 26-2 Tree-type MIB hierarchy





### 26.1.2 SNMP Versions

---

This software supports these SNMP versions:

- SNMPv1: The first formal version of the Simple Network Management Protocol, which is defined in RFC1157.
- SNMPv2C: Community-based Administrative Framework for SNMPv2, an experimental Internet protocol defined in RFC1901.
- SNMPv3: Offers the following security features by authenticating and encrypting packets:
  1. Ensure that the data are not tampered during transmission.
  2. Ensure that the data come from a valid data source.
  3. Encrypt packets to ensure the data confidentiality.

Both the SNMPv1 and SNMPv2C use a community-based security framework. They restrict administrator's operations on the MIB by defining the host IP addresses and community string.

With the GetBulk retrieval mechanism, SNMPv2C sends more detailed error information type to the management station. GetBulk allows you to obtain all the information or a great volume of data from the table at a time, and thus reducing the times of request and response. Moreover, SNMPv2C improves the capability of handling errors, including expanding error codes to distinguish different kinds of errors, which are represented by one error code in SNMPv1. Now, error types can be distinguished by error codes. Since there may be the management workstations supporting SNMPv1 and SNMPv2C in a network, the SNMP agent must be able to recognize both SNMPv1 and SNMPv2C messages, and return the corresponding version of messages.

### 26.1.3 SNMP Management Operations

---

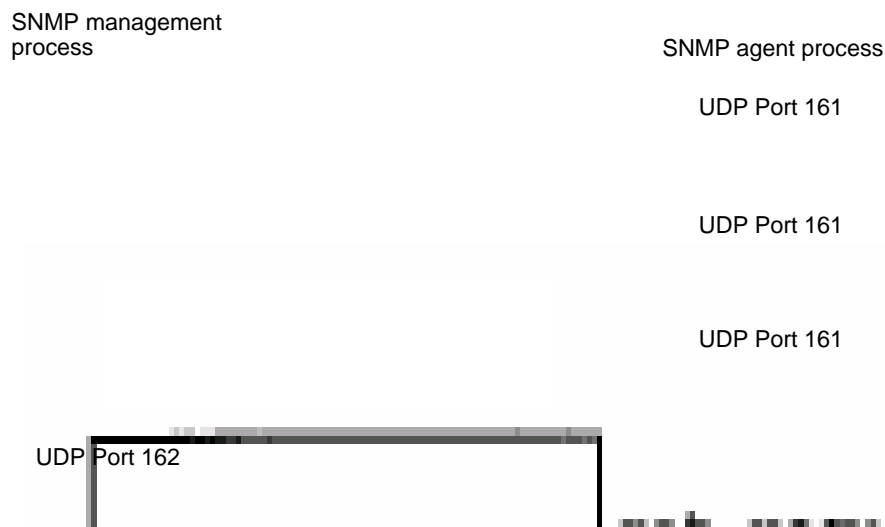
For the information exchange between the NMS and the SNMP Agent, six types of operations are defined:

1. Get-request: The NMS gets one or more parameter values from the SNMP Agent.
2. Get-next-request: The NMS gets the next parameter value of one or more parameters from the SNMP Agent.
3. Get-bulk: The NMS gets a bulk of parameter values from the SNMP Agent.
4. Set-request: The NMS sets one or more parameter values for the SNMP Agent.
5. Get-response: The SNMP Agent returns one or more parameter values, the response of the SNMP Agent to any of the above 3 operations of the NMS.
6. Trap: The SNMP Agent proactively sends messages to notify the NMS that some event will occur.



The first four messages are sent from the NMS to the SNMP Agent, and the last two messages are sent from the SNMP Agent to the NMS (Note: SNMPv1 does not support the Get-bulk operation). These operations are described in the following figure:

**Figure 26-3** Message types in SNMP



NMS sends messages to the SNMP Agent in the first three operations and the SNMP Agent responds a message through the UDP port 161. However, the SNMP Agent sends a message in the Trap operation through the UDP port 162.

#### 26.1.4 SNMP Security

Both SNMPv1 and SNMPv2 use the community string to check whether the management workstation is entitled to use MIB objects. In order to manage devices, the community string of NMS must be identical to a community string defined in the devices.

A community string Features:

- Read-only: Authorized management workstations are entitled to read all the variables in the MIB.
- Read-write: Authorized management workstations are entitled to read and write all the variables in the MIB.

Based on SNMPv2, SNMPv3 can determine a security mechanism for processing data by security model and security level. There are three types of security models: SNMPv1, SNMPv2C and SNMPv3.

The table below describes the supported security models and security levels.

Model	Level	Authentication	Encryption	Description
SNMPv1	noAuthNoPriv	Community string	None	Ensures the data validity through community string.



Model	Level	Authentication	Encryption	Description
SNMPv2c	noAuthNoPriv	Community string	None	Ensures the data validity through community string.
SNMPv3	noAuthNoPriv	User name	None	Ensures the data validity through user name.
SNMPv3	authNoPriv	MD5 or SHA	None	Provides HMAC-MD5 or HMAC-SHA-based authentication mechanism.
SNMPv3	authPriv	MD5 or SHA	DES	Provides HMAC-MD5 or HMAC-SHA-based authentication mechanism and CBC-DES-based encryption mechanism.

### 26.1.5 SNMP Engine ID

The engine ID is designed to identify an SNMP engine uniquely. Every SNMP entity contains a SNMP engine, a SNMP engine ID identifies a SNMP entity in a management domain. So every SNMPV3 entity has a unique identifier named SNMP Engine ID.

The SNMP Engine ID is an octet string of 5 to 32 bytes, which is defined in RFC3411:

- The first four bytes indicate the private enterprise number of an enterprise (assigned by IANA) in hex system.
- The fifth byte indicates how to identify the rest bytes.
  - 0: Reserved
  - 1: The following 4 bytes indicate an IPv4 address.
  - 2: The following 16 bytes indicate an IPv6 address.
  - 3: The following 6 bytes indicate an MAC address
  - 4: Texts of up to 27 bytes defined by manufacturers
  - 5: A hexadecimal value of up to 27 bytes defined by manufacturers
  - 6-127: Reserved
  - 128-255: In the format specified by manufacturers.

## 26.2 SNMP Configuration

To configure SNMP, enter the global configuration mode.



### 26.2.1 Setting the Community String and Access Authority

SNMPv1 and SNMPv2C adopt community string-based security scheme. The SNMP Agent supports only the management operations from the management workstations of the same community string. The SNMP messages without matching the community string will be discarded. The community string serves as the password between the NMS and the SNMP Agent.

- Configure an ACL rule to allow the NMS of the specified IP address to manage devices.
- Set the community's operation right: ReadOnly or ReadWrite.
- Specify a view for view-based management. By default, no view is configured. That is, the management workstation is allowed to access to all MIB objects
- Indicate the IP address of the NMS who can use this community string. If it is not indicated, any NMS can use this community string. By default, any NMS can use this community string.

To configure the SNMP community string, run the following command in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>snmp-server community</b> <i>string</i> [ <b>view</b> <i>view-name</i> ] [ <b>ro</b>   <b>rw</b> ] [ <b>host</b> <i>host-ip</i> ] [ <i>num</i> ]	Set the community string and its right.

One or more community strings can be specified for the NMS of different rights. To remove the community name and its right, run the **no snmp-server community** command in the global configuration mode.

### 26.2.2 Configuring MIB Views and Groups

With view-based access control model, you can determine whether the object of a management operation is in a view or not. For access control, generally some users are associated with a group and then the group is associated with a view. The users in a group have the same access right.

- Set an inclusion view and an exclusion view.
- Set a Read-only view and a Read-write view for a group.
- Set security levels, whether to authenticate, and whether to encrypt for SNMPv3 users.

To configure the MIB views and groups, run the following commands in the global configuration mode:



Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>snmp-server view</b> <i>view-name oid-tree {include   exclude}</i>	Create a MIB view to include or exclude associated MIB objects.
DES-7200(config)# <b>snmp-server group</b> <i>groupname {v1   v2c   v3 {auth   noauth   priv}}</i> <i>[read readview] [write writeview]</i>	Create a group and associate it with the view.

You can delete a view by using the **no snmp-server view** *view-name* command, or delete a tree from the view by using the **no snmp-server view** *view-name oid-tree* command. You can also delete a group by using the **no snmp-server group** *groupname* command.

### 26.2.3 Configuring SNMP Users

User-based security model can be used for security management. In this mode, you should configure user information first. The NMS can communicate with the SMP Agent by using a valid user account.

For SNMPv3 users, you can specify security level, authentication algorithm (MD5 or SHA), authentication password, encryption algorithm (only DES now) and encryption password.

To configure a SNMP user, run the following commands in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>snmp-server user</b> <i>username</i> <i>groupname {v1   v2   v3 [encrypted]</i> <i>[auth { md5 sha } auth-password ]</i> <i>[priv des56 priv-password] } [access {num  </i> <i>name}]</i>	Configure the user information.

To remove the specified user, execute the **no snmp-server user** *username groupname* command in the global configuration mode.

### 26.2.4 Configuring SNMP Host Address

In special cases, the SNMP Agent may also proactively send messages to the NMS.

To configure the NMS host address that the SNMP Agent proactively sends messages to, execute the following commands in the global configuration mode:



Command	Function
<b>DES-7200(config)# snmp-server host</b> <b>{host-addr ipv6 ipv6-addr} traps [vrf</b> <b>vrfname] [version {1 2c  3 [auth  </b> <b>noauth   priv]]] community-string</b> <b>[udp-port port-num] [type]</b>	Set the SNMP host address, vrf, community string, message type (or security level in SNMPv3).

### 26.2.5 Configuring SNMP Agent Parameters

You can configure the basic parameters of the SNMP Agent, including contact, device location and sequence number. With these parameters, the NMS knows the contact, location and other information of the device.

To configure the SNMP agent parameters, run the following commands in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>snmp-server contact</b> <i>text</i>	Configure the contact.
DES-7200(config)# <b>snmp-server location</b> <i>text</i>	Configure the location.
DES-7200(config)# <b>snmp-server chassis-id</b> <i>number</i>	Configure the sequence number.

### 26.2.6 Defining the Maximum Message Size of the SNMP Agent

In order to enhance network performance, you can configure the maximum packet size of the SNMP Agent. To configure the maximum packet size of the SNMP Agent, run the following command in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>snmp-server packetsize</b> <i>byte-count</i>	Set the maximum packet size of the SNMP Agent.

### 26.2.7 Shielding the SNMP Agent

The SNMP Agent service is a service provided by our product and enabled by default. When you do not need it, you can shield the SNMP agent service and related configuration by executing the following command in the global configuration mode:



Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>no snmp-server</b>	Shield the SNMP agent service.

### 26.2.8 Disabling the SNMP Agent

Our products provide a different command from the shield command to disable the SNMP Agent. This command will act on all of the SNMP services instead of shielding the configuration information of the SNMP Agent. To disable the SNMP agent service, run the following command in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>no enable service snmp-agent</b>	Disable the SNMP agent service.

### 26.2.9 Configuring the SNMP Agent to Send the Trap Message to the NMS Initiatively

The TRAP message is a message automatically sent by the SNMP Agent to the NMS unsolicitedly, and is used to report some critical and important events. By default the SNMP Agent is not allowed to send the TRAP message. To enable it, run the following command in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>snmp-server enable traps</b> [type] [option]	Allow the SNMP Agent to send the TRAP message proactively.
DES-7200(config)# <b>no snmp-server enable traps</b> [type] [option]	Forbid the SNMP Agent to send the TRAP message proactively.

### 26.2.10 Configuring LinkTrap Policy

You can configure whether to send the LinkTrap message of an interface. When this function is enabled and the link status of the interface changes, the SNMP will send the LinkTrap message. Otherwise, it will not. By default, this function is enabled.

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>interface</b> <i>interface-id</i>	Enter the interface configuration mode.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>[no] snmp trap</b> link-status	Enable or disable sending the LinkTrap message of the interface.



The following configures the interface not to send LinkTrap Message:

```
DES-7200(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 1/1
DES-7200(config-if)#no snmp trap link-status
```

### 26.2.11 Configuring the Parameters for Sending the Trap Message

To set the parameters for the SNMP Agent to send the Trap message, execute the following commands:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>snmp-server trap-source</b> <i>interface</i>	Specify the source port sending the Trap message.
DES-7200(config)# <b>snmp-server queue-length</b> <i>length</i>	Specify the queue length of each Trap message.
DES-7200(config)# <b>snmp-server trap-timeout</b> <i>seconds</i>	Specify the interval of sending Trap message.

## 26.3 SNMP Monitoring and Maintenance

### 26.3.1 Checking the Current SNMP Status

To monitor the SNMP status and troubleshoot SNMP configurations, our product provides monitoring commands for SNMP, with which it is possible to easily check the SNMP status of the current network device. In the privileged mode, execute **show snmp** to check the current SNMP status.

```
DES-7200# show snmp
Chassis: 1234567890 0987654321
Contact: wugb@i-net.com.cn
Location: fuzhou
2381 SNMP packets input
    5 Bad SNMP version errors
    6 Unknown community name
    0 Illegal operation for community name supplied
    0 Encoding errors
    9325 Number of requested variables
    0 Number of altered variables
    31 Get-request PDUs
    2339 Get-next PDUs
    0 Set-request PDUs
2406 SNMP packets output
    0 Too big errors (Maximum packet size 1500)
```



```

    4 No such name errors
    0 Bad values errors
    0 General errors
    2370 Get-response PDUs
    36 SNMP trap PDUs
SNMP global trap: disabled
SNMP logging: enabled
SNMP agent: enabled

```

The above statistics is explained as follows:

Showing Information	Description
Bad SNMP version errors	SNMP version is incorrect.
Unknown community name	The community name is not known.
Illegal operation for community name supplied	Illegal operation
Encoding errors	Code error
Get-request PDUs	Get-request message
Get-next PDUs	Get-next message
Set-request PDUs	Set-request message
Too big errors (Maximum packet size 1500)	Too large response message
No such name errors	Not in the specified management unit
Bad values errors	Specified value type error
General errors	General error
Get-response PDUs	Get-response message
SNMP trap PDUs	SNMP trap message

### 26.3.2 Checking the MIB Objects Supported by the Current SNMP Agent

To check the MIB objects supported by the current SNMP Agent, run the **show snmp mib** command in the privileged mode:

```

DES-7200# show snmp mib
sysDescr
sysObjectID
sysUpTime
sysContact
sysName
sysLocation
sysServices
sysORLastChange
snmpInPkts
snmpOutPkts

```



```
snmpInBadVersions
snmpInBadCommunityNames
snmpInBadCommunityUses
snmpInASNParseErrs
snmpInTooBigs
snmpInNoSuchNames
snmpInBadValues
snmpInReadOnlys
snmpInGenErrs
snmpInTotalReqVars
snmpInTotalSetVars
snmpInGetRequests
snmpInGetNexts
snmpInSetRequests
snmpInGetResponses
snmpInTraps
snmpOutTooBigs
snmpOutNoSuchNames
snmpOutBadValues
snmpOutGenErrs
snmpOutGetRequests
snmpOutGetNexts
snmpOutSetRequests
snmpOutGetResponses
snmpOutTraps
snmpEnableAuthenTraps
snmpSilentDrops
snmpProxyDrops
entPhysicalEntry
entPhysicalEntry.entPhysicalIndex
entPhysicalEntry.entPhysicalDescr
entPhysicalEntry.entPhysicalVendorType
entPhysicalEntry.entPhysicalContainedIn
entPhysicalEntry.entPhysicalClass
entPhysicalEntry.entPhysicalParentRelPos
entPhysicalEntry.entPhysicalName
entPhysicalEntry.entPhysicalHardwareRev
entPhysicalEntry.entPhysicalFirmwareRev
entPhysicalEntry.entPhysicalSoftwareRev
entPhysicalEntry.entPhysicalSerialNum
entPhysicalEntry.entPhysicalMfgName
entPhysicalEntry.entPhysicalModelName
entPhysicalEntry.entPhysicalAlias
entPhysicalEntry.entPhysicalAssetID
entPhysicalEntry.entPhysicalIsFRU
entPhysicalContainsEntry
entPhysicalContainsEntry.entPhysicalChildIndex
entLastChangeTime
```



### 26.3.3 Viewing SNMP Users

---

To view the SNMP users configured on the current SNMP agent, run the **show snmp user** command in the privileged mode:

```
DES-7200# show snmp user
User name: test
Engine ID: 8000131103000000000000
storage-type: permanent    active
Security level: auth priv
Auth protocol: SHA
Priv protocol: DES
Group-name: g1
```

### 26.3.4 Viewing SNMP Views and Groups

---

To view the group configured on the current SNMP agent, run the **show snmp group** command in the privileged mode:

```
DES-7200# show snmp group
groupname: g1
securityModel: v3
securityLevel:authPriv
readview: default
writeview: default
notifyview:

groupname: public
securityModel: v1
securityLevel:noAuthNoPriv
readview: default
writeview: default
notifyview:

groupname: public
securityModel: v2c
securityLevel:noAuthNoPriv
readview: default
writeview: default
notifyview:
```

To view the view configured on the current SNMP agent, run the **show snmp view** command in the privileged mode:

```
DES-7200# show snmp view
default(include) 1.3.6.1
test-view(include) 1.3.6.1.2.1
```



## 26.4 SNMP Configuration Example

---

### 26.4.1 Typical Configuration Example

---

#### ■ Configuration requirement

As shown in the following figure, the router is connected with the network management station (NMS) via the Ethernet. The IP addresses of the NMS and the router are 192.168.12.181 and 192.168.12.1 respectively. A network management software (taking HP OpenView as an example) is running on the NMS.

**Figure 26-4** Typical SNMP networking

WAN port:

#### ■ Detailed router configuration

Enable the SNMP agent service:

```
DES-7200(config)# snmp-server community public RO
```

As long as the above command is configured in the global configuration mode, the SNMP agent service is enabled on the router, and then the NMS can monitor the router. However, just read-only right is configured; the NMS can not modify the router's configuration but monitor its running. Other configurations are optional.

If the read-write access right is required, execute the following command:

```
DES-7200(config)# snmp-server community private RW
```

Followings are basic parameters of the SNMP Agent on the router. The NMS can get basic system information of the router via these parameters. This configuration is optional:

```
DES-7200(config)# snmp-server location fuzhou
DES-7200(config)# snmp-server contact wugb@i-net.com.cn
DES-7200(config)# snmp-server chassis-id 1234567890
0987654321
```

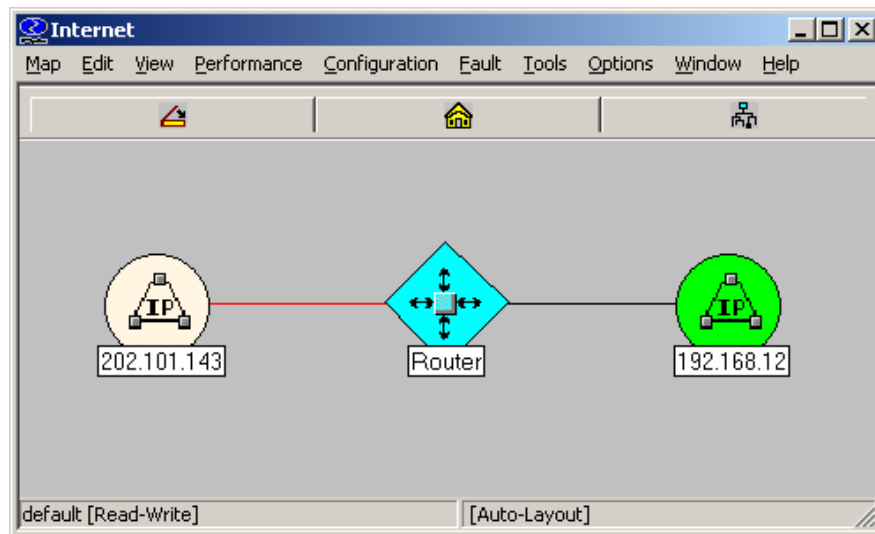


The following configuration is optional; the router is allowed to send some Trap messages to the NMS proactively.

```
DES-7200(config)# snmp-server enable traps
DES-7200(config)# snmp-server host 192.168.12.181 public
```

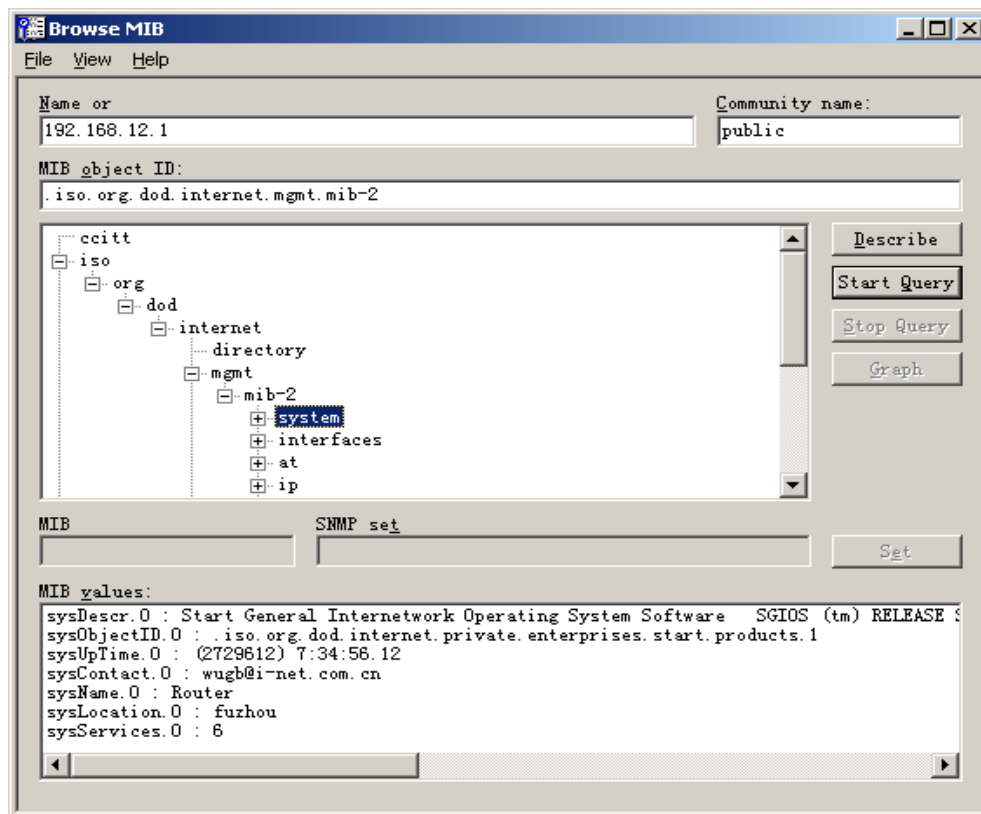
The SNMP agent is configured for the router by the above configuration. Then, the NMS can monitor and manage the router. Take HP OpenView as an example and a network topology is coming into being as follows:

**Figure 26-5** Network topology diagram

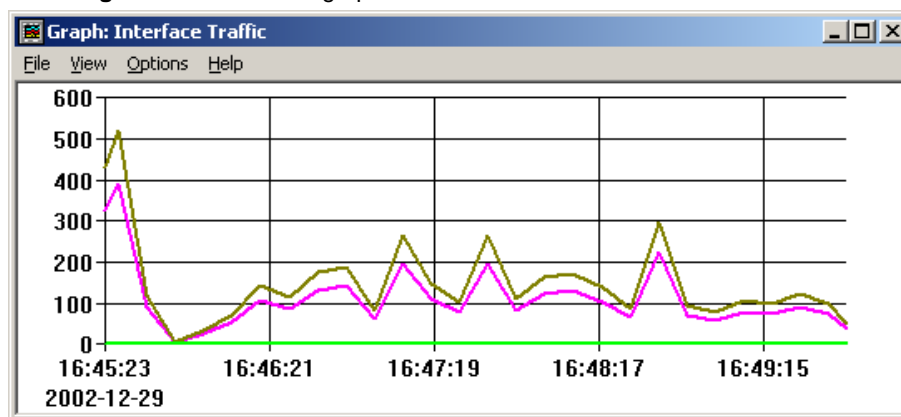


Now it is possible to query or set the management units in the network device. Click the TOOL->SNMP MIB Browser menu on the HP OpenView to display the following dialog box. Enter the IP address 192.168.12.1 in the Name field and "public" in the Community Name field. Select the specific management unit of the MIB, such as the "system" in the diagram below. Click Start Query to initiate MIB query for the network device. The results are displayed in the MIB Values pane of the dialog box.



**Figure 26-6** Interface of MIB query

HP OpenView has powerful function for the network management. For example, the traffic statistics of network interface can be expressed in the form of graph. For the other functions of SNMP, see the document of network management software.

**Figure 26-7** Statistics graph of interface traffic

## 26.4.2 Example of SNMP Access Control List Association

Our product allows the setting of access list association mode. Only the NMS allowed in the access list can monitor and manage the SNMP Agent through SNMP. This may limit NMS's accesses to the network devices and improve the SNMP security.



In the global configuration mode:

```
DES-7200(config)# access-list 1 permit 192.168.12.181  
DES-7200(config)# snmp-server community public RO 1
```

Now, only the host with IP address 192.168.12.181 can monitor and manage network devices through SNMP.

### 26.4.3 SNMPv3 Related Configuration Examples

---

The following configuration allows the SNMPv3 administrator to set and view the management variables under the MIB-2 (1.3.6.1.2.1) by using the v3user as the user name through the authentication and encryption mode. The MD5 is used as the encryption method and the MD5-Auth is used as the authentication password. The DES is used for encryption and the encryption key is Des-Priv. Meanwhile, it is allowed to send the Trap message to 192.168.65.199 in the format of SNMPv3. Use v3user as the user name to send the Trap message in the authentication and encryption mode. The authentication method is MD5 and the authentication password is MD5-Auth. The DES is used for encryption and the encryption key is Des-Priv.

```
DES-7200(config)# snmp-server view v3userview 1.3.6.1.2.1 include  
  
DES-7200(config)# snmp-server group v3usergroup v3 priv read v3userview write v3userview  
  
DES-7200(config)# snmp-server user v3user v3usergroup v3 auth md5 md5-auth priv des56 des-priv  
  
DES-7200(config)# snmp-server host 192.168.65.199 traps version 3 priv v3user
```







# 27

## RMON Configuration

### 27.1 Overview

---

RMON (Remote Monitoring) is a standard monitoring specification of IETF (Internet Engineering Task Force). It can be used to exchange the network monitoring data among various network monitors and console systems. In the RMON, detectors can be placed on the network nodes, and the NMS determines which information is reported by these detectors, for example, the monitored statistics and the time buckets for collecting history. The network device such as the switch or router acts as a node on the network. The information of current node can be monitored by means of the RMON.

There are three stages in the development of RMON. The first stage is the remote monitoring of Ethernet. The second stage introduces the token ring which is referred to as the token ring remote monitoring module. The third stage is known as RMON2, which develops the RMON to a high level of protocol monitor.

The first stage of RMON (known as RMON1) contains nine groups. All of them are optional (not mandatory), but some groups should be supported by the other groups.

The switch implements the contents of Group 1, 2, 3 and 9: the statistics, history, alarm and event.

#### 27.1.1 Statistics

---

Statistics is the first group in RMON. It measures the basic statistics information of each monitored subnet. At present, only the Ethernet interfaces of network devices can be monitored and measured. This group contains a statistics of Ethernet, including the discarded packets, broadcast packets, CRC errors, size block, conflicts and etc.

#### 27.1.2 History

---

History is the second group in RMON. It collects the network statistics information regularly and keeps them for processing later. This group contains two subgroups:

1. The subgroup History Control is used to set such control information as sampling interval and sampling data source.
2. The subgroup Ethernet History provides history data about the network section traffic, error messages, broadcast packets, utilization, number of collision and other statistics for the administrator.



### 27.1.3 Alarm

Alarm is the third group in RMON. It monitors a specific management information base (MIB) object at the specified interval. When the value of this MIB object is higher than the predefined upper limit or lower than the predefined lower limit, an alarm will be triggered. The alarm is handled as an event by means of recording the log or sending the SNMP Trap message.

### 27.1.4 Event

Event is the ninth group in RMON. It determines to generate a log entry or a SNMP Trap message when an event is generated due to alarms.

## 27.2 RMON Configuration Task List

### 27.2.1 Configuring Statistics

One of these commands can be used to add a statistic entry.

Command	Function
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>rmon collection stats</b> <i>index</i> [ <b>owner</b> <i>ownername</i> ]	Add a statistic entry.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>no rmon collection stats</b> <i>index</i>	Remove a statistic entry.



#### Caution

The current version of our product supports only the statistics of Ethernet interface. The index value should be an integer between 1 to 65535. At present, at most 100 statistic entries can be configured at the same time.

### 27.2.2 Configuring History

One of these commands can be used to add a history entry.

Command	Function
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>rmon collection history</b> <i>index</i> [ <b>owner</b> <i>ownername</i> ] [ <b>buckets</b> <i>bucket-number</i> ] [ <b>interval</b> <i>seconds</i> ]	Add a history entry.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>no rmon collection history</b> <i>index</i>	Remove a history entry.



**Caution**

The current version of our product supports only the records of Ethernet. The index value should be within 1 to 65535. At most 10 history entries can be configured.

*Bucket-number:* Specifies the used data source and time interval. Each sampling interval should be sampled once. The sampling results are saved. The Bucket-number specifies the maximum number of sampling. When the maximum is reached for the sampling records, the new one will overwrite the earliest one. The value range of Bucket-number is 1 to 65535. Its default value is 10.

Interval: Sampling interval in the range of 1 to 3600 seconds, 1800 seconds by default.

### 27.2.3 Configuring Alarm and Event

One of these command can be used to configure the alarm:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>rmon alarm</b> <i>number</i> <i>variable interval</i> { <b>absolute</b>   <b>delta</b> } <b>rising-threshold</b> <i>value</i> [ <i>event-number</i> ] <b>falling-threshold</b> <i>value</i> [ <i>event-number</i> ] [ <b>owner</b> <i>ownername</i> ]	Add an alarm entry.
DES-7200(config)# <b>rmon event</b> <i>number</i> [ <b>log</b> ] <b>[trap</b> <i>community</i> ] [ <i>description</i> <i>description-string</i> ]	Add an event entry.
DES-7200(config)# <b>no rmon alarm</b> <i>number</i>	Remove an alarm.
DES-7200(config)# <b>no rmon event</b> <i>number</i>	Remove an event.

*number:* Alarm index in the range of 1 to 65535.

*variable:* Variable to be monitored by the alarm(in integer).

*interval:* Sampling interval in the range of 1 to 4294967295.

Absolute: each sampling value compared with the upper and lower limits.

Delta: the difference with previous sampling value compared with the upper and lower limits.

*value:* Upper and lower limits.

*Event-number:* when the value exceeds the upper or lower limit, the event with the index of Event-number will be triggered.

Log: Record the event.



**Trap:** Send the Trap message to the NMS when the event is triggered.

**Community:** Community string used for sending the SNMP Trap message.

**Description-string:** Description of the event.

### 27.2.4 Showing RMON status

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>show rmon alarms</b>	Show alarms.
DES-7200(config)# <b>show rmon events</b>	Show events.
DES-7200(config)# <b>show rmon history</b>	Show history.
DES-7200(config)# <b>show rmon statistics</b>	Show statistics.

## 27.3 RMON Configuration Examples

### 27.3.1 Example of Configuring Statistics

If you want to get the statistics of Ethernet Port 3 , use the following commands:

```
DES-7200(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 0/3
DES-7200(config-if)# rmon collection stats 1 owner aaa1
```

### 27.3.2 Example of Configuring History

Use the following commands if you want to get the statistics of Ethernet Port 3 every 10 minutes:

```
DES-7200(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 0/3
DES-7200(config-if)# rmon collection history 1 owner aaa1 interval 600
```

### 27.3.3 Example of Configuring Alarm and Event

If you want to configure the alarm function for a statistical MIB variable, the following example shows you how to set the alarm function to the instance ifInNUcastPkts.6 (number of non-unicast frames received on port 6; the ID of the instance is 1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.12.6) in **IfEntry** table of MIB-II. The specific function is as follows: the switch checks the changes to the number of non-unicast frames received on port 6 every 30 seconds. If 20 or more than 20 non-unicast frames are added after last check (30 seconds earlier), or only 10 or less than 10 are added, the alarm will be triggered, and event 1 is triggered to do corresponding operations (record it into the log and send the Trap with “community” name as “rmon”). The



“description” of the event is “ifInNUcastPkts is too much”). The “owner” of the alarm and the event entry is “aaa1”.

```
DES-7200(config)#rmon alarm 10 1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.12.6 30 delta rising-threshold 20 1
falling-threshold 10 1 owner aaa1
DES-7200(config)#rmon event 1 log trap rmon description "ifInNUcastPkts is too much "
owner aaa1
```

### 27.3.4 Example of Showing RMON Status

---

#### 27.3.4.1 show rmon alarm

---

```
DES-7200# show rmon alarms
Alarm : 1
Interval : 1
Variable : 1.3.6.1.2.1.4.2.0
Sample type : absolute
Last value : 64
Startup alarm : 3
Rising threshold : 10
Falling threshold : 22
Rising event : 0
Falling event : 0
Owner : aaa1
```

#### 27.3.4.2 show rmon event

---

```
DES-7200# show rmon events
Event : 1
Description : firstevent
Event type : log-and-trap
Community : public
Last time sent : 0d:0h:0m:0s
Owner : aaa1
Log : 1
Log time : 0d:0h:37m:47s
Log description : ipttl
Log : 2
Log time : 0d:0h:38m:56s
Log description : ipttl
```

#### 27.3.4.3 show rmon history

---

```
DES-7200# show rmon history
Entry : 1
Data source : Gil/1
Buckets requested : 65535
Buckets granted : 10
Interval : 1
Owner : aaa1
```



```
Sample : 198
Interval start : 0d:0h:15m:0s
DropEvents : 0
Octets : 67988
Pkts : 726
BroadcastPkts : 502
MulticastPkts : 189
CRCAlignErrors : 0
UndersizePkts : 0
OversizePkts : 0
Fragments : 0
Jabbers : 0
Collisions : 0
Utilization : 0
```

#### 27.3.4.4 show rmon statistics

---

```
DES-7200# show rmon statistics
Statistics : 1
Data source : Gil/1
DropEvents : 0
Octets : 1884085
Pkts : 3096
BroadcastPkts : 161
MulticastPkts : 97
CRCAlignErrors : 0
UndersizePkts : 0
OversizePkts : 1200
Fragments : 0
Jabbers : 0
Collisions : 0
Pkts64Octets : 128
Pkts65to127Octets : 336
Pkts128to255Octets : 229
Pkts256to511Octets : 3
Pkts512to1023Octets : 0
Pkts1024to1518Octets : 1200
Owner : aaal
```



# 28

## RIP Configuration

### 28.1 RIP Overview

---

The RIP (Routing Information Protocol) is a relatively old routing protocol, which is widely used in small or homogeneous networks. The RIP uses the distance-vector algorithm, and so is a distance-vector protocol. The RIP is defined in RFC 1058.

The RIP exchanges the routing information by using the UDP packets, with the UDP port number to be 520. Usually, RIPv1 packets are broadcast packets, while RIPv2 packets are multicast packets with the multicast address of 224.0.0.9. The RIP sends the update packet at the interval of 30 seconds. If the device has not received the route update packets from the peer within 180 seconds, it will mark all the routes from that device unreachable. After that, the device will delete these routes from its routing table if it still has not received any update packets from the peer within 120s.

The RIP measures the distance to the destination in hop, known as route metric. As specified in the RIP, Zero hop exists when the router directly connects to the network. One hop exists when the router connects to the network through one device and so on. Up to 16 hops are supported in a network.

The RIP-enabled device can learn the default routes from the neighbors or generate its own default route. When any of the following condition is met, our product will generate the default route and advertise it to its neighbors:

- IP Default-network is configured.
- The default routes or static default routes learnt by the routing protocol are imported into the RIP protocol.

The RIP-enabled device will send the update packets to the interface of the network it connects. If the network is not associated with the RIP routing process, the interface will not advertise any update packets. The RIP is available in two versions: RIPv1 and RIPv2. The RIPv2 supports plain-text authentication, MD5 cryptographic text and variable length subnet mask.

To avoid a loop, the RIP offers the following functions:

- Split Horizon
- Poison Reverse
- Holddown time



For other feature applications of the RIP, see the *IP Routing Protocol Independent Feature Configuration* chapter.

## 28.2 RIP Configuration Task List

To configure the RIP, perform the following tasks. The first two tasks are required, while other tasks are optional. You should determine whether to perform the optional tasks according to your requirements.

- Create the RIP routing process (required)
- Configure the RIP Update Packets in Unicast Form (required)
- Configure Split Horizon (optional)
- Define the RIP Version (optional)
- Disable automatic route summary (optional)
- Configure RIP Authentication (optional)
- Adjust the RIP Timer (optional)
- Configure the RIP Route Source Address Validation (optional)
- Control RIP interface status (optional)
- Configure RIP VRF (optional)

For the following topics, refer to the chapter *IP Routing Protocol Independent Feature Configuration*.

- Filter RIP route information
- VLSMs (for RIPv2)

### 28.2.1 Creating the RIP Routing Process

For the router to run the RIP, you must first create the RIP routing process and define the network associated with the RIP routing process.

To create the RIP routing process, execute the following commands in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>router rip</b>	Create the RIP routing process.
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>network</b> <i>network-number</i>	Define the associated network.



**Note**

There are two meanings for the associated network defined by the **Network** command:

1. The RIP only notifies the route information of the associated network to the outside.
2. The RIP only notifies the route information to the interfaces belonging to the associated network.

### 28.2.2 Configuring the RIP Update Packet in Unicast Form

The RIP is usually a broadcast protocol. If the RIP route information needs to be transmitted across the non-broadcast networks, you need to configure the router so that it supports the RIP to advertise the route update packets in unicast form.

To configure advertising the update packet in unicast form, execute the following commands in the RIP routing process configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(conf-router)# <b>neighbor</b> <i>ip-address</i>	Advertise the RIP update packet in unicast form.

By using this command, you can also control which port is allowed to advertise the RIP route update packets, restrict a port from advertising the broadcast route update packets. You need to configure the **passive-interface** command in the routing process configuration mode. For the related description about the route information advertisement restriction, see the “Route Filtering Configuration” section in the *IP Routing Protocol Independent Feature Configuration* chapter.

**Note**

When you configure the FR and X.25, if the **Broadcast** keyword is specified during address mapping, you do not need to configure the **neighbor** command. The **Neighbor** command is largely reflected in reducing broadcast packets and filtering routes.

### 28.2.3 Configuring Split Horizon

Split horizon can be used to avoid loop in the environment where multiple devices running distance-vector type routing protocols connect to a network in which IP packets are broadcasted. Split horizon can prevent the router from advertising some route information through the port from which it learns such information. This optimizes the route information exchange among multiple routers.

However, split horizon may cause the failure of some routers to learn all the routes in a non-broadcast multi-access network (for example, frame relay, X.25). In this case, you may



need to disable split horizon. If a port is configured with the secondary IP address, you also need to pay attention to the split horizon problem.

To enable or disable split horizon, execute the following commands in the interface configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>no ip split-horizon</b>	Disable split horizon.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>ip split-horizon</b>	Enable split horizon.

By default, split horizon is enabled on all interfaces.

#### 28.2.4 Defining the RIP Version

Our product supports RIP version 1 and version 2, where RIPv2 supports authentication, key management, route convergence, CIDR and VLSMs. For the information about the key management and VLSMs, see the *IP Routing Protocol Independent Feature Configuration* chapter.

By default, our product can receive RIPv1 and RIPv2 packets, but it can only send RIPv1 packets. You can configure it to receive and send only RIPv1 packets or RIPv2 packets.

To receive and send the packets of a specific version, execute the following commands in the routing process configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>version {1   2}</b>	Defining the RIP Version.

The above command allows the software to receive or send only the packets of the specified version. If needed, you can modify the default setting of every port.

To configure a port to send only the packets of a specific version, execute the following commands in the interface configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>ip rip send version 1</b>	Specify to send the packets of only RIPv1
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>ip rip send version 2</b>	Send the packets of only RIPv2.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>ip rip send version 1 2</b>	Send the packets of RIPv1 and RIPv2.

To configure a port to receive only the packets of a specific version, execute the following commands in the interface configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>ip rip receive version 1</b>	Receive the packets of only RIPv1.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>ip rip receive version 2</b>	Receive the packets of only RIPv2.



Command	Function
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>ip rip receive version 1 2</b>	Receive the packets of RIPv1 and RIPv2.

### 28.2.5 Disabling Automatic Route Aggregation

The automatic route aggregation of the RIP means that the routes of subnets are automatically aggregated into the routes of a classful network when they pass through the border of the classful network. By default, the RIPv2 will automatically perform route aggregation, while the RIPv1 does not support this feature.

The automatic route aggregation function of the RIPv2 enhances the scalability and effectiveness of the network. If there are any aggregated routes, the sub-routes contained in them cannot be seen in the routing table. This greatly reduces the size of the routing table.

It is more efficient to advertise the aggregated routes than the separated routes. There are the following factors:

- Aggregated routes will be handled first when you search the RIP database.
- Any sub-routes will be ignored will you search the RIP database, and thus reducing the processing time.

Sometimes, you want to learn the specific sub-net routes rather than only viewing the aggregated routes. In this case, you should disable the automatic route aggregation function.

To configure automatic route aggregation, execute the following commands in the RIP routing process mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>no auto-summary</b>	Disable automatic route aggregation.
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>auto-summary</b>	Enable automatic route aggregation.

After the automatic route aggregation is disabled, you can configure the route aggregation of IP addresses or subnets on an interface by executing the following command in the interface mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>ip summary-address rip</b> <i>ip-address ip-network-mask</i>	Enable route aggregation on the interface.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>no ip summary-address rip</b> <i>ip-address ip-network-mask</i>	Disable route aggregation on the interface.



### 28.2.6 Configuring RIP Authentication

The RIPv1 does not support authentication. If the router is configured with the RIPv2, you can configure authentication on the appropriate interface.

The key chain defines the set of the keys that can be used for the interface. If no key chain is configured, no authentication will be performed even if a key chain is applied to the interface.

Our product supports two RIP authentication modes: plain-text authentication and MD5 authentication. The default is plain-text authentication.

To configure RIP authentication, execute the following commands in the interface configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>ip rip authentication key-chain</b> <i>key-chain-name</i>	Apply the key chain and enable RIP authentication.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>ip rip authentication mode</b> {text   md5}	Configure the RIP authentication for the interface. Mode: plain-text or MD5

### 28.2.7 Adjusting the RIP Timer

The RIP provides the timer adjustment function, which allows you to adjust the timer so that the RIP routing protocol can run in a better way. You can adjust the following timers:

Route update timer: It defines the interval in seconds for the router to send the RIP update packets;

Route invalid timer: It defines the time in seconds after which the routes in the routing table will become invalid if not updated;

Route clearing timer: It defines the time in seconds after which the routes in the routing table will be cleared;

By adjusting the above timers, you can accelerate the aggregation and fault recovery of the routing protocol. To adjust the RIP timers, execute the following commands in the RIP routing process configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>timers basic</b> <i>update invalid flush</i>	Adjust the RIP timers.

By default, the update interval is 30 seconds, the invalid period is 180 seconds, and the clearing (flush) period is 120 seconds.



**Note**

The routers connected in the same network must have the same RIP timers.

### 28.2.8 Configuring the RIP Route Source IP Address Validation

By default, the RIP will validate the source addresses of the incoming route update packets. The RIP will discard the packets from invalid source IP address. Whether a source IP address is valid or not depends on if the source IP address is in the same network as the IP address of the interface. No validation will be performed on the interface of no IP address.

To configure route source IP address validation, execute the following commands in the RIP routing process configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>no validate-update-source</b>	Disable the source IP address validation.
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>validate-update-source</b>	Enable the source IP address validation.

### 28.2.9 RIP Interface Status Control

In some condition, it is necessary to configure the RIP operation flexibly. If you only hope the device to learn the RIP routes, but not carry out the RIP route notification, you can configure the passive interface. Or, if you hope to configure the status of some interface individually, you can use a command to control the sending or receiving of the RIP packets on an interface.

To configure some interface as the passive mode, execute the following command in the RIP route processing configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>passive-interface {default   interface-type interface-num}</b>	Set the interface to passive.
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>no passive-interface {default   interface-type interface-num}</b>	Remove the configuration.



**Note**

The passive interface responds the non-RIP requests (such as the route diagnosis program) rather than the RIP requests, because these request programs hope to understand the routes of all devices.

To disable or allow some interface to receive the RIP message, execute the following command in the interface configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config-if)# no ip rip receive enable	Disable the interface to receive the RIP message.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>ip rip receive enable</b>	Allow the interface to receive the RIP message.

To disable or allow some interface to send the RIP message, execute the following command in the interface configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>no ip rip send enable</b>	Disable the interface to send the RIP message.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>ip rip send enable</b>	Allow the interface to send the RIP message.

### 28.2.10 Configuring RIP VRF

The RIP supports VRFs. Multiple RIP instances can be created to manage the corresponding VRFs in the RIP process. By default, there is only one RIP instance in the RIP process, which is used to manage the global routing table. After a VRF is created, you can manage the routing table of the VRF by creating a new RIP instance.

Execute the **address-family** command to enter the address family configuration mode (with the prompt (config-router-af)#). When you specify the VRF associated with the sub mode at the first time, the RIP will create the a RIP instance corresponding to the VRF. Under this mode, you can configure the RIP route information of the VRF in the same way as that in global route configuration mode.

To exit the address family configuration sub mode and return to the route configuration mode, execute the **exit-address-family** command or the **exit** command.

To configure the RIP instance managing the VRF, execute the following command in the RIP route processing configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>address-family</b> <b>ipv4 vrf</b> <i>vrf-name</i>	Create the RIP instance managing the VRF.
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>no address-family</b> <b>ipv4 vrf</b> <i>vrf-name</i>	Remove the RIP instance managing the VRF.



## 28.3 RIP Configuration Examples

This section provides four RIP configuration examples:

- Example of Configuring Split Horizon
- Example of Configuring RIP Authentication
- Example of configuring the RIP packet in unicast form
- Example of configuring RIP VRF

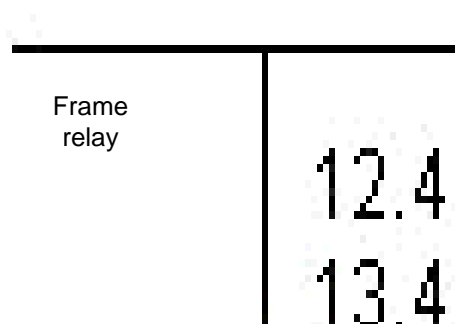
### 28.3.1 Example of Configuring Split Horizon

#### ■ Configuration requirements:

There are five devices. Where, Router A, Router D and Router E are connected via the Ethernet; Router A, Router B and Router C are connected via the frame relay. Figure 28-1 shows IP address distribution and equipment connection, where RouterD is configured with a sub-address.

**Figure 28-1** Example of Configuring RIP Split Horizon

sub-address



The route should be configured to achieve the following purposes: 1) All routers run the RIP protocol; 2) Router B and Router C can learn the network segment routes advertised to each other; 3) Router E can learn the routes of 192.168.12.0/24.

#### ■ Detailed configuration

In this example, to achieve the above purposes, Router A and Router D must have split horizon disabled. Otherwise, Router A will not notify the routes advertised by Router B to



Router C. Neither will Router D advertise the routes of 192.168.12.0 to Router E. Detailed configurations of each device are listed as follows.

#### Router A Configuration:

##### # Configure the Ethernet interface.

```
interface FastEthernet0/0
ip address 192.168.12.1 255.255.255.0
```

##### # Configure the WAN port.

```
interface Serial1/0
ip address 192.168.123.1 255.255.255.0
encapsulation frame-relay
no ip split-horizon
```

##### # Configure the RIP route.

```
router rip
version 2
network 192.168.12.0
network 192.168.123.0
```

#### Router B Configuration:

##### #Configure the Ethernet interface.

```
interface FastEthernet0/0
ip address 172.16.20.1 255.255.255.0
```

##### #Configure the WAN port.

```
interface Serial1/0
ip address 192.168.123.2 255.255.255.0
encapsulation frame-relay
```

##### #Configure the RIP protocol.

```
router rip
version 2
network 172.16.0.0
network 192.168.123.0
no auto-summary
```

#### Router C configuration:

##### # Configure the Ethernet interface.

```
interface FastEthernet0/0
ip address 172.16.30.1 255.255.255.0
```

##### # Configure the WAN port.

```
interface Serial1/0
ip address 192.168.123.3 255.255.255.0
encapsulation frame-relay
```



# Configur the RIP protocol.

```
router rip
version 2
network 172.16.0.0
network 192.168.123.0
no auto-summary
```

Router D configuration:

# Configure the Ethernet interface.

```
interface FastEthernet0/0
ip address 192.168.12.4 255.255.255.0
ip address 192.168.13.4 255.255.255.0 secondary
no ip split-horizon
```

# Configure the RIP protocol.

```
router rip
version 2
network 192.168.12.0
network 192.168.13.0
```

Router E configuration:

# Configure the Ethernet interface.

```
interface FastEthernet0/0
ip address 192.168.13.5 255.255.255.0
```

# Configure the RIP protocol.

```
router rip
version 2
network 192.168.13.0
```

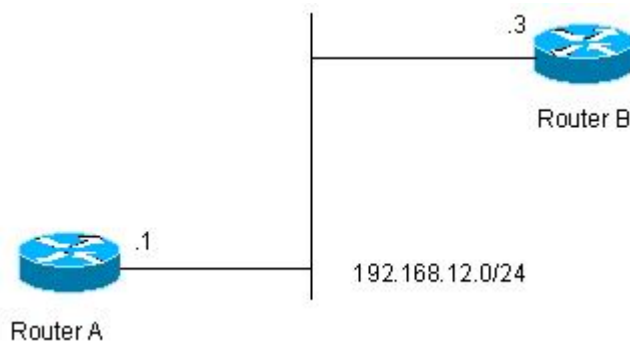
### 28.3.2 Example of Configuring RIP Authentication

---

#### ■ Configuration requirements:

Two routers are connected via the Ethernet and run the RIP protocol and MD5 for authentication. The connection diagram of the devices and the assignment of IP addresses are shown in Figure 8-2.



**Figure 28-2** Example of Configuring RIP Authentication

Router A must send RIP packets with the authentication key of keya and can receive the RIP packets whose authentication keys are keya and keyb. Router B sends the RIP packets with the authentication key of keyb and can receive the RIP packets of the authentication keys of keya and keyb.

#### ■ Detailed configuration of devices

Router A configuration:

#Configure the key chain.

```
key chain ripkey
key 1
key-string keya
accept-lifetime infinite
send-lifetime 00:00:00 Dec 3 2000 infinite
key 2
key-string keyb
accept-lifetime infinite
send-lifetime 00:00:00 Dec 3 2000 infinite
```

# Configure the Ethernet interface.

```
interface FastEthernet0/0
ip address 192.168.12.1 255.255.255.0
ip rip authentication mode md5
ip rip authentication key-chain ripkey
```

# Configure the RIP protocol.

```
router rip
version 2
network 192.168.12.0
```

Router B Configuration:

#Configure the key chain.

```
key chain ripkey
key 1
key-string keyb
```



```

accept-lifetime 00:00:00 Dec 3 2000 infinite
send-lifetime 00:00:00 Dec 4 2000 00:00:00 Dec 5 2000
key 2
key-string keya
accept-lifetime 00:00:00 Dec 3 2000 infinite
send-lifetime 00:00:00 Dec 4 2000 infinite

```

# Configure the Ethernet interface.

```

interface FastEthernet0/0
ip address 192.168.12.2 255.255.255.0
ip rip authentication mode md5
ip rip authentication key-chain ripkey

```

# Configure the RIP protocol.

```

router rip
version 2
network 192.168.12.0

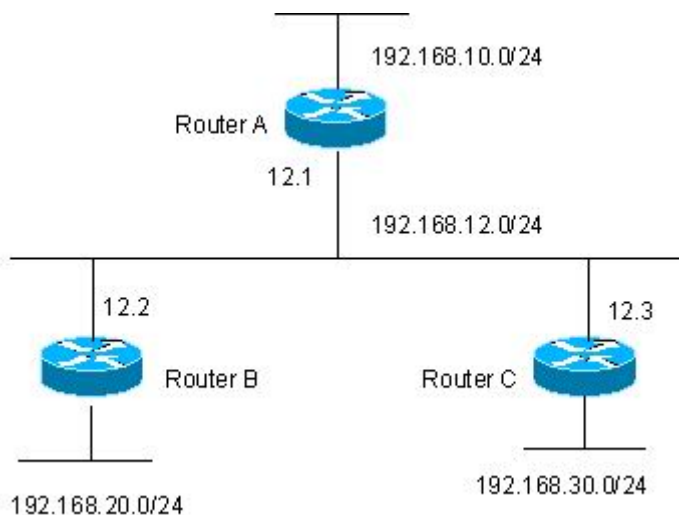
```

### 28.3.3 Example of Configuring the RIP Packets in Unicast Form

#### ■ Configuration requirements:

All the three routers are connected on the LAN, and all run the RIP protocol. Figure 8-3 shows the IP address allocation and connection of the equipment.

**Figure 28-3** Example of Configuring Packet Unicast for the RIP



Following are to be implemented via the configuration of RIP message in unicast form:

1. Router A can learn the routes advertised by Router C.
2. Router C cannot learn the routes advertised by Router A.



### ■ Detailed configuration of devices

To achieve the above purposes, RIP packet unicast must be configured at router A.

#### Router A configuration

##### # Configure the Ethernet interface.

```
interface FastEthernet0/0
ip address 192.168.12.1 255.255.255.0
```

##### #Configure the loopback port.

```
interface Loopback0
ip address 192.168.10.1 255.255.255.0
```

##### # Configure the RIP protocol.

```
router rip
version 2
network 192.168.12.0
network 192.168.10.0
passive-interface FastEthernet0/0
neighbor 192.168.12.2
```

#### Router B configuration:

##### # Configure the Ethernet interface.

```
interface FastEthernet0/0
ip address 192.168.12.2 255.255.255.0
```

##### #Configure the loopback port.

```
interface Loopback0
ip address 192.168.20.1 255.255.255.0
```

##### # Configure the RIP protocol.

```
router rip
version 2
network 192.168.12.0
network 192.168.20.0
```

#### Router C Configuration:

##### # Configur the Ethernet interface.

```
interface FastEthernet0/0
ip address 192.168.12.3 255.255.255.0
```

##### #Configure the loopback port.

```
interface Loopback0
ip address 192.168.30.1 255.255.255.0
```

##### # Configure the RIP protocol.



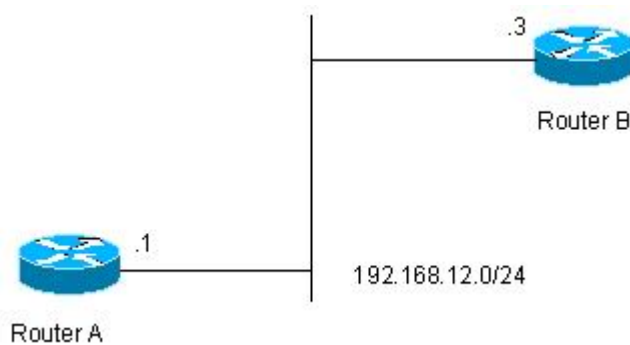
```
router rip
version 2
network 192.168.12.0
network 192.168.30.0
```

### 28.3.4 Example of Configuring RIP VRF

#### ■ Configuration requirements:

Two devices running RIP are connected to each other. Figure 28-4 shows IP address distribution and equipment connection.

**Figure 28-4** Example of Configuring RIP VRF



With RIP, routing information is exchanged between the redvpn VRF of Router A and the bluevpn VRF of Router B.

#### ■ Detailed configuration

Router A Configuration:

# create a VRF.

```
ip vrf redvpn
```

# Bind the VRF to the interface and configure an IP address for the interface.

```
interface FastEthernet 1/0
ip vrf forwarding redvpn
ip address 192.168.12.1 255.255.255.0
```

# Configure the RIP and create an RIP instance.

```
router rip
address-family ipv4 vrf redvpn
network 192.168.12.0
exit-address-family
```

Router B Configuration:



```
# create a VRF.

ip vrf bluevpn

# Bind the VRF to the interface and configure an IP address for the interface.

interface FastEthernet 1/0
ip vrf forwarding bluevpn
ip address 192.168.12.3 255.255.255.0

# Configure the RIP and create an RIP instance.

router rip
address-family ipv4 vrf bluevpn
network 192.168.12.0
exit-address-family
```

# 29

## OSPF Configuration

### 29.1 OSPF Overview

---

OSPF (Open Shortest Path First) is an internal gateway routing protocol based on link status developed by the IETF OSPF work group. OSPF, a routing protocol specific for IP, directly runs on the IP layer. Its protocol number is 89. OSPF packets are exchanged in multicast form using the multicast address 224.0.0.5 (for all OSPF routers) and 224.0.0.6 (for specified routers).

The link status algorithm is an algorithm totally different from the Huffman vector algorithm (distance vector algorithm). The RIP is a traditional routing protocol that uses the Huffman vector algorithm, while the OSPF protocol is the typical implementation of the link status algorithm. Compared with the RIP routing protocol, the OSPF uses a different algorithm, and also introduces the new concepts such as route update authentication, VLSMs, and route aggregation. Even if the RIPv2 has made great improvements, and can support the features such as route update authentication and VLSM, the RIP protocol still has two fatal weaknesses: 1) slow convergence; 2) limited network size, with the maximum host count of no more than 16. The OSPF is developed to overcome these weaknesses of the RIP, making the IGP protocol applicable for large and complicated network environments.

The OSPF protocol establishes and calculates the shortest path to every destination network by using the link status algorithm. This algorithm is complicated. The following briefly describes how the link status algorithm works:

- In the initialization stage, a router will generate a link status notification including the status of all its links.



- All routers exchange the link status message in the multicast way. Upon receiving the link status update message, each router will copy it to its local database and then transmit it to other routers.
- When every router has a complete link status database, the router uses the Dijkstra algorithm to calculate the shortest path trees to all the target networks. The results include destination network, next-hop address, and cost, which are the key parts of the IP routing table.

If there is no link cost or network change, the OSPF will become silent. If any changes occur on the network, the OSPF advertises the changes via the link status message of only the changed links. The routers involved in the changes will have the Dijkstra algorithm run again, with a new shortest path tree created.

A group of routers running the OSPF protocol form the autonomous domain system of the OSPF routing domain. An autonomous domain system consists of all the routers that are controlled and managed by one organization. Within the autonomous domain system, only one IGP routing protocol is run. However, between multiple such systems, the BGP routing protocol is used for route information exchange. Different autonomous domain systems can use the same IGP routing protocol. To access the Internet, every autonomous system needs to request the related organization for the autonomous system number.

When the OSPF routing domain is large, the hierarchical structure is usually used. In other words, the OSPF routing domain is divided into several areas, which are connected via a backbone area. Every non-backbone area must be directly connected with this backbone area.

There are three roles for the routers in the OSPF routing domain according to their deployment position:

1. Area Internal Routers, all interface networks of this router are of this area;
2. ABR (Area Border Router): The interfaced networks of this router belong at least to two areas, one of which must be the backbone area;
3. ASBR (Autonomous System Boundary Routers): It is the router between which the OSPF route domain exchanges the external route domain.

Our product implements the OSPF by fully complying with the OSPFv2 defined in RFC 2328. The main features of the OSPF are described as below:

- Support up to 64 OSPF processes running at the same time.
- Support VRF. You can run OSPF based on different VRFs.
- Support the definition of stubby area.
- Support route redistribution with the RIP, ISIS and BGP protocols.
- Support plain-text or MD5 authentication between neighbors.
- Support virtual links.
- Support VLSMs.



- Support area division
- Support NSSA (Not So Stubby Area), as defined in RFC 1587.

## 29.2 OSPF Configuration Task List

The configuration of OSPF should be cooperated with various routers (including internal routers, area boundary routers and autonomous system boundary routers). When no configuration is performed, the defaults are used for various parameters of the routers. In this case, packets are sent and received without authentication, and an interface does not belong to any area of an autonomous system. When you change the default parameters, you must ensure that the routers have the same configuration settings.

To configure the OSPF, you must perform the following tasks. Among them, activating the OSPF is required, while others are optional, but may be required for particular applications. The steps to configure the OSPF protocols are described as below:

- Creating the OSPF process (required)
- Configuring the OSPF interface parameters (optional)
- Configuring the OSPF to accommodate different physical networks (optional)
- Configuring the OSPF area parameters (optional)
- Configuring the OSPF NSSA area (optional)
- Configuring route aggregation between OSPF areas (optional)
- Configuring route aggregation when routes are injected to the OSPF (optional)
- Creating the virtual connections (optional)
- Creating the default routes (optional)
- Using the Loopback address as the route ID (optional)
- Changing the OSPF default management distance (optional)
- Configuring the route calculation timer (optional)
- LSA pacing (optional)
- Routing configuration (optional)
- Configuring whether to check the MTU value when the interface receives the database description packets (optional)
- Disabling an interface to send the OSPF packets (optional)
- Configuring sending OSPF TRAP messages
- Monitoring and maintaining OSPF

The default OSPF configuration is shown as below:

Interface parameters
Interface cost: none is preset LSA retransmit interval: 5 seconds.



	<p>LSA transmit delay: 1 second.</p> <p>Hello message transmit interval : 10 seconds (30 seconds for non-broadcast networks)</p> <p>Failure time of adjacent routers: 4 times the hello interval.</p> <p>Priority: 1</p> <p>Authentication type: 0 (No authentication).</p> <p>Authentication password: None.</p>
<b>Area</b>	<p>Authentication type : No authentication.</p> <p>Default metric of aggregated routes to Stub or NSSA area: 1</p> <p>Inter-area aggregation scope: Undefined</p> <p>Stub area: Undefined</p> <p>NSSA: Undefined</p>
<b>Virtual Link</b>	<p>No virtual link is defined.</p> <p>The default parameters of the virtual link are as below:</p> <p>LSA retransmit interval: 5 seconds.</p> <p>LSA transmit delay: 1 second.</p> <p>Hello message interval: 10 seconds.</p> <p>Failure time of adjacent routers: 4 times the hello interval.</p> <p>Authentication type: No authentication.</p> <p>Authentication password: No password specified.</p>
<b>Automatic cost calculation</b>	<p>Enabled automatically;</p> <p>Default automatic cost is 100Mbps</p>
<b>Default route generation</b>	<p>Disabled</p> <p>The default metric will be 1 and the type is type-2.</p>
<b>Default metric (Default metric)</b>	<p>The default metric is used to redistribute the other routing protocols;</p>
<b>Management Distance</b>	<p>Intra-area route information:110</p> <p>Inter-area route information:110</p> <p>External route information:110</p>
<b>Database filter</b>	<p>Disabled. All interfaces can receive the status update message (LSA).</p>
<b>Neighbor change log</b>	<p>Enabled</p>
<b>Neighbor</b>	<p>None</p>
<b>Neighbor database filter Disabled.</b>	<p>All outgoing LSAs are sent to the neighbor.</p>
<b>network area (network area)</b>	<p>None</p>



<b>Device ID</b>	Undefined; the OSPF protocol does not run by default
<b>Route summarization (summary-address)</b>	Undefined
<b>Changing LSAs Group Pacing</b>	240 seconds
<b>Shortest path first (SPF) timer</b>	The time between the receipt of the topology changes and SPF-holdtime: 5 seconds The least interval between two calculating operations: 10 seconds
<b>Optimal path rule used to calculate the external routes</b>	Using the rules defined in RFC1583

### 29.2.1 Creating the OSPF Routing Process

This is to create the OSPF routing process and define the range of the IP addresses associated with the OSPF routing process and the OSPF area to which these IP addresses belong. The OSPF routing process only sends and receives the OSPF packets at the interface within the IP address range and advertises the link status of the interface to the outside. Currently, 64 OSPF routing process are supported.

To create the OSPF routing process, you can perform the following steps:

Command	Meaning
DES-7200# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
DES-7200(config)# <b>ip routing</b>	Enable the IP routing (if disabled).
DES-7200(config)# <b>router ospf</b> <i>process-id [vrf vrf-name]</i>	Enable OSPF and enter OSPF route configuration mode.
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>network</b> <i>address wildcard-mask area area-id</i>	Define an IP address range for an area.
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>End</b>	Return to the privileged EXEC mode.
DES-7200# <b>show ip protocol</b>	Display the routing protocol that is running currently.
DES-7200# <b>write</b>	Save the configuration.



**Note**

The parameter `vrf vrf-name` is used to specify the VRF which the OSPF belongs to. If you do not specify the parameter in the OSPF process, it belongs to the default VRF. For the **network** command, 32 bit wildcards are opposed to the mask, where 1 means not to compare the bit and 1 means to compare the bit. However, if you configure the command with mask, our products will automatically translate it into a bit wildcard. An interface belongs to the specific area as long as it matches the IP address range defined by the **network** command. When an interface matches more than one IP address range defined by the **network** command in multiple OSPF processes, the OSPF process that the interface takes part in is determined in the way of optimal match.

To disable the OSPF protocol, use the **no router ospf [process-id]** command. The example shows how to enable the OSPF protocol:

```
DES-7200(config)# router ospf 1
DES-7200(config-router)# network 192.168.0.0 255.255.255.0 area 0
DES-7200(config-router)# end
```

### 29.2.2 Configuring the OSPF Interface Parameters

The OSPF allows you to change some particular interface parameters. You can set such parameters as needed. It should be noted that some parameters must be set to match those of the adjacent router of the interface. These parameters are set via the **ip ospf hello-interval**, **ip ospf dead-interval**, **ip ospf authentication**, **ip ospf authentication-key** and **ip ospf message-digest-key**. When you use these commands, you should make sure that the adjacent routers have the same configuration.

To configure the OSPF interface parameters, execute the following commands in the interface configuration mode:

Command	Meaning
DES-7200# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
DES-7200(config)# <b>ip routing</b>	Enable the IP routing (if disabled).
DES-7200(config)# <b>interface</b> [interface-id]	Enter the interface configuration mode.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>ip ospf cost</b> <i>cost-value</i>	(Optional) Define the interface cost.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>ip ospf retransmit-interval</b> <i>seconds</i>	(Optional) Set the link status retransmission interval.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>ip routing transmit-delay</b> <i>seconds</i>	(Optional) Set the transmit delay for the link status update packets.



Command	Meaning
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>ip routing hello-interval</b> <i>seconds</i>	(Optional) Set the hello message send interval, which must be the same for all the nodes of the entire network.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>ip routing dead-interval</b> <i>seconds</i>	(Optional) Set the dead interval for the adjacent router, which must be the same for all the nodes of the entire network.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>ip ospf priority</b> <i>number</i>	(Optional) The priority is used to select the dispatched routers (DR) and backup dispatched routers (BDR).
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>ip ospf authentication [message-digest   null]</b>	(Optional) Set the authentication type on the network interface.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>ip ospf authentication-key</b> <i>key</i>	(Optional) Configure the key for text authentication of the interface.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>ip ospf message-digest-key</b> <i>keyid md5 key</i>	(Optional) Configure the key for MD5 authentication of the interface.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>ip ospf database-filter all out</b>	(Optional) Prevent the interfaces from flooding the LSAs packets. By default, OSPF floods new LSAs over all interfaces in the same area, except the interface on which the LSA arrives.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>End</b>	Return to the privileged EXEC mode.
DES-7200# <b>show ip ospf [process-id] interface [interface-id]</b>	Display the routing protocol that is running currently.
DES-7200# <b>write</b>	(Optional) Save the configuration.

You can use the **no** form of the above commands to cancel or restore the configuration to the default.

### 29.2.3 Configuring the OSPF to Accommodate Different Physical Networks

According to the transmission nature of different media, the OSPF divides the networks into three types:

- Broadcast network (Ethernet, token network, and FDDI)
- Non-broadcast network (frame relay, X.25)
- Point-to-point network (HDLC, PPP, and SLIP)

The non-broadcast networks include two sub-types according to the operation modes of the OSPF:



1. One is the Non-broadcast Multi-access (NBMA) network. The NBMA requires direct communication for all routers interconnected. Only fully meshed networks can meet this requirement. If the SVC (for example, X.25) connection is used, this requirement can be met. However, if the PVC (for example, frame relay) networking is used, there will be some difficulty in meeting this requirement. The operation of the OSPF on the NBMA network is similar to that on the broadcast network: One Designated Router must be elected to advertise the link status of the NBMA network.
2. The second is the point-to-multipoint network type. If the network topology is not a fully meshed non-broadcast network, you need to set the network type of the interface to the point-to-multipoint network type for the OSPF. In a point-to-multipoint network type, the OSPF takes the connections between all routers as point-to-point links, so it does not involve the election of the designated router.

Whatever the default network type of the interface, you must set it to the broadcast network type. For example, you can set the non-broadcast multi-access network (frame relay, X.25) to a broadcast network. This spares the step to configure the neighbor when you configure the OSPF routing process. By using the **X.25 map** and **Frame-relay map** commands, you can allow X.25 and frame relay to have the broadcast capability, so that the OSPF can see the networks like X.25 and frame relay as the broadcast networks.

The point-to-multipoint network interface can be seen as the marked point-to-point interface of one or multiple neighbors. When the OSPF is configured as the point-to-multipoint network type, multiple host routes will be created. The point-to-multipoint network has the following advantages over the NBMA network:

- Easy configuration without the configuration of neighbors or the election of the designated router.
- Small cost without the need of fully meshed topology

To configure the network type, execute the following commands in the interface configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>ip ospf network</b> <b>{broadcast   non-broadcast   point-to-point  </b> <b>{point-to-multipoint [non-broadcast]} }</b>	Configure the OSPF network type.

For different link encapsulation types, the default network type is shown as below:

- Point-to-point network type  
PPP, SLIP, frame relay point-to-point sub-interface, X.25 point-to-point sub-interface encapsulation
- NBMA (non-broadcast) network type  
Frame relay, X.25 encapsulation (except point-to-point sub-interface)
- Broadcast network type  
Ethernet encapsulation



- The default type is not the point-to-multipoint network type

It should be noted that the network type should be consistent at both sides. Otherwise, the abnormality will occur, for instance, the neighbor is Full and the calculation of the routing is incorrect.

### 29.2.3.1 Configuring Point-to-Multipoint Broadcast Network

When routers are connected via X.25 and frame relay networks, if the network is not a fully meshed network or you do not want the election of the designated router, you can set the network type of the OSPF interface as the point-to-multipoint type. Since the point-to-multipoint network sees the link as a point-to-point link, multiple host routes will be created. In addition, all the neighbors have the same cost in the point-to-multiple networks. If you want to make different neighbors have different costs, you can set them by using the **neighbor** command.

To configure the point-to-multipoint network type, execute the following commands in the interface configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>ip ospf network point-to-multipoint</b>	Configure the point-to-multipoint network type for an interface.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>exit</b>	Exit to the global configuration mode.
DES-7200(config)# <b>router ospf 1</b>	Enter the routing process configuration mode.
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>neighbor ip-address cost cost</b>	Specify the cost of the neighbor (optional).



#### Note

Although the OSPF point-to-point network is a non-broadcast network, it can allow non-broadcast networks to have broadcast capability by using the frame relay, X.25 mapping manual configuration or self-learning. Therefore, you do not need to specify neighbors when you configure the point-to-multipoint network type.

### 29.2.3.2 Configuring Non-broadcast Network

When the OSPF interface works in the non-broadcast network, you can configure it to the NBMA or the point-to-multipoint non-broadcast type. Since it cannot dynamically discover neighbors without the broadcast capability, you must manually configure neighbors for the OSPF interface working in the non-broadcast network.

You can configure the NBMA network type in the following conditions:

1. When a non-broadcast network has the fully meshed topology;



2. You can set a broadcast network as the NBMA network type to reduce the generation of the broadcast packets and save the network bandwidth, and also avoid arbitrary reception and transmission of routers by some degree. The configuration of the NBMA network should specify the neighbor. For there is the choice to specify the routers, you should determine which router is the designated router. For this reason, it is necessary for you to prioritize routers. The higher the router's priority is, the higher possibility of being the designated router is.

To configure the NBMA network type, execute the following commands in the interface configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>ip ospf network non-broadcast</b>	Specify the network type of the interface to be the NBMA type.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>exit</b>	Exit to the global configuration mode.
DES-7200(config)# <b>router ospf 1</b>	Enter the routing process configuration mode.
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>neighbor ip-address</b> [ <b>priority number</b> ] [ <b>poll-interval seconds</b> ]	Specify the neighbor, its priority and polling interval of Hello messages.

In a non-broadcast network, if it cannot ensure that any two routers are in direct connection, the better solution is to set the network type of the OSPF to the point-to-multipoint non-broadcast network type.

Whether in a point-to-multipoint broadcast or non-broadcast network, all the neighbors have the same cost, which is the value set by using the **ip ospf cost** command. However, the bandwidths of the neighbors may be actually different, so the costs should be different. Therefore, you can specify the necessary cost for each neighbor by using the **neighbor** command. This only applies to the interfaces of the point-to-multipoint type (broadcast or non-broadcast).

To configure the point-to-multipoint type for the interfaces in a non-broadcast network, execute the following commands in the interface configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>ip ospf point-to-multipoint non-broadcast</b>	Specify the network type of the interface to be the point-to-multipoint non-broadcast type.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>exit</b>	Exit to the global configuration mode.
DES-7200(config)# <b>router ospf 1</b>	Enter the routing process configuration mode.
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>neighbor ip-address</b> [ <b>cost number</b> ]	Specify the neighbor and the cost to the neighbor.

Pay attention to step 4. If you have not specified the cost for the neighbor, the cost referenced by the **ip ospf cost** command in the interface configuration mode will be used.



### 29.2.3.3 Configuring Broadcast Network Type

It is necessary to select the designated router (DR) and backup designated router (BDR) for the broadcast type network of OSPF. The DR will notify the link status of this network to outside. All routers keep the neighbor relationship one another and only the adjacent relationship with the designated routers and backup designated routers. That is to say, each router only switches the link status packets with the designated router and backup designated routers, and then the designated router notifies all routers. As a result, each router can keep a consistent link status database.

You can control the election of the designated router by setting the OSPF priority. The parameter does not take effect immediately until in the new round of election. The new election of the designated router occurs only when the OSPF neighbor doesn't receive the Hello message from the designated router within the specified time and consider the DR is down.

To configure the broadcast network type, execute the following commands in the interface configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>ip ospf network broadcast</b>	Specify the type of the interface to be the broadcast network type.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>ip ospf priority</b> <i>priority</i>	(Optional) Specify the priority of the interface.

### 29.2.4 Configuring the OSPF Area Parameters

To configure area authentication, stub area, and default route summary cost, you need to use the command for configuring the areas.

Area authentication is configured to avoid the learning of non-authenticated and invalid routes and the advertisement of invalid routes to the non-authentication routers. In the broadcast-type network, area authentication can also prevent non-authentication routers from becoming the designated routers for the stability and intrusion prevention of the routing system.

When an area is the leaf area of the OSPF area, or the area neither acts as the transit area nor injects external routes to the OSPF area, you can configure the area as a stub area. The routers in a stub area can only learn about three routes, namely, 1) Routes in the stub area, 2) Routes in other areas, and 3) Default routes advertised by the border router in the stub area. For there is few external routes, the route tables of the routers in the stub area are small, saving resources. So the routers in the stub area may be low- or middle-level of routers. To reduce the number of the Link Status Advertisements (LSA) messages sent to the stub areas, you can configure the area as the full stub area (configured with the **no-summary** option). The routers in a full stub area can learn two types of routes: 1) routes



in the stub area; 2) default routes advertised by the border router in the stub area. The configuration of the full stub area allows the OSPF to occupy the minimized router resources, increasing the network transmission efficiency.

If the routers in a stub area can learn multiple default routes, you need to set the costs of the default routes (by using the **area default-cost** command), so that they first use the specified default route.

You should pay attention to the following aspects when you configure a stub area:

- The backbone area cannot be configured as a stub area, and the stub area cannot be used as the transmission area of virtual links.
- To set an area as the STUB area, all the routers in the area must be configured with this feature.
- There is no ASBR in stub areas. In other words, the routes outside an autonomous system cannot be propagated in the area.

To configure the OSPF area parameters, execute the following commands in the routing process configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>area</b> <i>area-id</i> <b>authentication</b>	Set plain-text authentication for the area.
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>area</b> <i>area-id</i> <b>authentication</b>	Set MD5 authentication for the area.
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>area</b> <i>area-id</i> <b>authentication</b>	Set the area as a stub area. <b>no-summary</b> : Set the area as a stub area to prevent the ABR between areas from sending summary-LSAs to the stub area.
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>area</b> <i>area-id</i> <b>default-cost</b> <i>cost</i>	Configure the cost of the default route sent to the stub area.



#### Note

For authentication configuration, you need to configure the authentication parameters on an interface. See “Configuring the OSPF Interface Parameters” section in this chapter. You must configure the stub area on all the routers in the area. To configure a full stub area, you also have to configure the full stub area parameters on the border router of the stub area in addition to the basic configuration of stub area. You do not need to change the configuration of other routers.



### 29.2.5 Configuring OSPF NSSA

The NSSA (Not-So-Stubby Area) is an expansion of the OSPF stub area. The NSSA also reduces the consumption of the resources of the routers by preventing from flooding the type-5 LSA (AS-external-LSA) to the NSSA. However, unlike the stub area, the NSSA can inject some routes outside the autonomous system to the routing area of the OSPF.

Through redistribution, the external type-7 routes of the autonomous system are allowed to import to the NSSA. These external type-7 LSAs will be converted into the type-5 LSAs at the border router of the NSSA and flooded to the entire autonomous system. During this process, the external routes can be summarized and filtered.

You should pay attention to the following aspects when you configure the NSSA:

- The backbone area cannot be configured as a NSSA, and the NSSA cannot be used as the transmission area of the virtual links.
- To set an area as the NSSA, all the routers connected to the NSSA must be configured with the NSSA features by using the **area nssa** command.

To configure an area as the NSSA, execute the following commands in the routing process configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>area area-id nssa</b> <b>[no-redistribution] [no-summary]</b> <b>[default-information-originate[metric][metric-type]]</b>	(Optional) Define a NSSA.
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>area area-id authentication</b> <b>default-cost cost</b>	Configure the cost of the default route sent to the NSSA.

The *default-information-originate* parameter is used to generate the default Type-7 LSA. This option varies slightly between the ARR and ASBR of the NSSA. On the ABR, whether there is a default route or not in the routing table, the Type-7 LSA default route will be created. On the other hand, this is only created when there is a default route in the routing table on ASBR.

The **no-redistribution** parameter allows other external routes introduced by using the **redistribute** commands via the OSPF on the ASBR not to be distributed to the NSSA. This option is usually used when the router in the NSSA is both an ASBR and an ABR to prevent external routes from entering the NSSA.

To further reduce the LSAs sent to the NSSA, you can configure the **no-summary** attribute on the ABR to prevent the ABR from sending the **summary LSAs (Type-3 LSA)** to the NSSA.



In addition, the area default-cost is used on the ABR connected to the NSSA. This command configures the cost of the default route sent by the border router to the NSSA. By default, the cost of the default route sent to the NSSA is 1.

### 29.2.6 Configuring the Route Aggregation between OSPF Areas

The ABR (Area Border Router) has at least two interfaces that belong to different areas, one of which must be the backbone area. The ABR acts as the pivot in the OSPF routing area, and it can advertise the routes of one area to another. If the network addresses of the routes are continual in the area, the border router can advertise only one aggregated route to other areas. The route aggregation between areas greatly reduces the size of the routing table and improves the efficiency of the network.

To configure the route aggregation between areas, execute the following commands in the routing process configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>area</b> <i>area-id</i> <b>range</b> <i>ip-address mask</i> [ <b>advertise</b>   <b>not-advertise</b> ] [ <b>cost</b> <i>cost</i> ]	Configure route aggregation for the area.



#### Note

If route aggregation is configured, the detailed routes in this area will not be advertised by the ABR to other areas.

### 29.2.7 Configuring Route Aggregation When Routes are Injected to the OSPF

When the routes are redistributed from other routing process to the OSPF routing process, every route is advertised to the OSPF-enabled router as a separate link status. If the injected route is in the range of continuous IP addresses, the autonomous area border router can advertise only one aggregated route, and thus reducing the size of the routing table.

To configure the external route aggregation, execute the following commands in the routing process configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>summary-address</b> <i>ip-address mask</i> [ <b>not-advertise</b>   <b>tag</b> <i>tag-id</i>   ]	Configure the external route aggregation.



### 29.2.8 Creating the Virtual Links

In the OSPF routing area, the OSPF route updating between non-backbone areas are exchanged via the backbone area to which all the areas are connected. If the backbone area is disconnected, you need to configure the virtual link to connect the backbone area. Otherwise, the network communication will fail. If physical connection cannot be ensured due to the restriction of the network topology, you can also meet this requirement by creating the virtual links.

Virtual links should be created between two ABRs. The common area of the ABRs become the transit areas. The stub areas and NSSA areas cannot be used as the transit area. The virtual links can be seen as a logical connection channel established between two ABRs via the transit area. On both its ends must be ABRs and configuration must be performed on both ends. The virtual link is identified by the router-id number of the peer router. The area that provides the two ends of a virtual link with an internal non-backbone area route is referred to as the transit area, whose number must be specified at configuration.

The virtual links will be activated after the route in the transit area has been calculated (that is, the route to the other router). You can see it as a point-to-point connection, on which most parameters of the interface can be configured, like a physical interface, for example, **hello-interval** and **dead-interval**.

The “logical channel” means that the multiple routers running the OSPF between the two ABRs only forward packets (If the destination addresses of the protocol packets are not these routers, the packets are transparent to them and are simply forwarded as common IP packets), and the ABRs exchange route information directly. The route information means the Type-3 LSAs generated by the ABR, and the synchronization mode in the area is not changed as a result.

To create the virtual link, execute the following commands in the routing process configuration mode:

Command	Function
<pre>DES-7200(config-router)# area area-id virtual-link router-id [[hello-interval seconds]] [retransmit-interval seconds] [[transmit-delay seconds]][[dead-interval seconds]] [authentication [message-digest   null] [[[authentication-key key   message-digest-key keyid md5 key]]]</pre>	Create a virtual link.

It should be noted that if the autonomous system is divided into more than one area, one of the areas must be the backbone area to which the other areas must be connected directly or logically. Also, the backbone area must be in good connection.



**Note**

The *router-id* is the ID of the OSPF neighbor router. If you are not sure of the value of the router-id, you can use the **show ip ospf** or **show ip ospf neighbor** command to verify it. How to manually configure the router-id, refer to the chapter of *Using the Loopback Address as the Route ID*.

### 29.2.9 Creating the Default Routes

An ASBR can be forced to generate a default route, which is injected to the OSPF routing area. If one router is forced to generate the default route, it will become the ASBR automatically. However, the ASBR will not automatically generate the default route.

To force the ASBR to generate the default route, execute the following commands in the routing process configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>default-information originate [always] [metric metric-value] [metric-type type-value] [route-map map-name]</b>	Generate the default route.

**Note**

When the stub area is configured, the ABR will generate the default route automatically, and advertise it to all routers within the stub area.

### 29.2.10 Using the Loopback Address as the Route ID

The OSPF routing process always uses the largest interface IP address as the router ID. If the interface is disabled or the IP address does not exist, the OSPF routing process must calculate the router ID again and send all the route information to the neighbor.

If the loopback (local loop address) is configured, the routing process will select the IP address of the loopback interface as the router ID. If there are multiple loopback interfaces, the largest IP address is selected as the router ID. Since the loopback address always exists, this enhances the stability of the routing table.

To configure the loopback address, execute the following commands in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>interface loopback 1</b>	Create the loopback interface.



Command	Function
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>ip address</b> <i>ip-address mask</i>	Configure the Loopback IP address.

**Note**

If the OSPF routing process selects the IP address of the common interface as the route identifier, the configuration of the loopback interface will not cause the OSPF process to reselect the identifier.

### 29.2.11 Changing the OSPF Default Management Distance

The management distance of a route represents the credibility of the source of the route. The management distance ranges from 0 to 255. The greater this value, the smaller the credibility of the source of the route.

The OSPF of our product has three types of routes, whose management distances are all 110 by default: intra-area, inter-area, and external. A route belongs to an area is referred to as the intra-area route, and a route to another area is referred to as the inter-area route. A route to another area (learnt through redistribution) is known as the external route.

To change the OSPF management distance, execute the following commands in the routing process configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>distance ospf</b> <b>{[inter-area dist1] [intra-area dist2] [external</b> <b>dist3]}</b>	Change the OSPF management distance.

### 29.2.12 Configuring the Route Calculation Timer

When the OSPF routing process receives the route topology change notification, it runs the SPF for route calculation after some time of delay. This delay can be configured, and you can also configure the minimum intervals between two SPF calculations.

To configure the OSPF route calculation timer, execute the following commands in the routing process configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>timers spf</b> <i>spf-delay</i> <i>spf-holdtime</i>	Configure the route calculation timer.



### 29.2.13 Changing LSAs Group Pacing

The OSPF LSA group pacing feature allows the switch to group OSPF LSAs and pace the refreshing, verification and calculation, and aging for more efficient use of the device. The default is 4 minutes. This parameter needs not to be adjusted often. The optimum group pacing interval is inversely proportional to the number of LSAs that need to be calculated. For example, if you have approximately 10,000 LSAs in the database, decreasing the pacing interval would be better. If the switch has a small database (40 to 100 LSAs), increasing the pacing interval to 10 to 20 minutes might be better. To configure OSPF LSA pacing, follow these steps in the privileged mode:

Execute the following commands in the routing process configuration mode:

Command	Meaning
DES-7200# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
DES-7200(config)# <b>router ospf 1</b>	Enter the routing protocol configuration mode.
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>timers lsa-group-pacing seconds</b>	(Optional) Change the LSAs group pacing.
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>End</b>	Return to the privileged EXEC mode.
DES-7200# <b>show running-config</b>	Verify the configuration.
DES-7200# <b>write</b>	(Optional) Save the configuration.

To restore the settings to the default value, use the **no timers lsa-group-pacing** in the global configuration mode.

### 29.2.14 Configuring Routing

OSPF calculates the destination route based on the cost, where the route with the least cost is the shortest route. The default route cost is based on network bandwidth. When you configure the OSPF-enabled router, you can set the link cost according to the factors such as link bandwidth, delay or economic cost. The lower its cost, the higher the possibility of that link to be selected as the route. If route aggregation takes place, the maximum cost of all the links are used as the cost of the aggregated route.

Routing configuration includes two parts. In the first place, you set the reference value for the bandwidth generated cost. This value and the interface bandwidth value are used to create the default cost. In the second place, you can set the respective metric of each interface by using the **ip ospf cost** command, so that the default metric is not effective for the interface. For example, the default reference value is 100 Mbps, and an Ethernet interface has the bandwidth of 10Mbps. Other example, the bandwidth is 100Mbps, the bandwidth of an Ethernet interface is 10Mbps, this interface will have the default metric of  $100/10 + 0.5 \approx 10$ .



The interface cost is selected in the following way in the OSPF protocol. The set interface has the highest priority. If you have set an interface cost, the set value is taken as the interface cost. If you do not set one while the automatic cost generation function is enabled, the interface cost is calculated automatically. If the function is disabled, the default of 10 is taken as the interface cost.

The configuration process is shown as below:

Command	Meaning
DES-7200# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
DES-7200(config)# <b>router ospf 1</b>	Enter the routing protocol configuration mode.
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>auto-cost</b> [ <b>reference-bandwidth ref-bw</b> ]	(Optional) Set the default cost based on the bandwidth on an interface.
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>end</b>	Return to the privileged EXEC mode.
DES-7200# <b>show ip protocol</b>	Display the routing protocol that is running currently.
DES-7200# <b>write</b>	(Optional) Save the configuration.

To remove the setting, use the **no ip ospf cost** or **auto-cost** command.

### 29.2.15 Configuring whether to check the MTU Value when the Interface Receives the Database Description packets

When the OSPF receives the database description packet, it will check the MTU of the neighbor against its own. If the interface indicated in the received database description packet has a MTU greater than that of the receiving interface, the neighborhood relationship cannot be established. In this case, you can disable MTU check as a solution.

To disable the MTU check on an interface, you can execute the following command in the interface configuration mode;

Command	Meaning
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>ip ospf mtu-ignore</b>	Configure not to check the MTU value when the interface receives the database description packets.

By default, the MTU check is enabled on an interface.



### 29.2.16 Disabling an Interface to Sending the OSPF Packets

To prevent other routers in the network from dynamically learning the route information of the router, you can set the specified network interface of the router as a passive interface by using the **passive-interface** command to prevent from sending OSPF packets on the interface.

In the privileged mode, you can configure an interface as a passive interface by performing the following steps:

Command	Meaning
DES-7200# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
DES-7200(config)# <b>router ospf 1</b>	Enter the routing protocol configuration mode (currently RIP and OSPF are supported)
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>passive-interface</b> <i>interface-name</i>	(Optional) Set the specified interface as a passive interface.
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>passive-interface default</b>	(Optional) Set all the network interfaces as the passive interfaces
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>end</b>	Return to the privileged EXEC mode.
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>write</b>	Save the configuration.

By default, all interfaces are allowed to receive/send the OSPF packets. To re-enable the network interface to send the route information, you can use the **no passive-interface** *interface-id* command. To re-enable all network interfaces, use the keyword **default**.

### 29.2.17 OSPF TRAP Sending Configuration

The protocol defines several types of the OSPF TRAP messages, which are used to send the TRAP message to the SNMP server when part of the network configuration changes and some OPSF event occurs for the network management. In the global configuration mode, you can enable the TRAP sending switch of OSPF by the following steps:

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.



Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>snmp-server</b> <b>host</b> host-ip <b>version</b> version-no string [ <b>ospf</b> ]	Configure the SNMP server to receive the TRAP. host-ip refers to the address corresponding to the SNMP server. version-no refers to the SNMP version corresponding to the SNMP server. String is usually the communication authentication code of SNMP, which is generally public. The optional parameter ospf means that the SNMP server receives the OSPF TRAP message (by default, the SNMP server receives all types of TRAP messages).
DES-7200(config)# snmp-server enable traps ospf	Enable the OSPF TRAP sending switch.
DES-7200(config)# <b>end</b>	Return to the privileged mode.
DES-7200# write	Save the configuration.

By default, the device will not send the TRAP message to any SNMP Server. At present, our product can only control the sending condition of all OSPF TRAP messages by this switch, but can not accurately control whether it will send the specified type of the OSPF TRAP message.

### 29.3 Monitoring and Maintaining OSPF

You can show the data such as the routing table, cache, and database of the OSPF. The following table lists some of that data that can be shown for your reference.

Command	Meaning
DES-7200# <b>show ip ospf</b> [ <i>process-id</i> ]	Show the general information of the OSPF protocol for corresponding processes. It will display all processes if the process number is not specified.
DES-7200# <b>show ip ospf</b> [ <i>process-id</i> ] [ <i>area-id</i> ] <b>database</b>	Show OSPF database information. Show the information of each type of LSAs of the specified process. area-id: Show the LSAs on this area. This does not take effect for Type 5 LSAs.
DES-7200# <b>show ip ospf</b> [ <i>process-id</i> ] [ <i>area-id</i> ] <b>database</b> [ <b>adv-router</b> <i>ip-address</i> ]	
DES-7200# <b>show ip ospf</b> [ <i>process-id</i> ] [ <i>area-id</i> ] <b>database</b> [ <b>self-originate</b> ]	
DES-7200# <b>show ip ospf</b> [ <i>process-id</i> ] [ <i>area-id</i> ] <b>database</b> [ <b>database-summary</b> ]	



Command	Meaning
DES-7200# <b>show ip ospf</b> [ <i>process-id</i> ] [ <i>area-id</i> ] <b>database</b> [ <i>router</i> ] [ <i>link-state-id</i> ]	
DES-7200# <b>show ip ospf</b> [ <i>process-id</i> ] [ <i>area-id</i> ] <b>database</b> [ <i>router</i> ] [ <i>adv-router</i> <i>ip-address</i> ]	
DES-7200# <b>show ip ospf</b> [ <i>process-id</i> ] [ <i>area-id</i> ] <b>database</b> [ <i>router</i> ] [ <i>self-originate</i> ]	
DES-7200# <b>show ip ospf</b> [ <i>process-id</i> ] [ <i>area-id</i> ] <b>database</b> [ <i>network</i> ][ <i>link-state-id</i> ]	
DES-7200# <b>show ip ospf</b> [ <i>process-id</i> ] [ <i>area-id</i> ] <b>database</b> [ <i>network</i> ] [ <i>link-state-id</i> ] [ <i>adv-router</i> <i>ip-address</i> ]	
DES-7200# <b>show ip ospf</b> [ <i>process-id</i> ] [ <i>area-id</i> ] <b>database</b> [ <i>network</i> ][ <i>link-state-id</i> ] [ <i>self-originate</i> ]	
DES-7200# <b>show ip ospf</b> [ <i>process-id</i> ] [ <i>area-id</i> ] <b>database</b> [ <i>summary</i> ] [ <i>link-state-id</i> ]	
DES-7200# <b>show ip ospf</b> [ <i>process-id</i> ] [ <i>area-id</i> ] <b>database</b> [ <i>summary</i> ] [ <i>link-state-id</i> ] [ <i>adv-router</i> <i>ip-address</i> ]	
DES-7200# <b>show ip ospf</b> [ <i>process-id</i> ] [ <i>area-id</i> ] <b>database</b> [ <i>summary</i> ] [ <i>link-state-id</i> ] [ <i>self-originate</i> ]	
DES-7200# <b>show ip ospf</b> [ <i>process-id</i> ] [ <i>area-id</i> ] <b>database</b> [ <i>asbr-summary</i> ] [ <i>link-state-id</i> ]	
DES-7200# <b>show ip ospf</b> [ <i>process-id</i> ] [ <i>area-id</i> ] <b>database</b> [ <i>asbr-summary</i> ] [ <i>link-state-id</i> ] [ <i>adv-router ip-address</i> ]	
DES-7200# <b>show ip ospf</b> [ <i>process-id</i> ] [ <i>area-id</i> ] <b>database</b> [ <i>asbr-summary</i> ] [ <i>link-state-id</i> ] [ <i>self-originate</i> ]	
DES-7200# <b>show ip ospf</b> [ <i>process-id</i> ] [ <i>area-id</i> ] <b>database</b> [ <i>external</i> ] [ <i>link-state-id</i> ]	
DES-7200# <b>show ip ospf</b> [ <i>process-id</i> ] [ <i>area-id</i> ] <b>database</b> [ <i>external</i> ] [ <i>link-state-id</i> ] [ <i>adv-router</i> <i>ip-address</i> ]	



Command	Meaning
DES-7200# <b>show ip ospf</b> [process-id] [area-id] <b>database</b> [external] [link-state-id] [self-originate]	
DES-7200# <b>show ip ospf</b> [process-id] [area-id] <b>database</b> [nssa-external] [link-state-id]	
DES-7200# <b>show ip ospf</b> [process-id] [area-id] <b>database</b> [nssa-external] [link-state-id] [adv-router ip-address]	
DES-7200# <b>show ip ospf</b> [process-id] [area-id] <b>database</b> [nssa-external] [link-state-id][self-originate]	
DES-7200# <b>show ip ospf</b> [process-id] <b>border-routers</b>	Show the route information when the specified process reaches the ABR and ASBR.
DES-7200# <b>show ip ospf interface</b> [interface-name]	Show the information on the interface participating in the OSPF routing.
DES-7200# <b>show ip ospf</b> [process-id] <b>neighbor</b> [interface-name] [neighbor-id] [detail]	Show the information of the adjacent routers of the interface. interface-name: The local interface connected to the neighbor neighbor-id: The router ID of the neighbor.
DES-7200# <b>show ip ospf</b> [process-id] <b>virtual-links</b>	View the virtual link information of the specified process.
DES-7200# <b>show ip ospf</b> [process-id] <b>route</b> [count]	Show the routes of the OSPF routing table.

For the explanations of the commands, see *IP Routing Protocol Configuration Command Reference*. There are the following common monitoring and maintenance commands:

1. Show the status of the OSPF neighbor

Use the **show ip ospf [process-id] neighbor** to show all neighbor information of the OSPF process, including the status of neighbor, role, router ID and IP address.

```
DES-7200# show ip ospf neighbor
```

```
OSPF process 1:
```

```
Neighbor ID      Pri State      Dead Time      Address:        Interface
10.10.10.50 1    Full/DR      00:00:38      10.10.10.50    eth0/0
```

```
OSPF process 100:
```

```
Neighbor ID      Pri State      Dead Time      Address I       interface
10.10.11.50 1    Full/Backup  00:00:31      10.10.11.50    eth0/1
```

```
DES-7200# show ip ospf 1 neighbor
```



```
OSPF process 1:
```

Neighbor ID	Pri	State	Dead Time	Address:	Interface
10.10.10.50	1	Full/DR	00:00:38	10.10.10.50	eth0

```
DES-7200# show ip ospf 100 neighbor
```

```
OSPF process 100:
```

Neighbor ID	Pri	State	Dead Time	Address:	Interface
10.10.11.50	1	Full/Backup	00:00:31	10.10.11.50	eth1

## 2. Show the OSPF interface status

The following message shows that the F0/1 port belongs to area 0 of the OSPF, and the router ID is 172.16.120.1. The network type is "BROADCAST"-broadcast type. You must pay special attention to the parameters such as Area, Network Type, Hello and Dead. If these parameters are different from the neighbor, no neighborhood relationship will be established.

```
DES-7200# sh ip ospf interface fastEthernet 1/0
FastEthernet 1/0 is up, line protocol is up
Internet Address 192.168.1.1/24, Ifindex: 2 Area 0.0.0.0, MTU 1500
Matching network config: 192.168.1.0/24,
Process ID 1, Router ID 192.168.1.1, Network Type BROADCAST, Cost: 1
Transmit Delay is 1 sec, State DR, Priority 1
Designated Router (ID) 192.168.1.1, Interface Address 192.168.1.1
Backup Designated Router (ID) 192.168.1.2, Interface Address 192.168.1.2
Timer intervals configured, Hello 10, Dead 40, Wait 40, Retransmit 5
Hello due in 00:00:04
Neighbor Count is 1, Adjacent neighbor count is 1
Crypt Sequence Number is 30
Hello received 972 sent 990, DD received 3 sent 4
LS-Req received 1 sent 1, LS-Upd received 10 sent 26
LS-Ack received 25 sent 7, Discarded 0
```

## 3. Show the information of the OSPF routing process

The following command shows the route ID, router type, area information, area summary, and other related information.

```
DES-7200# show ip ospf

Routing Process "ospf 1" with ID 1.1.1.1
Process uptime is 4 minutes
Process bound to VRF default
Conforms to RFC2328, and RFC1583Compatibility flag is enabled
Supports only single TOS(TOS0) routes
Supports opaque LSA
This router is an ASBR (injecting external route information)
SPF schedule delay 5 secs, Hold time between two SPFs 10 secs
LsaGroupPacing: 240 secs
Number of incoming current DD exchange neighbors 0/5
Number of outgoing current DD exchange neighbors 0/5
Number of external LSA 4. Checksum 0x0278E0
Number of opaque AS LSA 0. Checksum 0x000000
Number of non-default external LSA 4
```



```
External LSA database is unlimited.
Number of LSA originated 6
Number of LSA received 2
Log Neighbor Adjacency Changes : Enabled
Number of areas attached to this router: 1
rea 0 (BACKBONE)
Number of interfaces in this area is 1(1)
Number of fully adjacent neighbors in this area is 1
Area has no authentication
SPF algorithm last executed 00:01:26.640 ago
SPF algorithm executed 4 times
Number of LSA 3. Checksum 0x0204bf
Routing Process "ospf 20" with ID 2.2.2.2
Process uptime is 4 minutes
Process bound to VRF default
Conforms to RFC2328, and RFC1583Compatibility flag is enabled
Supports only single TOS(TOS0) routes
Supports opaque LSA
SPF schedule delay 5 secs, Hold time between two SPF's 10 secs
LsaGroupPacing: 240 secs
Number of incoming current DD exchange neighbors 0/5
Number of outgoing current DD exchange neighbors 0/5
Number of external LSA 0. Checksum 0x000000
Number of opaque AS LSA 0. Checksum 0x000000
Number of non-default external LSA 0
External LSA database is unlimited.
Number of LSA originated 0
Number of LSA received 0
Log Neighbor Adjacency Changes : Enabled
Number of areas attached to this router: 0
```

## 29.4 OSPF Configuration Examples

---

Seven OSPF configuration examples are provided in this chapter:

- Example of configuring the OSPF NBMA network type
- Example of configuring the OSPF point-to-multipoint network type
- Example of configuring OSPF authentication
- Example of configuring route aggregation
- Example of configuring OSPF ABR and ASBR
- Example of configuring OSPF stub area
- Example of configuring OSPF virtual link

### 29.4.1 Example of Configuring the OSPF NBMA Network Type

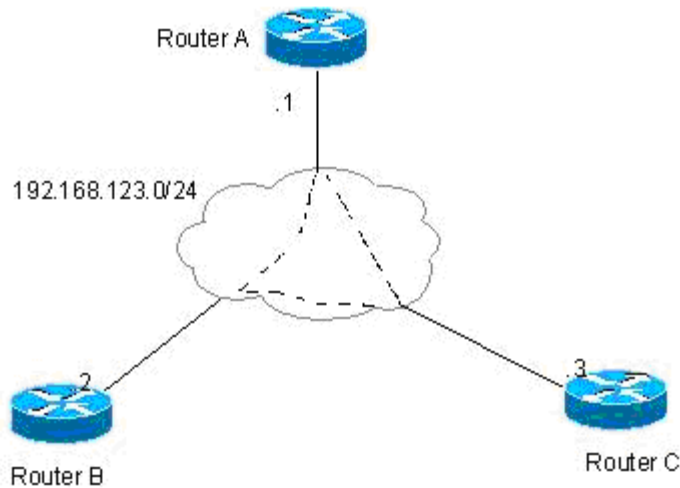
---

- Configuration requirements:



The three routers must be fully connected in a meshed network via frame relay. Each router has only one frame relay line, which has the same bandwidth and PVC rate. Figure 29-1 shows the IP address allocation and connection of the equipment.

**Figure 29-1** Example of configuring the OSPF NBMA network type



Requirement: 1) The NBMA network type is configured among router A, B and C, 2) The router A is the designated router, and the router B is the backup designated router, 3) All networks are of one area.

#### ■ Concrete Configuration of Routers

Since the OSPF has no special configuration, it will automatically discover the neighbors via multicast. If the interface is configured with the NBMA network type, the interface will not send the OSPF multicast packets, so you need to specify the IP address of the neighbor.

Configuration of Switch A:

#Configure the WAN port

```
interface Serial 1/0
ip address 192.168.123.1 255.255.255.0
encapsulation frame-relay
ip ospf network non-broadcast
ip ospf priority 10
```

# Configure the OSPF routing protocol to minimize the cost to the router B.

```
router ospf 1
network 192.168.123.0 0.0.0.255 area 0
neighbor 192.168.123.2 priority 5
neighbor 192.168.123.3
```

Configuration of Switch B:

#Configure the WAN port

```
interface Serial 1/0
```



```
ip address 192.168.123.2 255.255.255.0
encapsulation frame-relay
ip ospf network non-broadcast
ip ospf priority 5
```

#### #Configuring OSPF routing protocol

```
router ospf 1
network 192.168.123.0 0.0.0.255 area 0
neighbor 192.168.123.1 priority 10
neighbor 192.168.123.3
```

#### Configuration of Switch C:

#### #Configure the WAN port

```
interface Serial 1/0
ip address 192.168.123.3 255.255.255.0
encapsulation frame-relay
ip ospf network non-broadcast
```

#### #Configuring OSPF routing protocol

```
router ospf 1
network 192.168.123.0 0.0.0.255 area 0
neighbor 192.168.123.1 10
neighbor 192.168.123.2 5
```

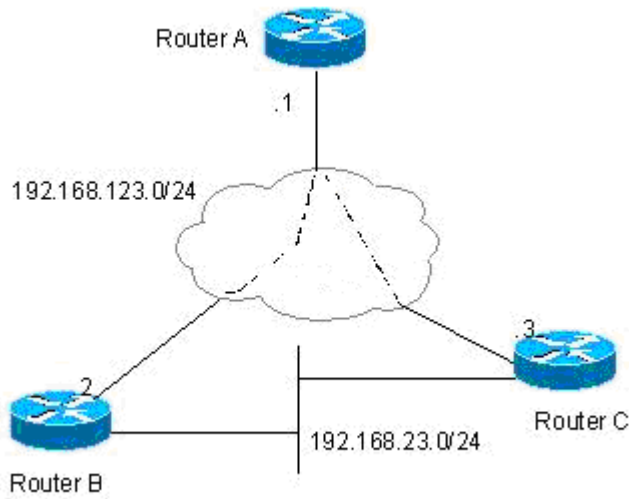
### 29.4.2 Example of Configuring the OSPF Point-to-multipoint Broadcast Network Type

---

#### ■ Configuration requirements:

The three routers must be fully interconnected via frame relay. Each router has only one frame relay line, which has the same bandwidth and PVC rate. Figure 29-2 shows the IP address allocation and connection of the equipment.



**Figure 29-2** Example of Configuring the OSPF Point-to-Multipoint Network Type

Requirements: 1) The point-to-multipoint network should be configured among routers A, B, and C.

#### ■ Concrete Configuration of Routers

If the interface is configured with the point-to-multipoint network type, the point-to-multipoint network type does not have the process to elect the specified router. The OSPF operation has similar action as the point-to-multipoint network type.

Configuration of Switch A:

##### #Configuring Ethernet interface

```
interface FastEthernet 0/0
ip address 192.168.12.1 255.255.255.0
```

##### #Configure the WAN port

```
interface Serial 1/0
ip address 192.168.123.1 255.255.255.0
encapsulation frame-relay
ip ospf network point-to-multipoint
router ospf 1
network 192.168.23.0 0.0.0.255 area 0
network 192.168.123.0 0.0.0.255 area 0
```

Configuration of Switch B:

##### #Configuring Ethernet interface

```
interface FastEthernet 0/0
ip address 192.168.23.2 255.255.255.0
```

##### #Configure the WAN port

```
interface Serial 1/0
```



```
ip address 192.168.123.2 255.255.255.0
encapsulation frame-relay
ip ospf network point-to-multipoint
```

#### #Configuring OSPF routing protocol

```
router ospf 1
network 192.168.23.0 0.0.0.255 area 0
network 192.168.123.0 0.0.0.255 area 0
```

#### Configuration of Switch C:

#### #Configuring Ethernet interface

```
interface FastEthernet 0/0
ip address 192.168.23.3 255.255.255.0
```

#### #Configure the WAN port

```
interface Serial 1/0
ip address 192.168.123.3 255.255.255.0
encapsulation frame-relay
ip ospf network point-to-multipoint
```

#### #Configuring OSPF routing protocol

```
router ospf 1
network 192.168.23.0 0.0.0.255 area 0
network 192.168.123.0 0.0.0.255 area 0
```

The above configuration has another assumption:

From router A to the 192.168.23.0/24 target network, router B is the first choice. To achieve preferred routing, you must set the cost of the neighbor when you configure the neighbor.

The following commands can be configured in the router A:

```
router ospf 1
neighbor 192.168.123.2 cost 100
neighbor 192.168.123.3 cost 200
```

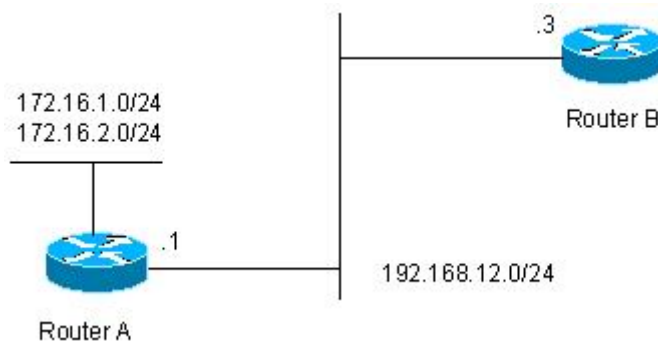
### 29.4.3 Example of configuring OSPF authentication

---

#### ■ Configuration requirements:

Two routers are connected via the Ethernet and run the OSPF routing protocol, with the MD5 authentication used. The connection diagram among routers and the assignment of IP addresses are shown as in Figure 29-3 .



**Figure 29-3** Example of configuring OSPF authentication

### ■ Concrete Configuration of Routers

The authentication configuration of the OSPF involves two parts:

1. Specifying the authentication mode of the area in the routing configuration mode;
2. Configuring the authentication method and key in the interface.

If both the area authentication and interface authentication are configured, the interface authentication shall be applied.

Configuration of Switch A:

#### #Configuring Ethernet interface

```
interface FastEthernet0/0
ip address 192.168.12.1 255.255.255.0
ip ospf message-digest-key 1 md5 hello
```

#### #Configuring OSPF routing protocol

```
router ospf 1
network 192.168.12.0 0.0.0.255 area 0
area 0 authentication message-digest
```

Configuration of Switch B:

#### #Configuring Ethernet interface

```
interface FastEthernet0/0
ip address 192.168.12.2 255.255.255.0
ip ospf message-digest-key 1 md5 hello
```

#### #Configuring OSPF routing protocol

```
router ospf 1
network 192.168.12.0 0.0.0.255 area 0
area 0 authentication message-digest
```

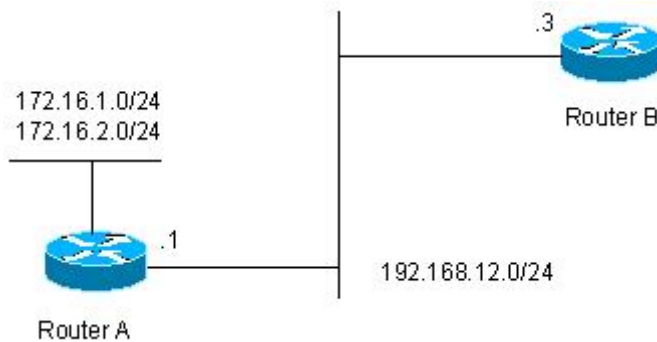
## 29.4.4 Example of Configuring Route Aggregation

### ■ Configuration requirements:



The two routers are connected via Ethernet. Figure 29-4 shows the IP address allocation and connection of the equipment.

**Figure 29-4** Example of configuring OSPF route aggregation.



Requirements: 1) Both devices run the OSPF routing protocol. The 192.168.12.0/24 network belongs to area 0, while the 172.16.1.0/24 and 172.16.2.0/24 networks belong to area 10; 2) Router A is configured so that route A only advertises the 172.16.0.0/22 route, but not the 172.16.1.0/24 and 172.16.2.0/24.

#### ■ Concrete Configuration of Routers

You need to configure the OSPF area route aggregation on Router A. Note that the area route aggregation can be configured only on the area border router.

Configuration of Switch A:

##### #Configuring Ethernet interface

```
interface FastEthernet0/0
ip address 192.168.12.1 255.255.255.0
```

##### #Configure the two ports on the Ethernet card

```
interface FastEthernet1/0
ip address 172.16.1.1 255.255.255.0
interface FastEthernet1/1
ip address 172.16.2.1 255.255.255.0
```

##### #Configuring OSPF routing protocol

```
router ospf 1
network 192.168.12.0 0.0.0.255 area 0
network 172.16.1.0 0.0.0.255 area 10
network 172.16.2.0 0.0.0.255 area 10
area 10 range 172.16.0.0 255.255.252.0
```

Configuration of Switch B:

##### #Configuring Ethernet interface

```
interface FastEthernet0/0
ip address 192.168.12.2 255.255.255.0
```



**#Configuring OSPF routing protocol**

```
router ospf 1
network 192.168.12.0 0.0.0.255 area 0
```

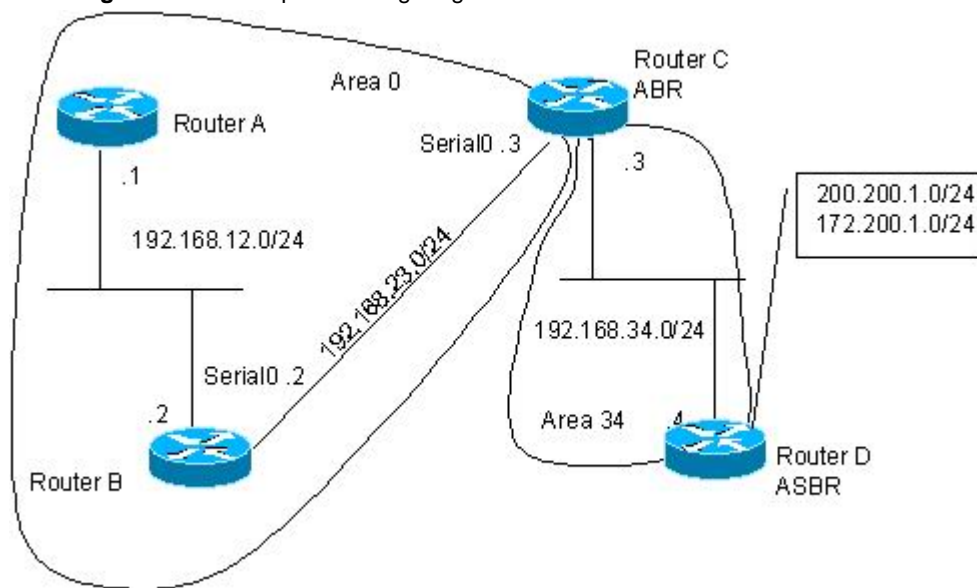
### 29.4.5 OSPF ABR, ASBR

#### Configuration Examples

##### ■ Configuration requirements:

Four routers form an OSPF routing area. Networks 192.168.12.0/24 and 192.168.23.0/24 belong to area 0, while network 192.168.34.0/24 belongs to area 34. Figure 29-5 shows the IP address allocation and connection of the equipment.

**Figure 29-5** Example of configuring OSPF ABR and ASBR



As shown in above figure, the router A and router B are of the area internal routers, the router C is of the ABRs, and the router D is of the ASBRs. 200.200.1.0/24 and 172.200.1.0/24 are the networks outside the OSPF routing area. Configure various routers so that all OSPF routers can learn the external routes, which must carry the “34” tag and be Type-I.

##### ■ Concrete Configuration of Routers

When the OSPF redistributes the routes of other sources, the default type is type II and it does not carry any tag.

Configuration of Switch A:

**#Configuring Ethernet interface**

```
interface FastEthernet0/0
ip address 192.168.12.1 255.255.255.0
```

**#Configuring OSPF routing protocol**



```
router ospf 1
network 192.168.12.0 0.0.0.255 area 0
```

#### Configuration of Switch B:

##### #Configuring Ethernet interface

```
interface FastEthernet0/0
ip address 192.168.12.2 255.255.255.0
```

##### #Configuring the WAN port

```
interface Serial 1/0
ip address 192.168.23.2 255.255.255.0
```

##### #Configuring OSPF routing protocol

```
router ospf 1
network 192.168.12.0 0.0.0.255 area 0
network 192.168.23.0 0.0.0.255 area 0
```

#### Configuration of Switch C:

##### #Configuring Ethernet interface

```
interface FastEthernet 0/0
ip address 192.168.34.3 255.255.255.0
```

##### #Configuring the WAN port

```
interface Serial 1/0
ip address 192.168.23.3 255.255.255.0
Configuring OSPF routing protocol
router ospf 1
network 192.168.23.0 0.0.0.255 area 0
network 192.168.34.0 0.0.0.255 area 34
```

#### Configuration of Switch D:

##### #Configuring Ethernet interface

```
interface FastEthernet 0/0
ip address 192.168.34.4 255.255.255.0
```

##### #Configuring the ports on the Ethernet card

```
interface FastEthernet 1/0
ip address 200.200.1.1 255.255.255.0
interface FastEthernet 1/1
ip address 172.200.1.1 255.255.255.0
```

##### #Configuring the OSPF routing protocol to redistribute the RIP route

```
router ospf 1
network 192.168.34.0 0.0.0.255 area 34
redistribute rip metric-type 1 subnets tag 34
```



**#Configuring RIP routing protocol**

```
router rip
network 200.200.1.0
network 172.200.1.0
```

On Router B, you can see the OSPF generates the following routes. Note that the external route type becomes “E1”.

```
O E1 200.200.1.0/24 [110/85] via 192.168.23.3, 00:00:33, Serial1/0
O IA 192.168.34.0/24 [110/65] via 192.168.23.3, 00:00:33, Serial1/0
O E1 172.200.1.0 [110/85] via 192.168.23.3, 00:00:33, Serial1/0
```

On device B, you can see the link status database as shown below. Note that the tag of the external link has become “34”.

```
RouterB#show ip ospf 1 database
```

```
OSPF Router process 1 with ID (192.168.23.2) (Process ID 100)
Router Link States (Area 0)
```

```
Link ID      ADV Router    Age  Seq#      Checksum Link count
SPF Router with ID (1.1.1.1) (Process ID 1)
Router Link States (Area 0.0.0.0)
Link ID      ADV Router    Age  Seq#      CkSum  Link count
1.1.1.1      1.1.1.1       2   0x80000011 0x6f39  2
3.3.3.3      3.3.3.3      120 0x80000002 0x26ac  1
Network Link States (Area 0.0.0.0)
Link ID      ADV Router    Age  Seq#      CkSum
192.88.88.27 1.1.1.1      120 0x80000001 0x5366
Summary Link States (Area 0.0.0.0)
Link ID      ADV Router    Age  Seq#      CkSum  Route
10.0.0.0     1.1.1.1       2   0x80000003 0x350d 10.0.0.0/24
100.0.0.0    1.1.1.1       2   0x8000000c 0x1ecb 100.0.0.0/16
Router Link States (Area 0.0.0.1 [NSSA])
Link ID      ADV Router    Age  Seq#      CkSum  Link count
1.1.1.1      1.1.1.1       2   0x80000001 0x91a2  1
Summary Link States (Area 0.0.0.1 [NSSA])
Link ID      ADV Router    Age  Seq#      CkSum  Route
100.0.0.0    1.1.1.1       2   0x80000001 0x52a4 100.0.0.0/16
192.88.88.0  1.1.1.1       2   0x80000001 0xbb2d 192.88.88.0/24
NSSA-external Link States (Area 0.0.0.1 [NSSA])
Link ID      ADV Router    Age  Seq#      CkSum  Route      Tag
20.0.0.0     1.1.1.1       1   0x80000001 0x033c  E2 20.0.0.0/24  0
100.0.0.0    1.1.1.1       1   0x80000001 0x9469  E2 100.0.0.0/28  0
AS External Link States
Link ID      ADV Router    Age  Seq#      CkSum  Route      Tag
20.0.0.0     1.1.1.1      380 0x8000000a 0x7627  E2 20.0.0.0/24  0
100.0.0.0    1.1.1.1      620 0x8000000a 0x0854  E2 100.0.0.0/28  0
```



### 29.4.6 Example of Configuring OSPF Stub Area

#### ■ Configuration requirements:

Four routers form an OSPF routing area. Networks 192.168.12.0/24 and 192.168.23.0/24 belong to area 0, while network 192.168.34.0/24 belongs to area 34. Figure 29-6 shows the IP address allocation and connection of the equipment.

**Figure 29-6** Example of configuring OSPF stub area



The requirement is that only the OSPF default route and the network routes of the local area can be seen in the routing table of RouterD.

#### ■ Concrete Configuration of Routers

Only the routers in the full stub area can have their routing tables simplified to eliminate the external and inter-area routes. The stub area must be configured on all the routers in the area. In order to show the inter-area routes of the router D, the router C advertises a 192.168.30.0/24 network.

The configuration of router A:

##### #Configuring Ethernet interface

```
interface FastEthernet0/0
ip address 192.168.12.1 255.255.255.0
```

##### #Configuring OSPF routing protocol

```
router ospf 1
network 192.168.12.0 0.0.0.255 area 0
```



**Configuration of Switch B:****# Configuring Ethernet interface**

```
interface FastEthernet0/0
ip address 192.168.12.2 255.255.255.0
```

**#Configuring the WAN port**

```
interface Serial1/0
ip address 192.168.23.2 255.255.255.0
```

**#Configuring OSPF routing protocol**

```
router ospf 1
network 192.168.12.0 0.0.0.255 area 0
network 192.168.23.0 0.0.0.255 area 0
```

**Configuration of Switch C:****#Configuring Ethernet interface**

```
interface FastEthernet0/0
ip address 192.168.34.3 255.255.255.0
```

**#Configuring the WAN port**

```
interface Serial1/0
ip address 192.168.23.3 255.255.255.0
```

**#Adding a network**

```
interface Dialer10
ip address 192.168.30.1 255.255.255.0
Configuring OSPF routing protocol
router ospf 1
network 192.168.23.0 0.0.0.255 area 0
network 192.168.34.0 0.0.0.255 area 34
network 192.168.30.0 0.0.0.255 area 34
area 34 stub no-summary
```

**Configuration of Switch D:****#Configuring Ethernet interface**

```
interface FastEthernet0/0
ip address 192.168.34.4 255.255.255.0
```

**#Configuring OSPF routing protocol**

```
router ospf 1
network 192.168.34.0 0.0.0.255 area 34
area 34 stub
```

The routes generated in the router D by the OSPF are shown as follows:

```
O 192.168.30.0/24 [110/1786] via 192.168.34.3, 00:00:03, FastEthernet0/0
O*IA 0.0.0.0/0 [110/2] via 192.168.34.3, 00:00:03, FastEthernet0/0
```

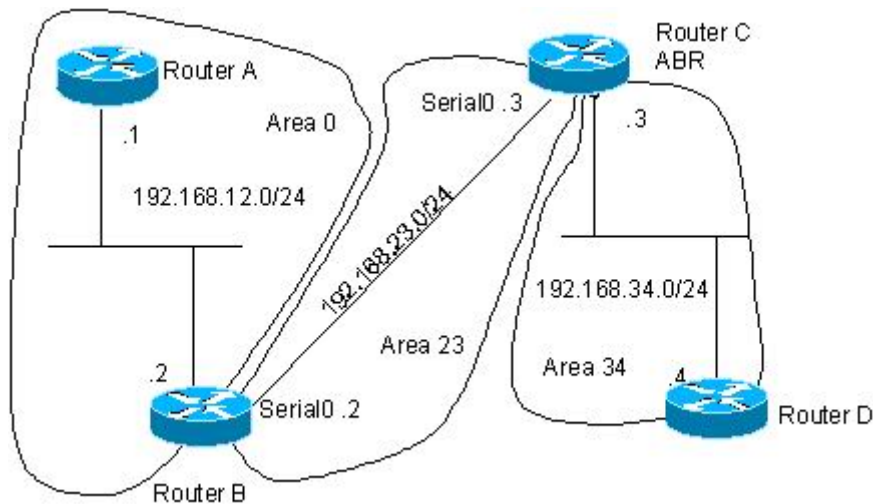


### 29.4.7 Example of Configuring OSPF Virtual Links

#### ■ Configuration requirements:

Four routers form an OSPF routing area. Networks 192.168.12.0/24 belongs to area 0, network 192.168.23.0/24 to area 23, while network 192.168.34.0/24 belongs to area 34. Figure 29-7 shows the IP address allocation and connection of the equipment.

**Figure 29-7** Example of configuring OSPF virtual connection



The purpose is to allow router D to learn the routes of 192.168.12.0/24 and 192.168.23.0/24.

#### ■ Concrete Configuration of Routers

The OSPF routing area consists of multiple sub-areas, each of which must be connected to the backbone area (area 0) directly. If there is no direct connection, a virtual link must be created to ensure logical connection to the backbone area. Otherwise, the sub-areas are not in connection. The virtual connection must be configured on the ABR.

The configuration of router A:

#Configuring Ethernet interface

```
interface FastEthernet0/0
ip address 192.168.12.1 255.255.255.0
```

#Configure the OSPF routing protocol

```
router ospf 1
network 192.168.12.0 0.0.0.255 area 0
```

The configuration of router B:

#Configuring Ethernet interface



```
interface FastEthernet0/0
ip address 192.168.12.2 255.255.255.0
```

#### #Configuring the WAN port

```
interface Serial1/0
ip address 192.168.23.2 255.255.255.0
```

#### #Adding the loopback IP address and taking it as the ID of the OSPF router.

```
interface Loopback2
ip address 2.2.2.2 255.255.255.0
```

#### #Configuring OSPF route protocol

```
router ospf 1
network 192.168.12.0 0.0.0.255 area 0
network 192.168.23.0 0.0.0.255 area 23
area 23 virtual-link 3.3.3.3
```

### Configuration of Switch C:

#### #Configuring Ethernet interface

```
interface FastEthernet0/0
ip address 192.168.34.3 255.255.255.0
```

#### #Configuring the WAN port

```
interface Serial1/0
ip address 192.168.23.3 255.255.255.0
```

#### #Adding the loopback IP address and taking it as the ID of the OSPF router.

```
interface Loopback2
ip address 3.3.3.3 255.255.255.0
```

#### #Configuring OSPF route protocol

```
router ospf 1
network 192.168.23.0 0.0.0.255 area 23
network 192.168.34.0 0.0.0.255 area 34
area 23 virtual-link 2.2.2.2
```

### Configuration of device D:

#### #Configuring Ethernet interface

```
interface FastEthernet0/0
ip address 192.168.34.4 255.255.255.0
```

#### #Configuring OSPF route protocol

```
router ospf 1
network 192.168.34.0 0.0.0.255 area 34
```

The routes generated in the router D by the OSPF are shown as follows:

```
O IA 192.168.12.0/24 [110/66] via 192.168.34.3, 00:00:10, FastEthernet0/0
```



```
O IA 192.168.23.0/24 [110/65] via 192.168.34.3, 00:00:25, FastEthernet0/0
```



# 30

## BGP Configuration

### 30.1 BGP Overview

---

The Border Gateway Protocol (BGP) is an Exterior Gateway Protocol (EGP) designed for routers in different autonomous systems to communicate one another. The goal is to exchange network reachability among different autonomous systems (AS) and eliminate loops by the natural features of the BGP protocol.

The BGP protocol uses the TCP protocol to transmit packets for its reliability, guaranteeing the reliable transmission of packets.

The router which operates the BGP protocol is referred to as the BGP Speaker, and the BGP Speakers which set up a BGP session are referred to as the BGP Peers.

There are two modes of BGP session : IBGP (Internal BGP) and EBGP (External BGP). The IBGP refers to the BGP session set up in an AS, while the EBGP refers to the BGP session set up between different ASs. In a word, the EBGP exchanges the route information among different ASs; the IBGP transits the route information in an AS.

The BGP protocol features:

- Support BGP-4
- Support path attributes
  - ✓ ORIGIN Attribute
  - ✓ AS\_PATH Attribute
  - ✓ NEXT\_HOP Attribute
  - ✓ MULTI\_EXIT\_DISC Attribute
  - ✓ LOCAL-PREFERENCE Attribute
  - ✓ ATOMIC\_AGGREGATE Attribute
  - ✓ AGGREGATOR Attribute
  - ✓ COMMUNITY Attribute
  - ✓ ORIGINATOR\_ID Attribute
  - ✓ CLUSTER\_LIST Attribute
- Support BGP peer groups
- Support loopback interface
- Support MD5 authentication of TCP
- Support the synchronization of BGP and IGP



- Support the aggregation of BGP routes
- Support BGP route flap dampening
- Support BGP routing reflector
- Support AS confederation
- Support BGP soft reset

## 30.2 Enabling the BGP Protocol

To enable the BGP protocol, execute the following operations in the privileged mode:

Command	Meaning
DES-7200# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enter into the global configuration mode.
DES-7200(config)# <b>ip routing</b>	Enable the routing function (if the switch is disabled).
DES-7200(config)# <b>router bgp</b> <i>as-number</i>	Enable the BGP and configure the AS number. The range of <i>AS-number</i> is 1 to 65535.
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>bgp</b> <b>router-id</b> <i>router-id</i>	(Optional) Configure the ID used when this switch runs the BGP protocol.
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>end</b>	Return to the privileged EXEC mode.
DES-7200# <b>show run</b>	Show current configuration.
<b>DES-7200# copy running-config</b> <b>startup-config</b>	Save the configuration.

Use the **no router bgp** command to disable the BGP protocol.

## 30.3 Default BGP Configuration

The BGP protocol is not enabled on DES-7200 series by default.

After the BGP protocol is enabled, the default configuration of the BGP is shown as follows:

Router ID		To configure the loopback interface, select the maximum one from the loopback interface addresses. Otherwise, select the maximum interface address from the direct-connected interface.
Synchronization of BGP and IGP		Enabled
Generation of Default Route		Disabled
Multi-hop EBGp	Status	Off
	Number of hops	255
TCP MD5 Authentication		Off



Timer	Keepalive Time	60 seconds
	Holdtime	180 seconds
	ConnectRetry Time	120 seconds
	AdvInterval(IBGP)	15 seconds
	AdvInterval(EBGP)	30 seconds
Path Attribute	MED	0
	LOCAL_PREF	100
Route Aggregate		Off
Route Flap Dampening	Status	Off
	Suppress Limit	2000
	Half-life-time	15 minutes
	Reuse Limit	750
	Max-suppress-time	4*half-life-time
Route Reflector	Status	Off
	Cluster ID	Undefined
	Route among reflection clients	Enabled
AS Confederation		Off
Soft Reset		Off
Management Distance	External-distance	20
	Internal-distance	200
	Local-distance	200

## 30.4 Injecting Route information into the BGP Protocol

The route information of the BGP is empty when it operates at just. There are two ways to inject the route information to the BGP:

Manually inject the route information to the BGP by the **Network** commands.

Inject the route information to the BGP from the IGP protocol by the interaction with the IGP protocol.

The BGP will issue the injected route information to its neighbors. This section will describe the manual injection of the route information. For the injection of the route information from the IGP protocol, refer to the *Configuration of BGP and IGP Interaction* in related section.



To inject the network information advertised by the BGP Speaker to other BGP Speaker by means of the Network commands by manual, execute the following operations in the BGP configuration mode:

Command	Meaning
Router(config-router)# <b>network</b> <i>network-number mask network-mask</i> <b>[route-map map-tag]</b>	(Optional) Configure the network to inject into the BGP routing table within this AS.

Use the **no network network-number mask network-mask** command to remove the configuration. If it is necessary to cancel the used route-map, configure it again by using the *Route-map Not Added* option. If the configured network information is of standard class A, class B or class C network address, the mask option of this command may not be used.

The BGP4+ supports the IPv6 routing, and this command can be used to configure the route information of IPv6 in the **address-family ipv6** command.



#### Caution

1. The **network** command is used to inject the route of IGP into the routing table of BGP, and the advertised Networks may be direct-connected route, static route and dynamic route.
2. For the external gateway protocol (EGP), the **network** command indicates the network to be advertised. This is different from the internal gateway protocol (IGP, such as OSPF and RIP). The latter uses the **network** commands to determine where the routing update will be sent to.

Sometimes, we want to use an IGP route rather than an EBGp route. This can be done through the **network backdoor** command. Execute the following operations in the BGP configuration mode:

Command	Meaning
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>network</b> <i>network-number mask network-mask</i> <b>backdoor</b>	(Optional) Transmit the reachable network information through the backdoor route.

Use the **no network network-number mask network-mask backdoor** command to remove the configuration.



#### Caution

By default, the management distance of the network information learned about from the BGP Speakers which establishes the EBGp connection is 20. Set the management distance of such network information by the **network backdoor** command as 200. Hence, the identical network information learned from the IGP presents higher priority. These networks learned from the IGP are considered as the backdoor network, and will not be advertised.



## 30.5 Configuring BGP Peer (Group) and Its Parameters

Since the BGP is an external gateway protocol (EGP), it is necessary for the BGP Speakers to know who is their peer (BGP Peer).

It is mentioned in the overview of the BGP protocol that two modes can be used to set up the connection relationship among BGP Speakers: IBGP (Internal BGP) and EBGP (External BGP). It will judge which connection mode will be established among BGP Speakers by the AS of BGP Peer and that of the BGP Speakers.

The BGP protocol supports IPv4 and IPv6. To view IPv6 functions, make sure that the **address-family ipv6** comand exists under the BGP configuration mode. Otherwise, this product does not support IPv6. During configuration, an IPv4 address means an Ipv4 neighbor and an IPv6 address means an IPv6 neighbor. Note that you should active neighbors in the corresponding address family.

Under normal condition, it is required to establish direct connection among BGP Speakers in a physical way for the EBGP connection. However, the BGP Speakers which establishes the IBGP connection may be in any place within the AS.

To configure the BGP peer, execute the following operations in the BGP configuration mode:

Command	Meaning
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>neighbor</b> <i>{address/peer-group-name} remote-as</i> <i>as-number</i>	Configure the BGP peer. <i>Address</i> indicates the IP addresses of the BGP peer. <i>Peer-group-name</i> indicates the name of the BGP peer group. The range of <i>as-number</i> is 1 to 65535.

Use the **no neighbor** *{address/peer-group-name}* to delete one peer or the peer group.

For the BGP Speakers, the configuration information of several peers (including the executed routing policy) is identical. To simplify the configuration and improve the efficiency, it is recommended to use the BGP peer group.

To configure the BGP peer group, execute the following operations in the BGP configuration mode:

Command	Meaning
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>neighbor</b> <i>peer-group-name peer-group</i>	(Optional) Create a BGP peer group.
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>neighbor</b> <i>address peer-group peer-group-name</i>	(Optional) Set the BGP peer as the member of the BGP peer group.



Command	Meaning
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>neighbor</b> <i>peer-group-name remote-as as-number</i>	(Optional) Configure the BGP peer group. The range of <i>as-number</i> is 1 to 65535.

Use the **no neighbor address peer-group** to delete some member of the BGP peer group.

Use the **no neighbor peer-group-name peer-group** to delete the whole peer group.

Use the **no neighbor peer-group-name remote-as** to delete all members of the BGP peer group and the AS number of the peer group.

To configure the peer of the BGP Speakers or the optional parameter of the BGP peer group, execute the following operations in the BGP configuration mode:

Command	Meaning
DES-7200(config-router-af)# <b>neighbor</b> {address peer-group-name} <b>activate</b>	(Optional) Activate the address family of the neighbor so that the router can exchange routing information with the address family.
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>neighbor</b> {address   peer-group-name} <b>update-source</b> interface	(Optional) Configure the network interfaces to establish the BGP session with specified BGP peer (group).
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>neighbor</b> {address   peer-group-name} <b>ebgp-multihop</b> [ttl]	(Optional) Allow to establish the BGP session among non-direct-connected EBGp peer (group). The range of TTL is 1 to 255, the EBGp is 1 hop by default, and the IBGP is 255 hops by default.
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>neighbor</b> {address   peer-group-name} <b>password</b> string	(Optional) Enable the TCP MD5 authentication when the connection is established among specified BGP peer (group), and configure the password.
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>neighbor</b> {address   peer-group-name} <b>times</b> keepalive holdtime	(Optional) Configure the Keepalive and Holdtime value to establish the connection with the specified BGP peer (group). The range of the <i>keepalive</i> is 0 to 65535 seconds, 60 seconds by default. The range of the <i>holdtime</i> is 0 to 65535 seconds, 180 seconds by default.
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>neighbor</b> {address   peer-group-name} <b>advertisement-interval</b> seconds	(Optional) Configure the minimal time interval to send the routing update message to the specified BGP peer (group). The range of advertisement-interval is 1 to 600 seconds, the IBGP peer is 15 seconds by default, and the EBGp peer is 30 seconds by default.



Command	Meaning
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>neighbor</b> {address   peer-group-name} <b>default-originate</b> [route-map map-tag]	(Optional) Configure to send the default route to the specified BGP peer (group).
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>neighbor</b> {address   peer-group-name} <b>next-hop-self</b>	(Optional) Configure to set the next route information as this BGP speaker when the route is distributed to the specified BGP peer (group).
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>neighbor</b> {address   peer-group-name} <b>remove-private-as</b>	(Optional) Configure to delete the private AS number in the AS path attribute when distributing the route information to the EBGp peer (group).
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>neighbor</b> {address   peer-group-name} <b>send-community</b>	(Optional) Configure to send the community attribute to the specified BGP peer (group).
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>neighbor</b> {address   peer-group-name} <b>maximum-prefix</b> maximum [warning-only]	(Optional) Limit the number of the route information received from the specified BGP peer (group).
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>neighbor</b> {address   peer-group-name} <b>distribute-list</b> access-list-name {in   out}	(Optional) Configure to implement the routing police according to the access control list when the route information is received from and sent to the specified BGP peer (group).
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>neighbor</b> {address   peer-group-name} <b>prefix-list</b> prefix-list-name {in   out}	(Optional) Configure to implement the routing policy according to the prefix list when the route information is received from and sent to specified BGP peer (group).
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>neighbor</b> {address   peer-group-name} <b>route-map</b> map-tag {in   out}	(Optional) Configure to implement the routing policy according to the route-map when the route information is received from and sent to the specified BGP peer (group).
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>neighbor</b> {address   peer-group-name} <b>filter-list</b> path-list-name {in   out}	(Optional) Configure to implement the routing policy according to the AS path list when the route information is received from and sent to the specified BGP peer (group).
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>neighbor</b> {address   peer-group-name} <b>unsuppress-map</b> map-tag	(Optional) Configure to selectively advertise the route information suppressed by the <b>aggregate-address</b> command previously when it is distributed to the specified BGP peer.
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>neighbor</b> {address   peer-group-name} <b>soft-reconfiguration inbound</b>	(Optional) Restart the BGP session and reserve the unchanged route information sent by the BGP peer (group).



Command	Meaning
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>neighbor</b> {address   peer-group-name} <b>route-reflector-client</b>	(Optional) Configure this switch as the route reflector and specify its client.
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>neighbor</b> {address   peer-group-name} <b>shutdown</b>	(Optional) Disable the BGP peer (group).

Use the **no** mode of above commands to disable the configurations.

If one peer is not configured with the **remote-as**, each of its members can use the **neighbor remote-as** command to configure it independently.

By default, each member of the BGP peer group will inherit all its configurations. However, each member is allowed to configure the optional configurations which have no effect on the output update independently to replace the unified configuration of the BGP peer group.



#### Caution

The **neighbor update-source** command can be used to select any valid interface to establish the TCP connection. The key function of this command is to provide available Loopback interface, which makes the connection to the IBGP Speaker more stable.

By default, it is required to directly connect with BGP peers physically to establish the EBGP connection. To establish the EBGP peers among non-direct-connected external BGP Speakers, the **neighbor ebgp-multihop** command can be used.



#### Caution

To avoid route loop and oscillation, the EBGP peers who need multiple hops to establish BGP connection must have non-default routes to each other.

For the sake of the security, you can set the authentication for the BGP peers (group) which will establish the connection, the authentication uses the MD5 algorithm. The authentication password set for the BGP peer should be identical. The process to enable the MD5 authentication on the BGP peer is shown as follows:

Command	Meaning
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>neighbor</b> {address   peer-group-name} <b>password</b> string	When the BGP connection with the BGP peer is established, use this command to enable the TCP MD5 authentication and set the password.

Use the **no neighbor {ip-address | peer-group-name} password** command to disable the MD5 authentication set for the BGP peer (group).



Use the **neighbor shutdown** command to disable the valid connection established with the BGP peer (group), and delete all route information related to the BGP peer (group).



#### Caution

To tear down the connection established with the specified BGP peer (group) and reserve the configuration information set for this specified BGP peer (group), use the **neighbor shutdown** command. If such configuration information is not required again, use the **no neighbor [peer-group]** command.

## 30.6 Configuring the Management Strategy for BGP

Whenever the routing policy (including the **distribute-list**, **neighbor route-map**, **neighbor prefix-list** and **neighbor filter-list**) changes, you need to take effective measure to implement new routing policy. The traditional way is to tear down and then reestablish the BGP session.

This product supports implementing new routing policy without the close of the BGP session connection by the configuration of the soft reset for BGP effectively.

To facilitate the description of the BGP soft reset, the following will refer to the routing policy which has an effect on the input route information as the input routing policy (such as the **In-route-map** and **In-dist-list**), and that has an effect on the output route information as the output routing policy (such as the **Out-route-map** and **Out-dist-list**).

If the output routing policy changes, execute the following operations in the BGP configuration mode:

Command	Meaning
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>clear ip bgp</b> {*   <b>neighbor address</b>   <b>peer-group</b> <i>peer-group-name</i>   <b>external</b> } <b>soft out</b>	Do soft reset of the BGP session and execute the routing policy without resetting up the BGP session.

If the input routing policy changes, its operation will be more complicated than that of the output routing policy, because the implementation of the output routing policy is based on the routing table of this BGP Speaker. The implement of the input routing policy is based on the route information received from the BGP peer. To reduce the memory consumption, the local BGP Speaker will not remain the original route information received from BGP peers.

If it is necessary to modify the input routing policy, the common method is to save the original route information for each specified BGP peer in this BGP Speaker by the **neighbor soft-reconfiguration inbound** command, so as to provide the original foundation of the route information to modify the input routing policy in future.



At present, there is a standard implementation method referred to as the Route Refresh Performance, which can support modifying the routing policy without the storage of the original route information. This product supports the route refreshing performance.

If the input routing policy changes, execute the following operations in the BGP configuration mode:

Command	Meaning
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>neighbor</b> { <i>address</i>   <i>peer-group-name</i> } <b>soft-reconfiguration inbound</b>	(Optional) Restart the BGP session and reserve the unchanged route information sent by the BGP peer (group).  Execution of this command will consume more memory. If both parties support the route refreshing performance, it is not necessary to execute this command.
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>clear ip bgp</b> {*   <b>neighbor</b> <i>address</i>   <b>peer-group</b> <i>peer-group-name</i>   <b>external</b> } <b>soft in</b>	Do soft reset of the BGP session and execute the routing policy without resetting up the BGP session.

You can judge whether the BGP peer supports the route refreshing performance by the **show ip bgp neighbors** command. If so, you need to execute the **neighbor soft-reconfiguration inbound** command when the input routing policy changes.

## 30.7 Configuring Synchronization between BGP and IGP

The routing information can be transmitted to another AS through the local AS only when ,it will pass through this AS and reach anther AS, the route information will be advertised to ll the routers in the local AS have learned the routing information. Otherwise, if some routers running the IGP protocol within this AS have not learn about this route information, the data packets may be discarded for these routers don't know this route when these packets traverses through this AS, namely, it will cause the route black hole.

The BGP-IGP synchronization is designed to ensure all routers within this AS can learn the outbounding route information. A simple way is that the BGP Speakers redistribute all of the routes learned by the BGP protocol to the IGP protocol, guaranteeing that the routers within the AS learn such route information.

The BGP-IGP synchronization mechanism can be cancelled under two conditions:

1. There is no the route information which pass through the local AS (In general, this AS is an end AS).
2. All routers within this AS operate the BGP protocol and the full connection relationship is established among all BGP Speakers (The adjacent relationship is established between any two BGP Speakers).



**Caution**

By default, the synchronization is disabled. Enable synchronization when not all the routers are running BGP when traversing an AS.

To enable synchronization of BGP speakers, execute the following operations in the BGP configuration mode:

Command	Meaning
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>synchronization</b>	(Optional) Enable synchronization of BGP and IGP.

Execute the no **synchronization** command to disable the synchronization mechanism.

## 30.8 Configuring Interaction between BGP and IGP

To inject the route information generated by the IGP protocol into the BGP protocol, execute the following operations in the BGP configuration mode:

Command	Meaning
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>redistribute</b> [ <b>connected</b>   <b>rip</b>   <b>static</b> ] [ <b>route-map</b> <i>map-tag</i> ] [ <b>metric</b> <i>metric-value</i> ]	(Optional) Redistribute static route, direct route and the route information generated by RIP.
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>redistribute</b> <b>ospf</b> <i>process-id</i> [ <b>route-map</b> <i>map-tag</i> ] [ <b>metric</b> <i>metric-value</i> ] [ <b>match internal</b> <b>external</b> [1   2] <b>nssa-external</b> [1   2 ]]	(Optional) Redistribute the route information generated by OSPF.
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>redistribute</b> <b>isis</b> [ <i>isis-tag</i> ] [ <b>route-map</b> <i>map-tag</i> ] [ <b>metric</b> <i>metric-value</i> ] [ <b>level-1</b>   <b>level-1-2</b>   <b>level-2</b> ]	(Optional) Redistribute the route information generated by ISIS.

By default, distribution of default route is disabled. To enable this function, execute the following commands:

Command	Meaning
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>default-information originate</b>	(Optional) Redistribute default route.



## 30.9 Configuring BGP Timer

The BGP uses the Keepalive timer to maintain the effective connection with the peers, and takes the Holdtime timer to judge whether the peers are effective. By default, the value of the Keepalive timer is 60s, and the value of the Holdtime timer is 180s. When the BGP session is established between BGP Speakers, both parties will negotiate with the Holdtime timer and that with smaller value will be selected. While, the selection of the Keepalive timer is based on the smaller one between 1/3 of the negotiated Holdtime timer and the configured Keepalive timer.

To adjust the value of the BGP timer based on all peers, execute the following operations in the BGP configuration mode:

Command	Meaning
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>timers bgp</b> <i>keepalive holdtime</i>	(Optional) Adjust the keepalive and holdtime value of BGP based on all peers.  The range of the <i>keepalive</i> is 1 to 65535 seconds, and 60 seconds by default.  The range of the <i>holdtime</i> is 1 to 65535 seconds, 180 seconds by default.

Certainly, you can adjust the value of the BGP timer based on the specified peers, and execute the following operations in the BGP configuration mode:

Command	Meaning
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>neighbor</b> <i>{address   peer-group-name} times</i> <i>keepalive holdtime</i>	(Optional) Configure the Keepalive and Holdtime value to establish a session with the specified BGP peer (group).  The range of the keepalive is 1 to 65535 seconds, 60 seconds by default.  The range of the holdtime is 1 to 65535 seconds, 180 seconds by default.

Use the **no** option of corresponding commands to clear the value of configured timer.

## 30.10 Configuring BGP Path Attributes

### 30.10.1 AS\_PATH Attribute

The BGP protocol controls the distribution of the route information in three ways:

- IP address by using the **neighbor distribute-list** and **neighbor prefix-list** commands
- AS\_PATH Attribute( refer to the description in this section)
- COMMUNITY Attribute( refer to the COMMUNITY Attribute configuration)



You can use the AS path-based access control list to control the distribution of the route information, where the AS path-based ACL will use Regular Expression to resolve the AS path.

To configure the AS path-based distribution of the route information, execute the following operations in the privileged mode:

Command	Meaning
DES-7200# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enter into the global configuration mode.
DES-7200(config)# <b>ip as-path access-list</b> <i>path-list-name</i> { <b>permit</b>   <b>deny</b> } <i>as-regular-expression</i>	(Optional) Define an AS path list.
DES-7200(config)# <b>ip routing</b>	Enable the routing function (if disabled)
DES-7200(config)# <b>router bgp</b> <i>as-number</i>	Enable the BGP and configure this AS number to enter into the BGP configuration mode.
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>neighbor</b> { <i>address</i>   <i>peer-group-name</i> } <b>filter-list</b> <i>path-list-name</i> { <b>in</b>   <b>out</b> }	(Optional) Implement the routing policy according to the AS path list when the route information is received from and sent to the specified BGP peer (group).
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>neighbor</b> { <i>address</i>   <i>peer-group-name</i> } <b>route-map</b> <i>map-tag</i> { <b>in</b>   <b>out</b> }	(Optional) Implement the routing policy according to the route-map when the route information is received from and sent to the specified BGP peer (group). In the route-map configuration mode, you can use the <b>match as-path</b> to operate the AS path attribute by the AS path list, or take the <b>set as-path</b> to operate the AS attribute value directly.

The BGP protocol will not take the length of the AS path into account when it selects the optimal path as specified in RFC1771. In general, the shorter the length of the AS path, the higher the path priority is. Hence, we take the length of the AS path when we select the optimal path. You can determine whether it is necessary to take the length of the AS path into account when you select the optimal path according to the actual condition.

If you don't want take the length of the AS path into account when you select the optimal path, execute the following operations in the BGP configuration mode:

Command	Meaning
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>bgp bestpath as-path ignore</b>	(Optional) Compare with the length of the AS path when selecting the optimal path.



**Caution**

Within the AS, whether all BGP Speakers take the length of the AS path into account will be consistent when selecting the optimal path. Otherwise, the optimal path information selected by various BGP Speakers will be different.

### 30.10.2 NEXT\_HOP Attribute

To set the next hop as the local BGP Speaker for sending the route information to the specified BGP peer, you can use the **neighbor next-hop-self** command, which is mainly used in the non-mesh networks (such as frame relay and X.25). Execute the following operations in the BGP configuration mode:

Command	Meaning
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>neighbor</b> { <i>address</i>   <i>peer-group-name</i> } <b>next-hop-self</b>	(Optional) Set the next hop as the local BGP speaker for distributing the route information to the specified BGP peer (group).

You can also modify the next hop of the specified path by the **set next-hop** command of Route-map.

**Caution**

This command is not recommended to use under the full mesh network environment (such as Ethernet) for it will cause addition hops and incur unnecessary overhead.

### 30.10.3 MULTI\_EXIT\_DISC Attribute

The BGP takes the MED value as the foundation of priority comparison of the paths learned from the EBGPs. The smaller the MED value, the higher the priority of the path is.

By default, it will only compare with the MED value for the path of the peers from the same AS when the optimal path is selected. If you hope to compare with the MED value for the path of the peers from different ASs, execute the following operations in the BGP configuration mode:

Command	Meaning
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>bgp</b> <b>always-compare-med</b>	(Optional) Compare with the MED value for the path of different ASs.

By default, it will not compare with the MED value for the path of the peers for other ASs within the AS association when the optimal path is selected. If you hope to compare with the MED value for the path of the peers from different AS confederations, execute the following operations in the BGP :configuration mode



Command	Meaning
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>bgp bestpath med confed</b>	(Optional) Compare with the MED value for the path of the peers from other ASs within the confederation.

By default, if the path whose MED attribute is not set is received, the MED value of this path will be taken as 0. For the smaller the MED value, the higher the priority of the path is, the MED value of this path reaches the highest priority. If you hope the MED attribute for the path whose MED attribute is not set presents the lowest priority, execute the following operations in the BGP configuration mode:

Command	Meaning
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>bgp bestpath med missing-as-worst</b>	(Optional) Set the priority of the path whose MED attribute is not set as the lowest.

By default, they will be compared with each other according to the sequence the paths are received when the optimal path is selected. If you hope to compare with the path of the peers from the same AS firstly, execute the following operations in the BGP configuration mode:

Command	Meaning
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>bgp deterministic-med</b>	(Optional) Compare with the path of the peers from the same AS firstly. By default, they will be compared with by the received sequence, the later received path will be compared with firstly.

#### 30.10.4 LOCAL\_PREF Attribute

The BGP takes the LOCAL\_PREF as the foundation of priority comparison of the path learned from the IBGP peers. The larger the LOCAL\_PREF value, the higher the priority of the path is.

The BGP Speakers will add the local preference when they send the received external routes to the IBGP peers. To modify the local preference, execute the following operations in the BGP configuration mode:

Command	Meaning
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>bgp default local-preference value</b>	(Optional) Change the default local preference. The range of the value is 1 to 4294967295, 100 by default.

You can also modify the local preference of the specified path by the **set local-preference** command of Route-map.



### 30.10.5 COMMUNITY Attribute

COMMUNITY Attribute is another method to control the distribution of the route information.

The community is a set of destinations. The purpose is to implement the community-based routing policy so as to simplify the configuration to control the distribution of the route information in the BGP Speakers.

Each destination may be of more than one community, and the manager of the AS can define which community the destination is of.

By default, all destinations are of the Internet community carried in the community attribute of the path.

At present, total for four common community attribute values are predefined:

- **Internet**: Indicate the Internet community, and all paths are of this community.
- **no-export**: Indicate this path will not be exported to the BGP peers.
- **no-export**: Indicate this path will not be advertised to the BGP peers.
- **local-as**: Indicate this path will be advertised only in the local AS or the AS confederation if it is configured.

You can control the receiving, priority and distribution of the route information by the community attribute.

The BGP supports up to 32 COMMUNITY attributes for every route. When configuring the **route-map** command, you can set up to 32 COMMUNITY attributes for the parameters **match** and **set COMMUNITY**.

The BGP Speakers can set, add or modify the community attribute value when they learn about, issue or redistribute the route. The aggregated path includes the community attribute of all aggregated paths when the route aggregate is carried out.

To configure the community attribute-based distribution of the route information, execute the following operations in the privileged mode:

Command	Meaning
DES-7200# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enter into the global configuration mode.
DES-7200(config)# <b>ip community-list standard</b> <i>community-list-name</i> { <b>permit</b>   <b>deny</b> } <i>community-number</i>	(Optional) Create the community list. The <i>community-list-name</i> is the name of the community list. The <i>community-number</i> is the concrete value of the community list in the range 1 to 4,294,967,200, or the well-known community attribute such as <b>Internet</b> , <b>local-AS</b> , <b>no-advertise</b> and <b>no-export</b> .
DES-7200(config)# <b>ip routing</b>	Enable the routing function (if disabled).



Command	Meaning
DES-7200(config)# <b>router bgp</b> <i>as-number</i>	Enable the BGP and configure this AS number to enter into the BGP configuration mode.
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>neighbor</b> <i>{address   peer-group-name}</i> <b>send-community</b>	(Optional) Configure to send the community attribute to the specified BGP peer (group).
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>neighbor</b> <i>{address   peer-group-name}</i> <b>route-map</b> <i>map-tag</i> {in   out}	(Optional) Configure to implement the routing policy according to the route-map when the route information is received from and sent to the specified BGP peer (group).  In the route-map configuration mode, you can use the <b>match community-list [exact]</b> and <b>set community-list delete</b> to operate the community attribute by the community list, or take the <b>set community</b> command to operate the community attribute value directly.

### 30.10.6 Other Related Configuration

By default, if two paths with full identical path attributes are received from different EBGp peers during the selection of the optimal path, we will select the optimal path according to the path received sequence. You can select the path with smaller router ID as the optimal path by configuring the following commands.

Command	Meaning
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>bgp bestpath</b> <b>compare-routerid</b>	(Optional) Allow the BGP to compare with the router ID when the optimal path is selected.

## 30.11 Selecting the Optimal Path for BGP

The selection of the optimal route is an important part of the BGP protocol. The following will describe the selection process of the BGP route protocol in details:

1. Invalid route entry will not participate in the selection of the optimal route.



#### Caution

Invalid entry includes the ones the next hop cannot be reached and the oscillating entries.

2. Select the route with the maximal weight.
3. Otherwise, select the route with the high LOCAL\_PREF attribute value.



4. Otherwise, select the route generated by the local BGP speaker.  
The route generated by the local BGP speaker includes the one generated by the **network** command, the redistribute command and the **aggregate** command.
5. Otherwise, select the route with the shortest AS length.
6. Otherwise, select the route with the lowest ORIGIN attribute value.
7. Otherwise, select the route with the smallest MED value.
8. Otherwise, the priority of the EBGp path is higher than that of the route of the IBGP path and the AS confederation, and the priority of the IBGP path and the AS confederation is identical.
9. Otherwise, select the route with the smallest IGP metric to reach the next hop.
10. Otherwise, select the route which advertises that the router ID of the BGP speaker is small.

**Caution**

Above is the process of select the optimum route under the default configuration. You can change the selection process of the route by the CLI command. For instance, you can use the **bgp bestpath as-path ignore** command to make the step 5 in the process of selecting the optimum route invalid.

## 30.12 Configuring BGP Route Aggregation

Since the BGP-4 supports CIDR, aggregated entries are allowed to create to reduce the size of the BGP routing table. Certainly, only when there is valid path within the aggregation scope can the BGP aggregated entries be added to the BGP routing table.

To configure the BGP route aggregation, execute the following operations in the BGP configuration mode:

Command	Meaning
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>aggregate-address</b> <i>address mask</i>	(Optional) Configure the aggregated address.
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>aggregate-address</b> <i>address mask as-set</i>	(Optional) Configure the aggregated address, and remain the AS path information of the path within the scope of the aggregated address.
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>aggregate-address</b> <i>address mask summary-only</i>	(Optional) Configure the aggregated address and only advertise the aggregated path.



Command	Meaning
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>aggregate-address</b> <i>address mask as-set summary-only</i>	(Optional) Configure the aggregated address, and remain the AS path information of the path within the scope of the aggregated address. At the same time, only the aggregated path is advertised.

Use the **no** mode of above commands to disable the configured content.



#### Caution

By default, the BGP will advertise all route information both before and after aggregation. If you want to advertise only the aggregated path information, use the **aggregate-address summary-only** command.

## 30.13 Configuring Route Reflector for BGP

To speed up the convergence of the route information, all BGP Speakers within one AS will usually establish the full connection relationship (The adjacent relationship is established between any two BGP Speakers). Too many BGP Speakers within the AS will increase the resource overhead of the BGP Speakers, raise the configuration workload and complexity of network administrators and reduce the network scalability.

For this reason, two measures such as the route reflector and AS confederation are proposed to reduce the connections of the IBGP peers within an AS.

The route reflector is a measure to reduce the connections of the IBGP peer within the AS. One BGP Speaker is set as the route reflector, which divides the IBGP peer within this AS into two types, such as client and non-client.

The rule to implement the route reflector within the AS is shown as follows:

- Configure the route reflector and specify its client, so the route reflector and other clients form a cluster. The route reflector establishes the connection relationship with clients.
- The clients of the route reflector within one cluster should not establish the connection relationship with other BGP Speakers of other clusters.
- Within an AS, the full connection relationship is established among the IBGP peer of non-clients. Where, the IBGP peer of non-clients includes the following conditions: among several route reflectors within one cluster, among the route reflector within the cluster and the BGP Speakers which don't participate in the route reflector function out of the cluster (In general, the BGP Speakers don't support the route reflector function), among the route reflector within the cluster and the route reflector of other cluster.

The processing rule when the route reflector receives one route is shown as follows:

- The route update received from the EBGP Speaker will be sent to all clients and non-clients.



- The route update received from the clients will be sent to other clients and all non-clients.
- The route update received from the IBGP non-clients will be sent to all its clients.

To configure the BGP route reflector, execute the following operations in the BGP configuration mode:

Command	Meaning
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>neighbor</b> { <i>address</i>   <i>peer-group-name</i> } <b>route-reflector-client</b>	(Optional) Configure this product as the route reflector and specify its clients.

In general, one group is only configured with one route reflector. In this case, the Router ID of the route reflector can be used to identify this cluster. To increase the redundancy, you can set more than one route reflector within this cluster. In this case, you must configure the cluster ID, so that one route reflector can identify the route update from other route reflectors of this cluster.



#### Caution

To set several route reflectors for one cluster, it is necessary for you to configure a cluster ID for this cluster.

To configure the cluster ID of the BGP, execute the following operations in the BGP configuration mode:

Command	Meaning
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>bgp cluster-id</b> <i>cluster-id</i>	(Optional) Configure the cluster ID of the route reflector.

In general, it is not necessary to establish the connection relationship between the clients of the route reflector within the cluster, and the route reflector will reflect the routes among clients. However, if the full connection relationship is established among all clients, this function can be disabled.

To disable the function of reflecting the routes of the client, execute the following operations in the BGP configuration mode:

Command	Meaning
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>no bgp</b> <b>client-to-client reflection</b>	(Optional) Disable route reflection on clients.

## 30.14 Configuring Route Flap Dampening for BGP

Route flap means a route changes between the valid status and the invalid status. The route flap usually causes instable routes to be transmitted on the Internet, and thus a instable



network. The BGP route flap dampening is a measure to reduce route flap by monitoring the route information of EBGp peers.

The route flap dampening of BGP uses the following glossaries:

- **Route Flap:** A route changes between the valid status and the invalid status.
- **Penalty:** The route flap dampening-enabled BGP Speakers will add a penalty for the route every time when a route flaps. The penalty will be accumulated to exceed the suppress limit.
- **Suppress Limit:** When the penalty of a route exceeds this value, the route will be suppressed.
- **Half-life-time:** The time elapsed when the penalty is reduced to half of its value.
- **Reuse Limit:** When the penalty of the route is lower than this value, the route suppression is released.
- **Max-suppress-time:** The maximal time the route can be suppressed.

Brief description of route flap dampening: The BGP Speakers will add a penalty for the route every time when a route flaps. The penalty is accumulated. Once the penalty value reaches the suppress limit, the route will be suppressed. When the half-life-time reaches, the penalty value is reduced to half of its value. Once the penalty value is reduced to the reuse limit, the route will be activated again. A route can be suppressed for the maximal suppress time.

To configure the route flap dampening of the BGP, execute the following operations in the BGP configuration mode:

Command	Meaning
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>bgp dampening</b>	Enable the route flap dampening of the BGP protocol.
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>bgp dampening</b> <i>half-life-time reuse suppress max-suppress-time</i>	(Optional) Configure the parameters of the route flap dampening.  half-life-time: in the range 1 to 45minutes, 15minutes by default.  reuse: in the range 1 to 20000, 750 by default.  suppress: in the range 1 to 20000, 2000 by default.  max-suppress-time: in the range 1 to 255 minutes, 4*half-life-time by default.

If it is necessary to monitor the route flap dampening information, execute the following operations in the privileged mode:

Command	Meaning
DES-7200# <b>show ip bgp dampening flap-statistics</b>	Show the flap statistics information of all router.
DES-7200# <b>show ip bgp dampening dampened-paths</b>	Show the dampened statistics information.



To clear the route flap dampening information or clear the dampened routes, execute the following operations in the BGP configuration mode:

Command	Meaning
DES-7200# <b>clear ip bgp flap-statistics</b>	Clear the flap statistics information of all un-dampened route.
DES-7200# <b>clear ip bgp flap-statistics</b> <i>address mask</i>	Clear the flap statistics information of the specified route (excluding the dampened routes).
DES-7200# <b>clear ip bgp dampening</b> [ <i>address mask</i> ]	Clear the flap statistics information of all routes, and release the suppressed routes.

### 30.15 Configuring AS Confederation for BGP

The confederation is a measure to reduce the connections of the IBGP peer within the AS.

One AS is divided into multiple sub ASs that can form a confederation by setting a unified confederation ID (namely, confederation AS number). An external confederation is still considered to be an AS and only the AS number of the confederation is visible. Within the confederation, the full IBGP peer connection is still established among the BGP Speakers and the EBGP connection is established among the BGP Speakers within the sub AS. Although the EBGP connection is established among BGP Speakers within the sub ASs, the path attribute information of NEXT\_HOP, MED and LOCAL\_PREF retains intact when the information is exchanged.

To implement the AS confederation, execute the following operations in the BGP configuration mode:

Command	Meaning
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>bgp</b> <b>confederation identifier</b> <i>as-number</i>	Configure the AS confederation number. The range of <i>as-number</i> is 1 to 65535.
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>bgp</b> <b>confederation peers</b> <i>as-numbe</i> [ <i>as-number..</i> ]	Configure other sub AS numbers within the AS confederation. The range of <i>as-number</i> is 1 to 65535.

Use the **no** mode of above commands to disable the configured content.

### 30.16 Configuring BGP Management Distance

The management distance indicates the reliability of the route information resource, whose range is 1 to 255. The larger the value of the management distance, the lower the reliability is.



The BGP sets different management distances for various information sources learned, such as External-distance, Internal-distance and Local-distance.

- External-distance: The management distance of the route learned from the EBGp peers.
- Internal-distance: The management distance of the route learned from the IBGP peers.
- Local-distance: The management distance of the route learned from the peers. However, it is considered that the optimal one can be learned from the IGP. In general, these routes are indicated by the **Network Backdoor** command.

To modify the management distance of the BGP protocol, execute the following operations in the BGP configuration mode:

Command	Meaning
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>distance bgp</b> <i>external-distance internal-distance</i> <i>local-distance</i>	(Optional) Configure the management distance. The range of the distance is 1 to 255. For the default configuration: <i>external-distance 20</i> <i>internal-distance 200</i> <i>local-distance 200</i>

Use the **no** command to restore the default management distance of the BGP protocol.



#### Caution

It is not recommended to change the management distance of the BGP route. If it is necessary to change, please keep it in mind that:

1. The External-distance should be lower than the management distance of other IGP route protocol (OSPF and RIP).
2. The Internal-distance and Local-distance should be higher than the management distance of other IGP route protocol.

## 30.17 Monitoring BGP

You can use the **Show** commands to view the route table, buffer and database of the BGP. Execute the following operations in the privileged mode:

Command	Meaning
DES-7200# <b>show ip bgp</b>	Show the information on all BGP routes.
DES-7200# <b>show ip bgp</b> { <i>network</i>   <i>network-mask</i> } [ <b>longer-prefixes</b> ]	Show the BGP route information of the specified destination.
DES-7200# <b>show ip bgp prefix-list</b> <i>prefix-list-name</i>	Show the BGP route information of the specified matching against the prefix list.



Command	Meaning
DES-7200# <b>show ip bgp community</b> [exact] <i>community-number</i>	Show the BGP route information including the specified community.
DES-7200# <b>show ip bgp community-list</b> <i>community-list-number</i> [exact]	Show the BGP route information which matches against the specified community list.
DES-7200# <b>show ip bgp filter-list</b> <i>path-list-number</i>	Show the BGP route information which matches against the specified AS path list.
DES-7200# <b>show ip bgp regexp</b> <i>as-regular-expression</i>	Show the BGP route information of the specified regular expression which matches against the AS path attribute.
DES-7200# <b>show ip bgp dampening dampened-paths</b>	Show the suppressed flap statistics information.
DES-7200# <b>show ip bgp dampening flap-statistics</b>	Show the flap statistics information of all routes with the flap record.
DES-7200# <b>show ip bgp neighbors</b> [ <i>address</i> ] [received-routes   routes   advertised-routes   flap-statistics   dampened-routes]	Show the information of the BGP peer.
DES-7200# <b>show ip bgp summary</b>	Briefly show the configuration of the BGP router itself and the information of the peer.
DES-7200# <b>show ip bgp peer-group</b> [ <i>peer-group-name</i> ]	Show the configuration information of the BGP peer group.

## 30.18 Protocol Independent Configuration

### 30.18.1 route-map Configuration

The BGP protocol applies the Route-map policy on a large scale. For the configuration of the Route-map policy, refer to the Protocol Independent Configuration Part in this manual.

### 30.18.2 Regular Expression Configuration

The regular expression is the formula to match the string according to a certain template. The regular expression is used to evaluate the text data and return a true or false value. That is to say, whether the expression can describe this data correctly.



### 30.18.2.1 Description of Control Characters for Regular Expression

The BGP path attribute uses the regular expression. Here will briefly describe the use of the special characters for the regular expression:

Characters	Signs	Special Meanings
Period	.	Match with any single character.
Asterisk	*	Match with none or any sequence of the string.
Plus	+	Match with one or any sequence of the string.
Interrogation Mark	?	Match with none or one sign of the string.
Plus Sign	^	Match with the starting of the string.
Dollar	\$	Match with the end of the string.
Underlining	—	Match with the comma, bracket, the starting and end of the string and blank.
Square Brackets	[]	Match with the single character within the specified scope.

### 30.18.2.2 Application Example of Regular Expression

Run the **show ip bgp** command on the device:

```
DES-7200# show ip bgp
```

Status codes: s suppressed, d damped, h history, \* valid, > best, i - internal

Origin codes: i - IGP, e - EGP, ? - incomplete

Status	Network	Next Hop	Metric	LocPrf	Path
--------	---------	----------	--------	--------	------

```

-----
*> 211.21.21.0/24 110.110.110.10 0 1000 200 300
*> 211.21.23.0/24 110.110.110.10 0 1000 200 300
*> 211.21.25.0/24 110.110.110.10 0 1000 300
*> 211.21.26.0/24 110.110.110.10 0 1000 300
*> 1.1.1.0/24 192.168.88.250 444 0 606
*> 179.98.0.0 192.168.88.250 444 0 606
*> 192.92.86.0 192.168.88.250 8883 0 606
*> 192.168.88.0 192.168.88.250 444 0 606
*> 200.200.200.0 192.168.88.250 777 0 606

```

Use the regular expression in the **show** command:

```
DES-7200# show ip bgp regexp _300_
```

Status codes: s suppressed, d damped, h history, \* valid, > best, i - internal

Origin codes: i - IGP, e - EGP, ? - incomplete

Status	Network	Next Hop	Metric	LocPrf	Path
--------	---------	----------	--------	--------	------

```

-----
*> 211.21.21.0/24 110.110.110.10 0 1000 200 300

```



```
*> 211.21.23.0/24 110.110.110.10 0 1000 200 300
*> 211.21.25.0/24 110.110.110.10 0 1000 300
*> 211.21.26.0/24 110.110.110.10 0 1000 300
```

## 30.19 BGP Configuration Examples

The following lists the BGP configuration.

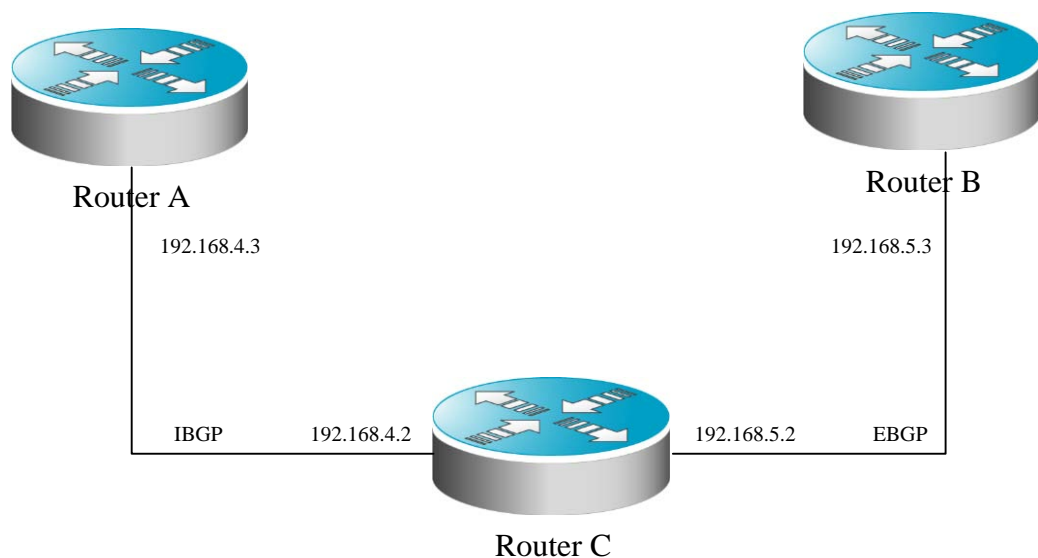
### 30.19.1 Configuring BGP Neighbor

The following will show how to configure the BGP neighbor. Use the **neighbor remote-as** command to configure the BGP neighbor. The concrete configuration is shown as follows:

```
router bgp 109
neighbor 131.108.200.1 remote-as 167
neighbor 131.108.234.2 remote-as 109
neighbor 150.136.64.19 remote-as 99
```

Configure one IBGP peer 131.108.234.2 and two EBGP peers 131.108.200.1 and 150.136.64.19.

The following is an example to configure the BGP neighbor. For the relationship among routers and the assignment of the IP addresses, refer to the schematics.



In this example, the BGP configuration of various routers is shown as follows:

Router A Configuration:

```
!
router bgp 100
```



```
neighbor 192.168.4.2 remote-as 100
```

#### Router B Configuration:

```
!
router bgp 100
neighbor 192.168.4.3 remote-as 100
neighbor 192.168.5.3 remote-as 200
```

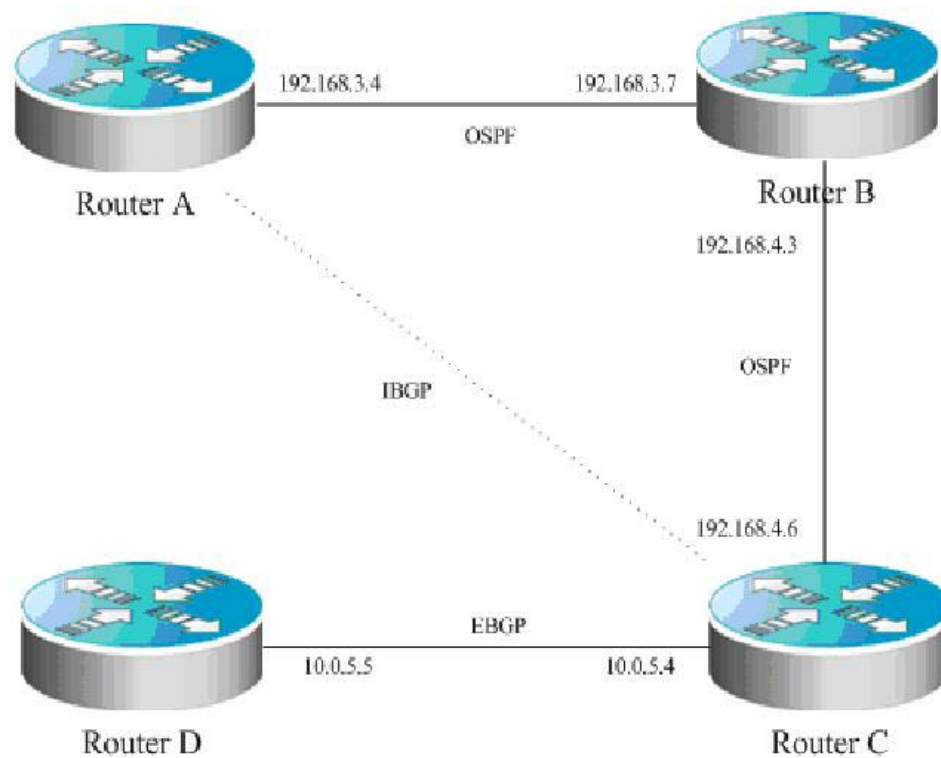
#### Router C Configuration:

```
!
router bgp 200
neighbor 192.168.5.2 remote-as 100
```

### 30.19.2 Configuring BGP Synchronization

Use the **synchronization** command to configure synchronization in the BGP routing configuration mode, and use the **no synchronization** command to cancel the configured synchronization.

The following example shows the function of synchronization. The relationship among equipments and the assignment of the IP addresses are shown as the schematics:



In the schematics, there is a route p in the router A, which is sent to router C by the IBGP neighbor relationship. If the router C is configured with the BGP synchronization, it is



necessary for the router C to wait for the IGP (this example uses the OSPF protocol) to receive the same route information p, so as to send the route p to the EBGP neighbor router D. If the router C is configured asynchronously, it is not necessary for the BGP to wait for the IGP to receive the route p, so as to send the route p to the EBGP neighbor router D.

### 30.19.3 Configuring Neighbors to Use aspath Filter

Configure the **as-path access-list** command for filtering in the configuration mode firstly. Enter into the route configuration mode of the BGP after configuration, and use the **neighbor filter-list** command to apply the configured as-path access list among the BGP neighbors to filter AS paths.

The detailed configurations are as below:

```
router bgp 200
neighbor 193.1.12.10 remote-as 100
neighbor 193.1.12.10 filter-list 2 out
neighbor 193.1.12.10 filter-list 3 in
ip as-path access-list 2 permit _200$
ip as-path access-list 2 permit ^100$
ip as-path access-list 3 deny _690$
ip as-path access-list 3 permit .*
```

This configuration indicates that only the routes permitted by the **as-path access-list 2** can be advertised to the neighbor 193.1.12.10, and the advertised routes from the neighbor 193.1.12.10 can be received only they are permitted by the **as-path access-list 3**.

The following diagram is a configuration example showing the relationship and IP addresses of devices:



Do AS path-based filter on Router A.

The following presents the configuration of various devices:

Router A configuration:

```
!
ip as-path access-list 4 deny ^300_
ip as-path access-list 4 permit .*
ip as-path access-list 5 deny ^450_65_
ip as-path access-list 5 permit .*
!
```



```
router bgp 100
  bgp log-neighbor-changes
  neighbor 192.168.5.8 remote-as 200
  neighbor 192.168.5.8 filter-list 5 in
  neighbor 192.168.5.8 filter-list 4 out
```

Router B configuration:

```
!
router bgp 200
  bgp log-neighbor-changes
  neighbor 192.168.5.6 remote-as 100
```

### 30.19.4 Configuring Route Aggregation

---

Use the **aggregate-address** command to configure an aggregated route in the route configuration mode. Once any route is within the configured range, this aggregated route will take into effect.

The concrete configuration is shown as follows:

```
router bgp 100
  aggregate-address 193.0.0.0 255.0.0.0
```

Configure one aggregate route:

```
router bgp 100
  aggregate-address 193.0.0.0 255.0.0.0 as-set
```

The **as-path** segment of the aggregated route is an collection of **ASs**:

```
router bgp 100
  aggregate-address 193.0.0.0 255.0.0.0 summary-only
```

The aggregated route will not be advertised

### 30.19.5 Configuring Confederation

---

When configuring a confederatin, you need to use the **bgp confederation identifier** command to configure the AS number for external connection, and use the **bgp confederation peers** command to configure confederation members.

The concrete configuration is shown as follows:

```
router bgp 6003
  bgp confederation identifier 666
  bgp confederation peers 6001 6002
  neighbor 171.69.232.57 remote-as 6001
  neighbor 171.69.232.55 remote-as 6002
  neighbor 200.200.200.200 remote-as 701
```

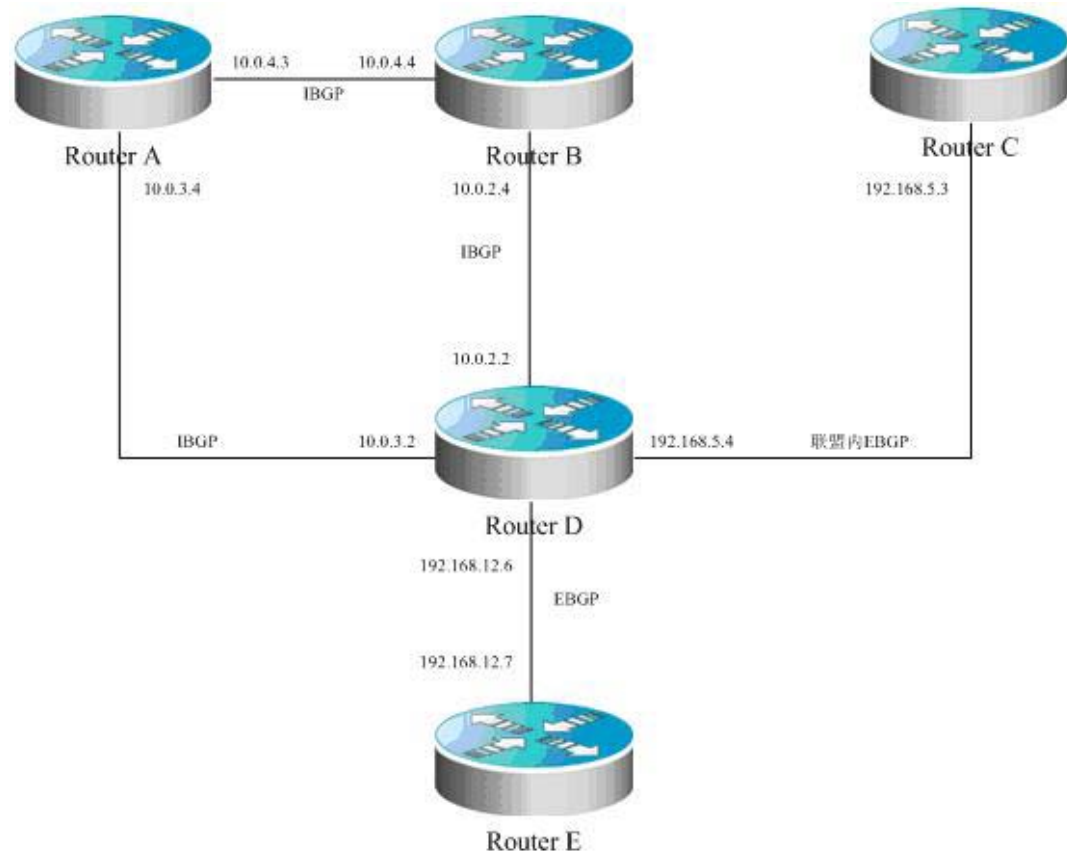


The configuration of peer 200.200.200.200 out of the confederation is shown as follows:

```
router bgp 701
neighbor 171.69.232.56 remote-as 666
neighbor 200,200,200,205 remote-as 701
```

For the configuration, the first device is of the confederation, while the second device is not of the confederation, so they are of the EBGP neighbor relationship.

The following is an example showing the relationship and IP addresses of devices:



The following presents the configuration of various devices:

Router A configuration:

```
!
router bgp 65530
  bgp confederation identifier 100
  bgp confederation peers 65531
  bgp log-neighbor-changes
  neighbor 10.0.3.2 remote-as 65530
  neighbor 10.0.4.4 remote-as 65530
```

Router B configuration:

```
!
router bgp 65530
```



```
bgp confederation identifier 100
bgp log-neighbor-changes
neighbor 192.168.5.4 remote-as 65530
```

#### Router C configuration

```
!
router bgp 65531
  bgp confederation identifier 100
  bgp confederation peers 65530
  bgp log-neighbor-changes
  neighbor 10.0.3.2 remote-as 65530
  neighbor 10.0.4.4 remote-as 65530
```

#### Router D configuration:

```
!
router bgp 65530
  bgp confederation identifier 100
  bgp confederation peers 65531
  bgp log-neighbor-changes
  neighbor 10.0.2.4 remote-as 65530
  neighbor 10.0.3.4 remote-as 65530
  neighbor 192.168.5.3 remote-as 65531
  neighbor 192.168.12.7 remote-as 200
```

#### Router E configuration:

```
!
router bgp 200
  bgp log-neighbor-changes
  neighbor 192.168.12.6 remote-as 100
```

### 30.19.6 Configuring Route Reflector

---

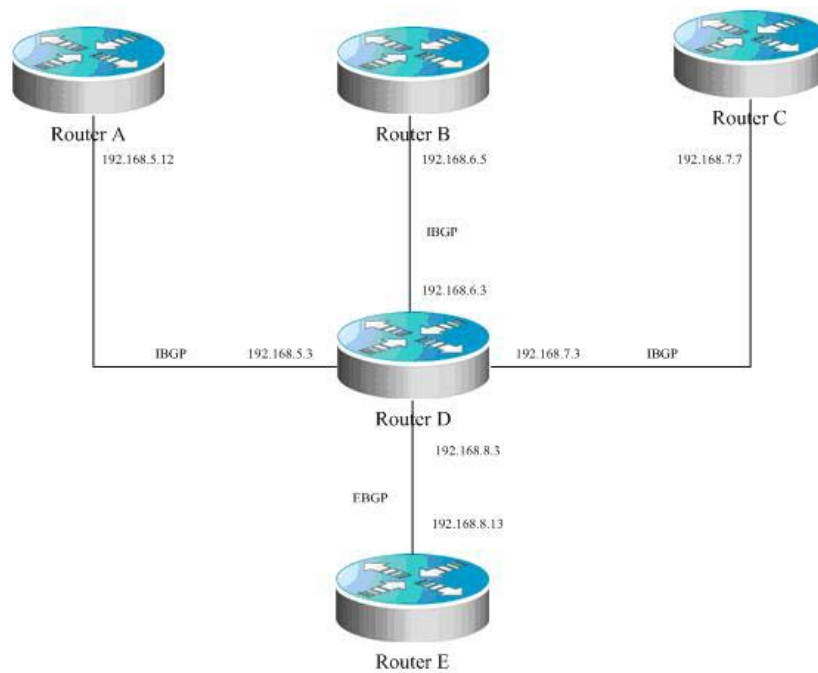
When the route reflector is configured, it is necessary to use the **bgp client-to-client reflection** command to enable the route reflection function on the device. If there are more than one route reflector within one cluster, use the **bgp cluster-id** command to configure the cluster ID of the reflector, and use the **neighbor A.B.C.D route-reflector-client** command to add the peer to the client of the route reflection.

The concrete configuration is shown as follows:

```
router bgp 601
  bgp cluster-id 200.200.200.200
  neighbor 171.69.232.56 remote-as 601
  neighbor 200,200,200,205 remote-as 701
  neighbor 171.69.232.56 route-reflector-client
```



The following is an example showing the relationship and IP addresses of devices:



In this configuration example, Router D is a route reflector. The following presents the configuration of various devices:

Router A configuration:

```

!
router bgp 100
  bgp log-neighbor-changes
  neighbor 192.168.5.3 remote-as 100
  neighbor 192.168.5.3 description route-reflector server

```

Router B configuration:

```

!
router bgp 100
  bgp log-neighbor-changes
  neighbor 192.168.6.3 remote-as 100
  neighbor 192.168.6.3 description route-reflector server

```

Router C configuration:

```

!
router bgp 100
  bgp log-neighbor-changes
  neighbor 192.168.7.3 remote-as 100
  neighbor 192.168.7.3 description not the route-reflector server

```



**Router D Configuration:**

```
!  
router bgp 100  
  bgp log-neighbor-changes  
  neighbor 192.168.5.12 remote-as 100  
  neighbor 192.168.5.12 description route-reflector client  
  neighbor 192.168.5.12 route-reflector-client  
  neighbor 192.168.6.5 remote-as 100  
  neighbor 192.168.6.5 description route-reflector client  
  neighbor 192.168.6.5 route-reflector-client  
  neighbor 192.168.7.7 remote-as 100  
  neighbor 192.168.7.7 description not the route-reflector client  
  neighbor 192.168.8.13 remote-as 200
```

**Router E configuration:**

```
!  
router bgp 500  
  bgp log-neighbor-changes  
  neighbor 192.168.8.3 remote-as 100
```

### **30.19.7 Configuring peergroup**

Here will take the configuration of **peergroup** for IBGP and EBGP as an example.

#### **30.19.7.1 Configuring IBGP peergroup**

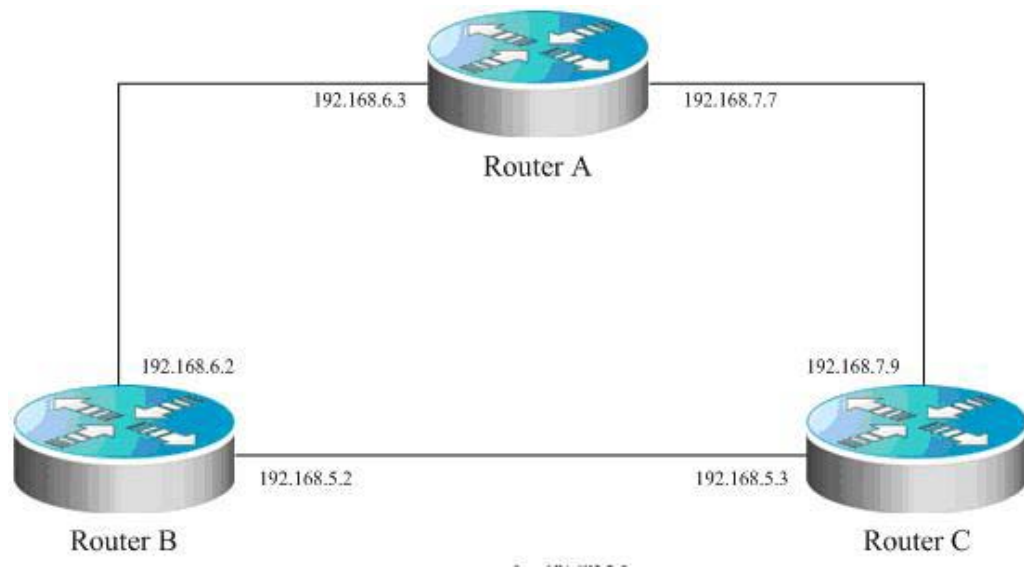
Use the **neighbor *internal* peer-group** command to create a peer group named *internal* firstly, and then configure a remote AS and other options for the peer group. Use the **neighbor A.B.C.D peer-group internal** command to add the peers A.B.C.D into the peer group.

The configuration commands are as below:

```
router bgp 100  
  neighbor internal peer-group  
  neighbor internal remote-as 100  
  neighbor internal update-source loopback 0  
  neighbor internal route-map set-med out  
  neighbor internal filter-list 1 out  
  neighbor internal filter-list 2 in  
  neighbor 171.69.232.53 peer-group internal  
  neighbor 171.69.232.54 peer-group internal  
  neighbor 171.69.232.55 peer-group internal  
  neighbor 171.69.232.55 filter-list 3 in
```

The following is an example showing the relationship and IP addresses of devices:





### Router A configuration

```

!
router bgp 100
  bgp log-neighbor-changes
  neighbor ibgp-group peer-group
  neighbor ibgp-group description peer in the same as
  neighbor 192.168.6.2 remote-as 100
  neighbor 192.168.6.2 peer-group ibgp-group
  neighbor 192.168.6.2 description one peer in the ibgp-group
  neighbor 192.168.7.9 remote-as 100
  neighbor 192.168.7.9 peer-group ibgp-group

```

### Router B configuration:

```

!
router bgp 100
  bgp log-neighbor-changes
  neighbor ibgp-peer peer-group
  neighbor ibgp-peer remote-as 100
  neighbor ibgp-peer route-map ibgp-rmap out
  neighbor 192.168.5.3 peer-group ibgp-peer
  neighbor 192.168.5.3 route-map set-localpref in
  neighbor 192.168.6.3 peer-group ibgp-peer

```

### Router C configuration:

```

!
router bgp 100
  bgp log-neighbor-changes
  neighbor ibgp-group peer-group
  neighbor 192.168.5.2 remote-as 100
  neighbor 192.168.5.2 peer-group ibgp-group

```



```
neighbor 192.168.7.7 remote-as 100
neighbor 192.168.7.7 peer-group ibgp-group
```

### 30.19.7.2 Configuring EBGp peergroup

---

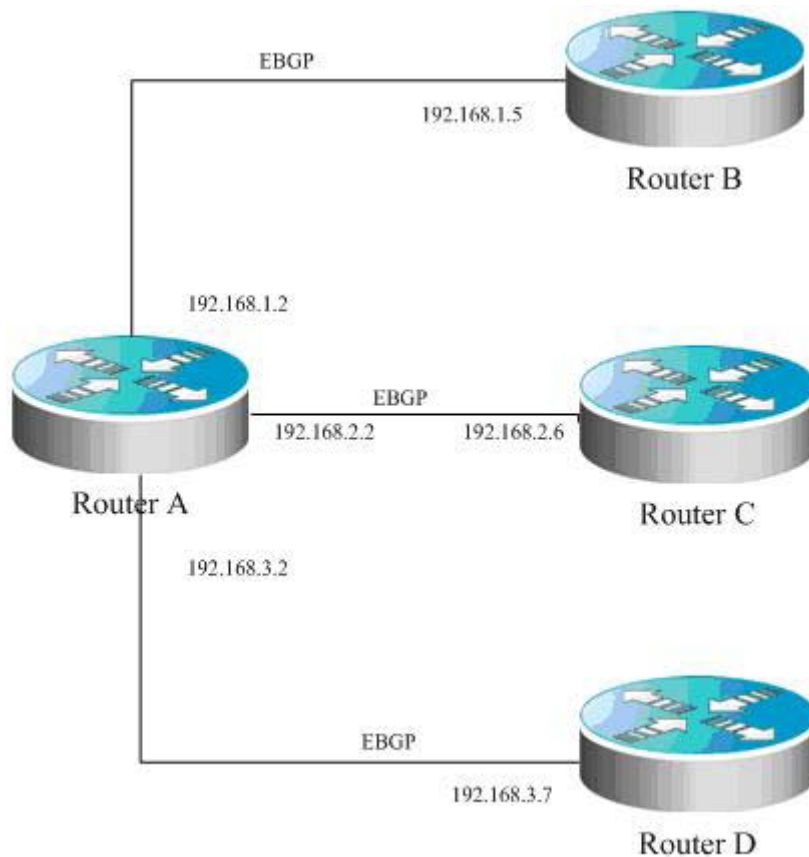
Use the **neighbor A.B.C.D remote-as num** command to configure an EBGp peer . Use the **neighbor external peer-group** command to create a peer group named **external**, and then apply the **neighbor A.B.C.D peer-group external** command to add the peers A.B.C.D into the peer group *external*.

Following is an example of the specific configuration:

```
router bgp 100
neighbor external-peers peer-group
neighbor external-peers route-map set-metric out
neighbor external-peers filter-list 99 out
neighbor external-peers filter-list 101 in
neighbor 171.69.232.90 remote-as 200
neighbor 171.69.232.90 peer-group external-peers
neighbor 171.69.232.100 remote-as 300
neighbor 171.69.232.100 peer-group external-peers
neighbor 171.69.232.110 remote-as 400
neighbor 171.69.232.110 peer-group external-peers
neighbor 171.69.232.110 filter-list 400 in
```

Following is a diagram to show the configuration of peer-group:





The relationship between devices and the assigning of IP address are shown in the figure.  
Router A configuration:

```

!
router bgp 100
  bgp log-neighbor-changes
  neighbor ebgp-group peer-group
  neighbor ebgp-group distribute-list 2 in
  neighbor ebgp-group route-map set-med out
  neighbor 192.168.1.5 remote-as 200
  neighbor 192.168.1.5 peer-group ebgp-group
  neighbor 192.168.2.6 remote-as 300
  neighbor 192.168.2.6 peer-group ebgp-group
  neighbor 192.168.2.6 distribute-list 3 in
  neighbor 192.168.3.7 remote-as 400
  neighbor 192.168.3.7 peer-group ebgp-group
!
  
```

Router B configuration:

```

!
router bgp 200
  bgp log-neighbor-changes
  neighbor 192.168.1.2 remote-as 100
!
  
```

Router C configuration:



```

!
router bgp 300
  bgp log-neighbor-changes
  neighbor 192.168.2.2 remote-as 100
!

```

Router D configuration:

```

!
router bgp 400
  bgp log-neighbor-changes
  neighbor 192.168.3.2 remote-as 100
!

```

### 30.19.8 Configuring TCP MD5

Use the CLI command **neighbor password** to configure the TCP MD5 for the BGP connection in the BGP configuration mode.

The configuration format is shown as follows:

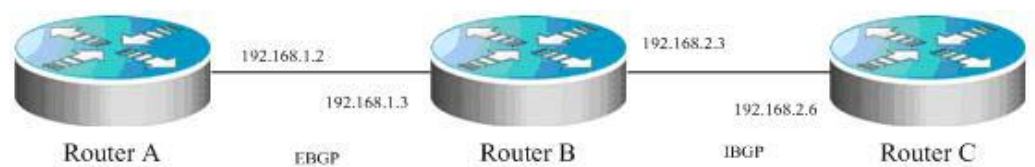
```

router bgp 100
neighbor 171.69.232.54 remote-as 110
neighbor 171.69.232.54 password peerpassword

```

Here configures the *password* of peer 171.69.232.54 as *peerpassword*.

The following diagram shows the configuration of MD5 and IP address on various devices:



The AS of router A is 100, and the AS of router B and router C is 200. Router A establishes EBGP neighbor relationship with router B and uses EBGP as the MD5 password. Router B establishes IBGP neighbor relationship with router C and uses IBGP as the MD5 password.

router A configuration:

```

!
router bgp 100
  bgp log-neighbor-changes
  neighbor 192.168.1.3 remote-as 200
  neighbor 192.168.1.3 password ebgp
!

```

Router B configuration:

```

!

```



```
router bgp 200
  bgp log-neighbor-changes
  neighbor 192.168.1.2 remote-as 100
  neighbor 192.168.1.2 password ebgp
  neighbor 192.168.2.6 remote-as 200
  neighbor 192.168.2.6 password ibgp
!
```

#### Router C configuration:

```
!
router bgp 200
  bgp log-neighbor-changes
  neighbor 192.168.2.3 remote-as 200
  neighbor 192.168.2.3 password ibgp
!
```



# 31 Protocol-Independent Configuration

## 31.1 IP Routing Configuration

### 31.1.1 Configuring Static Routes

Static routes are manually configured so that the packets to the specified destination network go through the specified route. When our product cannot learn the routes of some destination networks, it becomes critical to configure static routes. It is a common practice to configure a default route for the packets that do not have a definite route.

To configure static routes, execute the following commands in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>ip route</b> [ <i>vrf vrf_name</i> ] <i>network mask</i> { <i>ip-address</i>   <i>interface-type interface-number</i> [ <i>ip-address</i> ]} [ <i>distance</i> ] [ <b>tag tag</b> ] [ <b>permanent</b> ] [ <b>weight weight</b> ]	Configure static routes.
DES-7200(config)# <b>no ip route</b> <i>network mask</i>	Delete Static Route
DES-7200(config)# <b>ip static route-limit</b> <i>number</i>	Specify the maximum number of static routes.
DES-7200(config)# <b>no ip static route-limit</b>	Restore the default maximum number of static routes.

For the example of configuring static routes, see “Example of Dynamic Routes Overriding Static Routes” in this chapter.

If they are not deleted, our product will always retain the static routes. However, you can replace the static routes with the better routes learned by the dynamic routing protocols. Better routes mean that they have smaller distances. All routes including the static ones carry the parameters of the management distance. The following table shows the management distances of various sources of our product:

Route source	Default management distance
Directly connected networks	0
Static route	1



Route source	Default management distance
OSPF route	110
RIP route	120
Unreachable route	255

The static routes to the ports can be advertised by such dynamic routing protocols as RIP and OSPF, no matter whether static route redistribution is configured in the routing protocols. These static routes can be advertised by the dynamic routing protocols. Since they point to specific ports and they are deemed as directly-connected port networks in the routing table, so they lose the attributes as static routes. However, if only the static routes pointing to ports are defined but the network is not defined by using the **Network** command in the routing process, the dynamic routing protocol will not advertise the static route, unless the static route redistribution command is used.

When a port is “down”, all routes to that port will disappear from the routing table. In addition, when our product fails to find the forwarding route to the next-hop address, the static route will also disappear from the routing table.

When the specified VRF static routes are added to the corresponding VRF, if the egress is specified at the same time, but the VRF of the egress does not match the specified VRF, the addition will fail. If no VRF is specified, it is added to the global routing table by default.

By default, the weight of static route is 1. To view the static routes of non-default weight, execute the **show ip route weight** command. When there are load balanced routes to an IP address, the switch will assign traffic by their weights. The higher the weight of a route is, the more the route forwards.

The maximum number of static routes is 1000 by default. If the number of static routes configured exceeds the specified upper limit, they will not be automatically deleted, but the addition will fail.

To view the configuration of IP route, execute the **show ip route** command to view the IP routing table. For details, refer to *RPI Command Reference Manual*.

### 31.1.2 Configuring Default Routes

Not all devices have a complete network-wide routing table. To allow every device to route all packets, it is a common practice that the powerful core network is provided with a complete routing table, while the other devices have a default route set to this core router. Default routes can be transmitted by the dynamic routing protocols, and can also be manually configured on every router.

Default routes can be generated in two ways: 1) manual configuration. For details, see “Configuring Static Routes” in the last section; 2) manually configuring the default network.



Most internal gateway routing protocols have a mechanism that transmits the default route to the entire routing domain. The device that needs to transmit the default route must have a default route. The transmission of the default route in this section applies only to the RIP routing protocol. The RIP always notifies the “0.0.0.0” network as the default route to the routing domain. For more information on how OSPF generates and transmits the default routes, see OSPF Routing Protocol Configuration Guide.

To general static routes, execute the following commands in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>ip default-network</b> network	Configure the default network.
DES-7200(config)# <b>no ip default-network</b> network	Delete the default network.



#### Note

To generate the default routes by using the **default-network** command, only the following two conditions must be met: 1) The default network is not a directly-connected port network, but is reachable in the routing table. Under the same condition, the RIP can also transmit the default route. Alternatively, there is another way to do so, that is, by configuring the default static route or learning the 0.0.0.0/0 router via other routing protocols.

If the router has a default route, whether learned by the dynamic routing protocol or manually configured, when you use the **show ip route** command, the “gateway of last resort” in the routing table will show the information of the last gateway. A routing table may have multiple routes as alternative default routes, but only the best default route becomes the “gateway of last resort”.

### 31.1.3 Configuring the Number of Equivalent Routes

If the load balancing function is needed, you can set the number of equivalent routes for control. An equivalent route is an alternative path to the same destination address. When there is only one equivalent route, one destination address can be configured with only one route, and the load balancing function is cancelled.

To configure the number of equivalent routes, execute the following commands in the global configuration mode. The **no** form of this command restores the default number of equivalent routes.

Command	Function
<b>maximum-paths</b> <i>[number]</i>	Configure the number of equivalent routes (in the range 1 to 32).



## 31.2 Route Redistribution

### 31.2.1 Configuring Route Redistribution

To support the routers to run multiple routing protocol processes, our product provides the function for redistributing the route information from one routing process to another routing process. For example, you can redistribute the routes in the OSPF routing area to the RIP routing area, or those in the RIP routing area to the OSPF routing area. Routes can be redistributed among all the IP routing protocols.

In route redistribution, the route maps are often used to enforce conditional control over the mutual route redistribution between two routers.

The following four tables contain the list of tasks for configuring route redistribution, including four parts:

1. Define the redistribution route map, which consists of many policy-based routes arranged by sequence numbers. When a policy is matched, exit the execution of route map;
2. Define the matching rule or condition for each policy of the route map;
3. Define the operation performed if the match rule is met.
4. Apply the route map in the routing process. Although the route map is a “protocol-dependent” feature, but different routing protocols have different **match** and **set** commands.

To define the redistribution route map, execute the following commands in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>route-map</b> <i>route-map-name</i> [ <b>permit</b>   <b>deny</b> ] <i>sequence</i>	Define the route map. <i>sequence</i> : 0 to 65535.
DES-7200(config)# <b>no route-map</b> <i>route-map-name</i> {[ <b>permit</b>   <b>deny</b> ] <i>sequence</i> }	Delete the route map.

When you configure the rules for a route map, you can execute one or multiple match or set commands. If there is no match command, all will be matched. If there is no set command, not any action will be taken.

To define the matching conditions for the rules, execute the following commands in the route map configuration mode:



Command	Function
DES-7200(config-route-map)# <b>match interface</b> <i>Interface-type interface-number</i>	Match the next-hop interface of the route. <i>interface-type</i> : Aggregateport, Dialer, GigabitEthernet, Loopback, Multilink, Null, Tunnel, Virtual-ppp, Virtual-template, Vlan
DES-7200(config-route-map)# <b>match ip address</b> <i>Access-list-number [...access-list-number]</i>	Match the address in the access list. <i>Access-list-number</i> : 1 to 199, 1300 to 2699,
DES-7200(config-route-map)# <b>match ip next-hop</b> <i>access-list-number [...access-list-number]</i>	Match the next-hop address in the access list. <i>access-list-number</i> : 1 to 199
DES-7200(config-route-map)# <b>match ip route-source</b> <i>access-list-number [...access-list-number]</i>	Match the route source address in the access list.
DES-7200(config-route-map)# <b>match metric</b> <i>Metric</i>	Match the route metric. <i>Metric</i> : 0 to 4294967295
DES-7200(config-route-map)# <b>match route-type</b> { <b>local</b>   <b>internal</b>   <b>external</b> [ <b>level-1</b>   <b>level-2</b> ]}	Match the route type.
DES-7200(config-route-map)# <b>match tag</b> <i>tag</i>	Match the route tag. <i>tag</i> : 0 to 4294967295

To define the operation after matching, execute the following commands in the route map configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config-route-map)# <b>set level</b> { <b>stub-area</b>   <b>backbone</b>   <b>level-1</b>   <b>level-1-2</b>   <b>level-2</b> }	Specify the area to input routes.
DES-7200(config-route-map)# <b>set metric</b> <i>metric</i>	Set the metric for route redistribution.
DES-7200(config-route-map)# <b>set metric</b> [+ <i>metric-value</i>   - <i>metric-value</i>   <i>metric-value</i> ]	Set the type for route redistribution.
DES-7200(config-route-map)# <b>set tag</b> <i>tag</i>	Set the tag for route redistribution.
DES-7200(config-route-map)# <b>set next-hop</b> <i>next-hop</i>	Set the next hop for route redistribution. <i>next-hop</i> : Next-hop IP address

To redistribute routes from one routing area to another and control route redistribution, execute the following commands in the routing process configuration mode:



Command	Function
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>redistribute</b> <i>protocol</i> [ <i>process-id</i> ] [ <b>metric</b> <i>metric</i> ] [ <b>metric-type</b> <i>metric-type</i> ] [[ <b>tag</b> <i>tag</i> ] [ <b>route-map</b> <i>route-map-name</i> ] [ <b>subnets</b> ]	Set route redistribution. <i>Protocol</i> (protocol type): bgp, connected, isis, rip, static
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>default-metric</b> <i>metric</i>	Set the default metric for all redistributed routes (OSPF RIP). <i>metric</i> : 1 to 16777214 If no default metric is set for it, the <i>metric</i> is 20 and type is Type-2 by default.

At route redistribution, it is not necessary to convert the metric of one routing protocol into that of another routing protocol, since different routing protocols use distinctively different measurement methods. The RIP metric calculation is based on the hops, while the OSPF metric calculation is based on the bandwidth, so their metrics are not comparable. However, a symbolic metric must be set for route redistribution. Otherwise, route redistribution will fail.



#### Note

When the route redistribution is configured in the OSPF routing process, the metric of 20 is allocated to the redistributed routes with the type of Type-2 by default. This type belongs to the least credible route of the OSPF.

Route redistribution may easily cause loops, so you must be very careful in using them.

## 31.2.2 Route Filtering Configuration

Route filtering is the process to control the incoming/outgoing routes so that the router only learns the necessary and predictable routes, and only advertise the necessary and predictable routes to external trusted devices. The divulgence and chaos of the routes may affect the running of the network. Particularly for telecom operators and financial service networks, it is essential to configure route filtering.

### 31.2.2.1 Controlling the LSA

To prevent other routers or routing protocols from dynamically learning one or more route message, you can configure the control over the LSA to prevent the specified route update.

To prevent the LSA, execute the following commands in the routing process configuration mode:



Command	Function
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>distribute-list</b> {[ <i>access-list-number</i>   <i>access-list-name</i> ]   <b>prefix</b> <i>prefix-list-name</i> [ <b>gateway</b> <i>prefix-list-name</i> ]   <b>gateway</b> <i>prefix-list-name</i> } <b>out</b> [ <i>interface-type interface-number</i> ]	<p>According to ACL rules, permit or deny some LSAs.</p> <p><b>Prefix:</b> This keyword specifies the prefix list for filtering routes. The prefix list should be separately configured by using the <b>ip prefix-list</b> command.</p> <p><b>Gateway:</b> Use the prefix list to filter the outgoing routes according to the source of the routes. Those filtered will not be sent.</p>
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>no distribute-list</b> {[ <i>access-list-number</i>   <i>access-list-name</i> ]   <b>prefix</b> <i>prefix-list-name</i> [ <b>gateway</b> <i>prefix-list-name</i> ]   <b>gateway</b> <i>prefix-list-name</i> } <b>out</b> [ <i>interface-type interface-number</i>   <i>protocol</i> ]	<p>Remove the configuration.</p>

**Note**

When you configure the OSPF, you cannot specify the interface and the features are only applicable to the external routes of the OSPF routing area.

### 31.2.2.2 Controlling Route Updating processing

To avoid processing some specified routes of the incoming route update packets, you can configure this feature. This feature does not apply to the OSPF routing protocol.

To control route updating processing, execute the following commands in the routing process configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>distribute-list</b> {[ <i>access-list-number</i>   <i>access-list-name</i> ]   <b>prefix</b> <i>prefix-list-name</i> [ <b>gateway</b> <i>prefix-list-name</i> ]   <b>gateway</b> <i>prefix-list-name</i> } <b>in</b> [ <i>interface-type</i> <i>interface-number</i> ]	<p>According to ACL rules, permit or deny receiving distributed routes.</p> <p><b>Prefix:</b> This keyword specifies the prefix list for filtering routes. The prefix list should be separately configured by using the <b>ip prefix-list</b> command.</p> <p><b>Gateway:</b> Use the prefix list to filter the routes distributed according to the source of the routes.</p>



Command	Function
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>no distribute-list</b> {[ <i>access-list-number</i>   <i>name</i> ]   <b>prefix</b> <i>prefix-list-name</i> [ <b>gateway</b> <i>prefix-list-name</i> ]   <b>gateway</b> <i>prefix-list-name</i> } <b>in</b> [ <i>interface-type</i> <i>interface-number</i> ]	Remove the configuration.

### 31.2.3 Configuration Examples:

#### 31.2.3.1 Example of Configuring Route Redistribution

##### ■ Configuration requirements:

One router exchanges route information with other routers via the RIP. In addition, there are three static routes. The RIP is only allowed to redistribute two routes: 172.16.1.0/24 and 192.168.1.0/24.

##### ■ Configuration of the Routers:

This is a common distribution list-based route filtering configuration example in practice. Note that the metric is not specified for the routes to be redistributed in the following configuration. Since a static route will be redistributed, the RIP will automatically assign the metric. In the RIP configuration, the version must be specified and the route aggregation must be disabled for the access list allows the 172.16.1.0/24 route. To advertise the route, the RIP protocol must first support the classless route, and the route cannot be aggregated to the 172.16.0.0/16 network.

```
DES-7200(config)# ip route 172.16.1.0 255.255.255.0 172.200.1.2
DES-7200(config)# ip route 192.168.1.0 255.255.255.0 172.200.1.2
DES-7200(config)# ip route 192.168.2.0 255.255.255.0 172.200.1.4
!
DES-7200(config)# router rip
DES-7200(config-router)# version 2
DES-7200(config-router)# redistribute static
DES-7200(config-router)# network 192.168.34.0
DES-7200(config-router)# distribute-list 10 out static
DES-7200(config-router)# no auto-summary
!
DES-7200(config)# access-list 10 permit 192.168.1.0
DES-7200(config)# access-list 10 permit 172.16.1.0
```

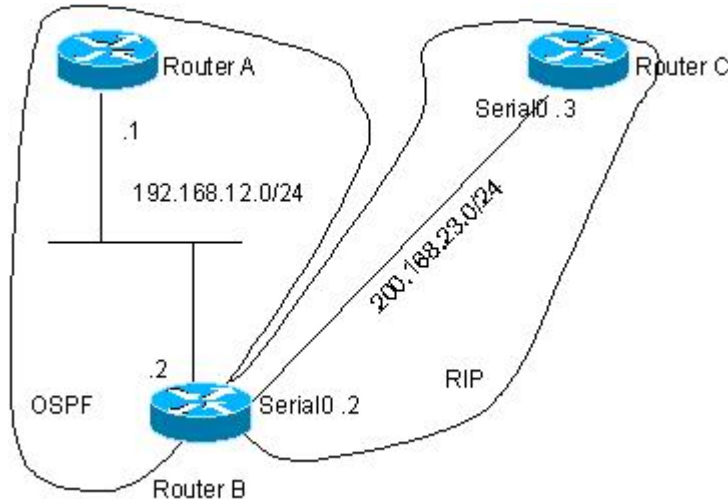
#### 31.2.3.2 Example of Configuring RIP&OSPF Route Redistribution

##### ■ Configuration requirements:



There are three routers. Figure 30-1 shows the connection among three routers. Router A belongs to the OSPF routing area, router C belongs to the RIP routing area, and router B is connected to two routing areas. Router A also advertises the two routes of 192.168.10.0/24 and 192.168.100.1/32, and router C also advertises the network routes of 200.168.3.0/24 and 200.168.30.0/24.

**Figure 31-1** Example of RIP&OSPF Redistribution



The OSPF only redistributes the routes in the RIP routing area and the route type is Type-1. The RIP only redistributes the 192.168.10.0/24 route in the OSPF routing area whose metric is 3.

#### ■ The specific configuration of the routers

When the routing protocols redistribute routes among them, the simple route filtering can be controlled by the distribution list. However, different attributes must be set for different routes, and this is not possible for the distribution list, so the route map must be configured for control. The route map provides more control functions than the distribution list, and it is more complex to configure. Therefore, do not use the route map if possible for simple configuration of the router. The following example does not use the route map.

Router A configuration:

```
DES-7200(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 0/0
DES-7200(config-if)# ip address 192.168.10.1 255.255.255.0
DES-7200(config)# interface loopback 1
DES-7200(config-if)# ip address 192.168.100.1 255.255.255.0
DES-7200(config-if)# no ip directed-broadcast
!
DES-7200(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 0/1
DES-7200(config-if)# ip address 192.168.12.55 255.255.255.0
!
DES-7200(config)# router ospf 1
DES-7200(config-router)# network 192.168.10.0 0.0.0.255 area 0
DES-7200(config-router)# network 192.168.12.0 0.0.0.255 area 0
DES-7200(config-router)# network 192.168.100.0 0.0.0.255 area 0
```



**Router B configuration:**

```
DES-7200(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 0/0
DES-7200(config-if)# ip address 192.168.12.5 255.255.255.0
!
DES-7200(config)# interface Serial 1/0
DES-7200(config-if)# ip address 200.168.23.2 255.255.255.0
```

**#Configure OSPF and set the redistribution route type**

```
DES-7200(config)# router ospf
DES-7200(config-router)# redistribute rip metric 100 metric-type 1 subnets
DES-7200(config-router)# network 192.168.12.0 0.0.0.255 area 0
```

**#Configure the RIP and use the distribution list to filter the redistributed routes**

```
DES-7200(config)# router rip
DES-7200(config-router)# redistribute ospf 1 metric 2
DES-7200(config-router)# network 200.168.23.0
DES-7200(config-router)# distribute-list 10 out ospf
DES-7200(config-router)# no auto-summary
```

**#Define an access list**

```
DES-7200(config)# access-list 10 permit 192.168.10.0
```

**Router C configuration:**

```
DES-7200(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 0/0
DES-7200(config-if)# ip address 200.168.30.1 255.255.255.0
!
DES-7200(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 0/1
DES-7200(config-if)# ip address 200.168.3.1 255.255.255.0
!
DES-7200(config)# interface Serial 1/0
DES-7200(config-if)# ip address 200.168.23.3 255.255.255.0
DES-7200(config)# router rip
DES-7200(config-router)# network 200.168.23.0
DES-7200(config-router)# network 200.168.3.0
DES-7200(config-router)# network 200.168.30.0
```

**OSPF routes found on router A:**

```
O E1 200.168.30.0/24 [110/101] via 192.168.12.5, 00:04:07, FastEthernet0/1
O E1 200.168.3.0/24 [110/101] via 192.168.12.5, 00:04:07, FastEthernet0/1
```

**RIP routes found on Router C:**

```
R 192.168.10.0/24 [120/2] via 200.168.23.2, 00:00:00, Serial1/0
```

**31.2.3.3 Example of Configuring the Route Map**

The route map can be configured very flexibly to be used on the route redistribution and policy-based routing. No matter how the route map is used, the configuration principle is the same, except that different command sets are used. Even if it is used on the route redistribution, different routing protocols can use different commands with the route map.



In the following example, the OSPF routing protocol redistributes only the RIP routes whose hops are 4. In the OSPF routing area, the type of the routes is external route type-1, the initial metric is 40, and the route tag is 40.

```
!  
DES-7200(config)# router ospf 1  
DES-7200(config-router)# redistribute rip subnets route-map redrip  
DES-7200(config-router)# network 192.168.12.0 0.0.0.255 area 0  
!  
DES-7200(config)# access-list 20 permit 200.168.23.0  
!  
DES-7200(config)# route-map redrip permit 10  
DES-7200(config-route-map)# match metric 4  
DES-7200(config-route-map)# set metric 40  
DES-7200(config-route-map)# set metric-type type-1  
DES-7200(config-route-map)# set tag 40  
!
```

In the following configuration example, the RIP routing protocol redistributes only the OSPF routes whose tag is and initial metric is 10.

```
DES-7200(config)# router rip  
DES-7200(config-router)# version 2  
DES-7200(config-router)# redistribute ospf 1 route-map redospf  
DES-7200(config-router)# network 200.168.23.0  
!  
DES-7200(config)# route-map redospf permit 10  
DES-7200(config-route-map)# match tag 10  
DES-7200(config-route-map)# set metric 10  
!
```

## 31.3 Configuring Switch Fast Forwarding ECMP/WCMP Policy

In the switch, when the hardware forwards and stores ECMP/WCMP routes, load balancing policy is also involved. When the route has multiple next hops, the hardware can select a next hop according to the policy set. The switch will select different fields of the packets as the keyword according to our settings, and send them to the hash as input (there are two algorithms available) to select the appropriate hop. The appropriate packet characteristic fields and hash algorithm means more balanced traffic on the egress direction.

### 31.3.1 Selecting Hash Keyword

You can set the hash keyword to the combination of source IP address, destination IP address, TCP/UDP port number, and user-define (UDF). UDF is a value in the range of 1 to 128 used as the seed value for hash calculation. Among various keywords, SIP is required, while others are optional. Various possible combinations are listed as below:

- SIP
- SIP & DIP
- SIP & TCP/UDP port



- SIP & UDF
- SIP, DIP & TCP/UDP port
- SIP, DIP & UDF
- SIP& TCP/UDP port & UDF
- SIP & DIP & TCP/UDP port & UDF

The default keyword has only SIP.

### 31.3.2 Selecting the Hash Algorithm

There are two hash algorithms available:

- CRC32\_Upper     Select the upper bits of the crc32 to determine the next hop
- CRC32\_Lower     Select the lower bits of the crc32 to determine the next hop

These two kinds of algorithms have different effects for different types of packets. For example, the CRC32\_Upper has a good effect on the IP addresses that have the same upper bits but different lower bits. On the other hand, the CRC32\_Upper has a good effect on the IP addresses that have the same lower bits but different higher bits.

The default hash algorithm is CRC32\_Upper.

### 31.3.3 Configuration Commands

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>ip ref ecmp load-balance</b> <b>{[crc32_lower   crc32_upper] [dip] [port]</b> <b>[udf number]}</b>	Use any combination of DIP, Port and UDF to generate a key. And select CRC32_Lower or CRC32_Upper as a Hash algorithm.
DES-7200(config)# <b>no ip ref ecmp</b> <b>load-balance</b> <b>{[crc32_lower   crc32_upper] [dip] [port]</b> <b>[udfnumber]}</b>	The <b>no</b> command will use the keyword stored by the system minus the keyword carried by the <b>no</b> command as part of the Key.  For example, the keyword stored by the system is SIP & DIP & Port. After the <b>no ip ref ecmp route dip port</b> command is executed, the component of the Key is only the SIP. If the member following the <b>no</b> command is not in the setting stored by the system, this command works well.

### 31.3.4 Configuration Examples

The following configures the hash algorithm as CRC32\_Lower, and selects the key of the packet as SIP & DIP&TCP/UDP port &UDF:

```
DES-7200(config)#ip ref ecmp load-balance crc32_lower dip port udf 50
```











# 32

## Policy-Based Routing Configuration

Policy-based routing is a packet forwarding mechanism more flexible than destination-based routing. Policy-based routing allows the router to determine how to process the packets to be routed according to the route map, which determines the next-hop router of the packets.

To use the policy-based routing, you must specify and create the route map for it use. A route map consists of multiple policies, each of which defines one or multiple matching rules and corresponding operations. After policy-based routing is applied to an interface, the router checks the packets, and then forwards the packets not matching against any policy in the route map by the general rule. For the packets that match a policy in the route map, it processes them according to the operation defined in the policy. For the configuration of the route map, refer to Protocol-independent Command Configuration Guide.

To configure policy-based routing, perform the following steps:

1. Define the route map. A route map consists of many policies in the order of their sequence numbers. The router will search the route map until it finds a matched policy.

To define the route map, execute the following commands in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>route-map</b> <i>route-map-name</i> <b>[permit   deny]</b> <i>sequence</i>	Define the route map.
DES-7200(config)# <b>no route-map</b> <i>route-map-name</i> <b>{[permit   deny] sequence}</b>	Delete the route map.

2. Define the matching rule for each policy of the route map;

To define the matching rule for a policy, execute the following commands in the route map configuration mode:



Command	Function
DES-7200(config-route-map)# <b>match ip address</b> <i>access-list-number</i>	Match the IP address in the access list.
DES-7200(config-route-map)# <b>match length</b> <i>min</i> <i>Max</i>	Match the length of the packet.

3. Define the operation performed if the match rule is met.

To define the operation after matching, execute the following commands in the route map configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config-route-map)# <b>set ip default next-hop</b> <i>ip-address</i> [ <i>weight</i> ] [ <i>ip-address</i> [ <i>weight</i> ]]	Set the next-hop IP address of the packets, if the routing table does not contain any definite routes.
DES-7200(config-route-map)# <b>set ip next-hop</b> <i>ip-address</i> [ <i>weight</i> ] [ <i>ip-address</i> [ <i>weight</i> ]]	Set the next-hop IP address of the packets.

4. Apply the route map to the specified interface.

To apply a policy-based routing to the interface, execute the following commands in the interface configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>ip policy route-map</b> [ <i>name</i> ]	Use the specified route-map for filtering on the interface.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>no ip policy route-map</b> [ <i>name</i> ]	Cancel the route-map applied to the interface.

For example:

Configure policy-based routing on the f 0/0 interface so that all incoming packets are forwarded to the device whose next hop is 192.168.5.5.

```
DES-7200(config)# access-list 1 permit any
DES-7200(config)# route-map name
DES-7200(config-route-map)# match ip address 1
DES-7200(config-route-map)# set ip next-hop 192.168.5.5
DES-7200(config-route-map)# int f 0/0
DES-7200(config-if)# ip policy route-map name
```

To configure the policy-based routing for the packets reaching a router interface, execute the following commands in the interface configuration mode:



Command	Function
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>ip policy route-map</b> <i>route-map</i>	Apply the policy-based routing to the interface.

To configure load-balancing or redundancy backup for the policy-based routing, execute the following command in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>ip policy [load-balance   redundancy]</b>	Set the load-balancing or redundancy for the policy-based routing.

The WCMP supports up to four next hops and the ECMP supports up to 32 next hops when load balancing is configured for the policy-based routing.

When the default policy-based routing is configured, the WCMP supports up to four next hops and the ECMP supports up to 32 next hops.

For the route-map configuration command, see the *Protocol-independent Command Configuration Guide*.

Policy-based routing on the equipment:

Supported commands:

1. **[no] ip policy route-map**
2. **match ip address**
3. **set ip next-hop**
4. **set ip default next-hop**

Restrictions:



---

On our products, one interface can be configured with up to one route map. When multiple route maps are configured on an interface, they will overwrite each other and the policy-based routing only uses the first ACL configured in the route-map sequence. Therefore, when you use the policy-based routing, you are recommended to configure only one ACL for each route-map sequence.

If the configured route-map sequence has only the next hop without the ACL, this indicates all packets are matched. If the route-map sequence has only the ACL without the next hop, the matched packets are forwarded in the ordinary way. If the route-map sequence has neither the ACL nor the next hop, it indicates all the matched packets are forwarded in the ordinary way.

Policy-based routing only supports ACL number configuration, but not ACL name configuration

**Caution**

If the ACL number is configured but the ACL does not exist, this indicates all the packets are matched. If the ACL is configured but there is no ACE in it, the route-map sequence is skipped and the matching starts from the ACL of the next route-map sequence.

The deny option of the ACE has a different behavior from that of CISCO, for which the matching starts from the next ACL. Since the chip does not offer adequate support, we perform the normal forwarding. Also, to meet the matching sequence of the policy-based routing, the “deny any any” means to skip the next ACL and then start matching.

If you do not want to apply any policy-based routing to the incoming packets, you should add the ACE of “deny device IP address” at the beginning of the ACL in the PBR rule.

Under the redundant backup mode, the first resolved nexthop takes effect. If all the nexthops are not resolved, packets will be dropped. The first nexthop will also take effect as long as it is reachable, even though it is not resolved at the first time.

---



# 33

## IPv6 Configuration

### 33.1 IPv6 Overview

---

As the Internet is growing rapidly and the IPv4 address space is exhausting, the limitation of the IPv4 is more obvious. The research and practice of the next generation of the Internet Protocol becomes popular. Furthermore, the IPng workgroup of the IETF determines the protocol specification of IPng referred to as IPv6. Refer to RFC2460 for details.

#### **Key Features of Ipv6:**

- **More Address Space**

The length of address will be extended to 128 bits from the 32 bits of Ipv4. Namely, there are  $2^{128}-1$  addresses for IPv6. The IPv6 adopts the hierarchical address mode and supports multiple-level IP address assignment, for example, from the Internet backbone network to the internal subnet of enterprises.

- **Simplified Format of Packet Header**

The design principle of new IPv6 packet header is to minimize the overhead. For this reason, some non-critical fields and optional fields are removed from the packet header and placed into the extended packet header. The length of the IPv6 address is 4 times of IPv4 address; its packet header is only 2 times of IPv4. The improved IPv6 packet header is more efficient for forwarding, for instance, there is no checksum in the IPv6 packet header and it is not necessary for the IPv6 router to process the fragment during forwarding (the fragment is completed by the originator).

- **High-efficient hierarchical Addressing and Routing Structure**

The IPv6 adopts the aggregation mechanism and defines flexible hierarchical addressing and routing structure, and several networks at the same level is presented as a unified network prefix at the higher level of routers. So it obviously reduces the entries that the router must maintain and greatly minimizes the routing and storage overhead.

- **Simple Management: Plug and Play**

Simplify the management and maintenance of the network node by the implementation of a series of auto-discovery and auto-configuration functions. Such as the Neighbor Discovery, the MTU Discovery, the Router Advertisement, the Router Solicitation and the Auto-configuration technologies provide related service for the plug and play. It should be mentioned that the IPv6 supports such address configuration methods as the stateful and the stateless. In the IPv4, the dynamical host configuration protocol (DHCP) implements the



automatic setting of the host IP address and related configuration, while the IPv6 inherits this auto-configuration service of the IPv4 and refers to it as the Stateful Auto-configuration. Furthermore, the IPv6 also adopts an auto-configuration service, referred to as the Stateless Auto-configuration. During the stateless auto-configuration, the host obtains the local address of the link, the address prefix of local device and some other related configuration information automatically.

#### ■ Security

The IPsec is an optional extended protocol of the IPv4, while it is only a component of the IPv6 used to provide security. At present, the IPv6 implements the Authentication Header (AH) and Encapsulated Security Payload (ESP) mechanisms. Where, the former authenticates the integrity of the data and the source of the IP packet to ensure that the packet does come from the node marked by the source address, while the latter provides the data encryption function to implement the end-to-end encryption.

#### ■ More Excellent QoS Support

The new field in the IPv6 packet header defines how to identify and process the data flow. The Flow Label field in the IPv6 packet header is used to identify the data flow ID, by which the IPv6 allows users to put forward the requirement for the QoS of communication. The router can identify all packets of some specified data flow by this field and provide special processing for these packet on demand.

#### ■ Neighbor Nodes Interaction-specific New Protocol

The Neighbor Discovery Protocol of the IPv6 uses a series of IPv6 control information message (ICMPv6) to carry out the interactive management of the neighbor nodes (the nodes of the same link). The Neighbor Discovery Protocol and high-efficient multicast and unicast Neighbor Discovery message replace previous broadcast-based address resolution protocol (ARP) and the ICMPv4 router discovery message.

#### ■ Extensibility

The IPv6 provides powerful extensibility and the new features can be added to the extended packet header after the IPv6 packet header. Unlike the IPv4, the packet header can only support the option of up to 40 bytes, while the size of the IPv6 extended packet header is only limited by the maximum bytes of the whole IPv6 packet.

The IPv6 supports the following features:

- IPv6 Protocol
- IPv6 Address Format
- Type of IPv6 Address
- ICMPv6
- IPv6 Neighbor Discovery
- Path MTU Discovery
- ICMPv6 Redirection
- Address Conflict Detection



- IPv6 Stateless Auto-configuration
- IPv6 Address Configuration
- IPv6 Route Forwarding (supporting static route configuration)
- Configuration of various IPv6 parameters
- Diagnosis Tool **Ping IPv6**

### 33.1.1 IPv6 Address Format

The basic format of an IPv6 address is X : X : X : X : X : X : X : X, where X is a 4 hex integers (16 bits). Each digit contains 4 bits of information, each integer contains 4 hex digits and each address contains 8 integers, so it is total for 128 bits. Some legal IPv6 addresses are as follows:

2001:ABCD:1234:5678:AAAA:BBBB:1200:2100

800 : 0 : 0 : 0 : 0 : 0 : 0 : 1

1080 : 0 : 0 : 0 : 8 : 800 : 200C : 417A

These integers are hex integers, where A to F denote 10 to 15 respectively. Each integer in the address must be denoted and the starting 0 needs not be denoted. Some IPv6 address may contain a series of 0s (such as the examples 2 and 3). Once this condition occurs, the “:.” is allowed to denote this series of 0s. Namely, the address 800:0:0:0:0:0:0:1 can be denoted as: 800 :: 1

These two colons denote that this address can be extended to the complete 128-bit address. In this way, the 16-bit group can be replaced with two colons only when they are all 0s and the two colons can only present for one time.

In the mixture environment of IPv4 and IPv6, there is a mixture denotation method. The lowest 32 bits in an IPv6 address can be used to denote an IPv4 address. The address can be expressed in a mixture mode, i.e., X : X : X : X : X : X : d . d . d . d. Where, the X denotes a 16-bit integer, while d denotes an 8-bit decimal integer. For instance, the address 0 : 0 : 0 : 0 : 0 : 0 : 192 . 168 . 20 : 1 is a legal IPv6 address. After the abbreviated expression method is used, this address can be denoted as follows: :: 192 . 168 . 20 : 1

For the IPv6 address is divided into two parts such as the subnet prefix and the interface identifier, it can be denoted as an address with additional numeric value by the method like the CIDR address. Where, this numeric value indicates how many bits represent the network part (the network prefix). Namely the IPv6 node address indicates the length of the prefix, and the length is differentiated from the IPv6 address by the slash. For instance: 12AB::CD30:0:0:0/60, The length of the prefix used for routing in this address is 60 bits.

### 33.1.2 Type of IPv6 Address

In RFC2373, there are the following three defined types of IPv6 addresses:



- Unicast: Identifier of a single interface. The packet to be sent to a unicast address will be transmitted to the interface identified by this address.
- Anycast: Identifiers of a set of interfaces. The packet to be sent to an anycast address will be transmitted to one of the interfaces identified by this address (select the nearest one according to the routing protocol).
- Multicast: Identifiers of a set of interfaces (In general, they are of different nodes). The packet to be sent to a Multicast address will be transmitted to all the interfaces which are added to this multicast address.

**Caution**

The broadcast address is not defined in the IPv6.

The following will introduce these types of addresses one-by-one:

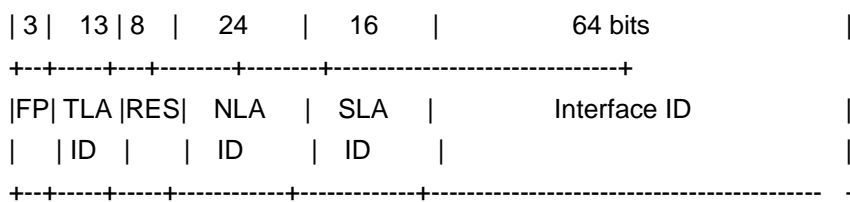
### 33.1.2.1 Unicast Addresses

IPv6 unicast addresses include the following types:

- Aggregateable Global Addresses
- Link-level Local Addresses
- Site-level Local Addresses
- IPv6 of IPv4 Addresses

#### 1. Aggregateable Global Addresses

The format of the aggregateable global unicast addresses is shown as follows:



Above figure contains the following fields:

- FP field (Format Prefix):

The format prefix in an IPv6 address, 3 bits long, is used to indicate the type of the address in the IPv6 address space. 0 0 1 indicates an aggregateable global unicast address.

- TLA ID field (Top-Level Aggregation Identifier):

Top-Level Aggregation Identifier, containing toppest address routing information. It refers to the maximum route information in networking. It is 13 bits long and can provide up to 8192 different top level routes.

- RES field (Reserved for future use):



Reservation field, 8 bits. It will possibly be used to expand the top level or the next level aggregation identifier field.

- **NLA ID field (Next-Level Aggregation Identifier):**

Next-Level Aggregation Identifier, 24 bits. This identifier is used to control the top-level aggregation to arrange the address space by some institutions. In other word, these institutions (such as the large-sized ISP) can separate the 24-bit field according to the addressing level structure themselves. For instance, a large-sized ISP can separate it into 4 internal top-level routes by 2 bits, other 22 bits of the address space is assigned to other entities (such as the small-sized local ISP). If these entities obtain enough address space, the same measure can be taken to subdivide the space assigned to them.

- SLA ID field (Site-Level Aggregation Identifier):

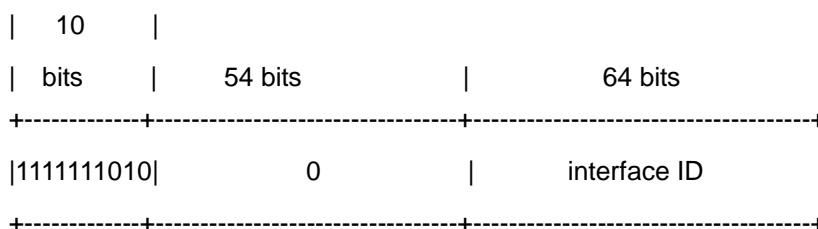
Site-Level Aggregation Identifier, used to arrange internal network structures by some institutions. Each institution can use the same way as that in the IPv4 to create the hierarchical network structure themselves. If the 16 bits are taken as the plane address space, there are up to 65535 different subnets. If the former 8 bits are taken as the higher-level of routes within this organization, 255 large-scale subnets are allowed. Furthermore, each large-scale subnet can be subdivided into up to 255 small-scale subnets.

- Interface Identifier field (Interface Identifier):

It is 64 bits long and contains the 64 bit value of IEEE EUI-64 interface identifiers.

## 2. Link Local Addresses

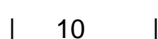
The format of the link-level local addresses is shown as follows:



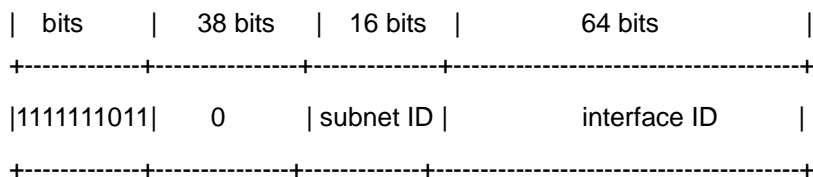
The link-level local address is used to number the host on the single network link. The address of former 10-bit identification for the prefix is the link-level local address. The router will not forward the message of the source address of the destination address with the link-level local address forever. The intermediate 54-bit of this address is 0. The latter 64 indicates the interface identifier, this part allows the single network to connect to up to  $2^{64}-1$  hosts.

### 3. Site-level Local Addresses

The format of the site-level local addresses is shown as follows:





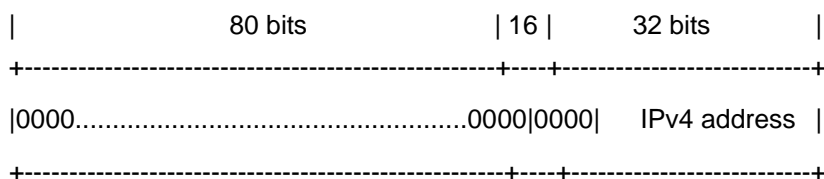


The site-level local address can be taken to transmit the data within the site, and the router will not forward the message of the source address of the destination address with the site-level local address to Internet. Namely, such packet route can only be forwarded within the site, but cannot be forwarded to out of the site. The former 10-bit prefix of the site-level local address is slightly different of that of the link-level local address, whose intermediate 38 bits are 0s, the subnet identifier of the site-level local address is 16 bits, while the latter 64 bits also indicate the interface identifier, usually for the EUI-64 address of IEEE.

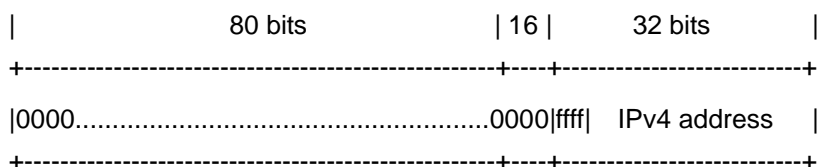
#### 4. IPv6 of IPv4 Addresses

The RFC2373 also defines 2 types of special IPv6 addresses embedded with IPv4 addresses:

##### ■ IPv4-compatible IPv6 address



##### ■ IPv4-mapped IPv6 address



The IPv4-compatible IPv6 address is mainly used to the automatic tunneling, which supports both the IPv4 and IPv6. The IPv4-compatible IPv6 address will transmit the IPv6 packet via the IPv4 router in the tunneling way. The IPv6 address of an IPv4 mapping is used to access the nodes that only support IPv4 by IP6 nodes. For example, when one IPv6 application of the IPv4/IPv6 host requests the resolution of a host name (the host only supports IPv4), the name server will internally generate the IPv6 addresses of the IPv4 mapping dynamically and return them to the IPv6 application.

### 33.1.2.2 Multicast Addresses

The format of the IPv6 multicast address is shown as follows:





```
|11111111|flgs|scop|          group ID          |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
```

The first byte of the address format is full 1, which denote a multicast address.

■ Flag field:

It consists of 4 bits. At present, only the fourth bit is specified. The bit is used to indicate whether the address is a known multicast address specified by Internet Number Constitution or a temporary multicast address used in a specific condition. If this flag bit is 0, it indicates this address is a known multicast address. If this bit is 1, it indicates that this address is a temporary one. Other 3 flag bits are reserved for future use.

■ Range field:

Composed of 4 bits and used to denote the range of multicast. Namely, whether the multicast group contains the local node, the local link and the local site or any position nodes in the IPv6 global address space.

■ Group Identifier field:

112 bits long and used to identify a multicast group. Depending on whether a multicast address is temporary or known and the range of the address, a multicast identifier can denote different groups.

The multicast address of the IPv6 is this type of address taking FF00::/8 as the prefix. One multicast address of an IPv6 usually identifies the interfaces of a serial of different nodes. When one message is sent to one multicast address, this message will be distributed to the interfaces of each node with this multicast address. One node (host or router) should add the following multicast:

- The multicast address of all nodes for the local link is FF02::1
- The prefix of the multicast address for the solicited node is  
FF02:0:0:0:1:FF00:0000/104

If they are routers, it is necessary to add the multicast address FF02::2 of all routers for the local link.

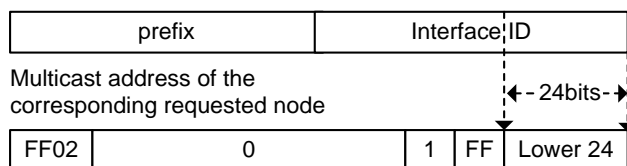
The multicast address of the solicited node corresponds to the IPv6 unicast and anycast address, so it is necessary for the IPv6 node to add corresponding multicast address of the solicited node for each configured unicast address and anycast address. The prefix of the multicast address for the solicited node is FF02:0:0:0:1:FF00:0000/104, another 24 bits are comprised of the unicast address or the lower 24 bits of the anycast address, for instance, the multicast address of the solicited node corresponding to the FE80::2AA:FF:FE21:1234 is FF02::1:FF21:1234,

The multicast address of solicited node is usually used to the neighbor solicitation (NS) message. The format of the solicited node is shown as follows:



**Figure 33-1**

IPv6 Unicast or Anycast Address



### 33.1.2.3 Anycast Addresses

The anycast address is similar with the multicast address as more than one node shares an anycast address. The difference is that only one node expects to receive the data packet of the anycast address, while all nodes of the multicast address members expect to receive all packets sending to this address. The anycast address is assigned to normal IPv6 unicast address space, so the anycast address cannot be differentiated from the unicast address from the style. For this reason, each member of all anycast addresses has to be configured explicitly to identify the anycast address.


**Caution**

The anycast address can only be assigned to the router, but cannot be assigned to the host. Furthermore, the anycast address cannot be taken as the source address of the message.

The RFC2373 predefines an anycast address, referred to as the anycast address of the subnet router. The following diagram shows the anycast address format of the subnet router, which consists of the subnet prefix followed by a series of 0s (as the interface identifier).

Where, the subnet prefix identifies a specified link (subnet) and the packet to be sent to the anycast address of the subnet router will be distributed to a router of this subnet. The anycast address of the subnet router is usually used for some node which needs to communicate with one router of the remote subnet.

**Figure 33-2**

Anycast Address Format of Subnet Router

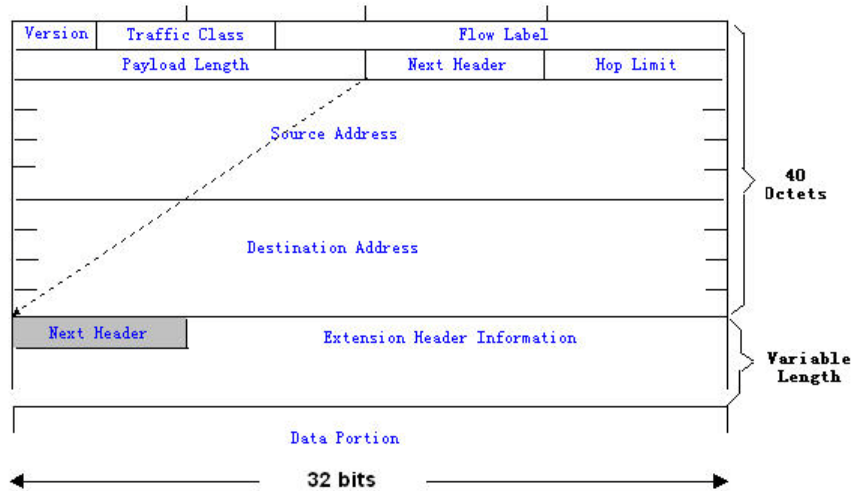
N bits	128-n bits
Subnet Prefix	0000..0000



### 33.1.3 IPv6 Packet Header Structure

The format of the IPv6 packet header is shown as the figure below:

**Figure 33-3**



The IPv4 packet header takes 4 bytes as the unit; the IPv6 packet header takes 8 bytes as the unit and the total length of the packet header is 40 bytes. In the IPv6 packet header, the following fields are defined:

■ **Version:**

The length is 4 bits. For IPv6, the field must be 6.

■ **Traffic Class:**

The length is 8 bits. It indicates a type of service provided to the packet and is equal to the "TOS" in the IPv4.

■ **Flow Label:**

The length is 20 bits used to identify the packets of the same service flow. One node can be taken as the sending source of several service flows. Flow label and source node IP address identify a service flow uniquely.

■ **Payload Length:**

The length is 16 bits, including the byte length of payload and the length of various IPv6 extension options (if any). In other words, it includes the length of an IPv6 packet except for the IPv6 header itself.

■ **Next Header:**

This field indicates the protocol type in the header field following the IPv6 header. Similar to the IPv4 protocol field, the Next Header field can be used to indicate whether the upper level is TCP or UDP. It can also be used to indicate whether an extended IPv6 header exists.



**■ Hop Limit:**

The length is 8 bits. When one router forwards the packet for one time, this field will reduce 1. If this field is 0, this packet will be discarded. It is similar to the life span field in the IPv4 packet header.

**■ Source Address (Source Address):**

The length is 128 bits. It indicates the sender address of an IPv6 packet.

**■ Destination Address (Destination Address):**

The length is 128 bits. It indicates the receiver address of an IPv6 packet.

At present, the following extended headers are defined for the IPv6:

**■ Hop-by-Hop Options:**

This extended header must directly follow an IPv6 header. It contains the option data that must be checked by each node along the path.

**■ Routing Header (Routing (Type 0)):**

This extended header indicates the nodes that a packet will go through before reaching the destination. It contains the address table of various nodes that the packet goes through. The initial destination address of the IPv6 header is the first one of a series of addresses in the route header, other than the final destination address of the packet. After receiving this packet, the node of this address will process the IPv6 header and the routing header, and send the packet to the second address of the routing header list. It repeats this step until the packet reaches the final destination.

**■ Fragment Header (Fragment):**

This extended header is used to fragment the packets longer than the MTU of the path between the source node and destination node.

**■ Destination Option Header (Destination Options):**

This extended header replaces the IPv4 option field. At present, the only defined destination option is to fill the option with an integer multiple of 64 bits (8 bytes) when necessary. This extended header can be used to carry the information checked by the destination node.

**■ Upper-layer Extended Header (Upper-layer header):**

It indicates the the upper layer transmission protocol, such as TCP(6) and UDP(17).

Furthermore, the extended header of the Authentication and the Encapsulating Security Payload will be described in the IPsec section. At present, the IPv6 implemented by us cannot support the IPsec.



### **33.1.4 IPv6 Path MTU Discovery**

As with the path MTU discovery of the IPv4, the path MTU discovery of the IPv6 allows one host to discover and adjust the size of the MTU in the data transmission path.

Furthermore, when the data packet to be sent is larger than the MTU of the data transmission path, the host will fragment the packets by itself. This behavior makes it not necessary for the router to process the fragment, and thus save resources and improve the efficiency of the IPv6 network.



#### **Caution**

The minimum link MTU is 68 bytes in the IPv4, indicating that the links along the path over which the packets are transmitted should support at least the link MTU of 68 bytes. The minimum link MTU is 1280 bytes in the IPv6. It is strongly recommended to use the link MTU of 1500 bytes for the link in the IPv6.

### **33.1.5 IPv6 Neighbor Discovery**

The IPv6 neighbor discovery makes use of the ICMPv6 packet and the multicast addresses of the solicited neighbor to obtain the link layer address of the neighbors at the same link, and verify the reachability of the neighbors as well as maintain their status. These types of messages are briefly described respectively below.

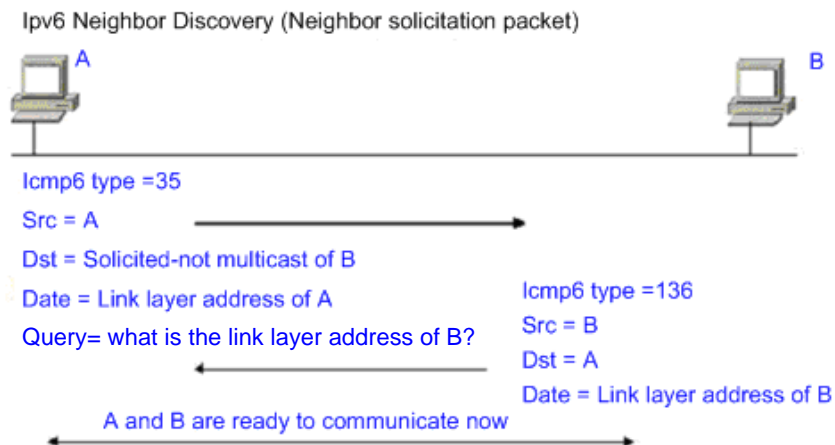
#### **33.1.5.1 Neighbor Solicitation**

A node must get the link layer address of another node before communicating with it. At this time, it should send the neighbor solicitation (NS) message to the solicited multicast address of the IPv6 address of the destination node. The NS message also contains the link layer address of itself. After receiving this NS message, the destination node responds with a message, referred to as neighbor advertisement (NA), with its link layer address. After receiving the response message, the source node can communicate with the destination node.

The following is the neighbor solicitation procedure:



Figure 33-4



The neighbor solicitation message can also be used to detect the reachability of the neighbor (for instance, the existing neighbor). At this time, the destination address of the neighbor solicitation message is the unicast address of this neighbor.

When the link layer address of one node changes, the neighbor advertisement will be sent actively to the addresses of all nodes on this link.

When one neighbor is considered that the reachable time is expired, the Neighbor Unreachability Detection (NUD) will be enable. This occurs only for unicast messages rather than mulicast messages destined to the neighbor.

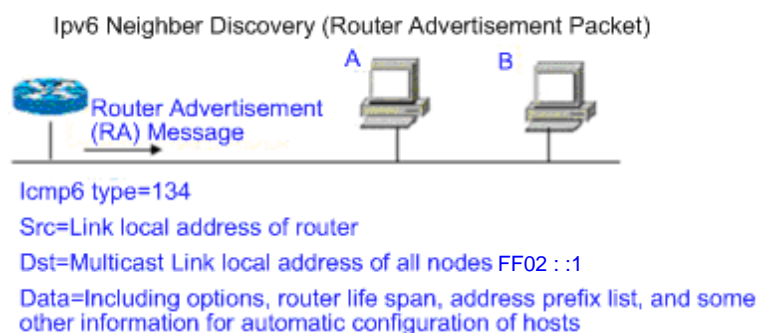
Furthermore, the neighbor solicitation message in the stateless address auto-configuration can also be used to detect the uniqueness of the address, namely the address conflict detection. At this time, the source address of the message is unassigned address ( : : ).

### 33.1.5.2 Router Advertisement

The router sends the Router Advertisement (RA) to all the local nodes of the link periodically.

The following figure shows the process of sending the Router Advertisement (RA):

Figure 33-5





In general, the Router Advertisement (RA) contains the contents below:

- One or more IPv6 address prefixes used for the host to carry out the address auto-configuration.
- Effective period of the IPv6 address prefix.
- Usage of the host auto-configuration (Stateful or stateless).
- Information for the default router (namely, determine whether this router is taken as the default router. If yes, it will announce the time as the default router itself).
- Other information for configuration such as the hop limit, the MTU and the neighbor solicitation retransmission interval.

The Router Advertisement (RA) is also used to respond to the Router Solicitation (RS) message sent by the host. The Router Solicitation (RS) message allows the host to obtain the auto-configuration information immediately without waiting for the router to send the Router Advertisement (RA). If there is no unicast address when the host is activated, the Router Solicitation (RS) message sent by the host will use the unassigned address (0:0:0:0:0:0:0:0) as the source address of the solicitation message. Otherwise, the existing unicast address is taken as the source address, while the Router Solicitation (RS) message uses the multicast address (FF02::2) of all routers for the local link as the destination address. As the response router solicitation (RS) message, the Router Advertisement (RA) message will use the source address of the solicitation message as the destination address (if the source address is the unassigned address, it will use the multicast address FF02::1) of all nodes for the local link.

The following parameters can be configured in the Router Advertisement (RA) message:

**Ra-interval:** Interval of sending the Router Advertisement (RA).

**Ra-lifetime:** Router lifetime, namely whether the device is acted as the default router of the local link and the time as this role.

**Prefix:** IPv6 address prefix of the local link, which can be used to carry out the auto-configuration by the host, including the configuration of other parameters for the prefix.

**Rs-interval:** Interval of sending the neighbor solicitation message.

**Reachabletime:** Time maintained after considering the neighbor reachable.

We configure the above parameters in the IPv6 interface property.



**Caution**

1. By default, no Router Advertisement (RA) message is sent actively on the interface. To do so, you can use the command **no ipv6 nd suppress-ra** in the interface configuration mode.
2. In order to make the stateless address auto-configuration of the node work normally, the length of the prefix for the router advertisement (RA) message should be 64 bits.



## 33.2 IPv6 Configuration

The following will introduce the configuration of various function modules of the IPv6 respectively:

### 33.2.1 Configuring IPv6 Address

This section describes how to configure an IPv6 address on an interface. By default, no IPv6 address is configured.



#### Caution

Once an interface is created and its link status is UP, the system will automatically generate the local link address for the interface. At present, the IPv6 doesn't support anycast address.

To configure an IPv6 address, execute the following commands in the global configuration mode:

Command	Meaning
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
<b>interface</b> <i>interface-id</i>	Enter the interface configuration mode.
<b>ipv6 enable</b>	Enable the IPv6 protocol on an interface. If this command is not run, the system automatically enables the IPv6 protocol when you configure an IPv6 address for an interface.
<b>ipv6 address</b> <i>ipv6-prefix/prefix-length</i> [ <b>eui-64</b> ]	Configure the IPv6 unicast address for this interface. The key word <b>Eui-64</b> indicates the generated IPv6 address consists of the configured address prefix and the 64-bit interface ID.  Note: Whether the key word <b>eui-64</b> is used, it is necessary to enter the complete address format to delete an IPv6 address (Prefix & interface ID/prefix length).  When you configure an IPv6 address on an interface, then the IPv6 protocol is automatically enabled on the interface. Even if you use <b>no ipv6 enable</b> , you cannot disable the IPv6 protocol.
<b>End</b>	Return to the privileged EXEC mode.
<b>show ipv6 interface vlan 1</b>	View the interface information.
<b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Save the configuration.

Use the **no ipv6 address** *ipv6-prefix/prefix-length* [**eui-64**] command to delete the configured IPv6 address.

The following is an example of the configuration of the IPv6 address:

```
DES-7200(config)# interface vlan 1
```



```

DES-7200(config-if)# ipv6 enable
DES-7200(config-if)# ipv6 address fec0:0:0:1::1/64
DES-7200(config-if)# end
DES-7200(config-if)# show ipv6 interface vlan 1
Interface vlan 1 is Up, ifindex: 2001
address(es):
Mac Address: 00:00:00:00:00:01
INET6: fe80::200:ff:fe00:1 , subnet is fe80::/64
INET6: fec0:0:0:1::1 , subnet is fec0:0:0:1::/64
Joined group address(es):
ff01:1::1
ff02:1::1
ff02:1::2
ff02:1::1:ff00:1
MTU is 1500 bytes
ICMP error messages limited to one every 10 milliseconds
ICMP redirects are enabled
ND DAD is enabled, number of DAD attempts: 1
ND reachable time is 30000 milliseconds
ND advertised reachable time is 0 milliseconds
ND retransmit interval is 1000 milliseconds
ND advertised retransmit interval is 0 milliseconds
ND router advertisements are sent every 200 seconds<240--160>
ND router advertisements live for 1800 seconds

```

### 33.2.2 Configuring ICMPv6 Redirection

This section will describe how to configure the ICMPv6 redirection function on the interface. By default, the redirection function of the IPv6 on the interface is enabled. The router needs to send the redirection message to the source during packet forwarding in the following cases:

- The destination address of the message is not a multicast address;
- The destination address of the message is not the router itself;
- The output interface of the next hop determined by the device for this message is the same as the interface this message received, namely, the next hop and the originator is of the same link;
- The node identified by the source IP address of the packet is a neighbor of the local router. Namely, this node exists in the router's neighbor table.



#### Caution

The router other than the host can generate the redirection message, and the router will not update its routing table when it receives the redirection message.

To enable redirection on the interface, execute the following commands in the global configuration mode:



Command	Meaning
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
<b>interface vlan 1</b>	Enter the SVI interface configuration mode.
<b>ipv6 redirects</b>	Enable the IPv6 redirection function.
<b>End</b>	Return to the privileged EXEC mode.
<b>show ipv6 interface vlan 1</b>	Show the interface configuration.
<b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Save the configuration.

Use the **no ipv6 redirects** command to disable the redirection function. The following is an example to configure the redirection function:

```
DES-7200(config)# interface vlan 1
DES-7200(config-if)# ipv6 redirects
DES-7200(config-if)# end
DES-7200# show ipv6 interface vlan 1
Interface vlan 1 is Up, ifindex: 2001
address(es):
Mac Address: 00:d0:f8:00:00:01
INET6: fe80::2d0:f8ff:fe00:1 , subnet is fe80::/64
INET6: fec0:0:0:1::1 , subnet is fec0:0:0:1::/64
Joined group address(es):
ff01:1::1
ff02:1::1
ff02:1::2
ff02:1::1:ff00:1
MTU is 1500 bytes
ICMP error messages limited to one every 10 milliseconds
ICMP redirects are enabled
ND DAD is enabled, number of DAD attempts: 1
ND reachable time is 30000 milliseconds
ND advertised reachable time is 0 milliseconds
ND retransmit interval is 1000 milliseconds
ND advertised retransmit interval is 0 milliseconds
ND router advertisements are sent every 200 seconds<240--160>
ND router advertisements live for 1800 seconds
```

### 33.2.3 Configuring Static Neighbor

This section will describe how to configure a static neighbor. By default, the static neighbor is not configured. In general, a neighbor learns and maintains its status by the Neighbor Discovery Protocol (NDP) dynamically. Moreover, you can configure the static neighbor manually.

To configure the static neighbor, execute the following commands in the global configuration mode.



Command	Meaning
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
<b>ipv6 neighbor</b> <i>ipv6-address</i> <i>interface-id hardware-address</i>	Configure a static neighbor on the interface.
<b>End</b>	Return to the privileged EXEC mode.
<b>show ipv6 neighbors</b>	View the neighbor list.
<b>copy running-config</b> <b>startup-config</b>	Save the configuration.

Use the **no ipv6 neighbor** command to delete the specified neighbor. The following is an example to configure a static neighbor on SVI 1:

```
DES-7200(config)# ipv6 neighbor fec0:0:0:1::100 vlan 1 00d0.f811.1234
DES-7200(config)# end
DES-7200# show ipv6 neighbors verbose fec0:0:0:1::100
IPv6 Address      Linklayer Addr  Interface
fec0:0:0:1::100   00d0.f811.1234  vlan 1
State: REACH/H Age: - asked: 0
```

### 33.2.4 Configuring Address Conflict Detection

This section describes how to configure address conflict detection times. Address conflict detection is mandatory to assign unicast addresses to interfaces. The goal is to detect the uniqueness of an address. The address conflict detection should be carried out for the manual configuration address, the stateless auto-configuration address or the statefull auto-configuration address. However, it is not necessary to carry out the address conflict detection under the following two conditions:

- The management prohibits the address conflict detection, namely, the number of the neighbor solicitation messages sent for the address conflict detection is set to 0.
- The configured anycast address can not be applied to the address conflict detection.

Furthermore, if the address conflict detection function is not disabled on the interface, the system will enable the address conflict detection process for the configured address when the interface changes to the Up status from the Down status.

The following is the configuration procedure of the quantity of the neighbor solicitation message sent for the address conflict detection:

Command	Meaning
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
<b>interface</b> <i>vlan 1</i>	Enter the SVI 1 configuration mode.



Command	Meaning
<b>ipv6 nd dad attempts</b> <i>attempts</i>	The quantity of the neighbor solicitation message sent for the address conflict detection. When it is configured to 0, any neighbor solicitation message is denied.  Enable the address conflict detection function on the interface.
<b>End</b>	Return to the privileged mode.
<b>show ipv6 interface vlan 1</b>	View the IPv6 information of the SVI 1.
<b>copy running-config</b> <b>startup-config</b>	Save the configuration.

Use the **no ipv6 nd dad attempts** command to restore the default value. The following is an example to configure the times of the neighbor solicitation (NS) message sent for the address conflict detection on the SVI1:

```
DES-7200(config)# interface vlan 1
DES-7200(config-if)# ipv6 nd dad attempts 3
DES-7200(config-if)# end
DES-7200# show ipv6 interface vlan 1
DES-7200(config)# interface vlan 1
DES-7200(config-if)# ipv6 nd dad attempts 3
DES-7200(config-if)# end
DES-7200# show ipv6 interface vlan 1
Interface vlan 1 is Up, ifindex: 2001
address(es):
Mac Address: 00:d0:f8:00:00:01
INET6: fe80::2d0:f8ff:fe00:1 , subnet is fe80::/64
INET6: fec0:0:0:1::1 , subnet is fec0:0:0:1::/64
Joined group address(es):
ff01:1::1
ff02:1::1
ff02:1::2
ff02:1::1:ff00:1
MTU is 1500 bytes
ICMP error messages limited to one every 10 milliseconds
ICMP redirects are enabled
ND DAD is enabled, number of DAD attempts: 3
ND reachable time is 30000 milliseconds
ND advertised reachable time is 0 milliseconds
ND retransmit interval is 1000 milliseconds
ND advertised retransmit interval is 0 milliseconds
ND router advertisements are sent every 200 seconds<240--160>
ND router advertisements live for 1800 seconds
```



### 33.2.5 Configuring Other Interface Parameters

The IPv6 parameters on an interface fall into 2 parts, one is used to control the behavior of the router itself, the other is used to control the contents of the router advertisement (RA) sent by the router to determine what action should be taken by the host when it receives this router advertisement (RA).

The following will introduce these commands one by one:

Command	Meaning
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
<b>interface</b> <i>interface-id</i>	Enter the interface configuration mode.
<b>ipv6 enable</b>	Enable the IPv6 function.
<b>ipv6 nd ns-interval</b> <i>milliseconds</i>	(Optional) Define the retransmission interval of the neighbor solicitation message.
<b>ipv6 nd reachable-time</b> <i>milliseconds</i>	(Optional) Define the time when the neighbor is considered to be reachable.
<b>ipv6 nd prefix</b> <i>ipv6-prefix/prefix-length</i>   <b>default</b> [[ <i>valid-lifetime</i> <i>preferred-lifetime</i> ]   [ <b>at</b> <i>valid-date</i> <i>preferred-date</i> ]   <b>infinite</b>   <b>no-advertise</b> ]]	(Optional) Set the address prefix to be advertised in the router advertisement (RA) message.
<b>ipv6 nd ra-lifetime</b> <i>seconds</i>	(Optional) Set the TTL of the router in the router advertisement (RA) message, namely the time as the default router. 0, indicates that the router will not act as the default router of the direct-connected network.
<b>ipv6 nd ra-interval</b> <i>seconds</i>	(Optional) Set the time interval for the router to send the router advertisement (RA) message periodically.
<b>ipv6 nd managed-config-flag</b>	(Optional) Set the "managed address configuration" flag bit of the router advertisement (RA) message, and determine whether the host will use the stateful auto-configuration to obtain the address when it receives this router advertisement (RA).



Command	Meaning
<b>ipv6 nd other-config-flag</b>	(Optional) Set the “other stateful configuration” flag bit of the router advertisement (RA) message, and determine whether the host will use the stateful auto-configuration to obtain other information other than the address when it receives this router advertisement (RA).
<b>ipv6 nd suppress-ra</b>	(Optional) Set whether suppress the router advertisement (RA) message in this interface.
<b>End</b>	Return to the privileged EXEC mode.
<b>show ipv6 interface</b> [interface-id] [ra-info]	Show the ipv6 interface of the interface or the information of RA sent by this interface.
<b>copy running-config</b> <b>startup-config</b>	(Optional) Save the configuration.

The **no** command of above commands can be used to restore the default value. For details, refer to *IPv6 Command Reference*.

### 33.3 IPv6 Monitoring and Maintenance

It is mainly used to provide related command to show some internal information of the IPv6 protocol, such as the ipv6 information, the neighbor table and the route table information of the interface.

Command	Meaning
<b>show ipv6 interface</b> [interface-id] [ra-info]	Show the IPv6 information of the interface.
<b>show ipv6 neighbors</b> [verbose] [interface-id] [ipv6-address]	Show the neighbor information.
<b>show ipv6 route</b> [static] [local] [connected]	Show the information of the IPv6 routing table.

#### 1. View the IPv6 information of an interface.

```
DES-7200# show ipv6 interface
interface vlan 1 is Down, ifindex: 2001
address(es):
Mac Address: 00:d0:f8:00:00:01
INET6: fe80::2d0:f8ff:fe00:1 , subnet is fe80::/64
INET6: fec0:1:1:1::1 , subnet is fec0:1:1:1::/64
Joined group address(es):
ff01:1::1
ff02:1::1
ff02:1::2
```



```

ff02:1::1:ff00:1
MTU is 1500 bytes
ICMP error messages limited to one every 10 milliseconds
ICMP redirects are enabled
ND DAD is enabled, number of DAD attempts: 1
ND reachable time is 30000 milliseconds
ND advertised reachable time is 0 milliseconds
ND retransmit interval is 1000 milliseconds
ND advertised retransmit interval is 0 milliseconds
ND router advertisements are sent every 200 seconds<240--160>
ND router advertisements live for 1800 seconds

```

## 2. View the information of the router advertisement (RA) message to be sent of an interface

```

DES-7200# show ipv6 interface ra-info
vlan 1: DOWN
RA timer is stopped
waits: 0, initcount: 3
statistics: RA(out/in/inconsistent): 4/0/0, RS(input): 0
Link-layer address: 00:00:00:00:00:01
Physical MTU: 1500
ND router advertisements live for 1800 seconds
ND router advertisements are sent every 200 seconds<240--160>
Flags: !M!O, Adv MTU: 1500
ND advertised reachable time is 0 milliseconds
ND advertised retransmit time is 0 milliseconds
ND advertised CurHopLimit is 64
Prefixes: (total: 1)
fec0:1:1:1::/64(Def, Auto, vltime: 2592000, pltime: 604800, flags: LA)

```

## 3. View the neighbor table information of the IPv6.

```

DES-7200# show ipv6 neighbors
IPv6 Address          Linklayer Addr  Interface
fe80::200:ff:fe00:1    0000.0000.0001 vlan 1
State: REACH/H Age: - asked: 0
fec0:1:1:1::1          0000.0000.0001 vlan 1
State: REACH/H Age: - asked: 0

```







# 34

## Configuring IPV6 Tunnel

### 34.1 Overview

The IPv6 is designed to inherit and replace the IPv4. However, the evolution from the IPv4 to the IPv6 is a gradual process. Therefore, it is inevitable that these two protocols coexist for a period before the IPv6 completely replaces the IPv4. At the beginning of this transition stage, IPv4 networks are still main networks. IPv6 networks are similar to isolated islands in IPv4 networks. The problems about transition can be divided into the following two types:

1. Communications among isolated IPv6 networks via IPv4 networks
2. Communications between IPv6 networks and IPv4 networks

This article discusses the tunnel technology that is used to solve problem 1. The solution to problem2 is NAT-PT (Network Address Translation-Protocol Translation), which is not covered in this article.

The IPv6 tunnel technology encapsulates IPv6 messages in IPv4 messages. In this way, IPv6 protocol packets can communicate with each other via IPv4 networks. Therefore, with the IPv6 tunnel technology, isolated IPv6 networks can communicate one another via existing IPv4 networks, avoiding any modification and upgrade to existing IPv4 networks. An IPv6 tunnel can be configured between Area Border Routers or between an Area Border Router and the host. However, all the nodes at the two ends of the tunnel must support the IPv4 and IPv6 protocol stacks. At present, our company supports the following tunnel technologies:

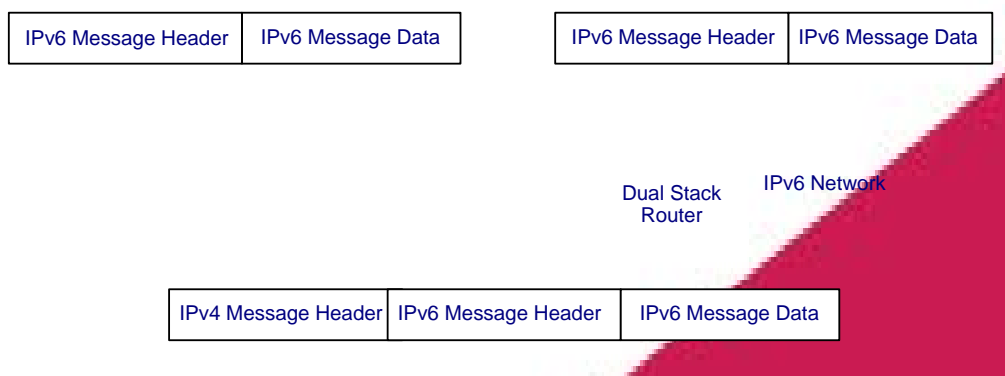
Tunnel Type	Reference
Manually Config Tunnel	RFC2893
Automatic 6to4 Tunnel	RFC3056
Intra-Site Automatic Tunnel Addressing Protocol(ISATAP)	draft-ietf-ngtrans-isatap-22

**Caution**

Interconnecting the isolated IPv6 networks through the IPv6 tunnel technology is not the ultimate IPv6 network architecture. Instead, it is a transitional technology.

The model using the tunnel technology is shown in the following figure:



**Figure 34-1**

The features of various tunnels are respectively introduced below.

### 34.1.1 Manually Configured IPv6 Tunnel

One manually configured tunnel is similar to one permanent link set up between two IPv6 domains via the backbone network of the IPv4. It is applicable for the relatively fixed connections that have a higher demand on security between two Area Border Routers or between an Area Border Router and a host.

On a tunnel interface, you must manually configure the IPv6 address, source IPv4 address (tunnel source) and destination IPv4 address (tunnel destination) of the tunnel. The nodes at the two end of the tunnel must support the IPv6 and IPv4 protocol stacks. In practical application, tunnels are always manually configured in pairs. You can think it as a point-to-point tunnel.

### 34.1.2 Automatic 6to4 Tunnel

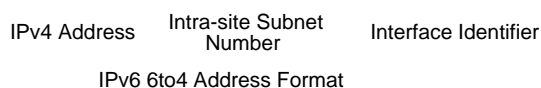
The automatic 6to4 tunnel technology allows isolated IPv6 networks to be interconnected via IPv4 networks. The difference between the automatic 6to4 tunnel and manually configured tunnel technologies is that the manual configured tunnel is a point-to-point tunnel, while a 6to4 tunnel is a point-to-multipoint tunnel.

The 6to4 tunnel takes an IPv4 network as a Nonbroadcast multi-access (NBMA) link. Therefore, the routers of 6to4 need not be configured in pairs. The IPv4 addresses embedded in an IPv6 address will be used to look for the other end of the automatic tunnel. The 6to4 tunnel can be taken as a point-to-multipoint tunnel. The automatic 6to4 tunnel can be configured on an Area Border Router of one isolated IPv6 network. For each message, it will automatically build a tunnel connecting to an Area Border Router in another IPv6 network. The destination address of a tunnel is the IPv4 address of an Area Border Router in the IPv6 network at the other end. The IPv4 address will be extracted from the destination



IPv6 address of the message. The destination IPv6 address starts at the prefix 2002::/16 in the following form:

**Figure 34-2**



The 6to4 address is an address for automatic 6to4 tunnel technology. The IPv4 address embedded in it are usually the global IPv4 address of the egress of the area border router in the site. When the automatic tunnel is built, the address is used as the IPv4 address for tunnel message encapsulation. All the routers at the two ends of the 6to4 tunnel must also support the IPv6 and IPv4 protocol stacks. A 6to4 tunnel is usually configured between Area Border Routers.

For example, the global IPv4 address of the egress of the area border router in the site is 211.1.1.1 (D301:0101 in hex), a subnet number in the site is 1 and the interface identifier is 2e0:ddff:fee0:e0e1, then the corresponding 6to4 address can be denoted as follows:

2002: D301:0101:1: 2e0:ddff:fee0:e0e1



**Caution**

The IPv4 address embedded in the 6to4 address cannot be a private IPv4 address (i.e., the address of the network interface segment 10.0.0.0/8, 172.16.0.0/12 or 192.168.0.0/16) and must be the global IPv4 address.

Common application models of 6to4 tunnels:

■ Simple application models

The simplest and most common application of 6to4 tunnels is used to interconnect multiple IPv6 sites. Each of the sites must have one connection to one of their shared IPv4 networks at least. This IPv4 network can be an Internet network or a internal backbone network of an organization. The key is that each site must have a unique global IPv4 address. The 6to4 tunnel will use the address to form the IPv6 prefix of 6to4/48: 2002:IPV4 address/48.

■ Mixture application models

Based on the application described above, other 6to4 networks access the pure IPv6 network. by 6to4 relay devices at the edge. The router used to implement the function is called 6to4 Relay Router.



### 34.1.3 ISATAP Automatic unnel

Intra-site Automatic Tunnel Addressing Protocol (ISATAP) is a type of IPv6 tunnel technology by which an intra-site IPv6 architecture takes an IPv4 network as one nonbroadcast multi-access (NBMA) link layer, namely taking an IPv4 network as the virtual link layer of the IPv6.

ISATAP is applicable for the case where the pure IPv6 network inside a site is not ready for use yet and an IPv6 message need be transferred internally in the site. For example, a few of IPv6 hosts for test need communicate one another inside the site. By an ISATAP tunnel, the IPv4/IPv6 dual stack hosts on a same virtual link can communicate one another inside the site.

On the ISATAP site, the ISATAP router provides standard router advertisement message, allowing the ISATAP host to be automatically configured inside the site. At the same time, the ISATAP router performs the function that an intra-site ISATAP host and external IPv6 host forward messages.

The IPv6 address prefix used by ISATAP can be any legal 64-bit prefix for IPv6 unicast, including the global address prefix, local link prefix and local site prefix. The IPv4 address is placed as the ending 32 bits of the IPv6 address, allowing a tunnel to be automatically built.

It is very possible that ISATAP is used with other transition technologies. Especially when used with the 6to4 tunnel technology, it can make the dual stack host of an internal network access an IPv6 backbone network very easily.

#### ■ ISATAP interface identifier

The unicast address used by ISATAP is in the form of a 64-bit IPv6 prefix plus a 64-bit interface identifier. The 64-bit interface identifier is generated in the revised EUI-64 address form. Where, the value of the first 32 bits of the interface identifier is **0000:5EFE**, an interface identifier of ISATAP.

#### ■ ISATAP address structure

An ISATAP address refers to the unicast address containing an ISATAP interface identifier in its interface identifier. An ISATAP address structure is shown in the following figure:

**Figure 34-3**



The above figure shows that the interface identifier contains an IPv4 address. The address is the IPv4 address of a dual stack host and will be used when an automatic tunnel is automatically built.



For example, the IPv6 prefix is 2001::/64 and the embedded IPv4 address is 192.168.1.1. In the ISATAP address, the IPv4 address is denoted as the hexadecimal numeral of C0A8:0101. Therefore, its corresponding ISATAP address is as follows:

2001::0000:5EFE:C0A8:0101

## 34.2 IPv6 Tunnel Configuration

### 34.2.1 Manually Configuring IPv6 Tunnels

This section explains how to configure tunnels manually.

To configure a tunnel manually, configure an IPv6 address on the tunnel interface and manually configure the IPv4 addresses of the source port and destination port of the tunnel. Then, configure the hosts or routers at the two ends of the tunnel to ensure that they support the dual stacks (the IPv6 and IPv4 protocol stacks).



#### Caution

Do not configure tunnels manually with the same Tunnel Source and Tunnel Destination.

#### Brief steps

```
config terminal
interface tunnel tunnel-num
tunnel mode ipv6ip
ipv6 enable
tunnel source {ip-address | type num}
tunnel destination ip-address
end
```

To configure an IPv6 tunnel manually, execute the following commands in the global configuration mode:

Command	Meaning
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
<b>interface tunnel</b> <i>tunnel-num</i>	Specify a tunnel interface number to create a tunnel interface and enter the interface configuration mode.
<b>tunnel mode</b> <b>ipv6ip</b>	Set the tunnel type to manually configured tunnel.
<b>ipv6 enable</b>	Enable the IPv6 function on the interface. You can also configure the IPv6 address to directly enable the IPv6 function on the interface.



Command	Meaning
<b>tunnel source</b> <i>{ip-address   type num}</i>	Specify the IPv4 source address or referenced source interface number of a tunnel. Note: If you specify an interface, then the IPv4 address must have been configured on the interface.
<b>tunnel destination</b> <i>ip address</i>	Specify the destination address of a tunnel.
<b>end</b>	Return to the privileged mode.
<b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Save the configuration.

Refer to the section *Verifying and Monitoring IPv6 Tunnel Configuration* to check the operation of the tunnel.

### 34.2.2 Configuring 6to4 Tunnel

This section introduces how to configure a 6to4 tunnel.

The destination address of a 6to4 tunnel is determined by the IPv4 address which is extracted from the [6to4 IPv6 address](#). The routers at the two end of the 6to4 tunnel must support the dual stacks, namely, the IPv4 and IPv6 protocol stacks.



#### Caution

A device supports only one 6to4 tunnel. The encapsulation source address (IPv4 address) used by the 6to4 tunnel must be a global routable address. Otherwise, the 6to4 tunnel will not work normally.

#### Brief steps

```
config terminal
interface tunnel tunnel-num
tunnel mode ipv6ip 6to4
ipv6 enable
tunnel source {ip-address | type num}
exit
ipv6 route 2002::/16 tunnel tunnel-number
end
```

To configure a 6to4 tunnel, execute the following commands in the global configuration mode:

Command	Meaning
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
<b>interface tunnel</b> <i>tunnel-num</i>	Specify a tunnel interface number to create a tunnel interface and enter the interface configuration mode.
<b>tunnel mode ipv6ip</b> <b>6to4</b>	Set the tunnel type to 6to4 tunnel.



Command	Meaning
<b>ipv6 enable</b>	Enable the IPv6 function of the interface. You can also configure the IPv6 address to directly enable the IPv6 function of the interface.
<b>tunnel source</b> <i>{ip-address   type num}</i>	Specify the encapsulation source address or referenced source interface number of a tunnel.  Note: The IPv4 address must have been configured on the referenced interface. The used IPv4 address must be a global routable address.
<b>Exit</b>	Return to the global configuration mode.
<b>ipv6 route</b> <i>2002::/16</i> <b>tunnel</b> <i>tunnel-number</i>	Configure a static route for the IPv6 6to4 prefix 2002::/16 and associate the output interface to the tunnel interface, i.e., the tunnel interface specified in the above Step 2.
<b>End</b>	Return to the privileged EXEC mode.
<b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Save the configuration.

Refer to the section *Verifying and Monitoring IPv6 Tunnel Configuration* to check the operation of the tunnel.

### 34.2.3 Configuring ISATAP Tunnel

This section introduces how to configure an ISATAP device.

On an ISATAP tunnel interface, the configuration of an ISATAP IPv6 address and the advertisement configuration of a prefix is same to that of a normal IPv6 interface. However, the address configured for an ISATAP tunnel interface must be a revised EUI-64 address. The reason is that the last 32 bits of the interface identifier in the IPv6 address are composed of the IPv4 address of the interface referenced by the tunnel source address. Refer to the above chapters and sections for the information about ISATAP address formats.



#### Caution

A device supports multiple ISATAP tunnels. However, the source of each ISATAP tunnel must be different.

Otherwise, there is no way to know which ISATAP tunnel a received ISATAP tunnel message belongs to.

#### Brief steps

```
config terminal
interface tunnel tunnel-num
```



```

tunnel mode ipv6ip isatap
ipv6 address ipv6-prefix/prefix-length eui-64
tunnel source interface-type num
no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
end

```

To configure an ISATAP tunnel, execute the following commands in the global configuration mode:

Command	Meaning
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
<b>interface tunnel</b> <i>tunnel-num</i>	Specify a tunnel interface number to create a tunnel interface and enter the interface configuration mode.
<b>tunnel mode ipv6ip</b> <b>isatap</b>	Set the tunnel type to ISATAP tunnel.
<b>ipv6 address</b> <b>ipv6-prefix/prefix-length eui-64</b>	Configure the IPv6 ISATAP address. Be sure to specify to use the <b>eui-64</b> keyword. In this way, the ISATAP address will be automatically generated. The address configured on an ISATAP interface must be an ISATAP address.
<b>tunnel source type num</b>	Specify the source interface number referenced by a tunnel. On the referenced interface, the IPv4 address must have been configured.
<b>no ipv6 nd suppress-ra</b>	By default, it is disabled to send router advertisement messages on an interface. Use the command to enable the function, allowing the ISATAP host to be automatically configured.
<b>End</b>	Return to the privileged EXEC mode.
<b>copy running-config</b> <b>startup-config</b>	Save the configuration.

Refer to the section *Verifying and Monitoring IPv6 Tunnel Configuration* to check the operation of the tunnel.

### 34.3 Verifying and Monitoring IPv6 Tunnel Configuration

This section introduces how to verify the configuration and operation of an IPv6 tunnel.

Brief steps

```

enable
show interface tunnel number
show ipv6 interface tunnel number

```



```
ping protocol destination
show ip route
show ipv6 route
```

To verify the configuration and operation of a tunnel, execute the following commands in the privileged mode:

Command	Meaning
<b>enable</b>	Enter the privileged configuration mode.
<b>show interface tunnel</b> <i>tunnel-num</i>	View the information of a tunnel interface.
<b>show ipv6 interface tunnel</b> <i>tunnel-num</i>	View the IPv6 information of a tunnel interface.
<b>ping protocol destination</b>	Check the basic connectivity of a network.
<b>show ip route</b>	View the IPv4 routing table.
<b>show ipv6 route</b>	View the IPv6 router table.

#### 1. View the information of a tunnel interface.

```
DES-7200# show interface tunnel 1
Tunnel 1 is up, line protocol is Up
Hardware is Tunnel, Encapsulation TUNNEL
Tunnel source 192.168.5.215 , destination 192.168.5.204
Tunnel protocol/transport IPv6/IP
Tunnel TTL is 9
Tunnel source do conformance check set
Tunnel source do ingress filter set
Tunnel destination do safety check not set
Tunnel disable receive packet not set
```

#### 2. View the IPv6 information of a tunnel interface.

```
DES-7200# show ipv6 interface tunnel 1
interface Tunnel 1 is Up, ifindex: 6354
address(es):
Mac Address: N/A
INET6: fe80::3d9a:1601 , subnet is fe80::/64
Joined group address(es):
ff02::2
ff01::1
ff02::1
ff02::1:ff9a:1601
INET6: 3ffe:4:0:1::1 , subnet is 3ffe:4:0:1::/64
Joined group address(es):
ff02::2
ff01::1
ff02::1
ff02::1:ff00:1
```



```

MTU is 1480 bytes
ICMP error messages limited to one every 100 milliseconds
ICMP redirects are enabled
ND DAD is enabled, number of DAD attempts: 1
ND reachable time is 30000 milliseconds
ND advertised reachable time is 0 milliseconds
ND retransmit interval is 1000 milliseconds
ND advertised retransmit interval is 0 milliseconds
ND router advertisements are sent every 200 seconds<240--160>
ND router advertisements live for 1800 seconds

```

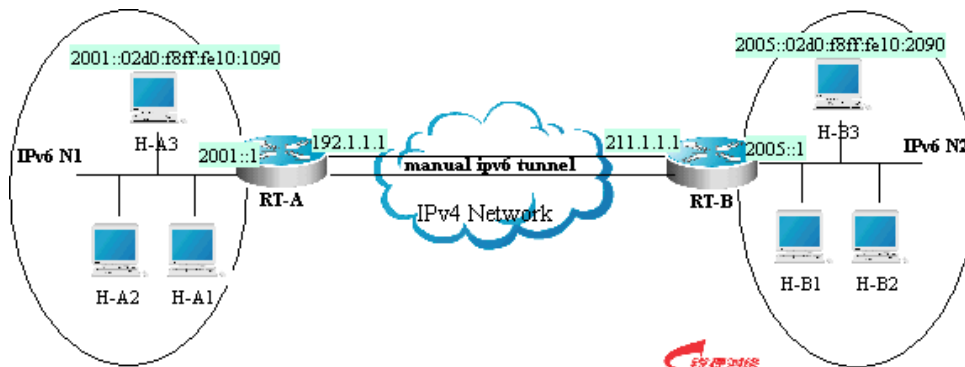
## 34.4 IPv6 Tunnel Configuration Instances

The following sections introduce IPv6 tunnel configuration instances.

- Manual IPv6 Tunnel Configuration
- 6to4 Tunnel Configuration
- ISATAP Tunnel Configuration
- ISATAP and 6to4 Tunnels Configuration

### 34.4.1 Manual IPv6 Tunnel Configuration

Figure 34-4



As shown in the above figure, IPv6 networks N1 and N2 are isolated by the IPv4 network. Now, the two networks are interconnected by configuring a tunnel manually. For example, the H-A3 host in N1 can access the H-B3 host in N2.

In the figure, RT-A and RT-B are routers that support the IPv4 and IPv6 protocol stacks. Tunnel configuration occurs on the Area Border Routers (RT-A and RT-B) in N1 and N2. Note that the tunnel must be configured manually in pairs, that is, on RT-A and RT-B.

The following presents the tunnel configuration on routers:



Prerequisite: Suppose the routes of IPv4 are connected. In the following content, no more route configuration condition about IPv4 is listed.

#### RT-A configuration

##### #Connect the interfaces of the IPv4 network

```
interface FastEthernet 2/1
no switchport
ip address 192.1.1.1 255.255.255.0
```

##### #Connect the interfaces of the IPv6 network

```
interface FastEthernet 2/2
no switchport
ipv6 address 2001::1/64
no ipv6 nd suppress-ra (optional)
```

##### #Configure manual tunnel interface

```
interface Tunnel 1
tunnel mode ipv6ip
ipv6 enable
tunnel source FastEthernet 2/1
tunnel destination 211.1.1.1
```

##### #Configure the route to the tunnel

```
ipv6 route 2005::/64 tunnel 1
```

#### RT-B configuration

##### #Connect the interfaces of the IPv4 network

```
interface FastEthernet 2/1
no switchport
ip address 211.1.1.1 255.255.255.0
```

##### # Connect the interfaces of the IPv6 network

```
interface FastEthernet 2/2
no switchport
ipv6 address 2005::1/64
no ipv6 nd suppress-ra (optional)
```

##### #Configure the manual tunnel interface

```
interface Tunnel 1
tunnel mode ipv6ip
ipv6 enable
tunnel source FastEthernet 2/1
tunnel destination 192.1.1.1
```

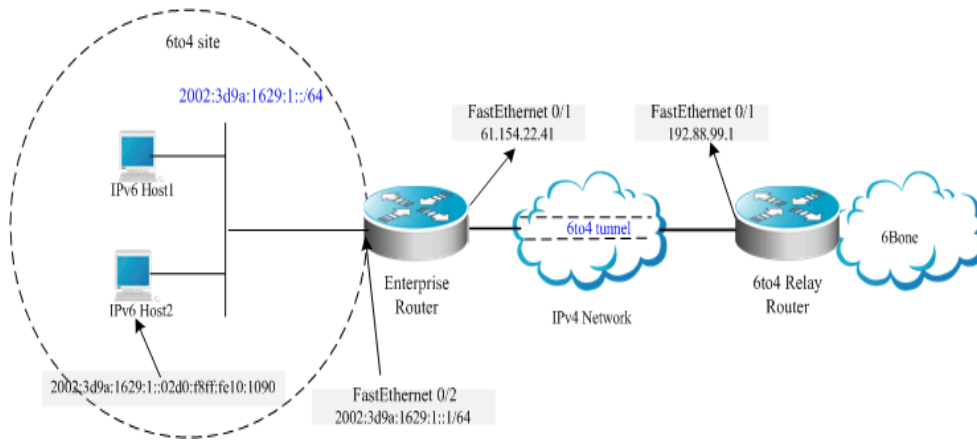
##### #Configure the route to the tunnel

```
ipv6 route 2001::/64 tunnel 1
```



### 34.4.2 6to4 Tunnel Configuration

Figure 34-5



As shown in the above figure, an IPv6 network (6to4 site) uses a 6to4 tunnel to access the IPv6 backbone network (6bone) via the 6to4 relay router.

As introduced above, the 6to4 tunnel technology is used to interconnect isolated IPv6 networks and they can access the IPv6 backbone network via the 6to4 relay router very easily. The 6to4 tunnel is an automatic tunnel and the IPv4 address embeded in the IPv6 address will be used to look for the other end of the automatic tunnel. Therefore, you need not configure the destination end for the 6to4 tunnel. Additionally, unsimilar to a manual tunnel, the 6to4 tunnel need not be configured in pairs.

61.154.22.41 is 3d9a:1629 in the hex form.

192.88.99.1 is c058:6301 in the hex form.



#### Caution

When configuring a 6to4 tunnel on an Area Border Router, be sure to use a routable global IPv4 address.

Otherwise, the 6to4 tunnel will not work normally.

The following is the configuration of the two routers in the figure (Suppose IPv4 routes are connected. Ignore the configuration of IPv4 routes.):

Enterprise router configuration

# Connect the interfaces of the IPv4 network

```
interface FastEthernet 0/1
no switchport
ip address 61.154.22.41 255.255.255.128
```

# Connect the interfaces of the IPv6 network

```
interface FastEthernet 0/2
no switchport
ipv6 address 2002:3d9a:1629:1::1/64
no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
```



**# Configure the 6to4 tunnel interface**

```
interface Tunnel 1
 tunnel mode ipv6ip 6to4
 ipv6 enable
 tunnel source FastEthernet 0/1
```

**# Configure the route to the tunnel**

```
ipv6 route 2002::/16 Tunnel 1
```

**# Configure the route to the 6to4 relay router to access 6bone**

```
ipv6 route ::/0 2002:c058:6301::1
```

**ISP 6to4 Relay Router configuration****# Connect the interface of the IPv4 network**

```
interface FastEthernet 0/1
 no switchport
 ip address 192.88.99.1 255.255.255.0
```

**# Configure the 6to4 tunnel interface**

```
interface Tunnel 1
 tunnel mode ipv6ip 6to4
 ipv6 enable
 tunnel source FastEthernet 0/1
```

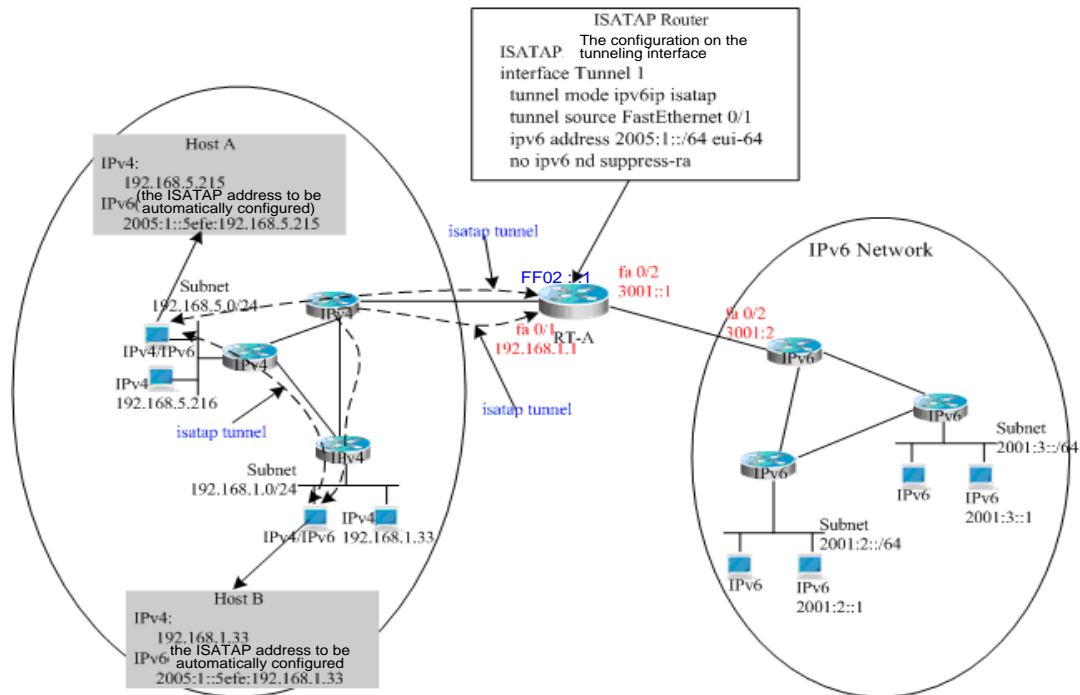
**# Configure the route to the tunnel**

```
ipv6 route 2002::/16 Tunnel 1
```



### 34.4.3 ISATAP Tunnel Configuration

Figure 34-6



The above figure is one typical topology using an ISATAP tunnel. The ISATAP tunnel is used to communicate between isolated IPv4/IPv6 dual stack hosts inside the IPv4 site. The ISATAP router has the two following functions inside the ISATAP site:

- Receive a router request message from the ISATAP host inside the site and then respond with a router advertisement message for the ISATAP host inside the site to be automatically configured.
- Be responsible for the message forwarding function of the ISATAP host inside the site and the IPv6 host outside the site.

In the above figure, when Host A and Host B send the router solicitation message to ISATAP Router, ISATAP Router will respond with a router advertisement message. After receiving the message, the hosts will automatically perform self-configuration and generate their own ISATAP addresses respectively. Then, the IPv6 communication between Host A and Host B will be done via the ISATAP tunnel. When Host A or Host B need communicate with the IPv6 host outside the site, Host A sends the message to the ISATAP router RT-A via the ISATAP tunnel and then RT-A forwards the message to the IPv6 network.

In the above figure, ISATAP Router (RT-A) is configured as follows:

# Connect the interfaces of the IPv4 network

```
interface FastEthernet 0/1
no switchport
```



```
ip address 192.168.1.1 255.255.255.0
```

#### # Configure the ISATAP tunnel interface

```
interface Tunnel 1
tunnel mode ipv6ip isatap
tunnel source FastEthernet 0/1
ipv6 address 2005:1::/64 eui-64
no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
```

#### # Connect the interfaces of the IPv6 network

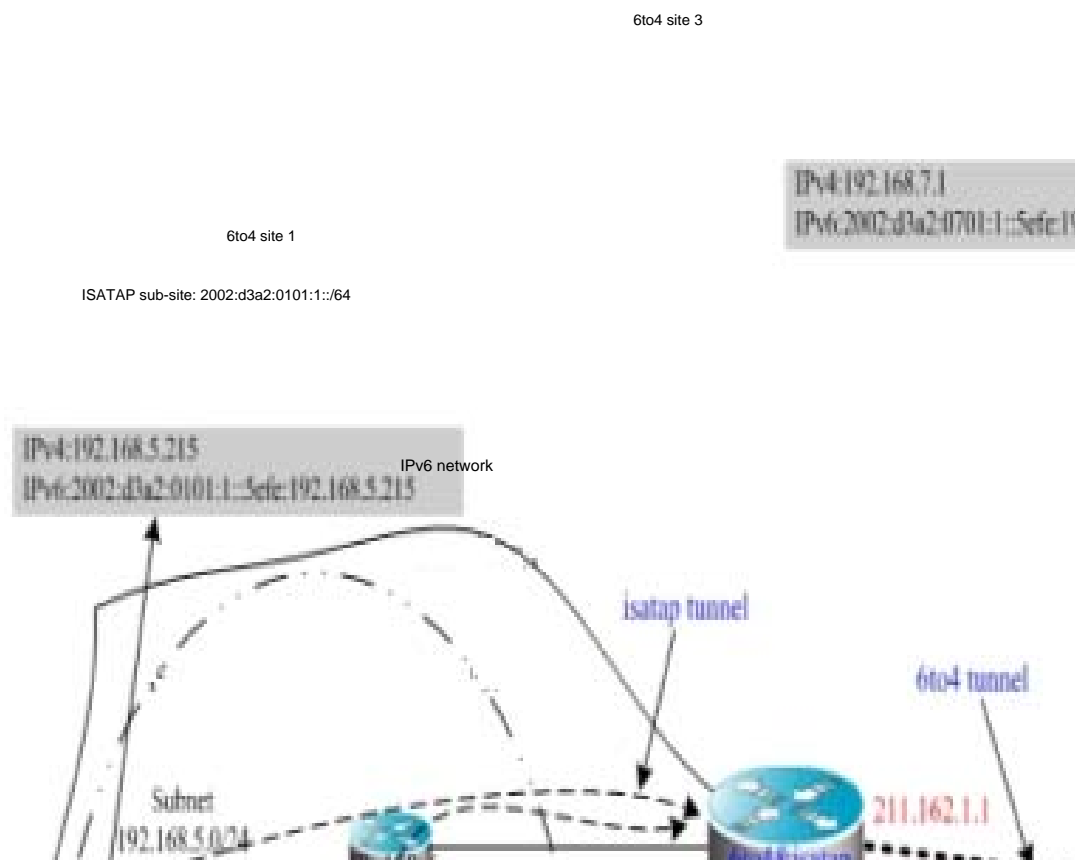
```
interface FastEthernet 0/2
no switchport
ipv6 address 3001::1/64
```

#### # Configure the route to the IPv6 network

```
ipv6 route 2001::/64 3001::2
```

### 34.4.4 ISATAP and 6to4 Tunnels Configuration

Figure 34-7





**Note**

In the above figure, it is an instance about composite application of 6to4 tunnel and ISATAP tunnel. By use of the 6to4 tunnel technology, various 6to4 sites are interconnected and the 6to4 site accesses the Cernet network via the **6to4 relay router**. At the same time, by use of the ISATAP tunnel technology inside the 6to4 site, the IPv6 hosts isolated by IPv4 inside the site perform IPv6 communication via the ISATAP tunnel.

**Caution**

In the above figure, the used global IP address containing the address of the 6to4 Relay router is only for convenience. When actually planning topologies, we should use a true global IP address and the address of the 6to4 Relay. At present, many organizations provide the addresses of open and free 6to4 Relay routers address.

The configurations of Area Border Routers in the 6to4 site shown in the above figure are introduced respectively below. Note that only main related configurations are listed here.

**RT-A Configuration:****# Connect the interfaces of the Internet network**

```
interface GigabitEthernet 0/1
no switchport
ip address 211.162.1.1 255.255.255.0
```

**# Connect the interfaces of the IPv4 network inside the site** interface FastEthernet 0/1

```
no switchport
ip address 192.168.0.1 255.255.255.0
```

**# Configure the ISATAP tunnel interface**

```
interface Tunnel 1
tunnel mode ipv6ip isatap
tunnel source FastEthernet 0/1
ipv6 address 2002:d3a2:0101:1::/64 eui-64
no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
```

**# Connect interface 1 of the IPv6 network**

```
interface FastEthernet 0/2
no switchport
2002:d3a2:0101:10::1/64
```

**# Connect interface 2 of the IPv6 network**

```
interface FastEthernet 0/2
no switchport
2002:d3a2:0101:20::1/64
```

**# Configure the 6to4 tunnel interface**

```
interface Tunnel 2
tunnel mode ipv6ip 6to4
```



```
ipv6 enable
tunnel source GigabitEthernet 0/1
```

**# Configure the route to the 6to4 tunnel**

```
ipv6 route 2002::/16 Tunnel 2
```

**# Configure the route to the 6to4 relay router RT-D to access the Cernet network**

```
ipv6 route ::/0 2002:d3a2::0901::1
```

**RT-B configuration:**

**# Connect the interfaces of the Internet network**

```
interface GigabitEthernet 0/1
no switchport
ip address 211.162.5.1 255.255.255.0
```

**# Connect interface 1 of the IPv4 network inside the site**

```
interface FastEthernet 0/1
no switchport
ip address 192.168.10.1 255.255.255.0
```

**# Connect interface 2 of the IPv4 network inside the site**

```
interface FastEthernet 0/2
no switchport
ip address 192.168.20.1 255.255.255.0
```

**# Configure ISATAP tunnel interface**

```
tunnel mode ipv6ip isatap
tunnel source FastEthernet 0/1
ipv6 address 2002:d3a2:0501:1::/64 eui-64
no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
```

**# Configure 6to4 tunnel interface**

```
interface Tunnel 2
tunnel mode ipv6ip 6to4
ipv6 enable
tunnel source GigabitEthernet 0/1
```

**# Configure the route to the 6to4 tunnel**

```
ipv6 route 2002::/16 Tunnel 2
```

**# Configure the route to the 6to4 relay router RT-D to access the Cernet network**

```
ipv6 route ::/0 2002:d3a2::0901::1
```

**RT-C configuration:**

**# Connect the interfaces of the Internet network**

```
interface GigabitEthernet 0/1
no switchport
```



```
ip address 211.162.7.1 255.255.255.0
```

#### # Connect the interfaces of the IPv4 network inside the site

```
interface FastEthernet 0/1
no switchport
ip address 192.168.0.1 255.255.255.0
```

#### # Configuer the ISATAP tunnel interface

```
interface Tunnel 1
tunnel mode ipv6ip isatap
tunnel source FastEthernet 0/1
ipv6 address 2002:d3a2:0701:1::/64 eui-64
no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
```

#### # Connect the interfaces of the IPv6 network

```
interface FastEthernet 0/2
no switchport
2002:d3a2:0701:10::1/64
```

#### # Configure the 6to4 tunnel interface

```
interface Tunnel 2
tunnel mode ipv6ip 6to4
ipv6 enable
tunnel source GigabitEthernet 0/1
```

#### # Configure the route to the 6to4 tunnel

```
ipv6 route 2002::/16 Tunnel 2
```

#### #Configure the route to the 6to4 relay router RT-D to access the Cernet network

```
ipv6 route ::/0 2002:d3a2::0901::1
```

#### RT-D(6to4 Relay) configuration:

#### # Connect the interfaces of the Internet network

```
interface GigabitEthernet 0/1
no switchport
ip address 211.162.9.1 255.255.255.0
```

#### # Connect the interfaces of the IPv6 network

```
interface FastEthernet 0/1
no switchport
2001::1/64
no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
```

#### # Configure the 6to4 tunnel interface

```
interface Tunnel 1
tunnel mode ipv6ip 6to4
ipv6 address 2002:d3a2::0901::1/64
tunnel source GigabitEthernet 0/1
```



#Configure the route to the 6to4 tunnel

```
ipv6 route 2002::/16 Tunnel 1
```







# 35

## OSPFv3 Configuration

OSPFv2 (RFC2328) runs under the IPv4. The RFC2740 describes OSPFv3, the extension of OSPFv2 that provides support for IPv6 routes. This document briefly describes the OSPFv3 protocol and its configuration.



### Caution

Before learning this document, you must know the OSPFv2 protocol and related configuration.

The OSPFv3 protocol extends the OSPFv2 protocol with the same operation mechanisms and most configurations as the OSPFv2.

### 35.1 Overview

As an Interior Gateway Protocol (IGP), the OSPF runs among the layer 3 devices in a same Autonomous System (AS).

Unlike a vector distance protocol, the OSPF is a link-state protocol. By exchanging various types of link-state advertisements (LSAs) recording link state between devices, it synchronizes link state information between devices and then calculates OSPF route entries through the Dijkstra algorithm.

The OSPFv3 is described in the RFC2740 and supports the IPv6. This section describes the different implementation than OSPFv2.

#### 35.1.1 LSA Association Change

Just as described above, the OSPF is a link-state protocol and its implementation is based on LSAs. Through LSAs, we can know the topologies of networks and address information. In contrast to the IPv4, the IPv6 uses a 128-bit IP address. The design of LSAs is modified accordingly. The types of LSAs are described as follows:

##### ■ Router-LSAs (Type 1)

Each device generates this type of LSAs by itself. They describe the states of its links in specified areas and the cost spent on reaching the links. In contrast to the OSPFv2, the Router-LSAs of the OSPFv3 only indicate the state information of links. They do not record the information about the network addresses connected to routers. The information will be acquired by newly added types of LSAs. Additionally, in the OSPFv2, only one Router-LSA is allowed to be generated for each device in each area. While in the OSPFv3, multiple Router-LSAs are allowed to be generated. Thus, when performing the SPF calculation, we



must consider all the Router-LSAs generated by the device. Router-LSAs and Network-LSAs describe the link topology of areas together.

**Caution**

Through the flag bits on Router-LSAs, we can know whether the routers are Area Border Routers (ABR), AS boundary routers (ASBR) or those at one end of a virtual link.

**■ Network-LSAs (Type 2)**

Network-LSAs only exist in broadcast networks or NBMA networks and are generated by DRs (Designated Routers) in a network. They describe the information about all the routers connected in specified areas on a network. Like Router-LSAs, Network-LSAs also only indicate link-state information and do not record network address information. Network-LSAs and Router-LSAs describe the link topology of areas together.

**■ Inter-Area-Prefix-LSAs (Type 3)**

Generated for an area by the ABRs in the area and used to describe the network information about reaching other areas. They replace type 3 summary-LSAs in OSPFv2. In contrast to the OSPFv2, they use a prefix structure to describe destination network information.

**■ Inter-Area-Router-LSAs (Type 4)**

Generated for an area by the ABRs in the area, used to describe the path information about reaching the ASBRs in other areas, and replacing type 4 summary-LSAs in the OSPFv2.

**■ AS-external-LSAs (Type 5)**

This type of LSAs are generated by ASBRs and used to describe the network information about reaching outside AS. Usually, the network information is generated through other route protocols. In contrast to the OSPFv2, it uses a prefix structure to describe destination network information.

**■ NSSA-LSA (Type 7)**

Their function is same to that of type 5 AS-external-LSAs. However, they are generated by ASBRs in the NSSA area.

**■ Link-LSAs (Type 8)**

In the OSPFv3, the newly added LSA type is generated by each device for each connected link and describes the local link address of the device in the current link and all set IPv6 address prefix information.

**■ Intra-Area-Prefix-LSAs (Type 9)**

In the OSPFv3, the newly added LSA type provides additional address information for Router-LSAs or Network-LSAs. Therefore, it has two effects:

1. Associate network-LSAs and record the prefix information of a transit network.
2. Associate router-LSAs and record the prefix information on all Loopback interfaces, point-to-point links, point-to-multipoint links, virtual links and stub networks of the router in the current area.



Other main change of LSA association:

■ LSA flooding scope

In the OSPFv2, the LSA flooding occurs inside areas and ASs. In the OSPFv3, flooding occurs in local link. Type 8 Link-LSAs is the type that can flood only inside a local link.

■ Handling an unknown LSA type

This is an improvement made by the OSPFv3 based on the OSPFv2.

In the OSPFv2, database synchronization is necessary in the initial establishment of adjacency relationship. If there is an unrecognizable LSA type in the database description message, this relationship cannot be established properly. If there is an unrecognizable LSA type in a link-state updating message, then the type of LSAs will be discarded.

In the OSPFv3, it is allowed to receive an unknown LSA type. By using the information recorded in the LSA header, we can determine how to handle the received unrecognizable LSA type.

### 35.1.1.1 Interface Configuration

---

In the OSPFv3, the change based on interface configuration is as follows:

1. In order for an interface to run OSPFv3, enable the OSPFv3 directly in the interface configuration mode. For OSPFv2, however, run the Network command in the OSPF route configuration mode.
2. If an interface runs OSPFv3, all the addresses on the interface will run IPv6. In the OSPFv2, however, all the addresses are enabled via a **network** command.
3. In the environment where the OSPFv3 runs, a link can support multiple OSPF entities and different devices connecting this link can run one of these OSPF entities. The OSPFv2 does not support this function.

### 35.1.1.2 Router ID Configuration

---

Each device running the OSPFv3 process must be identified with a router ID in the IPv4 address format.

Unlike the OSPFv2 that automatically gets an IPv4 address as a router ID, to enable OSPFv3, you need use the **router-id** command to configure a router ID for the OSPFv3.

### 35.1.1.3 Authentication Mechanism Configuration

---

The OSPFv2 itself supports two authentication modes: plain text authentication and key authentication based on MD5. The OSPFv3 itself does not provide any authentication. Instead, it use the IPSec authentication mechanism. In future, we will support the IPSec authentication mechanism.



### 35.1.2 Basic OSPFv3 Configuration

The OSPFv3 protocol of DES-7200 series has the following features:

- Supports multi-instance OSPF;
- Supports network type setting;
- Supports virtual link;
- Supports passive interfaces;
- Supports an interface to select a participant OSPF entity;
- Supports stub area;
- Supports route redistribution;
- Supports route aggregation;
- Supports timer setting;

To be implemented:

- Supports NSSA areas;
- Supports authentication. The OSPFv3 will use the IPsec authentication mechanism.

Default OSPFv3 configuration:

Router ID		Undefined
Interface Configuration	Interface type	Broadcast network
	Interface cost	Undefined
	Hello message sending interval	10 seconds
	Dead interval of adjacent device	4 times the hello interval.
	LSA sending delay	1 seconds
	LSA retransmit interval	5 seconds
	Priority	1
	MTU check of database description messages	Enabled
Virtual Link	Virtual Link	Undefined
	Hello message sending interval	10 seconds
	Dead interval of adjacent device	4 times the hello interval.
	LSA sending delay	1 seconds
	LSA retransmit interval.	5 seconds
Area Configuration	Area	Undefined
	Default router cost for stub and NSSA area	1



Router ID		Undefined
Route Information Aggregation	Inter-area route aggregation	Off
	External route aggregation	Off
Management Distance	Intra-area route	110
	Inter-area route	110
	External route	110
Auto cost		Enabled The default cost reference is 100 Mbps.
Changing LSAs Group Pacing		240 seconds
Shortest path first (SPF) timer		Time from receiving the topology change to running SPF at the next time :5 seconds The least interval between two calculations:
Route redistribution		Off
Route filtering		Off
Passive interface		Off

To run the OSPFv3, execute the following commands in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
<b>ipv6 router ospf</b> <i>process-id</i>	Start the OSPFv3 route process and enter the OSPFv3 configuration mode.
<b>router-id</b> <i>router-id</i>	Configure the Router ID for running the OSPFv3.
<b>interface</b> <i>interface-type</i> <i>interface-id</i>	Enter the interface configuration mode.
<b>ipv6 ospf</b> <i>process-id</i> <b>area</b> <i>area-id</i> [ <b>instance-id</b> <i>instance-id</i> ]	Enable the OSPFv3 on an interface. <i>instance-id</i> : The OSPFv3 entity number that the interface participates in. The interfaces of different devices connecting a network select to participate in different OSPFv3 entities.
<b>copy running-config</b> <b>startup-config</b>	Save the configuration.



**Caution**

In the interface configuration mode, first enable the interface to participate in OSPFv3 and then configure the OSPFv3 process. After you configure the OSPFv3 process, the interface will automatically participate in the appropriate process.

### 35.1.3 Configuring OSPF Parameters on the Interface

In the interface configuration mode, you can modify the OSPF parameters of an interface to meet practice application needs.

To configure OSPF parameters on the interface, execute the following commands in the interface configuration mode:

Command	Function
<b>ipv6 ospf</b> <i>process-id</i> <b>area</b> <i>area-id</i> [ <b>instance-id</b> <i>instance-id</i> ]	Configure the interface to participate in the OSPFv3 routing process.
<b>ipv6 ospf network</b> { <b>broadcast</b>   <b>non-broadcast</b>   <b>point-to-point</b>   <b>point-to-multipoint</b> [ <b>non-broadcast</b> ]} [ <b>instance</b> <i>instance-id</i> ]	Set the network type of an interface. The default is the broadcast network type.
<b>ipv6 ospf cost</b> <i>cost</i> [ <b>instance</b> <i>instance-id</i> ]	(Optional) Define the cost of an interface.
<b>ipv6 ospf hello-interval</b> <i>seconds</i> [ <b>instance</b> <i>instance-id</i> ]	(Optional) Set the time interval to send the Hello message on an interface. For all nodes in the whole network, the value must be same.
<b>ipv6 ospf dead-interval</b> <i>seconds</i> [ <b>instance</b> <i>instance-id</i> ]	(Optional) Set the adjacency dead-interval on an interface. For all nodes in the whole network, the value must be same.
<b>ipv6 ospf transmit-delay</b> <i>seconds</i> [ <b>instance</b> <i>instance-id</i> ]	(Optional) Set the interval of transmitting link state.
<b>ipv6 ospf retransmit-interval</b> <i>seconds</i> [ <b>instance</b> <i>instance-id</i> ]	(Optional) Set the LSA transmit delay on an interface.
<b>ipv6 ospf priority</b> <i>number</i> [ <b>instance</b> <i>instance-id</i> ]	(Optional) Set the priority of an interface. The priority is used to select Designated Routers (DR) and Backup Designated Routers (BDR).

To remove the configuration, use the **no** form of the above commands.



**Caution**

You can modify the parameter setting of an interface based on actual needs. However, be sure that the settings of some parameters must be identical to those of neighbors. Otherwise, it will be impossible to establish the adjacency relationship. These parameters include the following: **instance**, **hello-interval** and **dead-interval**.

### 35.1.4 Configuring OSPFv3 Area Parameter

The OSPF protocol applies the concept of “hierarchical structure”, allowing a network to be divided into a group of parts connected through a “backbone” in mutual independence way. These parts are called Areas. The backbone part is called Backbone Area and always indicated by the numerical value 0 (or 0.0.0.0).

By using this hierarchical structure, each device is allowed to keep the link state database in the area where it resides and the topology inside the area is invisible to outside. In this way, the link state database of each device can be always in a reasonable size, route calculation time is not too much and the number of messages is not too big.

In the OSPF, the following types of special areas have been defined to meet actual needs:

■ stub Area.

If an area is at the end part of the whole network, then we can design the area as a stub area.

A stub area cannot learn the external route information of an AS (type 5 LSAs). In practical application, external route information is very important in the linkstate database. Therefore, the devices inside a stub area will learn little route information, reducing the system resources for running the OSPF protocol.

When a device inside a stub area wants to access outside of an AS, use the default route entrie (type3 LSA) generated from the default route information published by Area Border Routers in the stub area.

■ NSSA area (Not-So-Stubby Area)

NSSA extends the stub area. By preventing from flooding type 5 LSAs to the devices in the NSSA, it reduce the consumption of device resources. However, unlike a stub area, it allows a certain amount of external route information of the AS to enter an NSSA in other ways, namely, inject into the NSSA in the form of type 7 LSAs.

At present, our company cannot implement the NSSA area function of OSPFv3.

To configure OSPFv3 area parameters, execute the following command in the OSPFv3 configuration mode:



Command	Function
<b>area</b> <i>area-id</i> <b>stub</b> [ <b>no-summary</b> ]	Configure a stub area. no-summary: configure the area to a totally stub area, preventing the area border router in the stub area from sending type3 LSAs to the stub area.
<b>area</b> <i>area-id</i> <b>default-cost</b> <i>cost</i>	Configure the cost of the default route sent to a stub area or NSSA.

To remove the configuration, use the **no** form of the above commands.



#### Caution

After configured an area as the stub/NSSA area, you can configure the default-cost parameter. If this area is changed as an ordinary area, the default-cost configuration will be deleted automatically.

### 35.1.5 Configuring OSPFv3 Virtual Link

In the OSPF, all areas must connect to the backbone area to ensure the communication with other areas. If some areas cannot connect to the backbone area, they must use virtual links to connect the backbone area.

To establish a virtual link, execute the following command in the OSPFv3 configuration mode:

Command	Function
<b>area</b> <i>area-id</i> <b>virtual-link</b> <i>router-id</i> [ <b>hello-interval</b> <i>seconds</i> ] [ <b>dead-interval</b> <i>seconds</i> ] [ <b>transmit-delay</b> <i>seconds</i> ] [ <b>retransmit-interval</b> <i>seconds</i> ] [ <b>instance</b> <i>instance-id</i> ]	Configure a virtual link.

To remove the configuration, use the **no** form of the above commands.



#### Caution

1. It is not allowed to create a virtual link in the stub area and NSSA.
2. A virtual link can be taken as a special interface, so its configuration is same to that of a normal interface. You must ensure that the configurations of **instance**, **hello-interval** and **dead-interval** configured at the two ends of the virtual link are identical.



### 35.1.6 Configuring OSPFv3 Route Aggregation

Without route aggregation, every device in a network must maintain the routing information of the whole network. By aggregating some information together, route aggregation can alleviate the burden on the L3 equipment and network bandwidth. As the size of a network is growing, route aggregation becomes more and more important.

Layer 3 devices of ES-7200 series support two kinds of route aggregation: inter-area route aggregation and external route aggregation.

#### 35.1.6.1 Configuring Inter-area Route Aggregation

The ABR in an area needs to advertise the routes in the area to other areas. If the route addresses are continuous, the ABR aggregates these routes and then advertises it.

To configure inter-area route aggregation, execute the following command in the OSPFv3 configuration mode:

Command	Function
<b>area</b> <i>area-id</i> <b>range</b> <i>ipv6-prefix/prefix-length</i> [ <b>advertise</b>   <b>not-advertise</b> ]	Configure inter-area route aggregation.

Use the **no area** *area-id range* {*ipv6-prefix /prefix-length*} command to disable the inter-area route aggregation.

### 35.1.7 Configuring Bandwidth Reference Value of OSPFv3 Interface Metric

The metric for the OSPF protocol is a bandwidth value based on an interface. The cost value of the interface is calculated based on its bandwidth.

For example, if the bandwidth reference value of an interfaces is 100 Mbps and the bandwidth of the interfaces is 10Mbps, the automatically calculated interface cost is  $100/10=10$ .

Currently, the interface reference value of network interfaces of DES-7200 series is defaulted to 100 Mbps.

To change the bandwidth reference value, execute the following command in the OSPFv3 configuration mode:

Command	Function
<b>auto-cost</b> [ <b>reference-bandwidth</b> <i>ref-bw</i> ]	Configure the bandwidth reference value for interface metric.



**Caution**

You can run the **ipv6 ospf cost *cost-value*** command in the interface configuration mode to set the cost for a specified interface, which takes precedence over the one calculated based on bandwidth reference value.

### 35.1.8 Configuring OSPFv3 Default Route

In the OSPFv3 protocol, you can generate default route in many ways. For example, the default route represented by Type-3 LSA will be automatically generated in a stub area. For details, refer to Configuring OSPFv3 Area Parameters. In addition, you can configure a default route represented by Type 5 LSA and advertise it to the whole OSPF AS.

To configure a default route, execute the following commands in the OSPFv3 configuration mode:

Command	Function
<b>default-information originate [always] [metric <i>metric-value</i>] [metric-type <i>type-value</i>] [route-map <i>map-name</i>]</b>	Configure a default route.

Execute the **no default-information originate** command to remove the generated default route.

**Caution**

This command cannot be configured on the devices in a stub area. Once configured, the device automatically becomes ASBR.

### 35.1.9 Configuring OSPFv3 Timer

The OSPF protocol belongs to link-state protocols. When the link state changes, the OSPF process will trigger the SPF calculation. You can also use the following command to configure SPF calculation delay and the interval between two SPF calculations.

To configure OSPF timer, execute the following commands in the OSPFv3 configuration mode:

Command	Function
<b>timers spf <i>delay holdtime</i></b>	Configure SPF calculation delay and the interval between two SPF calculations.



### 35.1.10 Configuring OSPFv3 Route Redistribution

Route redistribution allows you to redistribute the routes of one routing protocol to another routing protocol.

To configure the OSPFv3 route redistribution, execute the following commands in the OSPFv3 configuration mode:

Command	Function
<b>redistribute</b> <i>protocol</i> [ <b>metric</b> <i>metric-value</i> ] [ <b>metric-type</b> <i>type-value</i> ] [ <b>route-map</b> <i>map-tag</i> ] [ <i>level-1</i>   <i>level-2</i>   <i>level-1-2</i> ] [ <b>match</b> [ <i>internal</i>   <i>external</i>   <i>nssa-external</i> (1 2)]]]	Redistribute the routes of one routing protocol to another routing protocol. You can set the conditions of redistribution.  At present, the OSPFv3 supports redistribution of static, connect, RIP, BGP, ISIS and OSPF routes.  When redistributing ISIS routes, you can configure the level parameter to redistribute only the ISIS routes of the specific level.  When redistributing OSPF routes, you can configure the match parameter to redistribute the OSPF routes of the specific sub type.
<b>default-metric</b> <i>number</i>	Configure the default metric for route redistribution.

You can use the **no redistribute** *protocol* mode to disable route redistribution.



#### Caution

At present, our company does not support the application of the tag parameter.

### 35.1.11 Configuring OSPFv3 Passive Interface

To prevent other Layer 3 devices in the network from learning the route information of this device, you can set a network interface to a passive interface in the routing protocol configuration mode

For the OSPFv3 protocol, if a network interface is configured as a passive network interface, then this network interface will receive/send no OSPF message.

To configure an interface as a passive interface, execute the following command in the OSPFv3 configuration mode:



Command	Function
<b>passive-interface</b> { <b>default</b>   <i>interface-type</i> <i>interface-number</i> }	Configure a passive interface.

You can use the **no passive-interface** {*interface-id* | **default**} command to cancel the configuration of a passive interface.

### 35.1.12 Debugging and Monitoring OSPFv3

The OSPFv3 process supports plenty of debug commands and monitoring commands.

#### 35.1.12.1 OSPFv3 Debugging Command

To debug OSPFv3, execute the following commands in the privileged configuration mode:

Command	Function
<b>debug ipv6 ospf events</b>	Show the OSPFv3 event information.
<b>debug ipv6 ospf ifsm</b>	Show the state machine events and changes of the outbounding interface.
<b>debug ipv6 ospf lsa</b>	Show the related OSPFv3 LSA information.
<b>debug ipv6 ospf n fsm</b>	Show state machine events and changes of neighbor.
<b>debug ipv6 ospf nsm</b>	Show the OSPFv3 NSM module related information.
<b>debug ipv6 ospf packet</b>	Show the OSPFv3 packet information.
<b>debug ipv6 ospf route</b>	Show the OSPF routing calculation and addition information.

Use the above **undebug** commands to disable the above enabled **debug** commands.



#### Caution

The debug commands are provided for technicians.

Running a debug command will affect the performance of the system in a certain extent. Therefore, after running debug commands, be sure to use **undebug** commands to protect the performance of the system.

#### 35.1.12.2 OSPFv3 Monitoring Command

To monitor OSPFv3, execute the following commands in the privileged configuration mode:

Command	Function
<b>show ipv6 ospf</b>	Show the information of the OSPFv3 process.



Command	Function
<b>Show ipv6 ospf</b> [ <i>process-id</i> ] <b>database</b> [ <i>isa-type</i> [ <i>adv-router</i> <i>router-id</i> ]]	Show the database information of the OSPF process.
<b>show ipv6 ospf interface</b> [ <i>interface-type</i> <i>interface-number</i> ]	Show the interface information of the OSPFv3 process.
<b>show ipv6 ospf neighbor</b> [ <i>process-id</i> ] [ <b>detail</b> ] [ <i>neighbor-id</i>   <i>interface-type</i> <i>interface-number</i> [ <i>neighbor-id</i> ]]	Show the neighbor information of the OSPFv3 process.
<b>show ipv6 ospf</b> [ <i>process-id</i> ] <b>route</b>	Show the OSPFv3 route information.
<b>show ipv6 ospf</b> [ <i>process-id</i> ] <b>topology</b> [ <i>area</i> <i>area-id</i> ]	Show each area topology of the OSPFv3.
<b>show ipv6 ospf</b> [ <i>process-id</i> ] <b>virtual-links</b>	Show the virtual link information of the OSPFv3 process.







# 36 IP Multicast Routing Configuration

## 36.1 Overview

---

This chapter describes how to configure multicast routing protocol. For a complete description of the IP multicast routing commands in this chapter, refer to other chapters about "IP Multicast Routing Commands".

Traditional IP communication allows a host to send packets to a single host (unicast transmission) or to all hosts (broadcast transmission). IP multicast provides the third scheme that allows a host to send packets to a subset of all hosts. These hosts are known as group members.

The destination address is a Class D IP addresses which can be in the range 224.0.0.0 to 239.255.255.255. Similar to UDP, multicast is a best effort service. It does not provide reliable transmission and error control as TCP.

The multicast environment consists of senders and receivers. The sender, regardless of whether it is a member of a group, can send the multicast message. However, only the members of a group can receive the message destined to this group.

Membership in a multicast group is dynamic; hosts can join and leave at any time. There is no restriction on the location or number of members in a multicast group. If necessary, a host can be a member of more than one multicast group at a time. Therefore, the active status of a group and the number of group members vary from time to time.

Routers run a multicast routing protocol (such as PIM-DM, PIM-SM, etc.) to maintain their routing tables to forward multicast messages, and use the IGMP to learn the status of the members within a group on their directly attached subnets. A host can join an IGMP group by sending the IGMP Report message.

IP multicast is ideal for "one-to-multiple" multimedia applications.

### 36.1.1 IP Multicast Routing Implementation

---

There are the following multicast routing protocols:

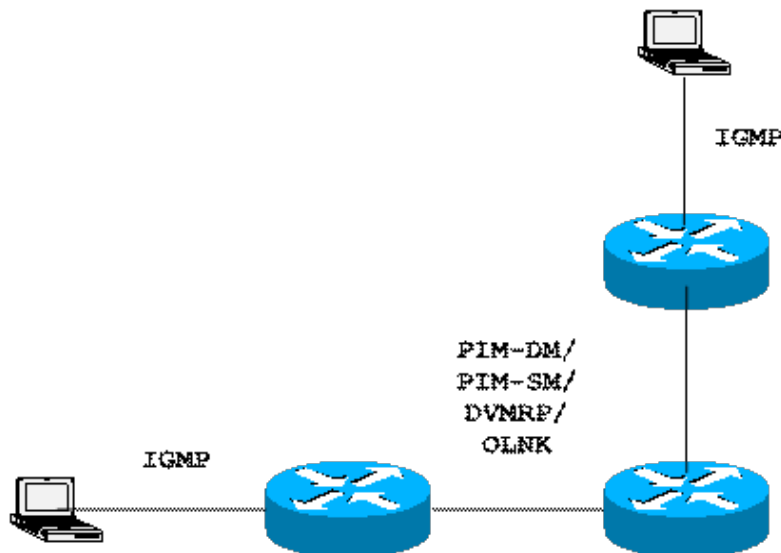
- IGMP: Runs between the routers and the hosts in a LAN to track the membership of a group..



- PIM-DM: A dynamic multicast routing protocol, runs between routers to establish the multicast routing table for forwarding.

The following figure shows the multicast routing protocols used in the IP multicast environment:

**Figure 36-1** IP Multicast Routing Protocols within the IP Multicast Environment



### 36.1.2 IGMP Overview

To participate in IP multicast, the multicast host, router, and multi-layer switch must support IGMP. This protocol is used by the host to notify the router or multi-layer switch the multicast membership of the network they connect to determine how to forward the multicast traffic.

By using the information obtained from the IGMP, the router or multi-layer switch can maintain an interface-based multicast member list. The multicast member list is activated only when at least one host of an interface is a member of the group. This switch supports IGMPv1 to IGMPv3.

#### 36.1.2.1 IGMPV1

There are only two types of messages defined in IGMP Version 1: Membership query and Membership report.

A host sends a report packet to join a group, and the router sends the query packet at periodical intervals to ensure that a group has at least one host. When a group contains no host, the router will delete that group.

#### 36.1.2.2 IGMPV2

In Version 2, there are only four types of packets:

- Membership query



- Version 1 membership report
- Version 2 membership report
- Leave group

The process is basically the same as that of version 1, except that the leave mechanism of the host has been improved. For V2, the host can send a leave packet to notify the router, which then sends a query to verify the existence of the host. This makes joining and leaving a group more efficiently.

In addition, version 2 handles multiple routes of multiple access networks. In the multicast network that runs IGMP, there is a dedicated query multicast router or L3 multicast switch, which is responsible for sending IGMP query packets. This dedicated router or L3 switch is chosen through an election process. At the beginning, all the routers are queriers. When a router receives the query from a router with lower IP address for membership, it changes from the receiver to the non-querier. Therefore, ultimately only one router is at the query status. This router is the one with the lowest IP address in all multicast routers.

When the querier router fails, the IGMPv2 also handles the fault. The non-query router maintains the interval timers of other queriers. Every time when a router receives a membership query packet, it resets the timer. If the timer expires, the router starts to send query packets, and the querier router election starts again.

The querier router must send membership query requests at periodical intervals to ensure that other routers on the network know that the querier router still works. For this purpose, the querier router maintains one query interval timer. When the membership query message is sent, this timer will be reset. When the interval timer is zero or not necessary, the querier router sends another membership query.

When the device appears for the first time, that is, a new device is added, it sends a series of general query messages to see which multicast groups shall be forwarded on a specific interface. The number of common query packets sent by a router is based on the start query count configured of the router. The querying interval between the initial general query messages is defined through the startup query interval.

When a querier router receives a leave packet, it must send a particular group membership query to see if the host is the last that leaves the group. Before the router stops forwarding packets to the group, it sends a series of such packets, the number of which is equal to the last member query number. The router sends multiple particular membership queries to ensure that there is no member in the group. Such a query is sent every other the seconds of the last-member query interval to separate the queries. When no response is received, the router stops forwarding multicast packets to the group at the particular interface.

### 36.1.2.3 IGMPV3

---

In the applications of the IGMPV1 and V2, there are the following defects:

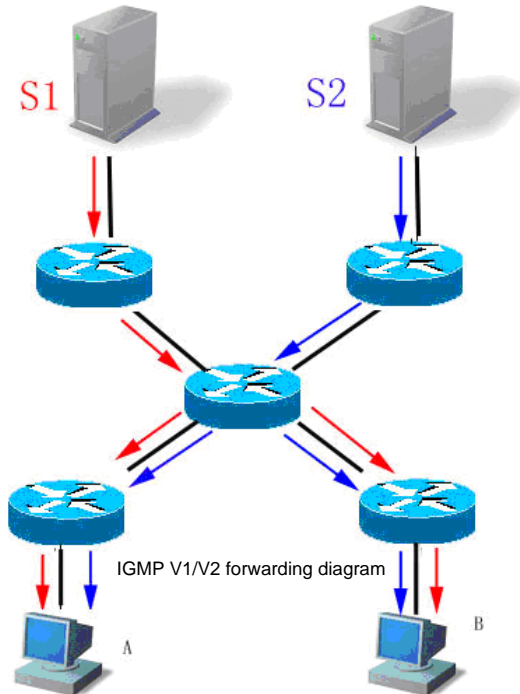
- Lack of effective measures to control multicast sources



- Difficult to establish the multicast path due to the unknown location of the multicast source
- Difficult to find a unique multicast address, possibly multicast groups are using the same multicast address.

On the basis of the IGMPV1/V2, the IGMPV3 provides an additional source filtering multicast function. In the IGMP V1/V2, the host determines to join a group and receive the multicast traffic to the group address from any source only based on the group address. On the other hand, the host running the IGMP V3 notifies this host the desired multicast group to join, and also the addresses of the multicast sources to receive. The host can indicate that it wants to receive multicast traffic from which sources through a list or an exclusion list. At the same time, another benefit of the IGMP v3 is that it saves bandwidth to avoid unnecessary, invalid multicast data traffics from occupying network bandwidth. It is particularly useful in the case where multiple multicast sources share one multicast address. The IGMPv1 and IGMPv2 can also implement “source address filters” in some sense, which, however, is performed on the reception end of the multicast traffic. As shown in the following diagram, there are two multicast sources (S1 and S2), which send the data traffic of the same multicast address (G). The multicast flow of S1 and S2 will be sent to all hosts that are receiving from G. If host A only wants to receive that of S1, filtering on the terminal by using the related client software has to be used to keep out the interference of S2 dataflow.

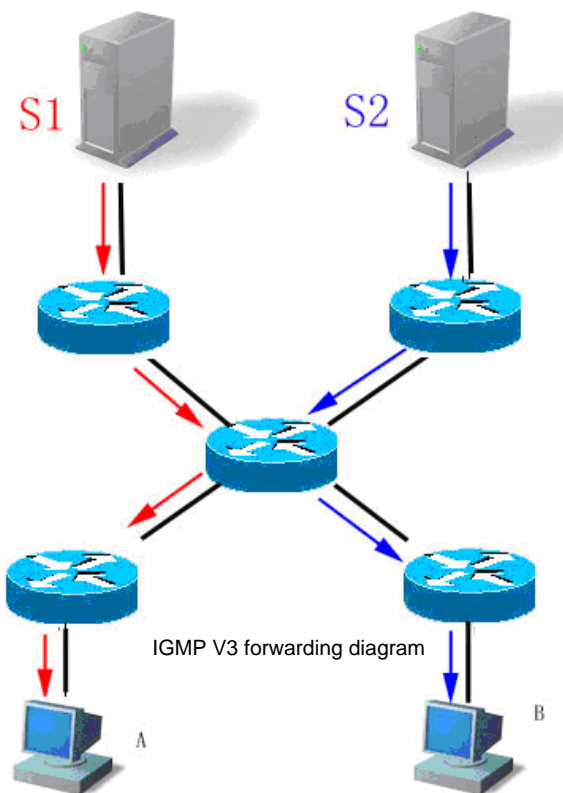
Figure 36-2



If the equipment in the network supports IGMP v3, host A wants to receive the traffic from S1 only, it can send the IGMPv3 packet of join G include S1. If host B wants to receive the traffic from S2 only, it can send the IGMPv3 packet of join G include S2. Therefore, the traffics are forwarded as shown in the following diagram. resulting in save of bandwidth.



Figure 36-3



In contrast to Version 2, Version 3 defines the following two kinds of messages:

- Membership Query
- Version 3 Membership Report

There are three types of Membership Query:

- Used to query the all the multicast members under the interface:
- Group-Specific Query Used to query the members of the specified group under the interface:
- This type is the new one in the IGMPv3, used to query if any member under the interface needs to receive the multicast traffic of the particular group from the sources in the specified source list.

Different from the Membership Report in IGMP Version2, the Membership Report in the IGMP Version3 always has the destination address of 224.0.0.22. The Membership Report packets in IGMP Version3 include the information of multiple groups.

The IGMP Version3 also recognizes the Membership Report of both Versions 1 and 2 and the Leave Group message of Version 2.

The process of IGMP Version3 is similar to that of the IGMP Version2. IGMP Version3 is downward compatible with IGMP Version1 and IGMP Version2.



### 36.1.3 PIM-DM Overview

---

The protocol independent multicast (PIM) is designed by the IDMR work group. As indicated by its name, the PIM does not rely on a certain unicast routing protocol. Instead, it can perform the RPF check by a unicast routing table containing various unicast routing protocols, rather than forwarding the multicast packets by maintaining a separate multicast routing table. Because the PIM need not to send or receive the multicast routing updates, its overhead is much lower than other multicast protocols. The PIM design is intended to support both the SPT and shared tree at the same time and to enable the flexible switching between them on the Internet. Therefore, the PIM takes the advantages of the SPT and shared tree and raises the multicast efficiency. The PIM has two modes: Dense-Mode and Sparse-Mode.

PIM-DM is the abbreviation of Protocol Independent Multicast Dense Mode. By default, when the multicast source starts sending multicast data, all the network nodes in the domain need to receive the data. Therefore, the PIM-DM maintains the multicast distribution tree through broadcast-prune to forward the multicast packets. PIM is independent of the specific unicast routing protocol, using the existing unicast routing table to implement RPF (Reverse Path Forwarding) check. RPF is the basis of multicast forwarding in the multicast routing protocol. It works in the following way: when the multicast information passes the source tree, the multicast router checks the multicast source address of the multicast packets received to see if the interfaces passed by the multicast packets are on the source branch. If yes, the RPF check is successful, and the multicast packets will be forwarded. Otherwise, the RPF check fails, and the multicast packets will be discarded.

When the multicast source starts to send data, the routers on the route forward the multicast packets to all PIM activated interfaces except the source RPF interface (that is, the interface to the multicast source on the shortest path). Thus all network nodes will receive these multicast packets in PIM-DM area. To implement multicast forwarding, the routers on the path need to create the appropriate multicast route entry (sending source, destination group) (S,G) for group G and source S to create the multicast distribution tree. (S,G) contains multicast source address, multicast group address, ingoing interface, outgoing interface list, timer and identifier, etc. Once this tree is constructed, it will broadcast all the multicast traffics.

If there are no group members in a certain area, PIM-DM will send a pruning message to prune the forwarding interfaces which are connected to this area and create pruning state. Pruning state is corresponding to timeout timer. When timer expires, Pruning is transmitted into forwarding, which enables multicast data to flow down along these branches. Besides, pruning state contains multicast source and multicast group information of multicast. When multicast group members appear in pruning area, to reduce reaction period, PIM-DM will be active to send a prune message to upstream without waiting for timeout of upstream pruning state so as to enable pruning to forwarding state.



As long as Source S can still send message to Group G, the first hop switch will periodically send (S,G) state refresh message to initial broadcast tree to finish the refreshing. With PIM-DM state refresh mechanism, you can refresh the state of downstream so that pruning of broadcast tree branches will not timeout.

Except for DR related selection in multi-path access network, PIM-DM also introduces the following mechanism: use assertion to select a single transmission in case that multicast packets are forwarded repeatedly to the same segment; use join/prune suppression to reduce redundant join/prune message; use pruning deny to deny these illegal pruning.

In PIM-DM domain, PIM-DM switches periodically send Hello message to find adjoining PIM switches and make judgment of leaf network and leaf switches and is also responsible for DR selection in multi-path access network.

To be suitable for IGMP v1, PIM-DM is responsible for DR selection. Choose the highest Priority to be DR when all the PIM neighbors support DR Priority on the port. If the priority is identical, choose the switch with the largest port IP to be DR. If many switches do not announce their priorities in hello messages, switches with the highest port IP value is selected to be DR.

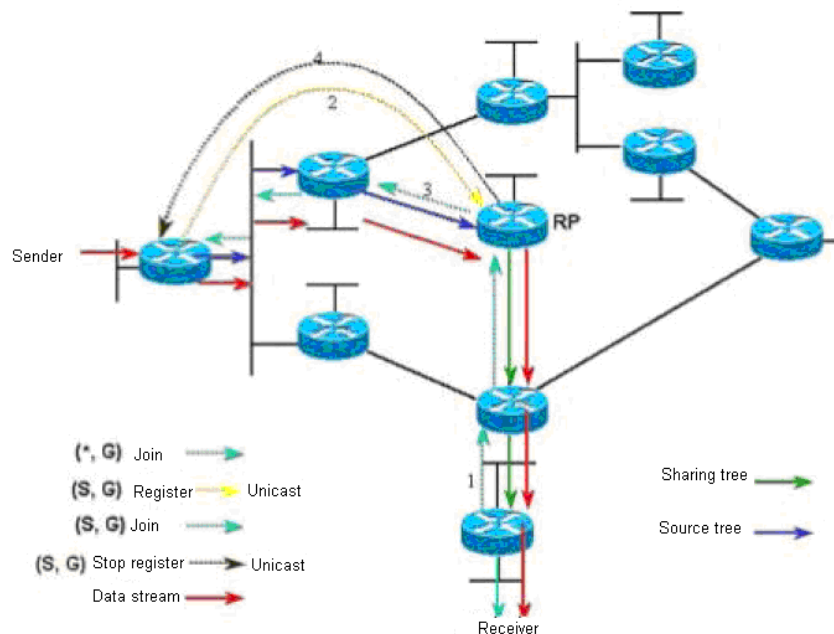
PIM-DM v2 of our switches supports neighbor filtering list, CIDR, VLSM and IGMP v1, v2, v3.

## 36.2 PIM-SM Overview

---

The Protocol Independent Multicast Sparse Mode (PIM-SM) is a protocol independent multicast sparse mode. In a PIM-SM domain, the PIM-SM-enabled device sends the Hello message to discover adjacent PIM-SM devices and selects the designated router (DR) in a multi-access network. The DR is responsible for sending the join/prune message in the root node of the multicast distribution tree direction for the direct connection group member, or sending the data of the direct connection multicast source to the multicast distribution tree.



**Figure 36-4** Join Mechanism of PIM-SM Explicitly

The PIM-SM forwards multicast data packets by establishing a multicast distribution tree. The multicast distribution tree is divided into two types: Shared Tree that takes the RP of the group G as the root and Shortest Path Tree that takes the multicast source as the root. The PIM-SM establishes and maintains the multicast distribution tree with the explicit join/prune mechanism. As shown in the above figure, when the DR receives a join request from the receiving terminal, it will multicast a (\*, G) join message hop-by-hop to the RP of the group G to join the shared tree. When the source host sends multicast data to the group, the source data is encapsulated into the registration message and unicast by the DR to the RP. Then the RP will forward the deencapsulated data packets to group members along the shared tree. The RP will send a (S, G) join message to the first hop on the source direction to join the shortest path tree of this source. In this way, the source's data packets are sent to the RP without encapsulation along its shortest path tree. When the first multicast data reaches along this tree, the RP will send the registration stop message to the DR of the source, notifying the DR of stopping registration. Consequently, the source's multicast data packets are sent to the RP along its shortest path tree rather than being registered and encapsulated. Then the RP forwards the data packets to group members along the shared tree. When there is no need of multicast data packets, the DR multicasts a prune message to the RP of the group G hop-by-hop to prune the shared tree.

The PIM-SM also offers an mechanism of select the root poing (RP). One or more Candidate-BSRs are configured in a PIM-SM domain. The PIM-SM selects a BSR by following a certain rule. There are also Candidate-RPs in a PIM-SM domain that unicast the packets including their IP addresses and available multicast groups to the BSR. The BSR will periodically generate a BSR message which includes a system candidate RP and the corresponding multicast group address. The BSR messages are sent hop-by-hop within the



whole domain. The device receives and saves these BSR messages. If the DR receives a report on the member relationship of a multicast group from its directly connected host but has no route entries of the multicast group, the DR will use one Hash algorithm to map the multicast group address to a candidate RP that can serve this group. Then, the DR multicasts the Join/Prune message to the RP hop-by-hop. If the DR receives multicast data packets from its directly connected host but has no route entries of the multicast group, the DR will use one Hash algorithm to map the multicast group address to a candidate RP that can serve this group. Then the DR encapsulates multicast data packets into the registration message and unicasts it to the RP.

The main difference between the PIM-SM and the broadcast/prune model-based PIM-DM is that the PIM-SM is based on the explicit join model. In other words, the receiver sends the join message to the RP, while the router only forwards the packets of that multicast group on the outbound interface that has joined a multicast group. The PIM-SM uses the shared tree to forward multicast packets. Each group has a Rendezvous Point (RP). The multicast source sends the data to the RP along the shortest path, and then the RP sends the data to the receivers along the shortest path. This is similar to the CBT, but the PIM-SM does not use the concept of core. One of the major advantages of the PIM-SM is that it not only receives multicast messages through the shared tree but also provides a shared tree-to-SPT conversion mechanism. Such conversion reduces network delay and possible congestion on the RP, but it consumes enormous router resources. So it is suitable for the case where there are only a few multicast data sources and network groups.

The PIM-SM uses the shared tree and SPT to distribute multicast frames. At this time, it is assumed that other devices don't want to receive these multicasts unless otherwise stated definitely. When a host joins a group, the equipment connected to the host must notify the root (or the RP) by using the PIM join message. This join message is transferred one after another through the routers to create a shared tree structure. Therefore, the RP records the transfer path and also the registration message from the first hop router (DR) of the multicast source, and improves the shared tree upon these two messages. The branch/leaf messages are updated by periodically querying messages. With the shared tree, the multicast source first sends multicast packets to the RP, guaranteeing that all the receivers can receive them. \*G represents a tree, in which \* represents all sources, and G represents a particular multicast address. The prune message is also used in the shared tree. That is, the prune message will be sent when a branch/leaf does not want to receive multicast frames.

The PIMv2 BSR is a method of distributing the group-to-RP message to all devices without the need of setting the RP for them. The BSR uses the hop-by-hop broadcast BSR message to distribute the mapping message. At first, the BSR is selected among routers in the same process as selecting a root bridge based on priority level among layer 2 bridges. Each BSR checks the BSR messages and only forwards those having a priority higher than or equal to its own (higher IP address). The selected BSR sends its BSR message to the all-PIM-routers multicast group (224.0.0.13), where TTL is 1. After the adjacent PIMv2 router receives the message, it multicasts it while setting the TTL to 1. In this way, the BSR message is received by all devices hop-by-hop. Since the message contains the IP address



of the BSR, the candidate BSR can know which router is the current RP based on this message. The candidate RPs send candidate RP advertisements to announce in which address ranges they can become an RP. The BSR stores them in its local candidate RP cache. The BSR notifies all PIM routers of its local candidate RPs periodically. These messages reach various devices hop-by-hop in the same way.

### 36.3 Basic Multicast Routing Configuration

- Basic multicast configuration includes:
- Enabling multicast routing forwarding (required)
- Enabling multicast routing protocol (required)
- Enabling IGMP
- Configuring TTL threshold (optional)

#### 36.3.1 Enabling multicast routing forwarding

Enabling multicast routing to allow the router software forwards multicast message.

In the global configuration mode to input following commands to enable the multicast message forwarding:

Command	Function
ip multicast-routing	Enabling multicast routing forwarding



#### Caution

If this command is configured, the VLAN port, L2AP member port, and L3AP member port will change. You should first execute the “NO” form of the command before you can restart multicast routing forwarding.

#### 36.3.2 Enabling IP multicast routing protocol

So far it supports PIM-DM multicast routing protocol in our products.

Enable PIM-DM on the port to activate multicast with dense mode, use the following steps:

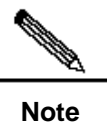
Command	Purpose
DES-7200(config-if) # <b>ip pim dense-mode</b>	Enter the port that needs to run PIM-DM and enable PIM-DM multicast routing process in port configuration mode. This command must be configured on the Layer 3 interface.



Command	Purpose
DES-7200(config-if) # <b>ip pim sparse-mode</b>	Enter the port that needs to run PIM-SM and enable PIM-SM multicast routing process in the port configuration mode. This command must be configured on the Layer 3 interface.

It demonstrates how to configure PIM-DM on FastEthernet0/1 in the following example.

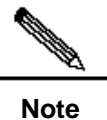
```
ip multicast-routing
interface FastEthernet 0/1
ip address 172.16.8.1 255.255.255.0
ip pim dense-mode
```



When the multicast routing protocol is enabled on the interface, the IGMP function is activated at the same time.

### 36.3.3 Enabling IGMP

When multicast routing protocol enabled, IGMP is enabled as well



Hosts and routers of IGMP are activated simultaneously.

## 36.4 Advanced Multicast Routing Configuration

Advanced multicast routing configuration includes:

- Configuring multicast routing characteristics (optional)
- Configuring IGMP tasks list(optional)
- Configuring PIM-DM tasks list(optional)
- Configuring DVMRP interoperability tasks list(optional)

### 36.4.1 Configuring Multicast Routing Characteristics

The configuration of advanced IPv6 multicast functions include:

- Configure TTL threshold
- Limit the number of entries to be added in the IP multicast routing table (optional)
- Set IP multicast boundary (optional)
- Configure static routes (optional)



- Monitor and maintain IP multicast routes (optional)

### 36.4.1.1 Configuring TTL Threshold

Use **ip multicast ttl-threshold** to configure TTL threshold of multicast packet which is allowed to transmit through the port, and use **no ip multicast ttl-threshold** to deploy the default value. The default value is 1.

Command	Purpose
<b>ip multicast ttl-threshold</b> <i>ttl-value</i>	Configure TTL threshold on the port.

### 36.4.1.2 Limiting the Number of Entries to be Added in the IP Multicast Routing Table

Use **ip multicast route-limit** *limit* [*threshold*] to limit the number of entries to be added in the multicast routing table, and use **no ip multicast route-limit** *limit* [*threshold*] to restore it to the default value, or 1024.

Command	Purpose
<b>ip multicast route-limit</b> <i>limit</i> [ <i>threshold</i> ]	<p>Limit the number of entries to be added in the multicast routing table.</p> <p><i>limit</i>: Number of entries to be added in the multicast routing table, in the range of 1 to 2147483647, and 1024 by default.</p> <p><i>threshold</i> (optional): Number of routes triggering an alert message, 2147483647 by default.</p>

### 36.4.1.3 Configuring IP Multicast Boundary

Use **ip multicast boundary** to configure multicast boundary of a port and use **no ip multicast boundary** to disable the configured boundary. The second configuration command will cover the first one.

Use the following command in the interface configuration mode:

Command	Purpose
<b>ip multicast boundary</b> <i>access-list</i>	Configuring IP Multicast Boundary

Following example to show the interface configuration boundary of FastEthernet 5/2

```
interface FastEthernet 5/2
ip multicast boundary acl
ip access-list standard acl
permit 192.168.20.97 255.255.255.0
```

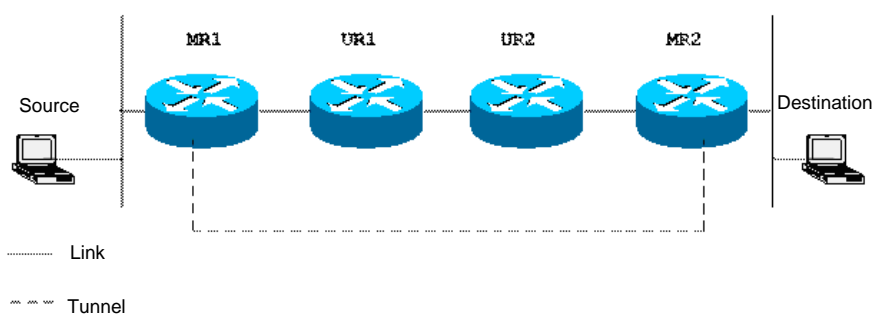


### 36.4.1.4 Configuring Static Routes

Multicast static route allows multicast forwarding path to differ from unicast path. RPF inspection will be processed when forwarding multicast packets. The actual receiving port is the port expected to receive packets (the port is the next hop of unicast reaching the sender). The inspection is reasonable if the topologies of unicast and multicast are the same. But in some cases, unicast path is expected to differ from that of multicast.

The most common cases adopt tunneling technology. GRE tunnel is configured between two switches to solve the problem that multicast protocol is not supported by the switches on one path. Each unicast switch (UR) only supports the unicast packets while each multicast switch (MR) supports multicast packets in the figure below. Source sends multicast packets to destination by MR1 and MR2. MR2 forwards multicast packets only when they are received from tunnel. If so, unicast packets will also pass the tunnel when forwarded from destination to source. As we know, it is slower to forward packets through tunnel than direct sending.

**Figure 36-5** Schematic Diagram for Configuring Multicast Static Routes



Switch can implement RPF inspection by configured information instead of unicast routing list through multicast static route configuration. Therefore, multicast packets use tunnel while unicast packets does not. Multicast static routes only exist locally. They will not declare outgoing or implement routing transmission.

In the global configuration mode, use the following command to configure multicast static route.

Command	Purpose
<b>ip mroute</b> <i>source-address mask</i> { <i>interface-type interface-number</i> } [ <b>distance</b> ]	Configure multicast static route

### 36.4.1.5 Configuring IP Multicast Boundary

Use **ip multicast static** *source-address group-address interface-type interface-number* to control the direction of multicast flows on the Layer 2 port. You can configure more than one command for a multicast flow, namely, configure multiple ports for forwarding. Once configured, the multicast flow can be configured only through the configured ports.



Command	Purpose
<b>ip multicast static</b> <i>source-address</i> <i>group-address interface-type</i> <i>interface-number</i>	Control the direction of multicast flows on the Layer 2 port.

This command controls the forwarding of multicast flows on the Layer 2 port, without directly influence on the multicast protocol's processing packets. Since some features of the multicast protocol (for instance, PIM-DM or PIM-SM) rely on multicast flows, this may influence the activities of the multicast protocol.

### 36.4.1.6 Monitoring and Maintenance of Multicast Routing

You can remove the content of a particular cache or a routing table if they are suspected to be invalid. Execute the following commands in the privileged configuration mode:

Command	Purpose
<b>clear ip mroute</b> [*   <i>group-address</i>   <i>source-address</i> ]	Delete entries from multicast routing table.

You can determine the resource utilization and solve network problems by displaying IP multicast route table, associated cache and database. Use the following command in administration mode:

Command	Purpose
<b>show ip rpf</b> { <i>source-address</i> }	Show RPF information.

## 36.4.2 Configuring IGMP

### 36.4.2.1 Configuring IGMP Version

Use the following command in the interface configuration mode to configure the IGMP version.

Command	Purpose
<b>ip igmp version</b> {1   2   3}	Configure the running IGMP version.

Use **no ip igmp version** to set the current IGMP version a default value Version2.

### 36.4.2.2 Adding Membership Information on Routers Statically

Sometimes the subnet connected to an interface has no host that can send IGMP member reports, but you still want the switch to forward the multicast packets of one group to the



subnet. In this case, you can configure the interface to be a static connection multicast group, to forward the multicast frames to the interface.

In the privileged mode, make configuration by performing the following steps:

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>config terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
DES-7200(config)# <b>interface</b> interface-id	Enter the interface configuration mode.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>ip igmp static-group</b> group-address	Add the static group on the configuration interface.
DES-7200(config-if) # <b>exit</b>	Return to the privileged mode.

You can use the **no ip igmp static-group** *group-address* command to cancel the configured static connection group.

### 36.4.2.3 Configuring a Router to Be a Member of a Group

This command configures an interface on the switch to have host behavior and join the corresponding multicast group. In this way, the sub switch can learn corresponding group message actively. If required, it will use this configuration when one group member is added to the interface. Use the no form of this command to cancel the join of the switch in this group.

Command	Purpose
DES-7200# <b>config terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
DES-7200(config)# <b>interface</b> interface-id	Enter the interface configuration mode.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>ip igmp join-group</b> group-address	Configure the interface to join the host group.
DES-7200(config-if) # <b>exit</b>	Return to the privileged mode.

You can use the **no ip igmp join-group** *group-address* command to remove the switch from the group.

The following command shows how to add the **gigabitethernet0/1** interface to the multicast group of 224.1.1.1:

```
interface gigabitethernet 0/1
ip igmp join-group 224.1.1.1
```



#### 36.4.2.4 Configuring Query Count of the Last Member

---

When the message of leaving the multicast group is received, the querier device sends the specific membership query to verify whether there is any member in the group. By default the period is 2.

Run the following commands for configuration in the interface mode:

Command	Function
<b>ip igmp last-member-query-count</b> <i>lmqc</i>	Configure query count of the last member. The default range is 1 - 7.

Using the command **no ip igmp last-member-query-count** to restore the default configuration.

#### 36.4.2.5 Configuring Query Interval of the Last Member

---

When the message of leaving group is received, the querier device sends the specific membership query to verify whether there is any member in the group. If no report is received during the last-member query interval period, the device will regard the host that is leaving the group is the last member of that group, and then delete the information of the group. By default the period is 1 ms.

Run the following commands for configuration in the interface mode:

Command	Function
<b>ip igmp last-member-query-interval</b> <i>lmqi</i>	Configure the query interval of the last member Interval range: <1-255>. Unit: 0.1s

Using the command **no ip igmp last-member-query-interval** to restore the default configuration.

#### 36.4.2.6 Configuring Query Interval of the General Member

---

Whenever a group membership query interval period passes, the querier device sends the membership query message on regular basis to verify the current membership. The destination address to send the group membership query message is the all-hosts multicast address 224.0.0.1, and TTL is 1. By default that period is 125 s.

Run the following commands in the interface mode:



Command	Function
<b>ip igmp last-member-query-count</b> <i>seconds</i>	Configure the query times within the range: 1-18000. Unit: s

Using the command **no ip igmp query-interval** to restore the default configuration.

#### 36.4.2.7 Configuring the Maximum Response Interval

The membership query message sent by the querier device requires the maximum response interval. To decrease that interval can make the device know the change of the members earlier, which will result in increase of the member reports diffusing in the network. The network administrator can consider a tradeoff between the two factors and then decide a proper value for the period, 10 seconds by default. Another consideration in configuring the interval is that it shall be shorter than the query interval period.

Run the following commands for configuration in the privileged mode:

Command	Function
<b>ip igmp query-max-response-time</b> <i>seconds</i>	Configure the response interval. The range is 10-250, in 0.1 s.

Using the command **no ip igmp query-max-response-time** to restore the default configuration.

#### 36.4.2.8 Configuring the Timer Interval of the Other Queriers

Configuring the timer interval of the other querier in the interface layer, it can control the time interval of the un-querier. To be noted that the un-querier status can be renewed by the message of other queriers.

Run the following commands in the interface mode:

Command	Function
<b>ip igmp query-timeout</b> <i>seconds</i>	Configure the query time within the range of 60 – 300, The unit is s.

Using the command **no ip igmp query-timeout** to restore the default configuration.

#### 36.4.2.9 Configuring the Limit of IGMP Group Members

This command configures the limit of IGMP group members globally. The messages of the members that exceed the limit will not be cached or forwarded.



You can configure this command on interfaces individually or globally in interface mode. The messages of the members that exceed the limit configured on an interface or globally will be ignored.

To configure the limit of IGMP group members, execute the following commands in the interface mode.

Command	Function
DES-7200(config) # <b>ip igmp limit</b> <i>number</i>	Configure the limit of IGMP members globally. Range: 1 to 65536
DES-7200(config-if) # <b>ip igmp limit</b> <i>number</i>	Configure the limit of IGMP members on the interface. The range is 1 to 65536, 1024 by default.

#### 36.4.2.10 Configuring the Member Information of Filtering Group

This command refers to configure the control of access to a multicast group. By default, the interfaces on a switch can join any multicast group. This feature allows the administrator to control the range of multicast groups that a host can join. By configuring a standard IP address-based access control list, you can set the range of multicast group addresses that a host is allowed or prohibited to access, and apply it on a specified interface.

To configure the member information, execute the following commands in the interface mode.

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>config terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
DES-7200(config) # <b>access-list</b> <i>access-list-name</i> <b>permit</b> <i>A.B.C.D 0.0.0.0</i>	Define an access control list.
DES-7200(config)# <b>interface</b> <i>interface-id</i>	Enter the interface configuration mode.
DES-7200(config-if) # <b>ip igmp access-group</b> <i>access-list-name</i>	Permit multicast groups whose addresses in the range specified in the access control list can access the interface.
DES-7200(config-if) # <b>no ip igmp access-group</b>	Delete the access control list to allow all groups to access the interface.

You can use the **no ip igmp access-group** command to restore the access control to its default, that is, not restricting any group.

The following command shows how to restrict the hosts at the GigabitEthernet 0/1 interface so that they can only join the group of 225.2.2.2:

```
access-list 1 permit 225.2.2.2 0.0.0.0
interface ethernet 0
ip igmp access-group 1
```



**Note**

When ACL is located from 1 to 99, igmpv1/v2/v3 will only match group (g). When ACL is 100-199, IGMP v1 / v2 will match (source IP of 0.0.0.0, group IP).

When acl is located in 100-199, igmpv3 will match (source ip, group ip), For source ip, indicates the source ip of igmpv3 report message. IF the corresponding source ip does not exist, such as `exclude{ }/is_exclude{ }/to_exclude{ }/include{ }/is_include{ }/to_include{ }`, the source ip is 0.0.0.0.

### 36.4.2.11 Configuring the Group that the Host Should Leave Immediately

In the IGMP version2, this command can reduce multicast group leave delay. When a host sends a leave message, it should leave immediately and the querier device does not need to send a specific group query. This command applies to the case where there is only one receiving host connected to an interface.

To configure the group that a host should leave immediately, execute the following commands in the global configuration mode.

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>config terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
DES-7200(config)# <b>interface</b> <i>interface-id</i>	Enter the interface configuration mode.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>ip igmp immediate-leave group-list</b> <i>access-list-name</i>	Set the list of multicast groups that a host should leave immediately to the groups of the specified access list.
DES-7200(config-if) # <b>exit</b>	Enter the privileged mode.
DES-7200(config)# <b>access-list</b> <i>access-list-name</i> <b>permit</b> A.B.C.D 0.0.0.0	Configure the address range of the member group list.

The **no ip igmp access-group** command restores the access control to the default without limitation on any group.

### 36.4.2.12 Configuring IGMP PROXY - SERVER

This command enables service on all the downlink mroute-proxy interfaces. After you configure this command on an interface, the interface become the uplink interface of the corresponding mroute-proxy server. Moreover, it associates all its downlink interfaces and maintains their propagated multicast group information.

Up to 32 proxy servers can be configured in this command and up to 255 downlink interfaces can be associated with per proxy-server. Upon the receipt of query message, the proxy-server interface responds accordingly based on the member information that it maintains from the interfaces with mroute-proxy configured. Consequently, configuring



proxy-server on an interface equals to performing host behaviors rather than router behaviors on the interface.

To configure IGMP proxy, execute the following commands in the global configuration mode.

Command	Function
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>ip igmp proxy-service</b>	Configure proxy-server on the interface.

#### 36.4.2.13 Configuring IGMP MROUTE - PROXY

This command lets an interface to forward messages to its corresponding uplink interface.

The uplink interface can forward IGMP messages received from its members only when it is set to a proxy-server interface.

To configure IGMP MROUTE proxy, execute the following commands in the interface configuration mode.

Command	Function
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>ip igmp mroute-proxy</b>	Configure mroute-proxy on the interface.

#### 36.4.2.14 Enabling IGMP SSM-MAP

This command forcibly appends the relevant multicast source messages to the dynamically learned multicast group messages. It is usually used in conjunction with the **ip igmp ssm-map static** command.

To enable IGMP SSM-MAP, execute the following commands in the interface configuration mode.

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>ip igmp ssm-map enable</b>	Enable the ssm-map function globally.

#### 36.4.2.15 Configuring IGMP SSM-MAP STATIC

This command is used in conjunction with the **ip igmp ssm-map enable** command. After this command is configured, the received messages whose version is earlier than version 3 will be mapped with the corresponding multicast source record.

To configure IGMP SSM-MAP STATIC, execute the following commands in the interface configuration mode.

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>ip igmp ssm-map static</b> 11 192.168.2.2	All groups that comply with acl 11 will be mapped into the source address 192.168.2.2.



### 36.4.2.16 Clearing the Dynamic Group Membership Message Obtained through the Response Message in IGMP Cache

To clear the dynamic group member message acquired from the response message that is stored in IGMP cache, use the following command in the privilege mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>clear ip igmp group</b>	Clear up the dynamic group membership obtained from the response message in the IGMP cache. Without any parameter, this command clears all the IGMP group messages.

### 36.4.2.17 Clear Up All Information on Specified Interface in IGMP Cache

To clear up all information on the specified interface in the IGMP cache, use the following command in the privilege mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>clear ip igmp interface</b> <i>interface-type</i>	Clear up the message on the interface in the IGMP cache.

### 36.4.2.18 Display the Status of IGMP Group Members in Directly-Connected Subnet

Use the following command in privileged mode to display the status of IGMP group members in directly-connected subnet:

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>show ip igmp groups</b>	Display the status of IGMP group members in the directly-connected subnet.
DES-7200# <b>show ip igmp groups detail</b>	Show the details of all members in the directly-connected subnet.
DES-7200# <b>show ip igmp groups</b> A.B.C.D	Display the status of the specified group member in the directly-connected subnet.
DES-7200# <b>show ip igmp groups</b> A.B.C.D <b>Detail</b>	Show the details of the specified member in the directly-connected subnets.
DES-7200# <b>show ip igmp interface</b> <i>interface-type</i>	Show the information of the specified interface in the directly-connected subnets.



Command	Function
<i>DES-7200# show ip igmp groups interface-type detail</i>	Show the details of the specified interface in the directly-connected subnets.
<i>DES-7200# show ip igmp groups interface-type A.B.C.D</i>	Show the information of the specific group of the specified interface in the directly-connected subnets.
<i>DES-7200# show ip igmp groups interface-type A.B.C.D detail</i>	Show the details of the specific group of the specified interface in the directly-connected subnets.

```
Switch# show ip igmp groups
Group Address      Interface          Uptime    Expires    Last Reporter
239.255.255.250    Vlan1              00:00:40   00:02:19   192.168.65.43
224.0.1.40         FastEthernet0/1    00:01:24   00:02:17   202.113.2.2
230.0.0.2          FastEthernet0/1    04:02:10   00:02:25   202.113.2.2
230.0.0.3          FastEthernet0/1    04:02:10   00:02:17   202.113.2.2
230.0.0.0          Vlan2              04:02:09   00:02:21   202.113.1.1
```

#### 36.4.2.19 Showing the configuration information of the IGMP interface

To show the configurations of the IGMP interface, run the following command in the privileged mode:

Command	Function
<i>DES-7200# show ip igmp interface [interface-type interface-number]</i>	Show the configuration information of the IGMP interface.
<i>DES-7200# show ip igmp interface</i>	Show the configuration information of all the IGMP interfaces.

```
Switch# show ip igmp interface
FastEthernet 0/0
mtu is 1500
IP interface state is: DOWN
Internet address is 192.11.11.11 mask is 255.255.255.0
igmp config general query interval is 18000
igmp config robustness is 2
igmp current general query interval is 18000
igmp group member interval is 36010
igmp host robustness is 2
igmp join group unsolicited report counter is 2
igmp join group unsolicited report interval is 1
igmp last member query counter is 7
igmp last member query interval is 255 1/10seconds
igmp has 5 different config in this interface
igmp nif learnt mem num is 0
igmp nif limit num is 1024
igmp other querier interval is 255
```



```

igmp querier ip is 192.11.11.11
igmp query response interval is 100 1/10seconds
igmp router robustness is 2
igmp special query num is 0
igmp version is 3
IGMP is enabled on interface

```

#### 36.4.2.20 Show the Configuration Information of IGMP SSM-MAP

To show the configuration information of IGMP SSM-MAP, use the following command in the user mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>show ip igmp ssm-map</b>	Show the Configuration Information of IGMP SSM-MAP.
DES-7200# <b>show ip igmp ssm-map</b> 233.3.3.3	Shown the mapping information from IGMP SSM-MAP to group 233.3.3.3.

#### 36.4.2.21 Show Enabled Condition of IGMP Debugging Switch

To show the enabled condition of the IGMP debugging switch, use the following command in the privileged mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>show debugging</b>	Show the enabled condition of the IGMP debugging switch.

#### 36.4.2.22 Turning on IGMP debug switch

To turn on IGMP debug switch and display IGMP behavior, use the following command in the privileged mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>debug ip igmp all</b>	Turn on all IGMP debug switches
DES-7200# <b>debug ip igmp decode</b>	Turn on IGMP debug decode switch
DES-7200# <b>debug ip igmp encode</b>	Turn on IGMP debug encode switch
DES-7200# <b>debug ip igmp events</b>	Turn on IGMP debug event switch
DES-7200# <b>debug ip igmp fsm</b>	Turn on IGMP debug final-state-machine switch
DES-7200# <b>debug igmp tib</b>	Turn on IGMP debug tree switch.
DES-7200# <b>debug ip igmp warnning</b>	Turn on IGMP debug warning switch.

You can use **no debug ip igmp** to disable the degugging information swith of IGMP.



### 36.4.3 Configuring PIM-DM

#### 36.4.3.1 Enable PIM-DM

PIM-DM should be enabled on individual interface. Once PIM-DM is enabled on an interface of a device, the device can exchange PIM-DM control messages with other devices, maintain and update the multicast route table and forward multicast messages.

To configure PIM-DM on an interface, execute the following commands in the interface configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>ip pim</b> dense-mode	Enable the PIM-DM protocol on the interface.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>no ip pim</b> dense-mode	Disable the PIM-DM protocol on the interface.

In general, the PIM-DM protocol should be enabled on all interfaces of the devices.



#### Note

Enabling PIM-DM will take effect on an interface only when the multicast routing is enabled in the global configuration mode.

When this command is configured, if the “Failed to enable PIM-DM on <interface name>, resource temporarily unavailable, please try again” occurs, retry to configure this command.

When this command is configured, if the “PIM-DM Configure failed! VIF limit exceeded in NSM!!!” occurs, It indicates current allowed interface configuration exceeds the upper limit of the multicast interfaces. Please remove some unnecessary PIM-SM or DVMRP interface.

#### 36.4.3.2 Setting the Interval of Sending the Hello Message

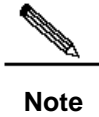
After the PIM-DM is enabled on an interface, the interface will send the Hello message to the interfaces of adjacent devices at an interval. You can modify the interval according to the real network circumstances.

To configure the interval of sending the Hello message, use the following command in the interface configuration mode:

Command	Function
<b>ip pimquery-interval</b> seconds	Set the interval of sending the Hello message on the interface as seconds (unit: sec).
<b>no ip pimquery-interval</b>	Restore the interval of sending the Hello message on the interface to the default value.

By default, the interval of sending the Hello message on the interface is 30s.





When the interval of sending the Hello message is updated, the Hello hold time will be updated as 3.5 times of the Hello sending interval automatically.

### 36.4.3.3 Configure PIM-DM Status Refresh

At administration mode, it is permitted to forward PIM-DM state refresh control message by default. For the first-hop router directly connected to the source, the interface configuration state refresh interval is the interval at which the state refresh packets are sent. In this case, it is only effective for the upstream interfaces. For subsequent routers, it is the interval at which the interfaces are allowed to receive and process the state refresh packets.

Command	Function
<b>no ip pim state-refresh isable</b>	Enable processing or forwarding PIM-DM status refresh messages.
<b>ip pim state-refresh origination-interval [interval]</b>	<i>interval</i> : In the range of 1 to 100 seconds. It is the interval of sending state refresh message on the first hop directly connected to source, which is valid only to upstream interfaces. For the following devices, it is the interval of sending state refresh message which is permitted to receive and process on the interface.

Following example shows the configuration of interval of sending status fresh message on GigabitEthernet 0/3 interface:

```
DES-7200(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 0/3
DES-7200(config)# ip pim state-refresh origination-interval 60
```

### 36.4.3.4 Configuring PIM Neighbor Filtering

Neighbor filtering function can be configured on the interface to enhance network security. With neighbor filtering enabled, the PIM-DM will not establish the neighborhood relationship with the neighbor or stop the currently established neighborhood relationship with the neighbor as long as a neighbor is denied by the access list.

To configure the PIM neighbor filtering function, run the following command in the interface configuration mode:

Command	Function
<b>ip pim neighbor-filter <i>access-list</i></b>	Enable the PIM neighbor filtering function on the current interface.
<b>no ip pim neighbor-filter <i>access-list</i></b>	Disable the PIM neighbor filtering function on the current interface.



The PIM neighbor filtering function is disabled by default on an interface.



#### Note

**ip pim neighbor-filter** command description:

When the associated ACL rule is set to permit, only the neighbor addresses in the ACL list can be considered to be the PIM neighbor of the current interface. When the associated ACL rule is set to deny, the neighbor addresses in the ACL list cannot be considered to be the PIM neighbor of the current interface.

### 36.4.3.5 Configuring the Status Update Function of PIM

After the PIM-DM is enabled, the device sends status update messages periodically to the downlink devices to update the status of the whole network if the RPF port in the multicast entries directly connects to the multicast source, namely, some PIM ports locate in the same network segment of the multicast source. You can disable the processing and forwarding of the PIM-DM status update messages in the global mode.

To configure the status update function of PIM-DM, execute the following commands in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
<b>ip pim state-refresh disable</b>	Disable the processing and forwarding of the PIM-DM status update messages.
<b>no ip pim state-refresh disable</b>	Enable the processing and forwarding of the PIM-DM status update messages.

The status update function is enabled by default.



#### Caution

Disabling the status update messages may cause the re-convergence of the converged PIM-DM multicast forward tree, resulting in unnecessary bandwidth waste and routing table vibration. Therefore, it is better not to disable the status update function.

### 36.4.3.6 Configuring the Interval of Sending PIM Status Refresh Message

When the PIM-DM is enabled on the device, if some interface is directly connected with the multicast source, the status refresh messages will be sent to the downstream device on regular basis, so as to refresh the statuses of the whole network. You can modify the interval of sending PIM status refresh message on an interface according to the real network circumstances.

To configure the interval of sending PIM status message on the interface, run the following command in the interface configuration mode:



Command	Function
<b>ip pim state-refresh</b> <b>origination-interval</b> <i>seconds</i>	Configure the interval of sending PIM status refresh message on the current interface as “seconds”, where “seconds” is an integer within 1-100, in seconds.
<b>no ip pim state-refresh</b> <b>origination-interval</b>	Cancel the configuration of the PIM flood delay on the current interface.

By default, the interval of sending PIM status refresh message on the interface is 60 seconds.



#### Note

Only the devices directly connected to multicast source can periodically send the PIM status updated message to the downward interfaces. Thus, if the devices are not directly connected to the multicast source, the forwarding interval of PIM status update message configured on the downforward interface is invalid.

### 36.4.3.7 Monitoring and Maintaining PIM-DM

The PIM-DM provides the **show** command to monitor and maintain the PIM-DM. The **show** command can be used to view the information on PIM-DM interface, multicast group and multicast routing table.

#### 35.4.3.7.1 Viewing PIM-DM Status Information

The DES-7200 series provides the following command to check the PIM-DM status information on the local machine:

Command	Function
<b>show ip pim dense-mode interface</b> [ <i>interface-type interface-number</i> ] [ <i>detail</i> ]	Show the PIM-DM information on the interface.
<b>show ip pim dense-mode neighbor</b> [ <i>interface-type interface-number</i> ]	Show the PIM-DM neighbor information.

For details on the use of the above command, see *PIM-DM Command References*.

Here are some examples of the commands:

#### 1. **show ip pim dense-mode interface detail** command:

```
DES-7200# show ip pim interface detail
wm0 (vif-id: 0):
Address 193.168.1.53/24
Hello period 30 seconds, Next Hello in 30 seconds
Neighbors:
192.168.1.152/32
192.168.1.149/32
wm1(vif-id: 2):
```



```
Address 193.168.10.53/24
Hello period 30 seconds, Next Hello in 8 seconds
Neighbors: none
```

In the example above, the wm0 has IP address 193.168.1.53, subnet 255.255.255.0, Hello message sent interval 30 seconds, next Hello message to be sent in 30 seconds, and two neighbors with addresses 192.168.1.152 and 192.168.1.149. The wm1 interface has similar information of the wm0 but has no neighbors.

## 2. **show ip pim dense-mode neighbor** command:

```
DES-7200# show ip pim dense-mode neighbor detail
Neighbor 192.168.1.152 (wm0)
Up since 17:16:20, Expires in 00:01:20
Neighbor 192.168.1.149 (wm0)
Up since 17:16:12, Expires in 00:01:26
```

In the example above, the device has two neighbors, where neighbor 192.168.1.152 is connected with wm0 and has survived for 17 hours 16 minutes and 20 seconds, with neighbor survival period to expire in one minute and 20 seconds. Neighbors 192.168.1.149 and 192.168.1.149 are similar.

### 36.4.4 Configuring PIM-SM

The PIM-SM configuration covers the following items. However, only the first and second items are mandatory, and others are optional.

- Enabling multicast routing (required)
- Enabling PIM-SM (required)
- Configuring the interval of sending the Hello message (optional)
- Configuring PIM-SM neighbor filtering (optional)
- Configuring the priority of specified device DR (optional)
- Configuring the candidate status of the device (optional)
- Configuring static RP (optional)
- Configuring candidate RP (optional)
- Configuring particular source multicast (optional)
- Configuring flood/prune time for the timer (optional)
- Configuring the speed limit on the sending of registered packets (optional)
- Configuring reachability detection for registered packets (optional)
- Configuring the source address of registration packet (optional)
- Configuring the RP suppression time (optional)
- Configuring the time of the KAT timer (optional)
- Switching the last-hop device from shared tree to the shortest path tree (optional)
- Switching the last-hop device from shared tree to the shortest path tree in multiple multicast groups (optional)
- Show the status of the PIM-SM (optional)



#### 36.4.4.1 Enabling the Multicast Routing

Multicast packets can be forwarded only when multicast routing is enabled, and then enabling PIM-SM makes sense.

To enable multicast routing in the global configure mode, execute the following commands:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>ip multicast-routing</b>	Enable multicast routing globally.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>no ip multicast-routing</b>	Disable multicast routing globally.

#### 36.4.4.2 Enabling PIM-SM

The PIM-SM must be enabled on each port. Only after the PIM-SM is enabled on the ports, can the device intercommunicate PIM-SM control messages with other devices, maintain and update multicast routing table, and forward multicast packets.

To configure the PIM-SM on the interface, execute the following command in the interface mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>ip pim sparse-mode</b>	Enable the PIM-SM protocol on the interface.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>no ip pim sparse-mode</b>	Disable the PIM-SM protocol on the interface.



##### Note

Enabling the PIM-SM takes effect only when the multicast routing is enabled in the global configuration mode.

When the system prompts "Failed to enable PIM-SM on <Interface Name>, resource temporarily unavailable, please try again", re-execute this command.

When the system prompts "PIM-SM Configure failed! VIF limit exceeded in NSM!!!", it indicates that the configured interfaces exceed the upper limit of the multicast interfaces. In this case, delete the unnecessary PIM-SM interfaces.

#### 36.4.4.3 Configuring the Interval of Sending the Hello Message

When the PIM-SM is enabled on the port, the device periodically sends Hello messages to the ports of neighbor devices. You can set the interval of sending Hello messages according to the network condition.



To configure the interval of sending the Hello message, execute following commands in the interface mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>ip pim query-interval</b> seconds	Set the interval of sending the Hello message to seconds.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>no ip pim query-interval</b>	Restore the interval of sending the Hello message to the default value.

The interval of sending the Hello message on the interface is 30 second by default.



#### Note

When the interval of sending Hello message is changed, the hold time of Hello message also changes by the following rule. If the hold time of Hello message is not configured or configured shorter than the current interval of sending Hello message, the hold time becomes 3.5 times of the interval of sending Hello message; otherwise, the hold time and configuration value of Hello message remain unchanged.

#### 36.4.4.4 Configuring PIM Neighbor Filtering

Neighbor filtering function can be configured on the interface to enhance network security. With neighbor filtering enabled, the PIM-SM will not establish the neighborhood relationship with that neighbor or stop the currently established neighborhood relationship with that neighbor as long as a neighbor is denied by the filter access list.

To configure the PIM neighbor filtering function, run the following command in the interface mode:

Command	Function
<b>ip pim neighbor-filter</b> <i>access-list</i>	Enable the PIM neighbor filtering function on the current interface.
<b>no ip pim neighbor-filter</b> <i>access-list</i>	Disable the PIM neighbor filtering function on the current interface.

The PIM neighbor filtering function is disabled by default on an interface.



#### Note

Description of the **ip pim neighbor-filter** commands:

When the associated ACL rule is set to permit, only the neighbor address in the ACL can be considered to be the PIM neighbor of the current interface. When the associated ACL rule is set to deny, the neighbor address in the ACL cannot be considered to be the PIM neighbor of the current interface.



#### 36.4.4.5 Configuring the Priority of DR

This command is used to configure the priority of the designated router (DR), higher weight value for higher priority.

To configure the priority of DR, run the following commands in the interface mode:

Command	Function
<b>ip pim dr-priority</b> <i>priority</i>	Configure the priority value in range 1-4294967294.
<b>no ip pim dr-priority</b> <i>priority</i>	Restore the default value 1.

#### 36.4.4.6 Configuring the Device as the Candidate BSR

This command configures a device to be a candidate BSR . The configuration of candidate RP produces the globally-unique BSR in the PIM-SM domain, which will collect and distribute RPs in the domain, so as to ensure the uniqueness of the RP mapping in the domain.

To configure the device as the candidate BSR, execute the following commands in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
<b>ip pim bsr-candidate</b> <i>IFNAME</i> ( <i>HASH</i> ) ( <i>PRIORITY</i> )	Configure the local machine as the candidate BSR to learn and contest the global BSR role through BSM messages.
<b>no ip pim bsr-candidate</b> <i>IFNAME</i> ( <i>HASH</i> ) ( <i>PRIORITY</i> )	Cancel the configuration of the current candidate BSR.

#### 36.4.4.7 Configuring the Static RP

In small-scale networks, you can configure static RP to use PIM-SM. This requires all the devices in the PIM-SM domain have the same static RP configured and ensure no ambiguity of the PIM-SM multicast routes.

If some device in the PIM-SM domain runs the BSR, RPs will be searched according to the following principles. If “override” is configured, the static RP takes precedence over the RP in the RP mapping table distributed by the BSR; if “override” is not configured, the latter takes precedence over the former.

To configure the static RP, execute the following commands in the global configuration mode:



Command	Function
<b>ip pim rp-address</b> <i>A.B.C.D</i> ( <i>(SIMPLERANGE   EXPRANGE  </i> <i>ACCESSLIST)</i>	Configure static RP on the local machine.
<b>no ip pim rp-address</b> <i>A.B.C.D</i> ( <i>(SIMPLERANGE   EXPRANGE  </i> <i>ACCESSLIST)</i>	Cancel the static RP configuration.

Please pay attention to following points when using this command:

- If both the BSR and static RP configurations take effect, the dynamic configuration takes priority.
- The static RP address can be configured for multiple multicast groups (by ACL) or all multicast groups (not by ACL). However, a static RP address can be configured for several times.
- If there are several addresses can be configured for RP, the high address is firstly used.
- Only the permitted filtered addresses defined in the ACL are invalid multicast groups. By default, 0.0.0.0/0 refers to filter all multicast groups (224/4).
- After the configuration, the static RP source address is inserted to the tree of group-based static RP group. Each static multicast group maintains the link table structure of a static RP group. The link tables are ordered decreasingly by the IP addresses. When a RP is selected in a group, the first element, namely, the RP with the highest IP address is firstly selected.
- Deleting a static RP address deletes the address from all groups that has this address, and one address is selected from the existing tree structure as the RP address.



#### 36.4.4.8 Ignoring the RP Priority in RP-SET

When you compare two RPs to select one for a multicast IP address, execute this command to ignore the RP priority. Otherwise, the RP priority would be taken into account during comparison.

To ignore the RP priority, execute the following commands in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
<b>ip pim ignore-rp-set-priority</b>	Ignore the RP priority in the RP-Set.



Command	Function
<b>no ip pim ignore-rp-set-priority</b>	Take into account the RP priority in the RP-Set.

#### 36.4.4.9 Configuring Candidate RP

The configured candidate RP can be sent to the BSR by certain interval and then flooded to all the PIM-SM devices in the domain, thus ensuring the uniqueness of RP mapping.

To configure the candidate RP, execute the following commands in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
<b>ip pim rp-candidate</b> IFNAME (PRIORITY) (INTERVAL) (GROUPLIST)	Use the candidate RP to configure this device.
<b>no ip pim rp-candidate</b>	Cancel the candidate RP configuration.

You can use the ACL to specify a port as the candidate RP of a particular group. It should be noted that the group calculation is based on the permit ACE only, but not the deny ACE.

#### 36.4.4.10 Configuring Reachability Detection for RPs

This command detects whether the RPs sent from DR can reach the destination device.

To configure the reachability detection for RPs, execute the following commands in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
<b>ip pim register-rp-reachability</b>	Detect whether the RPs can reach the destination device
<b>no ip pim register-rp-reachability</b>	Do not detect the reachability of RPs.

#### 36.4.4.11 Configuring the RP to Filter the Addresses of Register Packets

Execute the **ip pim accept-register list** *access list* to filter the pair of source IP address and multicast group IP address of reached register packets on the RP. Otherwise, the RP permits every reached register packet.

To configure the RP to filter the addresses of register packets, execute the following commands in the global configuration mode:



Command	Function
<b>ip pim accept-register list</b> <i>access-list</i>	Filter the pair of source IP address and multicast group IP address of register packets.
<b>no ip pim accept-register</b>	Remove the configuration.

#### 36.4.4.12 Configuring the Speed Limit on Sending RPs

This command configures the speed at which the DR sends registration packets. It is specific for every (S,G) status, not bandwidth. No means no limitation on speed.

To configure the speed limit on sending RPs, execute the following commands in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
<b>ip pim register-rate-limit</b> <1-65535>	Set the maximum RP packets <1-65535> sent in a second.
<b>no ip pim rp-candidate</b>	Cancel the speed limit configuration (no speed limitation).

#### 36.4.4.13 Calculating the Checksum of Register Packets in Cisco 's Way

Execute the **ip pim cisco-register-checksum** command to calculate the checksum of register packets in Cisco's way. Otherwise, the checksum of register packets is calculated in default way specified by the protocol.

To calculate the checksum of register packets in Cisco's way, execute the following command in the global configuration mode.

Command	Function
<b>ip pim cisco-register-checksum</b> [ <b>group-list</b> <i>access-list</i> ]	Calculate the checksum of register packets in Cisco's way. <b>group-list</b> <i>access-list</i> : Apply this configuration to all multicast addresses by default.
<b>no ip pim cisco-register-checksum</b> [ <b>group-list</b> <i>access-list</i> ]	Remove the configuration.

#### 36.4.4.14 Configuring the Source IP Address of RP

This command sets the source IP address of RPs sent from DR. The **no** form of this command sets the RPF interface address as the default source address for the response when the PR sent from DR to the source host. The configured address must be reachable



for the response to the correct Register-Stop information in the RP. The address is generally a loop address of the interface. It also can be other physical address. Such address must be advertised by unicast route on the DR port.

To configure the source IP address of RPs, execute the following commands in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
<b>ip pim register-source</b> [SOURCEADDRESS   IFNAME]	Configure the source IP address used in RPs.
<b>no ip pim register-source</b>	Set the RPF interface address as the source IP address of RPs.

#### 36.4.4.15 Configuring the RP Suppression Time

This command configures the RP suppression time. It will modify the RP suppression time defined on the DR. If the **ip pim rp-register-kat** is not configured, defining the RP suppression time in the RP will change RPkeepalive period.

To configure the RP suppression time, execute the following commands in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
<b>ip pim register-suppression</b> <1-65535>	Configure the RP suppression time.
<b>no ip pim register-suppression</b>	Set the suppression time to 60 seconds.

#### 36.4.4.16 Configuring KAT Timer

The KAT timer is used for monitoring PIM RP.

To configure KAT timer, execute the following commands in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
<b>ip pim rp-register-kat</b> <1-65535>	Configure KAT timer.
<b>no ip pim rp-register-kat</b>	Use the default KAT value

#### 36.4.4.17 Configuring the Interval of Sending the Join/Prune Message

By default, the Join/Prune message is sent at the interval of 60s by default. Execute this command to modify this interval.

To modify the interval of sending the Join/Prune message, execute the following commands in the global configuration mode:



Command	Function
<b>ip pim jp-timer</b> <i>interval-seconds</i>	Set the interval of sending the Join/Prune message, in the range of 1 to 65535 seconds.
<b>no ip pim jp-timer</b> <i>interval-seconds</i>	Restore the setting to the default value.

#### 36.4.4.18 Allowing the Last Hop Device to Switch from the Shared Tree to the Shortest Path Tree

The last-hop device is allowed to switch from the shared tree to the shortest path tree.

When the sending speed of a source is higher than equal to the transmission speed, a PIM join message is triggered and a source tree is constructed. If the final key word is defined, all the sources in this group use the shared tree. If the transmission speed is lower than the threshold, the leaf device re-diverts to the shared tree and sends a prune packet to the source.

To allow the last hop device to switch from the shared tree to the shortest path tree, execute the following commands in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
<b>ip pim spt-threshold</b>	Allow the last-hop device to switch from the shared tree to the shortest path tree.
<b>no ip pim spt-threshold</b>	Disable this function.

#### 36.4.4.19 Using the MIB of PIM-DM

Execute this command to use the MIB of PIM-DM, Otherwise, the MIB of PIM-SM will be used.

To use the MIB of PIM-DM, execute the following command in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
<b>ip pim mib dense-mode</b>	Use the MIB of PIM-DM.
<b>no ip pim mib dense-mode</b>	Use the MIB of PIM-SM.

#### 36.4.4.20 Configuring the Particular Multicast Source

Configuring a particular multicast source enables you directly receive multicst data packets from the source without following the RP tree. To configure a particular source multicast, run the following command.



Command	Function
<b>ip pim ssm {default  range access-list}}</b>	Configuring a particular multicast source.
<b>no ip pim ssm</b>	Remove the configuration.

### 36.4.5 Monitoring and Maintaining PIM-SM

PIM-DM provides the **show** command to monitor and maintain PIM-SM. By using the show command, you can view the interface, multicast group and multicast routing tables of PIM-SM.

#### 36.4.5.1 Showing the Status of PIM-SM

Command	Function
<b>show debugging pim sparse-mode</b>	Show the status of the debugging switch
<b>show ip pim interface [ interface-type interface-number ] [ detail ]</b>	Show the PIM-SM information of the interface.
<b>show ip pim neighbor [ interface-type interface-number ]</b>	Show the PIM neighbor information.
<b>Show ip sparse-mode mroute</b>	Show the multicast routing table information of PIM-SM
<b>show ip pim sparse-mode bsr-router</b>	Use this command to show the detailed information of BSR.
<b>show ip pim sparse-mode rp-hash group-address</b>	Use this command to show the RP information selected.
<b>show ip pim sparse-mode rp mapping</b>	Show the group-RP mapping information and RP settings
<b>show ip sparse-mode nexthop</b>	Show the next hop of PIM-SM from NSM.
<b>show memory pim sparse-mode</b>	Show the memory statistics information of PIM-SM background program

#### 36.4.5.2 Clearing the PIM-SM Information

The following commands are available to clear the PIM-SM information:

Command	Function
<b>clear ip mrouter</b>	Clear multicast route entries.
<b>clear ip mroute statistics</b>	Clear the statistics of multicast route entries.



Command	Function
<code>clear ip pim sparse-mode bsr rp-set</code>	Clear RP-SET.

For details, refer to *Configuring PIM-SM Commands*.

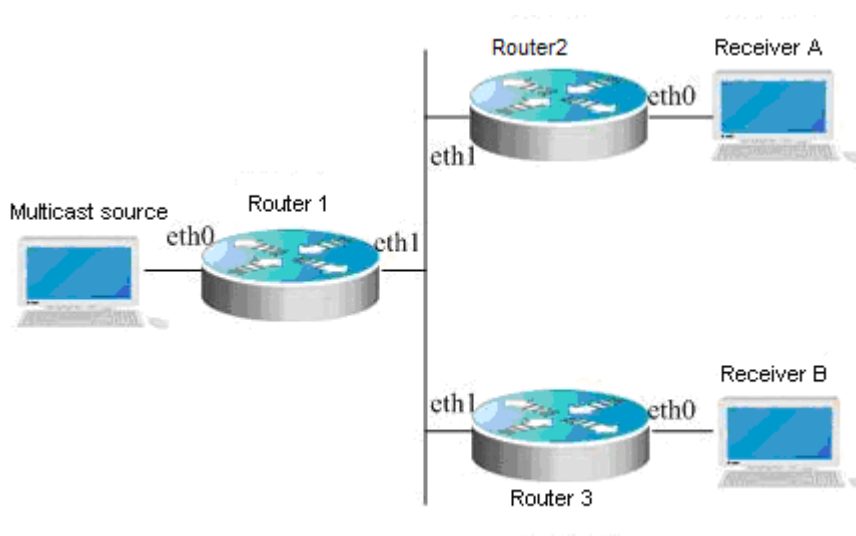
## 36.5 Multiple Routing Configuration Examples

### 36.5.1 PIM-DM Configuration Example

#### 36.5.1.1 Configuration requirements:

The network topology is shown in Figure 36-1. Device 1 and the multicast source locate in the same network, device 2 and receiver A locate in the same network, and device 3 and receiver B locate in the same network. Suppose the devices are connected with the host correctly and the IP addresses are configured.

**Figure 36-6** Example of PIM-DM networking diagram



#### 36.5.1.2 Device Configuration

Take the device 1 as an example to show how to configure PIM-DM. The steps of device 2 and 3 are similar with device 1.

Step 1: Enable multicast routing

```
DES-7200# configure terminal
DES-7200(config)# ip multicast-routing
```

Step 2: Enable PIM-DM on the interface eth0



```
DES-7200(config)# interface eth 0
DES-7200(config-if)# ip pim dense-mode
DES-7200(config-if)# exit
```

Step 3: Enable PIM-DM on the interface eth1 and return to the privileged user mode.

```
DES-7200(config)# interface eth 1
DES-7200(config-if)# ip pim dense-mode
DES-7200(config-if)# end
```

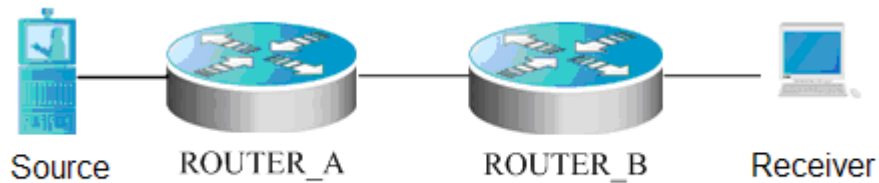
The configuration of device 2 and 3 is similar to device 1.

## 36.5.2 PIM-SM Configuration Example

### 36.5.2.1 Configuration requirements:

The network topology is shown in Figure 36-2. Device 1 and the multicast source locate in the same network, device 2 and receiver A locate in the same network. Suppose the devices are connected with the host correctly; IP addresses and unicast routes are configured.

**Figure 36-7** Example of PIM-SM networking diagram



### 36.5.2.2 Device Configuration

Following is the configuration of two devices:

ROUTER\_A:

```
!
ip multicast-routing
!
interface Loopback0
ip address 192.168.100.142 255.255.255.0
ip pim sparse-mode
!
interface Ethernet1/1
ip address 192.168.1.142 255.255.255.0
ip pim sparse-mode
ip pim sparse-mode dr-priority 100
!
```



```
interface serial2/0
ip address 192.168.21.142 255.255.255.0
physical-layer speed 128000
ip pim sparse-mode
!
route ospf
network 192.168.21.0
network 192.166.1.0
network 192.166.100.0
!
ip pim sparse-mode bsr-candidate Loopback0 30 201
ip pim sparse-mode rp-candidate Loopback0
!
```

#### ROUTER\_B:

```
!
ip multicast-routing
!
interface Ethernet0/1
ip address 192.168.200.144 255.255.255.0
ip pim sparse-mode
ip pim sparse-mode dr-priority 200
!
interface Serial0/0
ip address 192.168.21.144 255.255.255.0
ip pim sparse-mode
!
```

### 36.5.3 BSR Configuration Examples

---

Following is an example to show the BSR configuration of two devices:

#### ROUTER\_A:

```
!
ip multicast-routing
!
interface Loopback0
ip address 192.166.100.42 255.255.255.0
ip pim sparse-mode
!
interface Ethernet1/1
ip address 192.166.1.142 255.255.255.0
ip pim sparse-mode
```



```
!  
interface serial2/0  
ip address 192.168.21.142 255.255.255.0  
physical-layer speed 12800  
ip pim sparse-mode  
!  
router rip  
network 192.168.21.0  
network 192.168.100.0  
!  
ip pim sparse-mode bsr-candidate Loopback0 30 201  
!
```

#### **ROUTER\_B:**

```
!  
ip multicast-routing  
!  
interface Loopback0  
ip address 192.168.100.144 255.255.255.0  
ip pim sparse-mode  
!  
interface Ethernet0/1  
ip address 192.168.200.144 255.255.255.0  
ip pim sparse-mode  
!  
ip pim sparse-mode bsr-candidate Loopback0 30
```







# 37

## MPLS Configuration

### 37.1 MPLS Overview

---

MPLS is the abbreviation of Multiprotocol Label Switching. Multiprotocol means that MPLS supports multiple network layer protocols, such as IP, IPv6 and IPX, and is compatible with multiple link layer technologies including ATM, frame relay, Ethernet and PPP. Label switching means that labels are attached to packets for forwarding. MPLS uses the connectionless-oriented control plane and connection-oriented data plane so that the connectionless-oriented IP network is added with the connection-oriented attribute. At the beginning, the MPLS technology is designed to improve the forwarding speed of the routers. However, as the hardware technology and network processor develop, this advantage is no longer prominent. Despite this, the inherent advantage of MPLS that integrates L2 switching and L3 routing is unmatched by other technologies in solving the important problems of the IP networks such as Virtual Private Network (VPN) and Traffic Engineering (TE). In solving enterprise interconnection and providing various services, the MPLS VPN is increasingly regarded as an important means by operators for providing value-added services. On the other hand, the MPLS TE technology also becomes a major tool for managing network traffic, reducing congestion, and ensuring the QoS of the IP network. Therefore, the MPLS technology attracts more and more attention and the application of the MPLS is gradually shifting to MPLS VPN and TE.

#### 37.1.1 Basic Concepts

---

##### ■ MPLS node

As a node that runs MPLS, the MPLS node can identify the signaling protocols (control protocol) of MPLS and can run one or multiple L3 routing protocols (including static routing) and forward packets according to labels. Usually, a MPLS node also has the ability to forward the original L3 packet (for example, IP packet).

##### ■ Forwarding Equivalence Class

It is a group of data packets that are processed in any equivalent way, for example, the data packets with the same destination address prefix. The FEC can be classified in different ways depending on the specific applications. In the IP unicast routing application, the FEC can be classified according to the address prefix, that is, one route corresponds with one



FEC. The packets belonging to the same FEC are processed in the same way in the MPLS network.

#### ■ LSR(Label Switching Router)

As the core switching of the MPLS network, the LSR provides label switching and label distribution. As described in the system document RFC3031 of MPLS, the LSR is also a MPLS node with the ability to forward original L3 packets (for example, IP packet or IPv6 packet). For the application of MPLS on IP, this means that the LSR also has the ability to forward IP packets.

#### ■ LER(Label Switching Edge Router)

On the edge of the MPLS network, the traffic entering the MPLS network is divided by the LER into different FECs with appropriate labels requested for them; the traffic leaving the MPLS network is restored by the LER pop-up label into the original packets. Therefore, the LER provides the functions of traffic classification, label mapping and label removal.

#### ■ LSP(Label Switched Path)

The data traffic of a FEC is assigned with specific labels at different nodes and is forwarded according to such labels. The path of the data traffic is known as LSP, which is a set of LSRs. The LSP can be seen as a tunnel that passes through the MPLS core network.

#### ■ NHLFE(Next Hop Label Forwarding Entry)

The NHLFE table is used to store the next-hop information for forwarding MPLS packets. Currently, the NHLFE table includes the following contents:

1. Next hop of the data packets
2. Link layer encapsulation used to forward the data packets
3. Code mode used to forward the packet label stack
4. Operation with the data packet label stack
  - a) Using new labels to replace the labels of the packet label stack top
  - b) Popping up the labels of the stack top
  - c) Using a new label to replace the label of the packet label stack top and inject one or multiple new labels

#### ■ ILM(Incoming Label Map)

This table maps every incoming label to a series of NHLFEs (multiple NHLFE show that there are multiple paths). The ILM is used to forward the labeled MPLS packets received by the LSR.

#### FTN(FEC-to-NHLFE)

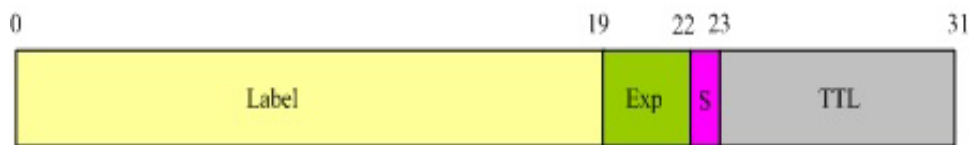
Unlink ILM, the FTN maps every FEC to a series of NHLFEs (multiple NHLFE show that there are multiple paths). The FTN is used to forward the unlabelled packets received by the LER, encapsulating labels to the packets before forwarding.



### 37.1.2 Label

A label is a short ID with fixed length and locally valid. It is locally valid in that the label is only transferred between two adjacent LSRs, thus, it's only valid between these two LSRs. The label is used to identify a FEC. When a packet reaches the ingress of the MPLS network, it is divided into different FECs according to the appropriate rule, and the appropriate is encapsulated into the packet according to the FEC of the packet. The packet is forwarded according to the label in the MPLS network.

#### ■ Structure of the label



32位的标签结构

Figure 1

#### Label domain

Label value, with a length of 20 bits, is the index value of the label forwarding table. IETF defines 0 ~ 15 as reserved labels, and pre-defines the following meanings of labels:

0 represents IPv4 Explicit NULL Label, which can only appear at the bottom of the label stack. When a packet with this label is received, the label stack must be popped up and the packet should be forwarded according to the IPv4 header of the packet.

1 represents the Router Alert Label, which should not occur at the bottom of the label stack. When a packet carrying this label is received, the packet must be sent to the local software module for processing, and the packet should be forwarded the label below this label. However, before the packet is forwarded, this label must be pressed into the label stack again. This option is similar to the "Router Alert Option" in the IP packet. Through this option, the LSR of every hop can be required to check this MPLS packet.

2 represents IPv6 Explicit NULL Label, which can only appear at the bottom of the label stack. When a packet with this label is received, the label stack must be popped up and the packet should be forwarded according to the IPv6 header of the packet.

3 represents the Implicit NULL label, which can be distributed by the label distribution protocol, but will never appear in the label stack of the MPLS packets for transmission. When the LSR exchanges MPLS packets, if the label to be replaced on the stack top is 3, the label on the stack top will pop up without replacement. This label will be used in the "pop-up at the last but one hop" function.

4 ~ 15 are reserved by IETF for future use.

#### ➤ Exp domain



Used for experiment and having a length of 3 bits, it can be used to support the CoS of MPLS.

#### S tag

As the tag of the stack bottom, it has a length of one bit. When there are multiple tags, the S bit of the label at the stack bottom is set to “1”, while that of other labels are set to “0”. When there is only one label, the S bit is directly set to “1”.

#### TTL

As the alive time, it has a length of 8 bits, similar to the TTL in the IP packet header. This value can be the TTL domain (or HopLimit of IPv6) of the IP packet header the first time when the IP packet is added with a label. At every label exchange, the TTL value of the outer layer (stack top) label is reduced by “1”. When MPLS runs on the ATM link, the label code mode differs in that it does not have the TTL domain. The RFC3032 has defined a method to handle this situation.

### ■ Operation ways of labels

MPLS nodes perform the following three operations to labels:

#### ➤ PUSH

It is the process to insert a label between L2 header and L3 header on the ingress LER, or that the intermediate LSR adds a new label to the label stack top of the MPLS packet.

#### ➤ POP

It is the process to remove all the labels in the packets at the egress LER and restore the packets or that the intermediate LSR removes the stack top label to reduce the label stack layers.

#### ➤ SWAP (Switching Label)

It is the process to replace the stack top label in the packets according to the LSP in the forwarding table during forwarding.

#### Label stack

One MPLS packet can have multiple labels, which are processed on the FIFO basis, hence referred to as a label stack. The label close to the L2 header is the stack top label, and that close to the IP header is the stack bottom label. The LSR always swap the labels based on the label at the stack top. When there are multiple labels, every label includes complete 32 bits. The label stack supports one MPLS packet to carry multiple layers of labels. It works to enable the MPLS technology to support a hierarchical network system as well as LSP tunnels.



### 37.1.3 Label Distribution Protocol

As a new network system, MPLS also has its own signaling protocol or “routing protocol”. A fundamental concept in the MPLS system is that two LSRs agree on the label used for transmitting the traffic between them. The agreement is achieved through a series of processes, known as the Label Distribution Protocol (LDP). Through the LDP, one LSR notifies another LSR of its label binding. The MPLS system structure does not assume a single LDP. Some use the independent distribution protocol, for example, the LDP defined in the RFC3036 of IETF; some support label distribution by expanding the existing protocols through piggybacking, with typical examples like MP-BGP, OSPF, and RSVP. Different LDPs can be selected in different applications according to MPLS.

### 37.1.4 MPLS Network

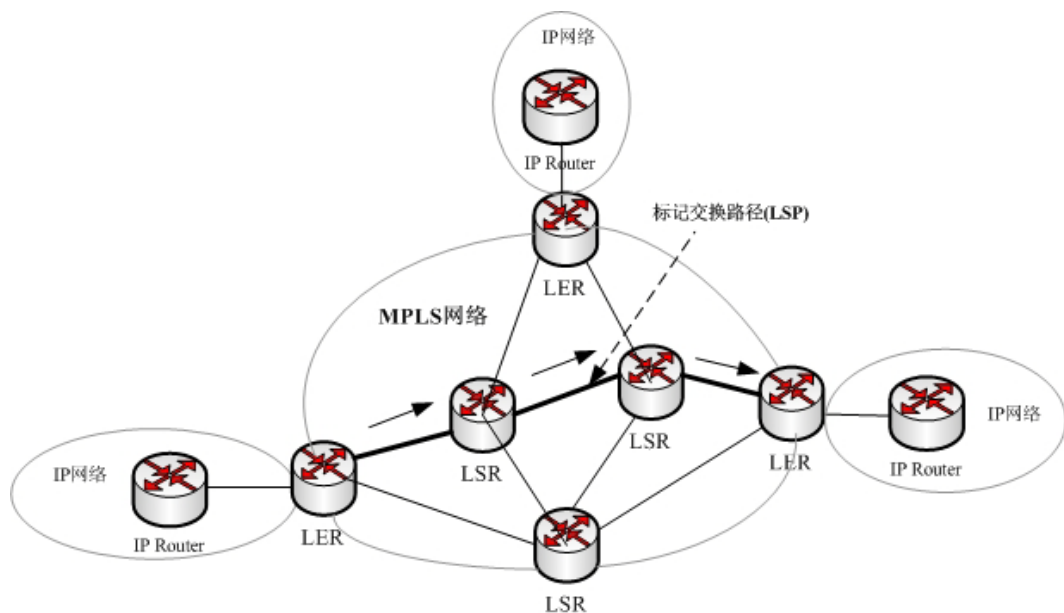


Figure 2

The MPLS network includes two basic elements: LSR and LER. The LSR is in the core of the MPLS network, running the LDP of MPLS to forward labeled packets. The LER is responsible for classifying the IP packets entering the MPLS network into FEC and adding labels to them and encapsulating them into MPLS packets for forwarding; removing the labels from the packets leaving MPLS network to restore them into the IP packets and looking up the appropriate forwarding table to forward them. In the MPLS network, the labeled packets will be forwarded along the LSP established by the LDP.

The architecture of the MPLS consists of the forwarding unit (data plane) and control unit (control plane). The forwarding unit forwards the packets by looking up the label forwarding library according to the label carried by the packet; the control unit is responsible for creating and maintaining the label forwarding information library between the connected MPLS



equipment nodes. Every MPLS node must run one or multiple routing protocols (including the static route) to exchange the route information between the MPLS nodes of the MPLS network. In this case, each MPLS node is actually an IP router from the perspective of the control plane. Similar to the traditional IP routers, the routing table is also created and maintained by the unicast routing protocol (including static route) on the MPLS node. The difference is that the traditional router uses this routing table to create the forwarding table; while for the MPLS node, this routing table can be used to exchange the label binding information between each destination subnet and the adjacent MPLS node. The protocol responsible for the label binding information exchange is referred to as the LDP (Label Distribution Protocol).

### 37.1.5 MPLS Forwarding Behavior

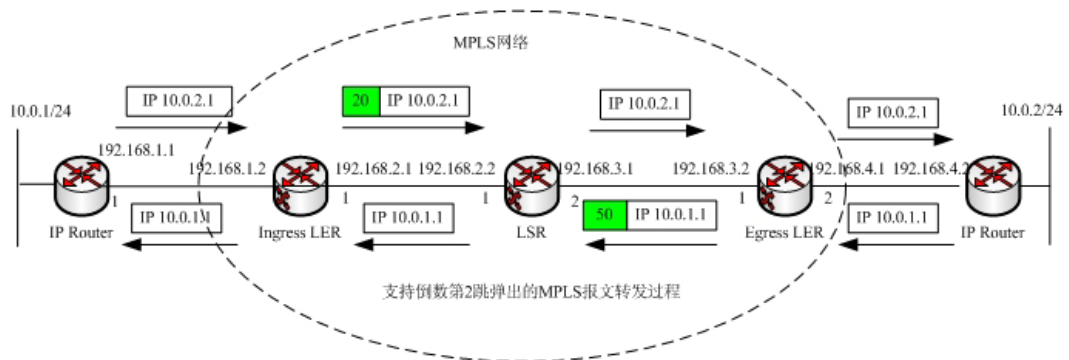


Figure 3

The MPLS forwarding process is as below:

1. All LSRs (including LER) start the traditional routing protocols (OSPF, IS-IS) to create the IP routing table in the LSR and LER.
2. The LDP creates the LSP according to the IP routing table.
3. The Ingress LER receives the IP packets, analyzes the IP header and corresponds to it with a FEC, before it adds the appropriate FEC label to the IP packet, and then sends the labeled packet to the next-hop LSR along the LSP of the label.
4. The next-hop LSR receives the label packet and looks up for the LSP according to the label at the stack top, replaces the label and then sends the packet to the next-hop LSR of the LSP.
5. The LSR on the way acts in the same way as step 4).
6. The last but one LSR receives the labeled packets and looks up the label forwarding table. If it finds that the appropriate egress label is an Implicit Null Label 3, it will pop the label and sends the original IP packet to the last-hop LSR. If the label is an Explicit Null Label, it pops the label and selects a route from the IP forwarding table according to the IP header and sends the original packet.
7. If the last but one hop pops the label, an original IP packet will be received at the last



hop egress LER, and the next-hop router will be found in the IP routing table.

### 37.1.6 Establishment and Loop Detection of LSP

---

The virtual connection of MPLS refers to LSP. The data traffic of a FEC is assigned with labels at different MPLS nodes, and data forwarding is performed according to these labels. The data traffic passes the LSP, which includes a series of LSR. The data traffic of the same FEC passes the same LSP.

#### 37.1.6.1 LSP Establishment Process

---

The establishment of the LSP is the process to perform the FEC and label binding, and notify the binding to the adjacent LSR. This process is performed by the LDP. The RFC3036 stipulates the protocol specification of the LDP, the interaction process between the LSR and the information format.

The LDP discovers the adjacent LSR by sending Hello messages at periodical intervals. The LDP Hello messages use the UDP encapsulation, and the destination port uses the known port 646. Its destination address is the multicast address (IP of 224.0.0.2) of all routers in the subnet. After the neighbor LSR is discovered, it triggers the establishment of the LDP session. The establishment of the LDP session involves two steps:

1. Connection setup, actually the completion of the three handshakes of the TCP connection, not involving the interaction of the LDP messages
2. Session initialization: it is the process to negotiate to determine the related parameters of the LDP session through the exchange of the mutual initialization information, for example, label distribution mode, Keepalive time and the length of largest Protocol Data Unit (PDU)

After the LDP session is established and both parties enter the OPERATIONAL status, the label information can be exchanged to allocate and manage labels for establishing the LSP. During the LSP establishment process, the labels can be distributed in two ways: DOD Downstream on Demand and Downstream Unsolicited. In the DOD mode, the LSR only responds with the label binding information when it receives the label request of the adjacent LSR. In the DU mode, a LSR distributes label binding to its adjacent LSR when it does not receive any request.

During the LSP establishment process, there are two label control modes: Independent and Ordered. One LSR can support two control modes by configuring options.

When independent control is used, each LSR can advertise to the adjacent device the binding between the label and the FEC at any time as needed. When working in the independent DOD mode, one LSR can immediately answer the label mapping request from the upstream without needing to wait for a label mapping from the next hop. When working in



the independent DU mode, one LSR can advertise the label mapping of the FEC at any time when it is ready to perform label swap for the FEC.

When ordered control is used, one LSR can distribute the FEC bound label to the upstream only when a FEC has the next-hop label mapping or the LSR is the egress of the FEC. Otherwise, the LSR must wait for receiving the label mapping of the FEC from a downstream LSR, before the local device can bind the FEC with the label and send it to the upstream LSR. In the ordered control mode, if the label distribution mode is DU, only when it is the egress of the FEC or the label is received from the downstream LSR, it will advertise the label to its own upstream LSR. If the label distribution mode of the downstream LSR is DOD, it will transfer the request to its downstream when it receives the request information from the upstream LSR, whether it works in the DOD or DU mode.

### 37.1.6.2 Loop Control of LSP

---

During the establishment of the LSP, the loop detection mechanism must be provided to ensure that any loop of the LSP established can be detected. There are two ways to prevent the loop of the LSP: maximum hop count and path vector.

By maximum hop count, the label binding message transferred includes the number of LSRs passed. The count increases by 1 for every LSR passed. When this value exceeds the specified maximum value, it is deemed that a loop has occurred and the establishment of the LSP is terminated.

By path vector, the label binding message transferred records the IDs of the LSRs passed. When a LSR is passed, the ID of that LSR is recorded to the vector table of the message. When a LSR receives the label binding message, it checks if its ID is included in the vector table. If not, it will add its own ID to the record when distributing the message. If yes, it means that a loop has occurred, and hence the establishment of the LSP is terminated.

### 37.1.7 Application of MPLS

---

As the network develops, the forwarding advantage of the MPLS is no longer so prominent. Currently, various applications based on MPLS win increasingly more attentions, for example, VPN and QOS. The following diagram shows the applications of MPLS:



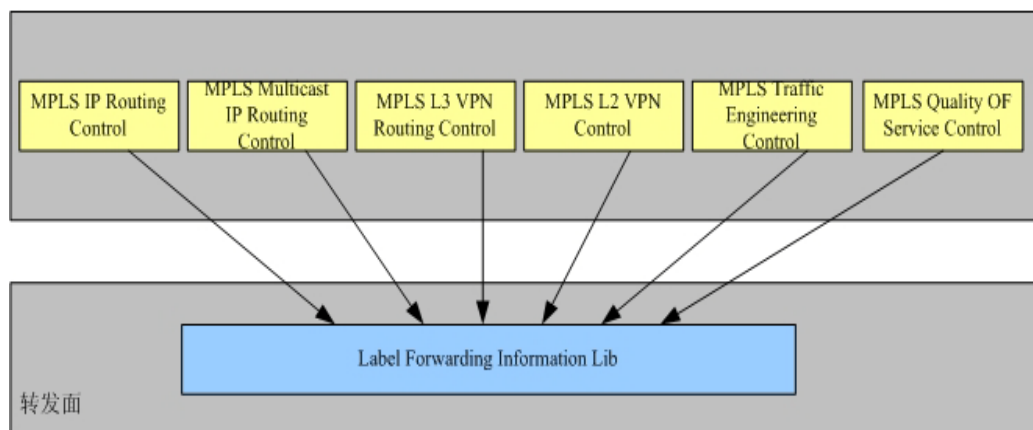


Figure 4

Same as the architecture where the MPLS system is applied to the IP unicast route, the application of every MPLS includes the following elements:

- A database used to define FECs for the application;
- A control protocol used to exchange FECs between LSRs;
- A control protocol used to execute FECs label binding and directly swap the label at the LSR;

The following table describes various control protocols of different applications based on the MPLS system:

Application	FEC table	Control protocol used to create the FEC table	Control protocol used to exchange FEC and label mapping
IP Routing	Unicast routing table	IP routing protocol	LDP
L3 VPN Routing	VRF (routing table of every VPN)	PE and CE use the unicast routing protocol, and the MP-BGP is used between PEs	MP-BGP
L2 VPN	Pwid [RFC4447]	Static configuration->Martini MP-BGP-> kompella	Martini : LDP Kompella: MP-BGP

## 37.2 Configuring MPLS

### 37.2.1 MPLS Basic Configuration Steps

To implement the basic forwarding function of MPLS, first enable the MPLS forwarding function of the switch interface and establish a LDP session to establish and maintain the LSP. To implement the MPLS basic forwarding functions, perform the following steps:



1. Enable the LDP protocol
2. Enable the MPLS function of the interface
3. Enabling the LDP in the interface mode

After the above configuration, the switch can provide the MPLS function.



#### Caution

Since the LDP protocol is based on the topology driver, the switch should enable the IPv4 routing protocol and ensure that the routing protocol is working normally in order for the MPLS network to work normally.

### 37.2.1.1 Global Enable MPLS Forwarding

In the configuration mode, use the **mpls ip** command to enable the MPLS forwarding. By default, the equipment can not enable the MPLS forwarding. After the MPLS forwarding is enabled, the equipment will use the MPLS to carry out the data forwarding firstly.

The **no mpls enable** command is used to disable the MPLS forwarding.

Note: In this version, this command is valid only for the process forwarding, but not valid for the switching chip forwarding.

Command	Meaning
<b>mpls ip</b>	Enable the MPLS forwarding.
<b>no mpls ip</b>	Disable the MPLS forwarding.

### 37.2.1.2 Enabling the LDP protocol

In the privileged mode, the **mpls router ldp** command is firstly used to enable the LDP protocol and enter the LDP configuration mode. When the LDP is enabled, use the **mpls router ldp** command to enter the LDP configuration mode.

Use the **no mpls router ldp** command to disable the LDP protocol.

Command	Meaning
<b>mpls router ldp</b>	Enable the LDP protocol and enter the LDP configuration mode
<b>no mpls router ldp</b>	Disable the LDP protocol.



#### Caution

After the LDP protocol is activated, the interface of the switch will not send and receive the LDP packets. To send and receive the LDP packets on an interface, you need to enable the LDP protocol in the interface mode.



### 37.2.1.3 Enabling MPLS Packet Processing Capacity of Interface

By default, the switch interface does not process the MPLS packets, but directly discards them after receiving the MPLS packets. To allow the switch interface to process the received MPLS packets, enable the MPLS function of the interface in the interface mode.

Command	Meaning
<b>label-switching</b>	Enable the MPLS function of the interface
<b>no label-switching</b>	Disable the MPLS function of the interface



After the MPLS function of the interface is enabled by the **label-switching** command, this interface can only process the MPLS packet with the label. It can only find common Ipv4 route table to forward for the received IP packet, but can not find the LSP forwarding of the FTN table along the MPLS. Hence, this command is not usually configured at the ingress of the IP packet for the LER. This command is specified that it needs to be configured when the MPLS multi-service card is used to carry out the MPLS service forwarding, but it doesn't need to be configured when the MPLS multi-service card is not used to carry out the MPLS service forwarding.

### 37.2.1.4 Enabling the LDP in the interface mode

To enable the LDP on specified interface, it is necessary to use the **mpls ip** command to activate the LDP on this interface after the global enabling of the LDP protocol, and start to send the Hello message periodically.

Command	Meaning
<b>mpls ip</b>	Enable the LDP function of the interface
<b>no mpls ip</b>	Disable the LDP function of the interface



After you enable the LDP protocol in the interface mode, the interface will not receive and send the LDP packets if you do not activate the LDP protocol by using the **router ldp** command in the global configuration mode.

### 37.2.1.5 Configuring MPLS MTU for Interface

To configure the MPLS MTU of the interface, the MPLS label packet MTU to be transmitted on the interface is the interface MTU by default.



The **no mpls mtu command** is used to restore the MPLS MTU of the interface to the default value, the MTU of the interface plus eight (the length of two labels).

Command	Meaning
<b>mpls mtu bytes</b>	Setting MPLS MTU of the Interface
<b>no mpls mtu</b>	Restore the MPLS MTU of the interface to the default value.

**Caution**

The configuration of the MPLS MTU for the interface can not exceed the actual transmitted packet capacity of the interface. For the switches, it indicates this configuration is invalid for the chip forwarding, and the chip is forwarded by the maximal capacity.

### 37.2.1.6 Configuring MPLS to Process MPLS MTU

#### Packet of Interface Exceeded

To configure the MPLS to process the MPLS MTU packet of the interface exceeded, it will carry out the fragment processing according to the IP fragment by default.

The **no mpls ip fragment** command is used to discard the packet to be fragmented directly.

Command	Meaning
<b>no mpls ip fragment</b>	Configure the mpls to carry out the discard processing for the IP packet which exceeds the MPLS MTU of the interface directly.
<b>mpls ip fragment</b>	Restore the processing of the IP packet which exceeds the MPLS MTU of the interface directly according to the IP fragment.

**Caution**

This command only processes the encapsulated IP packet. However, this command is not valid for the non-IP packet. For the switches, it indicates this configuration is invalid for the chip forwarding, and the chip can not be forwarded but discarded.

### 37.2.1.7 Configuring to Process ICMP Error

#### Message

To configure the MPLS to process the ICMP error message generated during the forwarding, the single layer of label will return to the source terminal directly by default, and the multiple layers of label will generate the ICMP error to continue the previous forwarding.



The **no mpls ip icmp forward** command is used to discard the multiple layers of label error message directly.

Command	Meaning
<b>no mpls ip icmp forward</b>	Discard the multiple layers of label error message directly.
<b>mpls ip icmp forward</b>	Restore the previous forwarding of the multiple layers of label error message.



#### Caution

This command only processes the encapsulated IP packet, and it is not valid for the non-IP packet. For the switches, it indicates this configuration is invalid for the chip forwarding, and the chip can not be forwarded but discarded.

### 37.2.1.8 Configuring IP TTL Copy Function of MPLS

To configure the TTL processing mode of the IP packet after the MPLS is encapsulated and decapsulated, it will enable the TTL copy function for the public network by default. For the VPN message, it doesn't enable the TTL copy function. Namely, it will adopt the PIPE mode in the VPN mode by default. Furthermore, it can configure to use the uniform mode.

**Public:** global TTL, which uses the uniform mode. After the route forwarding process, the TTL will be reduced by 1.

**VPN:** VPN tunneling mode, which adopts the PIPE mode. In the tunneling transmission, the internal TTL is not affected.

Command	Meaning
<b>mpls ip ttl propagate</b> <b>[public VPN]</b>	Configure the IP TTL copy function mode of the MPLS.
<b>no mpls ip ttl propagate</b>	Restore the IP TTL copy function mode of the MPLS (VPN mode).



#### Caution

This command only processes the encapsulated IP packet, and it is not valid for the non-IP packet. For the switches, it indicates this configuration is invalid for the chip forwarding, and it will be carried out by the determined function of the chip.



### 37.2.1.9 Configuring MPLS TTL Timeout Processing

The ICMP response packet will be forwarded along the local IP route after the MPLS TTL timeout is configured. By default, it will return the ICMP message according to the local IP route for the MPLS TTL timeout message of the L1 label, and it will be discarded directly for the multiple layers of labels. This command is only valid for the L1 label.

The **no mpls ip ttl expiration** command is used to discard the MPLS TTL timeout directly.

Command	Meaning
<b>no mpls ip ttl expiration</b>	Configure to discard the mpls ttl timeout directly.
<b>nmpls ip ttl expiration</b>	Restore the mpls ttl timeout processing, and generate the ICMP error.



#### Caution

This command only processes the encapsulated IP packet, and it is not valid for the non-IP packet. For the switches, it indicates this configuration is invalid for the chip forwarding, and the chip can not be forwarded but discarded.

### 37.2.1.10 Verifying the MPLS Information

After above configuration, the equipment can establish the LSP for MPLS forwarding. In the privileged mode, you can view the MPLS information by using the show command, and verify the configuration result.

#### 1. Show MPLS Information

It will show the use information of the label space and which interface enables the MPLS function. Verify the correctness of the configuration by viewing information.

Command	Meaning
<b>show mpls summary</b>	Show the basic information of MPLS

#### 2. Show MPLS Forwarding Table

Show the contents of the FTN entries and view specific contents of the FTN entries added by the LDP protocol, for example, the FTN corresponding FEC, outgoing interface, outgoing label, and next-hop address.

Command	Meaning
<b>show mpls forwarding-table</b> [detail vrf name]	Show the FTN information



### 3. Show the FTN table

Show the contents of the FTN entries and view specific contents of the FTN entries added by the LDP protocol, for example, the FTN corresponding FEC, outgoing interface, outgoing label, and next-hop address. It will obtain the MPLS FTN forwarding table item information by the view.

Command	Meaning
<b>show mpls forwarding-table ftn</b> [ip vc detail]	Show the FTN information

### 4. Show the ILM table

Show the contents of the ILM entries and view specific contents of the ILM entries added by the LDP protocol, for example, the ILM incoming interface, incoming label, outgoing label and next-hop address. It will obtain the MPLS FTN forwarding table item information by the view.

Command	Meaning
<b>show mpls forwarding-table ilm</b> [ip vc detail]	Show the ILM information

## 37.2.2 LDP Parameter Configuration

You can modify the default parameters of the LDP by using commands in the LDP configuration mode or interface configuration mode.

### 37.2.2.1 Configuring LDP Session Parameters

#### Configuring LDP Router ID

The LSR ID uniquely identifies a LSR in the domain, and it uses the format of the IP address. By default, the switch uses the router id of the system as the LSR ID. The `lsp-id` command can be used to modify the LSR ID.

To ensure the global unique, the value of `ldp router-id` should not be 0.0.0.0 or 255.255.255.255. For the LDP uses the `ldp router-id` as the transport-address by default, it is necessary to ensure the `ldp router-id` is reachable for other LSRs.

Command	Meaning
<b>ldp router-id ip-address</b>	Set the LDP router ID of the LSRs.
<b>no ldp router-id</b>	Use the router id as the LSR ID



### Configure the transport-address

By default, the LSR ID is used as the global transmission address. As options, you can also choose to use the local interface address or the IP address of the specified interface or specify an IP address as the global transmission address.

When an IP address is specified as the global transmission address, you must ensure that other LSRs have routes to the transport address so that other LSRs can work with this LSR to establish connections a TCP connection for the LDP.

Command	Meaning
<b>transport-address</b> { interface  ip-address  interface-name}	Set the global transmission address
<b>no transport-address</b>	Use the LSR ID as the global transmission address

### Configure the hello message interval

The LDP discovers LDP peers by periodically sending hello messages. The default hello message interval is 5 seconds. This value can be set freely within the range of 1 ~ 65535 seconds.

Command	Meaning
<b>mpls ldp hello-interval</b> <1-65535>	Set the hello message interval
<b>no mpls ldp hello-interval</b>	Use the default hello message interval

### Configure the hello message holdtime

After the LDP discovers a LDP peer by sending hello messages at periodical intervals, it can retain the LDP peer within a certain period before it receives the hello message. If this period expires, it deems that this LDP peer becomes invalid. This period is known as the hello message holdtime. The default hello message holdtime is 15 seconds. This value can be set freely within the range of 1 ~ 65535 seconds.

Command	Meaning
<b>mpls ldp hello-holdtime</b> <1-65535>	Set the hello message holdtime
<b>no mpls ldp hello-holdtime</b>	Use the default hello message holdtime

### Configure the keepalive packet holdtime

After the LDP discovers a LDP peer by sending hello messages and establishes the TCP session, it can retain the session within a certain period before it receives the keepalive packet. If this period expires, it deems that this LDP peer becomes invalid. This period is



known as the keepalive packet holdtime. By default, the keepalive packet holdtime of the Session established by the basic discovery mechanism is 45s, and the keepalive packet holdtime of the Session established by the extended discovery mechanism is 180s. This value can be set freely within the range of 15 ~ 65535 seconds. The interval of the Keepalive packet is 1/3 of the keepalive packet holdtime.

Command	Meaning
<b>mpls ldp keepalive</b> <b>-holdtime</b> <15-65535>	Set the keepalive packet holdtime of the Session established by the basic discovery mechanism on the interface.
<b>no mpls ldp keepalive-holdtime</b>	The Session established by the basic discovery mechanism uses the default keepalive packet holdtime.
<b>targeted-session holdtime</b> <15-65535>	Set the keepalive packet holdtime of the Session established by the extended discovery mechanism on the interface in the LDP mode.
<b>no targeted-session holdtime</b>	The Session established by the extended discovery mechanism uses the default keepalive packet holdtime.

#### Configure the maximum LDP label requests

When the LDP requests for labels, if no label is obtained due to various reasons, the LDP will make requests again at the interval specified. The default number of requests is 0. This value can be set freely within the range of 0 ~ 255.

Command	Meaning
<b>mpls ldp</b> <b>max-label-requests</b> <0-255>	Set the maximum repeating times for the LDP label requests
<b>no mpls ldp max-label-requests</b>	Use the default repeating times for the LDP label requests

#### Set the maximum PDU (Protocol Data Units)

Various messages transferred between the LDP entities are included in the PDU. This size of the PDU can be set freely within the range of 255 ~ 4096 in the interface mode. The default maximum PDU value is 4096.

Command	Meaning
<b>mpls ldp max-pdu</b> <255-4096>	Set the maximum PDU
<b>no mpls ldp max-pdu</b>	Use the default maximum PDU (4096)



### 37.2.2.2 Configuring LDP Loop Detection

#### Configure Loop Detection Mode

The LDP provides two loop detection methods: maximum hop count and path vector. By default, the loop detection is disabled for the LDP.

For the loop detection method of maximum hop count, the hop count is carried together with the labels, and the hop count increases by 1 at every hop. When the hop count exceeds a certain value (as specified by the user), it deems that a loop has occurred on the LSP.

The path vector loop detection mode works by carrying the LSR ID together with the label information. At every hop, the LSR will check if its ID exists in the record. If yes, it means that a loop has occurred. If no, the LSR will add its own ID to the record.

Command	Meaning
<b>loop-detection-mode</b>	Enable loop detection
<b>no loop-detection-mode</b>	Disable loop detection

#### Configure the maximum hop count

In the interface mode, you can set the maximum hop count for loop detection. By default, this value is 254. This value can be set within the range of 1 ~ 255. When loop detection is enabled, if the hop count is greater than the set value, it deems that a loop has occurred.

Command	Meaning
<b>mpls ldp max-hop-count &lt;1-255&gt;</b>	Set the maximum hop count for loop detection
<b>no mpls ldp max-hop-count</b>	Set the default maximum hop count for loop detection

#### Configure the maximum path

In the interface mode, you can the maximum number of path vectors carried in the loop detection of path vector. By default, this value is 254. This value can be set within the range of 1 ~ 255, indicating the maximum number of path vectors that can be carried. When loop detection is enabled, if the LSR finds that the path vector includes its own lsr-id or the number of lsr-ids in the path vector is greater than the set value, a loop has occurred.

Command	Meaning
<b>mpls ldp max-path-vector &lt;1-255&gt;</b>	Set the maximum path vector for loop detection
<b>no mpls ldp max-path-vector</b>	Set the maximum path vector for loop detection to the default value



### 37.2.2.3 Configuring the LDP operating mode

#### 37.2.2.4 Configuring the LDP label distribution control mode

---

The LDP label distribution control mode indicates when the LSR notifies the binding between the label and the FEC to its neighbor. There are two label distribution control modes: independent and ordered.

When independent control is used, each LSR can advertise to the neighbor the binding between the label and the FEC at any time as needed. When ordered control is used, the LSR binds the label for the FEC and distributes to the upstream only when the FEC has the next-hop label mapping or when the LSR is the Egress LSR of the FEC.

By default, the LDP uses the ordered label distribution control mode. You can use the `isp-control-mode` command to set the label distribution control mode of the LDP.

Command	Meaning
<b>isp-control-mode</b> { <i>independent</i>   <i>ordered</i> }	Set the label distribution control mode
<b>no isp-control-mode</b>	Use the default label distribution control mode (ordered)

#### 37.2.2.5 Configuring the LDP label distribution mode

---

The LDP label distribution mode indicates when the LSR notifies the binding between the label and the FEC to its neighbor. There are two label distribution modes: DOD and DU.

When the LSR works in the DOD mode, it only responds with the label mapping information to distribute labels when it receives the label request from the upstream LDP neighbor. When the DU node is used, it distributes labels unsolicited to the upstream LDP neighbor according to the appropriate triggering policy. If the upstream LSR and downstream LSR use different label distribution modes, the upstream and downstream LSR both use the DU mode if they are connected via Ethernet.

The LDP works in the DU mode by default. You can use the `distribution-mode` command in the interface mode to set the label distribution control mode of the LDP at the interface.

Command	Meaning
<b>mpls ldp distribution-mode</b> { <i>du</i>   <i>dod</i> }	Set the label distribution mode
<b>no mpls ldp distribution-mode</b>	Use the default label distribution mode (DU)



### 37.2.2.6 Configuring the LDP label retention mode

The label retention mode indicates whether to retain the label binding learnt from the label mapping information when the received label mapping message is not from the next-hop FEC of the message, or the received label mapping message does not match not any of the existing IP route. There are two label retention modes: conservative and liberal.

When the above condition occurs, the liberal label retention mode retains the FEC label binding learnt from the neighbor, while the conservative label retention mode does not retain the FEC label binding learnt from the neighbor.

The conservative label retention mode needs to use and maintain a smaller number of labels. However, when the routes change, new labels must be obtained and so this increases the response time. On the other hand, the liberal label retention mode responds quickly to route changes, but the label mapping not used is also distributed and maintained.

By default, the LDP uses the liberal label retention mode.

You can use the `label-retention-mode` command to set the label retention mode.

Command	Meaning
<b>label-retention-mode</b> { <i>liberal</i>   <i>conservation</i> }	Set the label retention mode
<b>no label-retention-mode</b>	Use the default label retention mode

### 37.2.2.7 Configuring label merge

If the LSR has bound multiple incoming labels for a specific FEC, but the same label is used to forward the packets of the FEC, it means that the LSR has the label merge function. You can enable and disable the label merge function by configuring the LDP.

By default, the LDP has enabled the label merge function.

You can enable and disable the label merge function by using the **label-merge** command.

Command	Meaning
<b>label-merge</b>	Enable the label merge function
<b>no label-merge</b>	Disable the label merge function

### 37.2.2.8 Configuring the label release information transfer mode

When a FEC fails, the LDP will send the label release message from the downstream to the upstream to remove the label bound to the FEC. Whether each LDP on the LSP transfers the message to the downstream when it receives the label release message from the downstream depends on the label release message transfer mode set.



By default, the LDP will not transfer the message to the upstream when it receives the label release message from the downstream.

You can set the label release message transfer mode by using the **propagate-release** mode.

Command	Meaning
<b>propagate-release</b>	Transfer the label release message to the upstream
<b>no propagate-release</b>	Not transfer the label release message to the upstream

### 37.2.2.9 Verifying the LDP information

#### 1. Show the LDP attribute

The **show mpls ldp parameter** command can be used to show various attribute information of the LDP, including the LSR ID, transport-address, loop detection mechanism, label distribution control mode, label retention mode, interval and keepalive of the extended peer hello message and interval and keepalive of the extended peer keepalive packet. Verify the correctness of the configuration by viewing the information.

Command	Meaning
<b>show mpls ldp parameters</b>	Show the LDP attribute

#### 2. Show the LDP session information

The **show mpls ldp session** command allows you to show the information of all LDP sessions. You can also add the IP address of the remote LDP entity in the front of the command to show the information of the specific LDP session. The information shown includes the session duration, session status, and session source address. By checking such information, you can learn the status of the session and determine if the session has been established.

Command	Meaning
<b>show mpls ldp session</b>	Show the LDP attribute

#### 3. Show the binding between the FEC and the label

The **show mpls ldp binding** command allows you to show the information of FEC and label binding. This command allows you to view the working status of the LDP, whether the LDP has normally bound the FEC, as well as the specific label value of a specific FEC binding.

Command	Meaning
<b>show mpls ldp bindings</b>	Show the binding between the FEC and the label

#### 4. Show the LDP neighbor



The **show mpls ldp neighbor** command allows you to show all LDP neighbors, including the TCP connection port between the local LDP and peer LDP, LDP status, received/sent message count, and LDP discovery party.

Command	Meaning
<b>show mpls ldp neighbor</b>	Show all LDP neighbors

#### 5. Show the discovered LDP neighbors

Show the ports on which the LDP has discovered neighbors and the information of the neighbors.

Command	Meaning
<b>show mpls ldp discovery</b>	Show the discovered LDP neighbors

### 37.2.3 Manually Configuring the LSP

To implement the basic forwarding function of MPLS, you can configure it manually instead of using the LDP. Manually configuring MPLS is to manually establish and maintain the LSP.

To manually implement the MPLS basic forwarding functions, perform the following steps:

1. Enable the MPLS function of the interface
2. Manually establishing the LSP

After the above configuration, the switch can provide the MPLS function.



#### Caution

If you manually configure the LSP, the LDP protocol is not needed, it does not need to rely on the IPv4 route. Even if there is not any IPv4 route in the network, the manual configured LSP will take effect as long as the physical network is reachable.

#### 37.2.3.1 Enable the MPLS function of the interface

See the 1.2.1.2 section.

#### 37.2.3.2 Manually establishing the LSP

Manually configuring the MPLS network is mainly to manually establish the LSP. The configuration steps are the same as the case where the LDP is used. Manually establishing the LSP consists of three steps:

1. Configure the FTN on the ingress LSR
2. Configure the ILM on the intermediate LSR
3. Configure the ILM with the outgoing label of 3 on the last but one LSR of the LSP



Label values 16 ~ 1024 are reserved for manually establishing the LSP. You can use only these reserved labels when you manually configure the LSP.

### 37.2.3.3 Manually configuring the FTN

At the egress of the LSP, FTN entries should be created for the FEC, that is, bind the FEC with the label.

In the global configuration mode, execute the **mpls static ftn** command to manually configure the FTN. The format of this command is as below:

Command	Meaning
<b>mpls static ftn</b> <i>A.B.C.D/M</i> <b>out-label label nexthop interface</b> <i>nexthop-ip</i>	Add the global FTN
<b>no mpls static ftn</b> <i>A.B.C.D/M</i>	Delete the global FTN

For example, to configure a global FTN where the FEC 192.168.1.0/24 is bound with the label of 16 and the next hop of the LSP is 192.168.10.10, and the outgoing interface is GigabitEthernet 2/1, execute the following command:

```
mpls static ftn 192.168.1.0/24 out-label 16 GigabitEthernet 2/1 192.168.10.10
```

To delete the ftn item, it is only necessary to enter the FEC, and other parameters need not to be entered.

```
no mpls static ftn 192.168.1.0/24
```

### 37.2.3.4 Manually configuring the ILM on the intermediate LSR

To forward the incoming labeled packets according to their labels on a non-ingress LSR, you should set the ILM and map the incoming label to the outgoing label. In the global configuration mode, execute the **mpls static ilm in-label** command to manually configure the ILM. The format of this command is as below:

Command	Meaning
<b>mpls static ilm in-label</b> <i>in_label</i> <b>forward-action swap-label</b> <i>swap_label nexthop interface</i> <b>nexthop-ip fec</b> <i>A.B.C.D/M</i>	Add the global ILM
<b>no mpls static ilm in-label</b> <i>in_label</i>	Delete the global ILM

For example, to configure a global ILM where the incoming label 16 received from the GigabitEthernet 2/1 interface is mapped to the outgoing label 17, the next hop of the LSP is 192.168.11.11 and the outgoing interface is GigabitEthernet 2/2, the FEC of the LSP is 192.168.1.0/24, execute the following command:



```
mpls static ilm in-label 16 forward-action swap-label 17 nexthop  
GigabitEthernet 2/2 192.168.11.11 fec 192.168.1.0/24
```

To delete the ILM, execute the following command:

```
no mpls static ilm in-label 16
```

### 37.2.3.5 Configure the ILM on the last but one LSR of the LSP

Since the last but one hop is to perform PHP (last but one hop pop), the ILM entry on the last but one hop must be different from the ILM entries on the other intermediate LSRs. In other words, the outgoing label of the ILM on the last but one hop LSR on the LSP must be implicit null label (with the value of 3).



#### Caution

For the concept of second but last hop pop, refer to the related document.

For example, to configure a global ILM on the second but one hop of the LSP, where the incoming label 17 received from the interface GigabitEthernet 2/1 is subjected to the PHP operation, the packets with label 17 popped up are sent from the interface GigabitEthernet 2/2, and the next hop address is 192.168.12.12, and the LSP corresponds with the FEC of 192.168.1.0/24, Execute the following command:

```
mpls static ilm in-label 17 forward-action swap-label 3 nexthop  
GigabitEthernet 2/2 192.168.11.11 fec 192.168.1.0/24
```

To delete the ILM, execute the following command:

```
no mpls static ilm in-label 17
```

### 37.2.4 MPLS Basic Configuration Examples

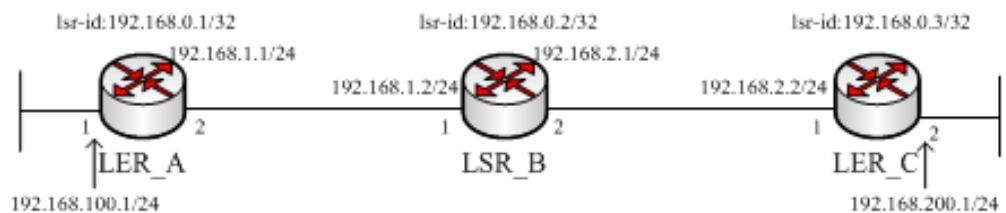


Figure 5

As shown in the above diagram, the MPLS network consists of three MPLS switches. The following sections describe how to use the LDP to establish the LSP and manually configure the LSP.



### 37.2.4.1 Using the LDP protocol to establish LSP

The LDP protocol needs the IPv4 route in order to work. In this case, the OSPF protocol is used to establish the IPv4 route.

#### LER\_A configuration:

Command	Meaning
DES-7200(config)# <b>mpls router ldp</b>	Activate the LDP protocol and enter the LDP mode
DES-7200(config-mpls-router)# <b>ldp router-id 192.168.0.1</b>	Set the lsr id
DES-7200(config-mpls-router)# <b>exit</b>	Exit the LDP mode and enter the global configuration mode
DES-7200(config)# <b>interface gigabitEthernet 2/2</b>	Enter the interface GigabitEthernet 2/2
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>mpls ip</b>	Enable the LDP on the interface
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>label-switching</b>	Enable MPLS label switching on the interface
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>exit</b>	Exit the interface mode and enter the global configuration mode
DES-7200(config)# <b>router ospf 10</b>	Activate the OSPF protocol and enter the OSPF mode
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>network 192.168.100.0 255.255.255.0 area 0</b> DES-7200(config-router)# <b>network 192.168.0.1 255.255.255.255 area 0</b> DES-7200(config-router)# <b>network 192.168.1.0 255.255.255.0 area 0</b>	Add the route information to OSPF
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>end</b>	End the configuration

#### LER\_B configuration:

Command	Meaning
DES-7200(config)# <b>mpls router ldp</b>	Activate the LDP protocol and enter the LDP mode
DES-7200(config-mpls-router)# <b>ldp router-id 192.168.0.2</b>	Set the lsr id
DES-7200(config-mpls-router)# <b>exit</b>	Exit the LDP mode and enter the global configuration mode
DES-7200(config)# <b>interface gigabitEthernet 2/1</b>	Enter the interface GigabitEthernet 2/1
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>mpls ip</b>	Enable the LDP on the interface
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>label-switching</b>	Enable MPLS label switching on the interface



Command	Meaning
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>exit</b>	Exit the interface mode and enter the global configuration mode
DES-7200(config)# <b>interface gigabitEthernet 2/2</b>	Enter the interface GigabitEthernet 2/2
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>mpls ip</b>	Enable the LDP on the interface
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>label-switching</b>	Enable MPLS label switching on the interface
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>exit</b>	Exit the interface mode and enter the global configuration mode
DES-7200(config)# <b>router ospf 10</b>	Activate the OSPF protocol and enter the OSPF mode
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>network 192.168.1.0 255.255.255.0 area 0</b> DES-7200(config-router)# <b>network 192.168.2.0 255.255.255.0 area 0</b> DES-7200(config-router)# <b>network 192.168.0.2 255.255.255.255 area 0</b>	Add the route information to OSPF
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>end</b>	End the configuration

**LER\_C configuration:**

Command	Meaning
DES-7200(config)# <b>mpls router ldp</b>	Activate the LDP protocol and enter the LDP mode
DES-7200(config-mpls-router)# <b>ldp router-id 192.168.0.3</b>	Set the lsr id
DES-7200(config-mpls-router)# <b>exit</b>	Exit the LDP mode and enter the global configuration mode
DES-7200(config)# <b>interface gigabitEthernet 2/1</b>	Enter the interface GigabitEthernet 2/1
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>mpls ip</b>	Enable the LDP on the interface
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>label-switching</b>	Enable MPLS label switching on the interface
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>exit</b>	Exit the interface mode and enter the global configuration mode
DES-7200(config)# <b>router ospf 10</b>	Activate the OSPF protocol and enter the OSPF mode
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>network 192.168.200.0 255.255.255.0 area 0</b> DES-7200(config-router)# <b>network 192.168.0.3 255.255.255.255 area 0</b> DES-7200(config-router)# <b>network 192.168.2.0 255.255.255.0 area 0</b>	Add the route information to OSPF



Command	Meaning
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>end</b>	End the configuration

### 37.2.4.2 Manually Configuring the LSP

Manually configuring the LSP does not need the support of the IPv4 route.

As an example, two LSPs are established between the 192.168.100.0/24 network segment connected with the #interface of the LER\_A and the 192.168.200.0/24 network segment connected with the #2 interface of the LER\_C to connect them. It is necessary to establish two LSPs for the LSP is unidirectional, there should be one LSP from LER-A to LER-C and another LSP from LER-C to LER-A.

#### LER\_A configuration:

Command	Meaning
DES-7200(config)# <b>interface gigabitEthernet 2/2</b>	Enter the interface GigabitEthernet 2/2
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>label-switching</b>	Enable MPLS label switching on the interface
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>exit</b>	Exit the interface mode and enter the global configuration mode
DES-7200(config)# <b>mpls static ftn 192.168.200.0/24 out-label 16 nexthop gigabitEthernet 2/2 92.168.1.2</b>	Create a FTN to bind the 192.168.200.0/24 with label 16. Specify the next hop of the FTN as 192.168.1.2 and the outgoing interface as gigabitEthernet 2/2.
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>end</b>	End the configuration

#### LER\_B configuration:

Command	Meaning
DES-7200(config)# <b>interface gigabitEthernet 2/1</b>	Enter the interface GigabitEthernet 2/1
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>label-switching</b>	Enable MPLS label switching on the interface
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>exit</b>	Exit the interface mode and enter the global configuration mode
DES-7200(config)# <b>interface gigabitEthernet 2/2</b>	Enter the interface GigabitEthernet 2/2
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>label-switching</b>	Enable MPLS label switching on the interface
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>exit</b>	Exit the interface mode and enter the global configuration mode



Command	Meaning
DES-7200(config)# <b>mpls static ilm</b> <b>in-label</b> 16 <b>forward-action</b> <b>swap-label</b> 3 <b>nexthop</b> gi2/2 192.168.2.2 <b>fec</b> 192.168.200.0/24	Create one ILM to map the received incoming label 16 to the outgoing label 3 (hidden empty label) of the interface gigabitEthernet 2/2. The address of the next hop is 192.168.2.2, and the FEC is 192.168.200.0/24.
DES-7200(config)# <b>mpls static ilm</b> <b>in-label</b> 17 <b>forward-action</b> <b>swap-label</b> 3 <b>nexthop</b> gi2/1 192.168.1.1 <b>fec</b> 192.168.100.0/24	Create one ILM to map the received incoming label 17 to the outgoing label 3 (hidden empty label) of the interface gigabitEthernet 2/1. The address of the next hop is 192.168.1.1, and the FEC is 192.168.100.0/24.
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>end</b>	End the configuration

For LER\_B is the countdown second hop of the LSP established for this FEC of 192.168.100.0/24, the outgoing label (hidden empty label) of the no.17 incoming label mapping is 3, and the outgoing interface is gi2/1.

In this way, LER\_B is also the countdown second hop of the LSP established for this FEC of 192.168.200.0/24, the outgoing label (hidden empty label) of the no.16 incoming label mapping is 3, and the outgoing interface is gi2/2.

#### LER\_C configuration:

Command	Meaning
DES-7200(config)# <b>interface</b> <b>gigabitEthernet</b> 2/1	Enter the interface GigabitEthernet 2/1
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>label-switching</b>	Enable MPLS label switching on the interface
(config-if)# <b>exit</b>	Exit the interface mode and enter the global configuration mode
DES-7200(config)# <b>mpls static ftn</b> 192.168.100.0/24 <b>out-label</b> 17 <b>nexthop</b> <b>gigabitEthernet</b> 2/1 192.168.2.1	Create a FTN to bind the 192.168.200.0/24 with label 16. Specify the next hop of the FTN as 192.168.1.2 and the outgoing interface as gigabitEthernet 2/2.
DES-7200(config-router)# <b>end</b>	End the configuration

After the above configuration, if a packet on the LER\_A has their destination addresses on the 192.168.200.0/24 network segment, the packet will be sent from the gigabitEthernet 2/2 interface of the LER\_A and added with label 16. After the packets with label 16 reach the gigabitEthernet 2/1 interface of LER\_B, they will be converted into IP packets, which are sent from the gigabitEthernet 2/2 interface of the LER\_B. After the IP packets whose destination address is on the 192.168.200.0/24 network segment reaches the LER\_C, it is routed at the LER\_C according to its IP address, and is sent from the gigabitEthernet 2/1 interface in this way.



# 38 BGP/MPLS VPN Configuration

## 38.1 BGP/MPLS VPN Overview

Traditional VPNs transmit private network data traffic on the public network by using the tunnel protocols such as GRE, L2TP and PPTP. BGP/MPLS IP VPN is another form of VPN, which is a VPN of the tunnel protocol between L2 and L3. The LSP is the tunnel on the public network, except that it is established through the LDP used by MPLS. The MPLS-based VPN forms a unified network by connecting the branches of the private networks through the LSP. The MPLS-based VPN also supports the interworking between different VPNs. There are natural advantages for the MPLS to implement the VPN. For instance, for the VPN users, it can greatly reduce the workload of the VPN users, the dedicated VPN equipment is not required, and the traditional router can establish the VPN. For the operators, it can carry out the VPN expansibility by the MPLS VPN easily.

As a high effective IP backbone network technology platform, the MPLS provides the VPN with a flexible and extensible technology foundation.

The implementation of the L3VPN by using the BGP/MPLS VPN has the following characteristics:

1. The VPN tunnel is established on the network service provider PE, instead of between the user CEs. The VPN route is also transferred between the PEs, and users do not need to spend time maintaining the VPN information.
2. Directly use the existing routing protocol. The establishment of the VPN tunnel and the route distribution are dynamically implemented. This is conducive to the expansion of the VPN scale.
3. Support address overlapping to allow different VPN users to use the same address space.
4. In the service provider network, the service exchange in the VPN uses label switching instead of the traditional route distribution.
5. Achieve the same security as the user lease line.
6. The most prominent advantage lies in speed and QoS support. MPLS is the only network technology that can implement the QoS and traffic engineering in the IP network. Therefore, when the network built needs these functions, particularly for the real-time services (like IP phone) demanding high QoS, MPLS should be selected as the tunnel protocol to implement the VPN.

BGP/MPLS VPN needs to implement the following functions:



1. In the backbone network, the LDP is used to establish the LSP tunnel. This process is usually performed in the network of the service provider, and is already finished when the topology is stable.
2. Data forwarding; packets are forwarded according to the label of the packets and local mapping table.
3. MP-BGP and BGP expansion attribute, used to transfer the VPN routes and bear the VPN attributes, QoS information, and labels.
4. Managing the VPN routes: creating multiple routing tables and maintaining the VPN routing information

### 38.1.1 BGP/MPLS VPN structure

In the BGP/MPLS VPN model, there are three components, as shown in the following diagram:

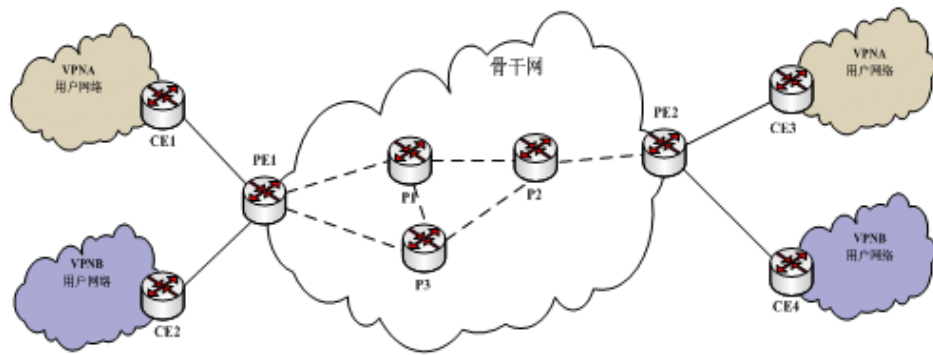


Figure 6

- CE

CE (Customer Edge Router), logically belonging to the VPN of the user; an interface of the CE is directly connected to the service provider router. The CE can be a host or a router, and may not support the MPLS function, for example, CE1, CE2, CE3 and CE4 as shown in the above diagram.

- PE

PE (Provider Edge Router), an edge device of the SP backbone network (can be a router, ATM switch or RF switch), like PE1 and PE2 shown in the diagram; logically the PE belongs to the service provider. The PE is directly connected to the CE and one PE can be connected with multiple different CEs. The PE is responsible for receiving the VPN information from the CE end, and sending the VPN information to other PEs, and receiving the VPN information from other PEs, and distributing them to the appropriate CE. The PE must support the MPLS function.

- P



P (Provider Router), located in the core router of the SP backbone network, as shown in P1, P2 and P3. P is not connected with the CE, and is responsible for routing and fast forwarding. P, as a router in the MPLS core backbone network, must support the MPLS function. P knows the route to any destination in the backbone network, but not that to the VPN.

### 38.1.2 VRF

---

- VRF

VRF is mainly used to solve the local route conflict.

The VPN Routing and Forwarding table is abbreviated as VRF. All connections between the PE and CE need to be associated with a VRF. There can be multiple VRFs on one PE, used to exchange route information with the CE end. Every VRF can be imagined as a “virtual router”, and each router is connected with the CE, responsible for receiving the route information from the CE end or notifying the VPN route information to the CE end. It solves the local route conflict on the PE due to that the same address spaces are used between different VPNs. The VRF includes:

1. A separate routing table
2. A group of interfaces belonging to this VRF
3. A group of routing protocols only used for this VRF

The VRF has two major attributes: RD attribute and RT attribute

- RD

Route Distinguisher, introduced to solve the route conflict during the transmission process. The RD can be understood as a distinguisher. If different VPNs have the same network address, the BGP is used to advertise the route information in the backbone network. The BGP decision only select the best route advertisement from these overlapped addresses, and this will cause some VPNs to fail to obtain the appropriate route information. With the RD value added, different distinguishers can be added to these overlapped addresses. The BGP decision process distinguishes the same network addresses according to the different distinguishers carried in the VPN information. Each VPN can obtain its respective route information. The meaning of the RD is only a distinguisher to distinguish the same network addresses. If different VPNs have no overlapped addresses, it can be done without the RD value.

Usually, a unique RD is allocated for a VPN so that different VPNs have different RDs, and the route information can be transmitted normally in the backbone network. Can different VPNs share a RD? It is acceptable except that you must ensure that all the VPNs have no overlapped addresses. The same VPN must use the same RD? It is not necessary. Different nodes in the VPN can use different RDs, except that a unified RD is usually used in a VPN for easier management.



Usually, the RD value is defined as XX: XX, for example, RD 1: 100, where 1 identifies the AS number of the backbone network, and 100 is specified by the user. One VPN router can only carry one RD value.

The contents of the RD include the type field, management sub-area and distribution field. According to the value of the type field, there are the following two code formats:

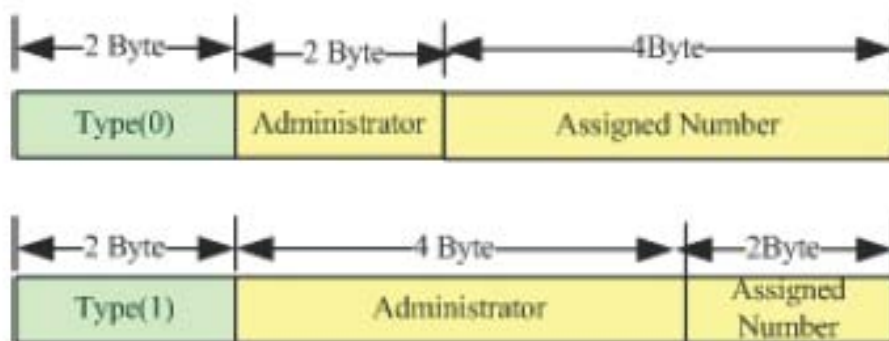


Figure 7

- 1) When Type = 0, the management sub-area has 2 bytes, and is identified by the AS number. It must be a public AS number. The allocation field has 4 bytes, managed by the service provider.
- 2) When Type = 1, the management sub-area has 4 bytes and uses the IPv4 address. The address must be the global IP address. The allocation field has 2 bytes, managed by the service provider.

- Route-Target

The RT attribute is used by the VRF to express how the route is handled. The RT attribute includes the "Export Route-Target" and "Import Route-Target". The PE receives the route from the CE and adds the "Export Route-Target" attribute to these VPN route information, advertising the VPN route information to other PEs. The PE determines whether the route received from other PEs needs to be imported to the VRF according to the "Import Route-target". One principle: When the PE receives the route information of the VPN, on if the RT attributes carried in the VPN route information at least have one attribute equal to the "Import RT" of a VRF on the local PE, the VPN information can be installed to the "VRF". The above method can flexibly control the forwarding of the VPN route information. One piece of VPN route information can carry multiple RT values.

The expansion group attribute of the BGP defines the structure of the RT, as shown in the following diagram:



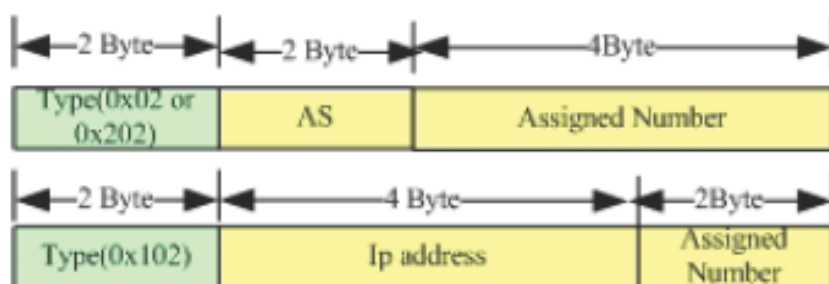


Figure 8

The RT value and RD value have similar definitions. For the type 0x02 and 0x202, the AS number must also be public. For type 0x102, the IPv4 address must be global, not private.

### 38.1.3 MP-BGP

The route information of the VPN is transmitted in the backbone network via BGP, and the “Export RT” attribute is carried by the expansion group attributes defined in the BGP protocol. However, as the traditional BGP4 protocol can only transmit the IPV4 route information, it cannot carry the VPN information that includes the RD, so the BGP must be expanded. The most important advantage of the BGP is its good expandability, which allows new attributes to be defined on the old basis. The MP-BGP is a new attribute introduced on the basis of the old BGP. It can support multiple protocols, known as Multi-Protocol BGP. The MP-BGP can carry the VPN information, and the VPN route can form the following form: RD + IP address prefix. When the MP-BGP transfers the VPN routes between the PE peers, the RD is added to transform the IPv4 route from the VPN user into the VPN-IPV4 router, for transfer in the backbone network.

### 38.1.4 Configuring the MPLS network

To use MPLS on the backbone network, the LDP of MPLS must be configured on the P and PE in order to establish the public network channel. This includes configuring the LDP for the appropriate router and enabling the MPLS forwarding function on each interface. The configuration steps are as below:

Command	Meaning
<b>config terminal</b>	
<b>mpls router ldp</b>	Enable the LDP protocol and enter the LDP configuration mode
<b>exit</b>	Exit the LDP configuration mode
<b>interface if-name</b>	Enter the interface configuration mode.



Command	Meaning
<b>label-switching</b>	Enable the MPLS packet processing function of the interface
<b>mpls ip</b>	Enable the LDP of the interface
<b>end</b>	Return to the privileged mode
<b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Save the configuration.

### 38.1.5 Configuring the VPN route instance

The VPN route instance is the VRF, which is configured on the PE. There is no VRF on the CE and P.

Configuring the VRF includes defining a VRF, configuring the RD and RT value for the VRF, and associating the VRF with an interface. The configuration steps are as below:

Command	Meaning
<b>config terminal</b>	
<b>ip vrf <i>vrf_name</i></b>	Define a VRF and enter the VRF configuration mode.
<b>rd <i>route-distinguish</i></b>	Define the RD value
<b>route-target {both export import } <i>route-target-value</i></b>	Define the RT value
<b>exit</b>	Exit the VRF configuration mode
<b>interface <i>if-name</i></b>	Enter the interface configuration mode.
<b>ip vrf forwarding <i>vrf_name</i></b>	Associate the interface with the VRF
<b>ip address <i>A.B.C.D mask</i></b>	Configure the IP address
<b>end</b>	Return to the privileged mode
<b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Save the configuration.



#### Caution

Once some VRF on PE defines the RD value or enables the BGP VRF function, the RD value of the VRF can not be modified or deleted. No two different VRFs can be defined with the same RD value on the same PE. Input the “ip vrf forwarding *vrf\_name*” command. The IP address configured early for this interface will be deleted, and you need to define the IP address again in the interface mode.



### 38.1.6 Configuring PE-PE transfer of VPN

#### routes

The route information is transferred between PEs via the BGP protocol. In order to transfer the VPN information to another PE, not the ordinary IPv4 route information, you need to enter the address family mode of the VPN to enable the transfer of VPN route to the peer PE. The steps are as below:

Command	Meaning
<b>config terminal</b>	
<b>router bgp asn-number</b>	Configure the BGP protocol and enter the BGP configuration mode
<b>neighbor ip-address remote-as asn-number</b>	Configure the PE peer
<b>address-family vpnv4</b>	Enter the VPN address family
<b>neighbor ip-address activate</b>	Enable the sending of the route information to the peer
<b>end</b>	Return to the privileged mode
<b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Save the configuration

Options of the neighbor update-source command



#### Caution

When you use the neighbor remote-as command to specify the peer PE of BGP, you can specify a specific interface address of the peer to establish the TCP connection. In this case, you do not need to the neighbor update-source command. However, the TCP connection is established by specifying the loopback address of the other party between the peer PEs, you need to use the neighbor update-source command on the PE to specify its own loopback address as the TCP source address. This is often used for the IBGP neighbor. In actual configuration, you are recommended to use the Loopback address as the RouterID of PE.

## 38.2 Configuring the PE-CE Route Switching

### 38.2.1 Running the BGP protocol to transfer the route information between PE-CE

To configure the CE peer, you need to enter the VRF address family mode and configure the routing protocol for working with the CE end. The configuration steps on the PE are as below:



Command	Meaning
<b>config terminal</b>	
<b>router bgp pe-asn</b>	Configure the BGP protocol and enter the BGP configuration mode
<b>address-family ipv4 vrf <i>vrf_name</i></b>	Enter the address family mode of the vrf
<b>neighbor ip-address remote-as ce-asn</b>	Configure the CE peer and usually specify the interface address on the CE directly connected with the PE
<b>end</b>	Return to the privileged mode
<b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Save the configuration.

**Caution**

Usually, it will define the RD value of this VRF after one VRF is defined. However, if users don't define the RD value for this VRF and above command **address-family ipv4 vrf VRF\_NAME** needs to enter into the address family of specified VRF, the system will create a default RD value 0:0 for this VRF. It can no be modified or deleted after this RD value is created.

Perform the following steps on the CE to configure the PE:

Command	Meaning
<b>config terminal</b>	
<b>router bgp ce-asn</b>	Configure the BGP protocol and enter the BGP configuration mode
<b>neighbor ip-address remote-as pe-asn</b>	Configure the PE peer and usually specify the interface address on the PE directly connected with the CE
<b>end</b>	Return to the privileged mode
<b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Save the configuration.

### 38.2.1.1 Running the OSPF protocol to transfer the route information between PE-CE

The PE and CE run the OSPF. On the PE, you must configure an OSPF instance for the corresponding VRF. Through this OSPF instance the VRF obtains the VPN route information on the CE end, and receives the VPN information from other PEs through the redistribute BGP command. At the same time, you should also enter the address family mode of the VRF and use the redistribute OSPF command to transfer the VPN information learnt from the CE end to other PE peers.

The configuration steps on the PE are as below:

Command	Meaning
<b>config terminal</b>	



Command	Meaning
<b>router ospf</b> <i>ospf_id</i> <i>vrf_name</i> <i>match internal</i>	Configure an OSPF instance for the VRF and enter the OSPF configuration mode
<b>network prefix mask area</b> <i>area_id</i>	Enable the OSPF between the PE-CE network segment
<b>redistribute bgp</b>	Redistribute the BGP
<b>exit</b>	Exit the OSPF configuration mode
<b>router bgp</b> <i>asn</i>	Configure the BGP protocol and enter the BGP configuration mode
<b>address-family ipv4 vrf</b> <i>vrf_name</i>	Enter the address family mode of the VRF
<b>redistribute ospf</b> <i>ospf_id</i>	Redistribute the OSPF in the VRF address family mode to obtain the vpn information learnt from the CE end.
<b>end</b>	Return to the privileged mode
<b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Save the configuration.

**Caution**

See the precautions in section 1.3.2.4.1: Setting the default RD value.

The configuration steps on the CE are as below:

Command	Meaning
<b>config terminal</b>	
<b>router ospf</b> <i>ospf_id</i>	Configure the OSPF instance and enter the OSPF configuration mode
<b>network prefix mask area</b> <i>area_id</i>	Enable the OSPF between the PE-CE network segment
<b>end</b>	Return to the privileged mode
<b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Save the configuration

### 38.2.1.2 Transferring the route information between PE-CE through static configuration

Usually in a simple network environment, you can use the static route. The configuration process is shown as below:

Command	Meaning
<b>config terminal</b>	



Command	Meaning
<b>ip route vrf <i>vrf_name</i> prefix mask gateway interface</b>	Configure the static route for the VRF
<b>router bgp asn</b>	Configure the BGP protocol and enter the BGP configuration mode
<b>address-family ipv4 vrf <i>vrf_name</i></b>	Enter the address family mode of the VRF
<b>redistribute static</b>	Redistribute the static route
<b>end</b>	Return to the privileged mode
<b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Save the configuration.

**Caution**

See the precautions in section 1.3.2.4.1: Setting the default RD value.

### 38.2.1.3 Configuring Static FTN and ILM Entry of L3VPN (Optional)

In general, it is the MP-BGP to assign the label for the private network, and the public network LSP is generated by the LDP protocol running on the public network. It can also carry out the label assign of the private network route and establish the LSP tunnel by configuring the static LSP. The configuration command and step of related FTN for L3 VPN on the PE is shown as follows:

Command	Meaning
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
<b>mpls static l3vpn-ftn vrf-name fec-prefix/fec-mask out-label out_label remote-pe ipaddr</b>	Configure a static private network FTN, whose outgoing interface is on other PEs.. At this time, it is necessary to specify the private network label and its outgoing PE. The address of this outgoing PE will be used to match with the LSP tunnel of the public network.
<b>mpls static l3vpn-ftn vrf-name fec-prefix/fec-mask local-forward nexthop interface nexthop-ip</b>	Configure a static private network FTN, whose outgoing interface is the PE itself. At this time, it is necessary to specify the outgoing interface of the local PE and the next hop address (In general, its outgoing interface and next hop is on another VRF). In general, this command can be used when more than one VRF is of the same VPN on the local PE.
<b>end</b>	Exit to the privileged mode.
<b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Save the configuration.



The configuration commands and steps of the ILM for the L3 VPN on the PE are shown as follows:

Command	Meaning
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
<b>mpls static ilm in-label</b> <i>in_label</i> <b>forward-action pop-l3vpn-nexthop</b> <i>vrf-name</i> <b>nexthop interface</b> <b>nexthop-ip fec</b> <i>fec</i>	To configure the ILM item of L3 VPN on the PE, it is necessary to specify the incoming label, the outgoing interface and the next hop address.
<b>end</b>	Exit to the privileged mode.
<b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Save the configuration.



#### Caution

Above only configures the static private network FTN and ILM, and it will be valid only when corresponding public network LSP tunnel is established. To establish the LSP tunnel of the public network, see the chapter *Basic Configuration Steps of MPLS*. It can establish the public network LSP tunnel by the LDP protocol or in the static configuration way.

### 38.2.1.4 Verifying L3 VPN Configuration

This section describes how to verify the L3VPN configuration and the VPN route information by performing the following steps.

Command	Meaning
<b>show ip vrf</b> [ <i>vrf_name</i> ]	Show the VRF configuration information
<b>show ip bgp vpnv4</b> { <i>all</i>   <i>rd</i> <i>route-distinguish</i>   <i>vrf vrf_name</i> } [ <i>network-address</i> ][ <i>summary</i> ] [ <i>neighbor</i> ][ <i>label</i> ]	Show the VPN route information
<b>show ip bgp summary</b>	Show the status of all BGP connections
<b>show ip route vrf</b> <i>vrf_name</i> [ <i>A.B.C.D</i> ][ <i>bgp</i> ][ <i>connected</i> ][ <i>count</i> ][ <i>isis</i> ][ <i>ospf</i> ] <i>rip</i> ][ <i>static</i> ][ <i>weight</i> ]	Show the related VRF route information

## 38.3 BGP/MPLS VPN Configuration Example

### 38.3.1 Intranet Configuration Example

Requirements: There are two VPN users, VPNA and VPNB. VPNA have its own sites in Fuzhou and Shanghai, and VPNB have its own sites in Beijing and Shanghai. Now the users in VPNA should be able to access the resources in Fuzhou and Shanghai, and those in



VPNB can access the resources in Beijing and Shanghai. No mutual access is allowed between the two VPNs. See the figure below.

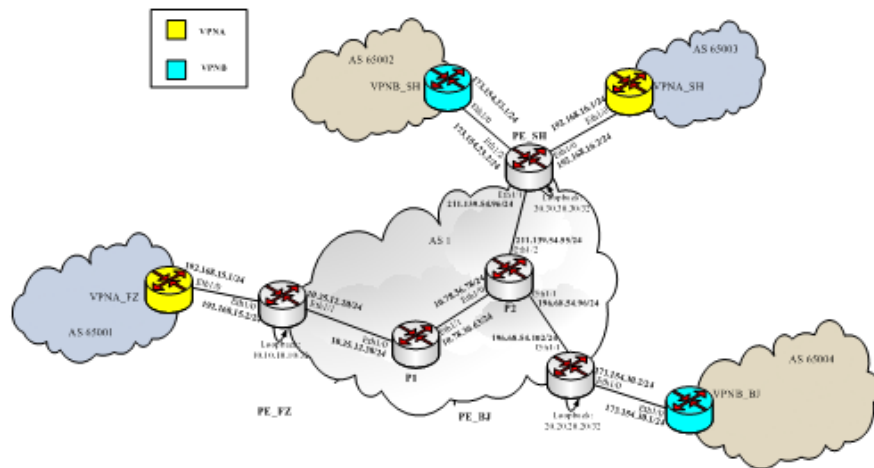


Figure 9:

Configuration procedure:

#### 1) Configuration of PE

Now take PE\_SH as an example:

##### ■ Configure the VRF

Define two VRFs on PE\_SH, such as VRFA\_SH and VRFB\_SH, and define the R value and RT value. For two VRF definitions respectively, associate the VRF with corresponding interface.

##### #Define the VRF

```
ip vrf VRFA_SH
rd 1:100
route-target both 1:100
!
ip vrf VRFB_SH
rd 1:200
route-target both 1:200
```

##### #Associate the VRF with the interface

```
interface Ethernet 1/0
ip vrf forwarding VRFA_SH
ip address 192.168.16.2 255.255.255.0
!
interface Ethernet 1/2
ip vrf forwarding VRFB_SH
```



```
ip address 173.154.23.2 255.255.255.0
```

### ■ Configure the BGP protocol

```
#Configure the PE peer
router bgp 1
neighbor 10.10.10.10 remote-as 1
neighbor 10.10.10.10 update-source loopback 0
!
neighbor 20.20.20.20 remote-as 1
neighbor 20.20.20.20 update-source loopback 0
!
address-family vpnv4 unicast
neighbor 10.10.10.10 activate
neighbor 20.20.20.20 activate
exit-address-family
```

### #Configure the CE peer through the EBGp

```
address-family ipv4 vrf VRFA_SH
neighbor 192.168.16.1 remote-as 65003
neighbor 192.168.16.1 update-source eth1/0
exit-address-family
!
address-family ipv4 vrf VRFB_SH
neighbor 173.154.23.1 remote-as 65002
neighbor 173.154.23.1 update-source eth1/2
exit-address-family
```

### ■ Configure the backbone network routing protocol

```
#Run the OSPF on the backbone network to transfer the route information
```

```
router ospf 10
network 10.25.12.0 0.0.0.255 area 0
network 10.10.10.10 0.0.0.0 area 0
```

### #Configure the MPLS

```
mpls router ldp
interface Ethernet 1/1
ip address 211.139.54.96 255.255.255.0
label-switching
mpls ip
```

The PE\_FZ and PE\_BJ can be configured in similar ways as above.

## 2) Configure the CE



VPNB\_SH is taken as an example:

■ Configure the BGP

```
# Configure the PE peer
router bgp 65002
neighbor 173.254.23.2 remote-as 1
neighbor 173.254.23.2 update-source eth1/0
redistribute ospf
```

The CE can be configured on the VPNA\_SH, VPNA\_FZ and VPNB\_BJ in a similar way to that of VPNB\_SH.

3) Configure the P

P1 is taken as example:

```
#Configuring the OSPF
router ospf 10
network 10.25.12.0 0.0.0.255 area 0
network 10.78.36.0 0.0.0.255 area 0
```

#Configure the MPLS

```
mpls router ldp
interface Ethernet1/0
ip address 10.25.12.24 255.255.255.0
label-switching
mpls ip
interface Ethernet1/1
ip address 10.78.36.63 255.255.255.0
label-switching
mpls ip
```

The configuration on P2 is similar to P1.

### 38.3.2 Extranet configuration example

---

Requirements: There are two VPN users, VPNA and VPNB. Mutual access should be implemented within the VPN, but is not allowed between these two. These VPNs can access some shared resources. See the figure below.



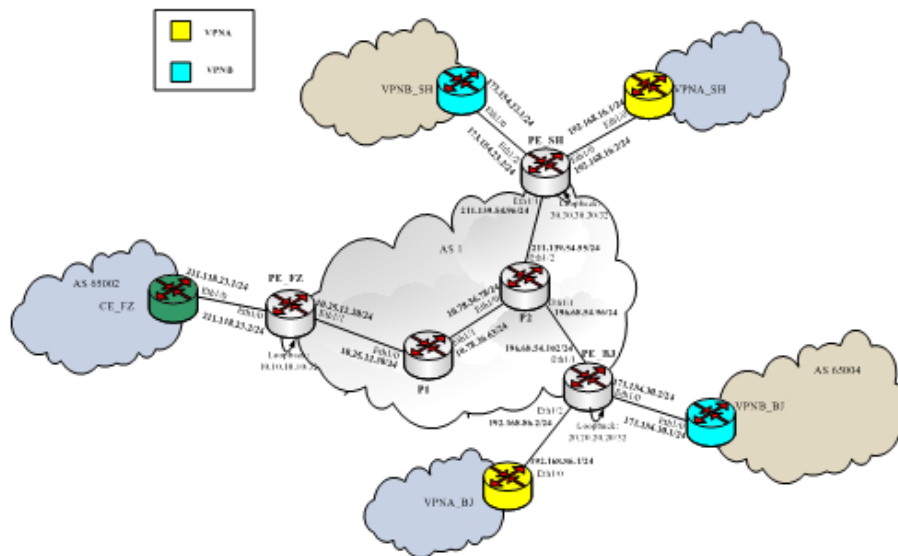


Figure 10

Mutual access must be allowed between the VPNA\_SH and VPNA\_BJ, and so between VPNB\_SH and VPNB\_BJ. In addition, all the sites in the VPNA and VPNB can access the resources of CE\_FZ.

Configuration steps:

PE\_SH:

■ Configure the VRF

```
!
ip vrf VPNA_SH
rd 1:100
route-target both 1:100
!
ip vrf VPNB_SH
rd 1:200
route-target both 1:200
```

#Associate the VRF with the interface

```
interface Ethernet 1/0
ip vrf forwarding VRFA_SH
ip address 192.168.16.2 255.255.255.0
!
interface Ethernet 1/2
ip vrf forwarding VRFB_SH
ip address 173.154.23.2 255.255.255.0
```

■ Configure the OSPF to run between the PE and CE



**#Run the OSPF protocol between PE\_SH and VPNA\_SH**

```
router ospf 10 VRFA_SH
network 192.168.16.0 0.0.0.255 area 10
redistribute bgp
```

**#Run the OSPF protocol between PE\_SH and VPNB\_SH**

```
router ospf 20 VRFB_SH
network 173.154.23.0 0.0.0.255 area 20
redistribute bgp
```

**■ Configure the BGP****# Configure the PE peer**

```
router bgp 1
neighbor 10.10.10.10 remote-as 1
neighbor 10.10.10.10 update-source Loopback 0
neighbor 20.20.20.20 remote-as 1
neighbor 20.20.20.20 update-source Loopback 0
!
address-family vpnv4 unicast
neighbor 10.10.10.10 activate
neighbor 20.20.20.20 activate
exit-address-family
```

**#Receive the route information of the CE end by redistributing the OSPF**

```
address-family ipv4 vrf VRFA_SH
redistribute ospf
exit-address-family
!
address-family ipv4 vrf VRFB_SH
redistribute ospf
exit-address-family
```

**■ Configure the backbone network routing protocol****#Configuring the OSPF**

```
router ospf 30
network 211.139.54.0 0.0.0.255 area 0
network 30.30.30.30 0.0.0.0 area 0
```

**#Configure the MPLS**

```
mpls router ldp
interface Ethernet1/1
ip address 211.139.54.96 255.255.255.0
```



```
label-switching
mpls ip
PE_FZ:
```

#### ■ Configure the VRF

```
ip vrf VRF_FZ
rd 1:300
route-target export 1:100
route-target export 1:200
```

#### #Associate the VRF with the interface

```
interface Ethernet 1/0
ip vrf forwarding VRF_FZ
ip address 211.118.23.2 255.255.255.0
```

#### ■ Configure the BGP

```
Configure the PE peer
router bgp 1
neighbor 20.20.20.20 remote-as 1
neighbor 20.20.20.20 update-source Loopback 0
neighbor 30.30.30.30 remote-as 1
neighbor 30.30.30.30 update-source Loopback 0
!
address-family vpnv4 unicast
neighbor 20.20.20.20 activate
neighbor 30.30.30.30 activate
exit-address-family
```

#### #Configure the CE peer through the EBGp

```
address-family ipv4 vrf VRF_FZ
neighbor 211.118.23.1 remote-as 65002
neighbor 192.168.1.1 update-source Ethernet 1/0
exit-address-family
```

#### #Configure the backbone network routing protocol

```
!OSPF
router ospf 10
network 10.25.12.0 0.0.0.255 area 0
network 10.10.10.10 0.0.0.0 area 0
```

#### #Configure the MPLS

```
mpls router ldp
interface Ethernet1/1
ip address 12.25.12.20 255.255.255.0
label-switching
mpls ip
```



VPNB\_SH:

■ Configuring the OSPF

```
!
router ospf 1
network 173.254.23.0 0.0.0.255 area 20
```

The VPNA\_SH configuration is similar to that of PNB\_SH.

The protocol between the PE\_BJ and VPNA\_BJ, VPNB\_BJ can be the EBPG or the OSPF, RIP or other routing protocols selected to suit the practical needs.

The configuration solution of P1 and P2 is similar to that of P1 and P2 in the first configuration example.

### 38.3.3 Hub-and-Spoke configuration

#### example

Requirements: The data within the VPN cannot be exchanged directly, but must be exchanged through a unified control center. Only this control center learns all the information resources in the VPN. Other users in the VPN obtain the resources in the VPN through the control center. As shown in the following diagram, the VPNB\_FZ can access the resources of VPNB\_BJ only through the VPNB\_SH.

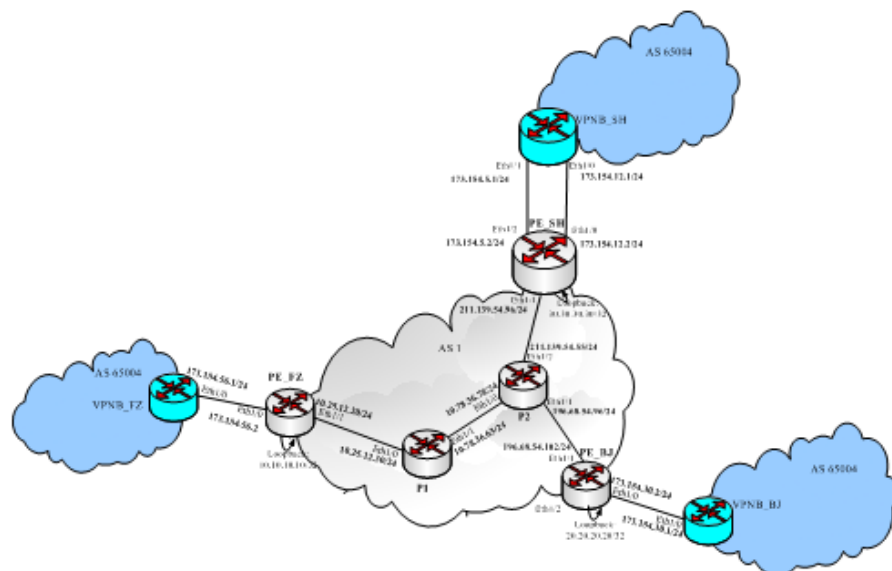


Figure 11

Configuration steps:

PE\_FZ:

■ Configure the VRF



```
!  
ip vrf VRFB_FZ  
rd 1:100  
route-target both 1:100  
!
```

#### #Associate the VRF with the interface

```
interface Ethernet 1/0  
ip vrf forwarding VRFB_FZ  
ip address 173.154.56.2 255.255.255.0
```

#### ■ Configure the BGP

##### #Configure the PE Peer

```
router bgp 1  
neighbor 30.30.30.30 remote-as 1  
neighbor 30.30.30.30 update-source loopback 0  
!  
address-family vpnv4 unicast  
neighbor 30.30.30.30 activate  
neighbor 30.30.30.30 allowas-in  
exit-address-family
```

##### !Configure the PE Peer

```
address-family ipv4 vrf VRFB_FZ  
neighbor 173.154.56.1 remote-as 65004  
neighbor 173.154.56.1 update-source Ethernet 1/0  
neighbor 173.154.56.1 as-override  
exit-address-family
```

#### ■ Configure the backbone network routing protocol

```
!OSPF  
router ospf 10  
network 10.25.12.0 0.0.0.255 area 0  
network 10.10.10.10 0.0.0.0 area 0  
!  
!MPLS  
mpls router ldp  
interface Ethernet1/1  
ip address 10.25.12.20 255.255.255.0  
label-switching  
mpls ip  
PE_BJ:
```

#### ■ Configure the VRF

```
!  
ip vrf VRFB_BJ  
rd 1:100
```



```
route-target both 1:200
!
```

#### #Associate the VRF with the interface

```
interface Ethernet 1/0
ip vrf forwarding VRFB_BJ
ip address 173.154.30.2 255.255.255.0
```

#### ■ Configure the BGP

#### #Configure the PE Peer

```
router bgp 1
neighbor 30.30.30.30 remote-as 1
neighbor 30.30.30.30 update-source loopback 0
!
address-family vpnv4 unicast
neighbor 30.30.30.30 activate
neighbor 30.30.30.30 allowas-in
exit-address-family
Configure the CE Peer
address-family ipv4 vrf VRFB_BJ
neighbor 173.154.30.1 remote-as 65004
neighbor 173.154.30.1 update-source Ethernet 1/0
neighbor 173.154.30.1 as-override
exit-address-family
```

#### ■ Configure the backbone network routing protocol

```
!OSPF
router ospf 10
network 196.68.54.0 0.0.0.255 area 0
network 20.20.20.20 0.0.0.0 area 0
!MPLS
mpls router ldp
interface Ethernet1/1
ip address 196.68.54.102 255.255.255.0
label-switching
mpls ip
PE_SH:
```

#### ■ Configure the VRF

```
!
ip vrf VRFB_SPOKE
rd 1:300
route-target import 1:100
route-target import 1:200
!
ip vrf VRFB_HUB
```



```
rd 1:400
route-target export 1:100
route-target export 1:200
Associate the VRF with the interface
interface Ethernet 1/0
ip vrf forwarding VRFB_SPOKE
ip address 173.154.12.2 255.255.255.0
!
interface Ethernet 1/2
ip vrf forwarding VRFB_HUB
ip address 173.154.5.2 255.255.255.0
```

### ■ Configure the BGP

#### #Configure the PE Peer

```
router bgp 1
neighbor 10.10.10.10 remote-as 1
neighbor 10.10.10.10 update-source loopback 0
neighbor 20.20.20.20 remote-as 1
neighbor 20.20.20.20 update-source loopback 0
!
address-family vpnv4 unicast
neighbor 10.10.10.10 activate
neighbor 20.20.20.20 activate
exit-address-family
```

#### #Configure the CE Peer

```
address-family ipv4 vrf VRFB_SPOKE
neighbor 173.154.5.1 remote-as 65004
neighbor 173.154.5.1 update-source Ethernet 1/2
neighbor 173.154.5.1 as-override
exit-address-family
!
address-family ipv4 vrf VRFB_HUB
neighbor 173.154.12.1 remote-as 65004
neighbor 173.154.12.1 update-source Ethernet 1/0
neighbor 173.154.12.1 allowas-in
exit-address-family
```

### ■ Configure the backbone network routing protocol

```
!OSPF
router ospf 10
network 211.139.54.0 0.0.0.255 area 0
network 30.30.30.30 0.0.0.0 area 0
!MPLS
mpls router ldp
```



```
interface Ethernet1/1
ip address 211.139.54.96 255.255.255.0
label-switching
mpls ip
VPNB_SH:
```

#### ■ Configure the BGP

```
router bgp 65004
neighbor 173.154.5.2 remote-as 1
neighbor 173.154.5.2 update-source Ethernet1/1
neighbor 173.154.12.2 remote-as 1
neighbor 173.154.12.2 update-source Ethernet1/0
redistribute ospf
```

The configuration of other CEs is similar to the configuration of VPNB\_SH. The router configuration in the backbone network is similar to configuration example 1. You can refer to configuration example 1.



# 39

## Port-based Flow Control Configuration

### 39.1 Storm Control

---

#### 39.1.1 Overview

---

Too many broadcast, multicast or unknown unicast packets in the LAN will slow the network speed and increase the possibility of packet transmission timeout significantly. This is called LAN storm. Protocol stack implementation errors or wrong network configuration may lead to such storms.

Storm control can be conducted upon the broadcast, multicast and unknown unicast data streams respectively. When the rate of the broadcast, multicast or unknown unicast packets received by the interface exceeds the specified bandwidth throttling, the device only allows the packets within the bandwidth throttling. The packets that exceed the throttle will be discarded until the data stream becomes normal again. This prevents excessive flooding packets from entering the LAN to form a storm.

#### 39.1.2 Configuring Storm Control

---

By default, the storm control function for broadcast, multicast and unknown unicast packets is disabled.

When the user sets a bandwidth for a port by percentage, this percentage applies to all the ports and any other settings will not take effect.

In the interface configuration mode, use the following command to configure storm control:



Command	Function
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>storm-control</b> { <b>broadcast</b>   <b>multicast</b>   <b>unicast</b> } [{ <b>level percent</b>   <b>pps packets</b>   <i>rate-bps</i> ]	<b>broadcast</b> : Enable the broadcast storm control function. <b>multicast</b> : Enable the unknown multicast storm control function. <b>unicast</b> : Enable the unknown unicast storm control function. <i>percent</i> : Set according to the bandwidth percentage, for example, 20 means 20% <i>packets</i> : Set according to the pps, which means packets per second <i>Rate-bps</i> : rate allowed

In the interface configuration mode, you can disable the storm control of the appropriate interface by using the **no storm-control broadcast**, **no storm-control multicast**, or **no storm-control unicast** command.

The following example enables the multicast storm control on GigabitEthernet 0/1 and set the allowed rate as 4M.

```
DES-7200# configure terminal
DES-7200(config)# interface GigabitEthernet 0/1
DES-7200(config-if)# storm-control multicast 4096
DES-7200(config-if)# end
```



#### Caution

DES-7200 series do not support **storm-control action**

For DES-7200 series, the level-based storm control has certain errors for packets longer than 64 bytes. The longer the packet, the larger the error, as indicated by the formula: (packet length – 64)/84.

The reference bandwidth for the level-based storm control is the maximum bandwidth supported by the physical port, but not converted from the bandwidth of the physical port in service.

### 39.1.3 Viewing the Enable Status of Storm Control

To view the storm control status of the interface, use the following command:

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>show storm-control</b> [ <i>interface-id</i> ]	Show storm control information.

The instance below shows the enabled status of the storm control function of interface Gi1/3:

```
DES-7200# show storm-control gigabitEthernet 0/3
Interface Broadcast Control Multicast Control Unicast Control action
GigabitEthernet 0/3 Disabled Disabled Disabled none
```



You can also view the enabling status of the storm control function of all interfaces at a time:

```
DES-7200# show storm-control
```

Interface	Broadcast Control	Multicast Control	Unicast Control	Action
GigabitEthernet 0/1	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	none
GigabitEthernet 0/2	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	none
GigabitEthernet 0/3	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	none
GigabitEthernet 0/4	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	none
GigabitEthernet 0/5	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	none
GigabitEthernet 0/6	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	none
GigabitEthernet 0/7	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	none
GigabitEthernet 0/8	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	none
GigabitEthernet 0/9	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	none
GigabitEthernet 0/10	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	none
GigabitEthernet 0/11	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	none
GigabitEthernet 0/12	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	none
GigabitEthernet 0/13	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	none
GigabitEthernet 0/14	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	none
GigabitEthernet 0/15	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	none
GigabitEthernet 0/16	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	none
GigabitEthernet 0/17	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	none
GigabitEthernet 0/18	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	none
GigabitEthernet 0/19	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	none
GigabitEthernet 0/20	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	none
GigabitEthernet 0/21	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	none
GigabitEthernet 0/22	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	none
GigabitEthernet 0/23	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	none
GigabitEthernet 0/24	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	none

## 39.2 Protected Port

### 39.2.1 Overview

In some application environments, some ports are not required to communicate with each other on a device. In such case, frame forwarding is not allowed between the protected ports, no matter the frames are unicast frames, broadcast frames or multicast frames. To achieve this purpose, you can set some ports as protected ports.

Once ports are set as protected ports, they cannot communicate with each other. However, protected ports can still communicate with unprotected ports.

There are two protected port modes: one is to block layer 2 forwarding between protected ports but allow layer 3 routing; the other is to block layer 2 forwarding and layer 3 routing between protected ports. The first mode is by default when both modes are supported.

When you set two protected ports as a SPAN port pair, the frames transmitted or received by the source port of SPAN are sent to the destination port of SPAN according to the SPAN setting. Therefore, it is not recommended to set the destination port of SPAN as the protected port (and you can also save system resources by doing so).



The device supports setting the Aggregated Port as the protected port. Once you do that, all the member ports of the Aggregated Port will be set as the protected port.

### 39.2.2 Configuring the Protected Port

Set one port as the protected port:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>switchport protected</b>	Set this interface as a protected port

You can reset a port as unprotected port with interface configuration command **no switchport protected**.

The following example describes how to set the Gigabitethernet 0/3 as the protected port.

```
DES-7200# configure terminal
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
DES-7200(config)# interface gigabitethernet 0/3
DES-7200(config-if)# switchport protected
DES-7200(config-if)# end
```

### 39.2.3 Showing Protected Port Configuration

Command	Function
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>show interfaces switchport</b>	Show the configuration of the switching port

You can use the command of **show interfaces switchport** to view the configuration of protected port.

```
DES-7200# show interfaces gigabitethernet 0/3 switchport
Interface  Switchport  Mode   Access Native Protected  VLAN lists
-----
GigabitEthernet 0/3  enabled   Trunk  1    1    Enabled   ALL
```

## 39.3 Port Security

### 39.3.1 Overview

Based on the feature of port security, you can exercise strict control over the input of a specific port by restricting access to the MAC address and IP (optional) of the port on the device. After you configure some secure addresses for the secure port (whose port security function is enabled), this port does not forward any packets other than those whose source addresses are the secure ones. In addition, you can also restrict the maximum number of secure addresses on a port. If you set the maximum value as 1 and configure one secure



address for this port, the workstation (whose address is the configured secure MAC address) connected to this port will occupy all the bandwidth of this port exclusively.

To enhance security, you can bind the MAC address with the IP address as the secure address. Of course you can also designate the MAC address without binding the IP address.

You can add the secure addresses on the port in the following ways:

- You can manually configure all the secure addresses of the port by using the commands in the interface configuration mode.
- You can also let this port automatically learn these addresses, which will become the secure address on this port till the total number reaches the maximum value. Note that, however, the automatically-learned secure addresses will not be bound with the IP address. On the same port, if you have configured a secure address bound with the IP address, the port cannot be added with any secure address by automatic learning.
- Manually configure some secure addresses, and let the device to learn the rest.

When a port is configured as a secure port and the maximum number of its secure addresses is reached, a security violation occurs if the port receives a packet whose source address is not one of the secure addresses on the port. When security violations occur, you can set the following methods to handle:

**protect:** When the maximum number of secure addresses is reached, the secure port discards the packet of unknown addresses (none of which are among the secure addresses of the port). This is the default method for handling exceptions.

**restrict:** In the case of violation, a Trap notification is sent

**shutdown:** In the case of violation, the port is shut down and a Trap notification is sent.

## 39.3.2 Configuring Port Security

### 39.3.2.1 Default Configuration of Port Security

The table below shows the default configuration of port security:

Item	Default Configuration
Port security switch	The port security function is disabled for all the ports.
Maximum number of secure addresses	128
Secure address	None
Handling mode for violations	Protect



### 39.3.2.2 Port Security Configuration Guide

The following restrictions apply to port security configuration:

- A secure port is not an Aggregate Port.
- A secure port is not the destination port of SPAN.
- A secure port is and can only be an Access Port.

The 802.1x authentication and port security are mutually exclusive in enabling. The 802.1x authentication and port security can ensure the validity of the network users. You can enable either of them to control port access.

At the same time, the secure addresses of the stated IP addresses and MAC addresses share with the ACLs the hardware resources of the system. Therefore, when you apply the ACLs on one secure port, the stated IP addresses on the port can be configured with less secure addresses.

The secure addresses for the same secure port must have the same format, namely either all or none of them are bound with IP addresses. If a security port includes these two types of security addresses at the same time, the secure address not bound with the IP address will fail (the secure address bound with the IP address has a high priority).

### 39.3.2.3 Configuration of Secure Ports and Violation Handling Modes

In the interface configuration mode, configure secure ports and violation handling modes by using the following commands:

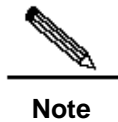
Command	Function
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>switchport port-security</b>	Enable the port security function of this interface.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>switchport port-security maximum</b> <i>value</i>	Set the maximum number of secure addresses on the interface. The range is between 1 and 1000 and the default value is 128.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>switchport port-security violation</b> { <b>protect</b>   <b>restrict</b>   <b>shutdown</b> }	Set the violation handling mode:  <b>protect</b> : Protected port. When the number of secure addresses is full, the security port will discard the packets from unknown address (that is, not any among the secure addresses of the port). <b>restrict</b> : In the case of violation, a Trap notification is sent <b>shutdown</b> : In the case of violation, the port is shut down and a Trap notification is sent. When a port is closed because of violation, you can recover it from the error status by using the <b>errdisable recovery</b> command in the global configuration mode.



In the interface configuration mode, you can disable the port security function of an interface with the command **no switchport port-security**. Use the command **no switchport port-security maximum** to recover to the default maximum value. Use the command **no switchport port-security violation** to set violation handling to the default mode.

The instance below describes how to enable the port security function on interface gigabitethernet 0/3. The maximum number of addresses to be set is 8 and the violation handling mode is set as **protect**.

```
DES-7200# configure terminal
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
DES-7200(config)# interface gigabitethernet 0/3
DES-7200(config-if)# switchport mode access
DES-7200(config-if)# switchport port-security
DES-7200(config-if)# switchport port-security maximum 8
DES-7200(config-if)# switchport port-security violation protect
DES-7200(config-if)# end
```



If the secure address MAC+IP has been configured on the secure port, the exception handling rule for the port will not take effect.

#### 39.3.2.4 Configuration of Secure Addresses on the Secure Port

In the interface configuration mode, add secure addresses for secure ports by using the following commands:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>switchport port-security mac-address</b> <i>mac-address</i> [ <i>ip-address ip-address</i>   <i>ipv6-address</i> ]	Manually configure the secure address on the interface.  <b>ip-address</b> (optional): IP(IPv6) address bound with the secure address.

In the interface configuration mode, you can use the command **no switchport port-security mac-address** *mac-address* to delete the secure address of this interface.

The example below describes how to configure a secure address for interface gigabitethernet 0/3: 00d0.f800.073c and bind it with an IP address: 192.168.12.202.

```
DES-7200# configure terminal
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
DES-7200(config)# interface gigabitethernet 0/3
DES-7200(config-if)# switchport mode access
DES-7200(config-if)# switchport port-security
DES-7200(config-if)# switchport port-security mac-address 00d0.f800.073c ip-address 192.168.12.202
DES-7200(config-if)# end
```



### 39.3.2.5 Configuration of Aging Time for Secure Addresses

You can configure the aging time for all the secure addresses on an interface. To enable this function, you need to set the maximum number of secure addresses. In this way, you can make the device automatically add or delete the secure addresses on the interface.

In the interface configuration mode, configure the aging time for secure addresses by using the following command:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>switchport port-security aging{static   time time }</b>	<p><b>Static:</b> When this keyword is added, the aging time will be applied to both the manually configured secure address and automatically learnt addresses. Otherwise, it is applied only to the automatically learnt addresses.</p> <p><b>Time:</b> indicates the aging time for the secure address on this port. Its range is 0-1440 and unit is Minute. If you set it to be 0, the aging function actually is disabled. The aging time is the absolute time, which means that an address will be deleted automatically after the <i>Time</i> specified expires after the address becomes the secure address of the port. The default value of <i>Time</i> is 0.</p>

In the interface configuration mode, use **no switchport port-security aging time** to disable the port security aging. Use the **no switchport port-security aging static** to apply the aging time only to dynamically learned security address.

The example below describes how to configure the port security aging time on interface Gigabitethernet 0/3. The aging time is set to 8 minutes and it is applicable to statically-configured secure addresses:

```
DES-7200# configure terminal
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
DES-7200(config)# interface gigabitethernet 0/3
DES-7200(config-if)# switchport port-security aging time 8
DES-7200(config-if)# switchport port-security aging static
DES-7200(config-if)# end
```

### 39.3.3 Viewing Port Security Information

In the privileged mode, you can view the security information of a port by using the following commands.



Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>show port-security interface</b> [ <i>interface-id</i> ]	View the port security configuration of an interface.
DES-7200# <b>show port-security address</b>	View the secure address information.
DES-7200# <b>show port-security address</b> [ <i>interface-id</i> ]	Show the secure address information on an interface.
DES-7200# <b>show port-security</b>	Show the statistics of all the security ports, including the maximum number of secure addresses, the number of current addresses, and violation handling mode.

The example below shows the port security configuration on interface **gigabitethernet 0/3**:

```
DES-7200# show port-security interface gigabitethernet 0/3
Interface Gi0/3
Port Security: Enabled
Port status : down
Violation mode:Shutdown
Maximum MAC Addresses:8
Total MAC Addresses:0
Configured MAC Addresses:0
Aging time : 8 mins
SecureStatic address aging : Enabled
```

The instance below shows all the secure addresses in the system.

```
DES-7200# show port-security address
Vlan Mac Address IP Address Type Port Remaining Age(mins)
-----
1 00d0.f800.073c 192.168.12.202 Configured Gi0/3 8
1 00d0.f800.3cc9 192.168.12.5 Configured Gi0/1 7
```

You can also only show the secure address on one interface. The instance below shows the secure address on interface gigabitethernet 0/3.

```
DES-7200# show port-security address interface gigabitethernet 0/3
Vlan Mac Address IP Address Type Port Remaining Age(mins)
-----
1 00d0.f800.073c 192.168.12.202 Configured Gi0/3 8
```

The example below shows the statistic information of the secure port.

```
DES-7200# show port-security
Secure Port MaxSecureAddr(count) CurrentAddr(count) Security Action
-----
Gi0/1      128                1                Restrict
Gi0/2      128                0                Restrict
Gi0/3      8                  1                Protect
```



## 39.4 ARP-CHECK

### 39.4.1 overview

ARP-CHECK is MAC+IP binding security function based on global or port, such as DHCP Snooping, port security or global address binding. It prevents ARP spoof effectively by discarding ARP packet of illegal user, such as preventing illegal information station from passing itself off as the IP of important network device(eg:server) and network communication disorder.

There are three modes of ARP-CHECK: enabled, disabled and auto mode. The auto mode is by default.

In the enabled mode, ARP check is enabled no matter whether there is security configuration. If there is no legal user on the port, all the arp packets from this port will be discarded.

In the disabled mode, ARP packet on the port is not checked.

In the auto mode, ARP packet is checked when there is no legal user on the port; and vice versa.

ARP-CHECK restriction:

1. Enabling ARP check of port security addresses will decrease the maximum number of the security addresses of binding IP on all the ports by half.
2. Enabling ARP check of port security addresses is not effective for the security addresses that have already existed. If you want those configured security addresses take effect, you can close and then enable them again. ARP check uses policy management module, sharing hardware resources with other modules. If the hardware resource is not enough, ARP check of part of port security addresses may not take effective.
3. When there are many MAC+IP security address entries, enabling ARP Check Cpu influences a lot on CPU performances.

### 39.4.2 Configuring ARP-CHECK

Use the following commands to configure ARP-CHECK in the privileged mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>configure t</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
DES-7200(config)# <b>interface</b> <i>interface-id</i>	Enter the interface configuration mode.



DES-7200(config-if)# <b>arp-check</b>	Enable arp check.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>no arp-check</b>	Disable arp check.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>arp-check auto</b>	Restore to the default configuration: enabled.

The example below shows that the ARP check is auto-enabled on the port when adding legal mac address 00d0.f822.33ab and IP address 192.168.2.5:

```
DES-7200#configure terminal
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
DES-7200(config)# interface fastEthernet 0/5
DES-7200(config-if)# switchport port-security
DES-7200(config-if)# switchport port-security mac-address 00d0.f822.33ab ip-address
192.168.2.5
Thus, ARP check is auto-enabled. Use this command to disable ARP check.
DES-7200(config-if)# no arp-check
```







# 40

## 802.1x Configuration

This chapter describes the contents related to the AAA service configurations. The 802.1x is used to control the authentication over network access of users, and provide authorization and accounting functions for users.

This chapter includes:

- Overview
- Configuring 802.1x
- Viewing the Configuration and Current Statistics of the 802.1x
- Other Precautions for Configuring 802.1x



### Note

For details about usage and descriptions of the CLI commands used in this section, please refer to *Configuring 802.1X command*.

### 40.1 Overview

In an IEEE 802 LAN, users can access the network device without authorization and authorization as long as they are connected to the network device. Therefore, an unauthorized user can access the network unobstructed by connecting the LAN. As the wide application of LAN technology, particularly the appearance of the operating network, it is necessary to address the safety authentication needs of the network. It has become the focus of concerns in the industry that how to provide user with the authentication on the legality of network or device access on the basis of simple and cheap Ethernet technologies. The IEEE 802.1x protocol is developed under such a context.

As a Port-Based Network Access Control standard, **the IEEE802.1x** provides LAN access point-to-point security access. Specially designed by the IEEE Standardization Commission to tackle the safety defects of Ethernet, this standard can provide a means to authenticate the devices and users connected to the LAN by utilizing the advantages of IEEE 802 LAN.

The IEEE 802.1x defines a mode based on Client-Server to restrict unauthorized users from accessing the network. Before a client can access the network, it must first pass the authentication of the authentication server.

Before the client passes the authentication, only the EAPOL (Extensible Authentication Protocol over LAN) packets can be transmitted over the network. After successful authentication, normal data streams can be transmitted over the network.



By using 802.1x, our switches provide Authentication, Authorization, and Accounting (AAA).

- **Authentication:** It is used to determine whether a user has the access, restricting illegal users.
- **Authorization:** It authorizes the services available to users, controlling the rights of valid users.
- **Accounting:** It records users' use of network resources, providing the supporting data for charging.

The 802.1x is described in the following aspects as below:

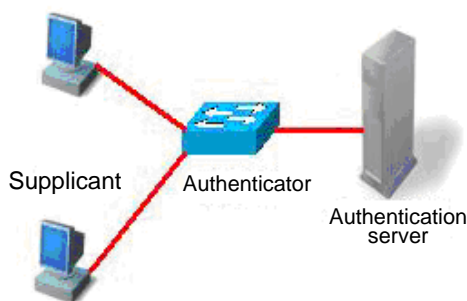
- **Device Roles**
- **Authentication Initiation and Packet Interaction During Authentication**
- **States of Authorized Users and Unauthorized Users**
- **Topologies of Typical Applications**

### 40.1.1 Device Roles

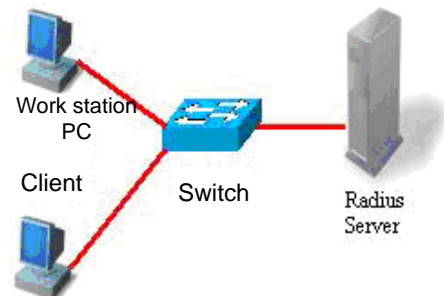
In the IEEE802.1x standard, there are three roles: **supplicant**, **authenticator**, and **authentication server**. In practice, they are the Client, network access server (NAS) and Radius-Server.

**Figure 40-1**

Roles played in the IEEE802.1x protocol



Roles played in the real application



- **Supplicant:**

The **supplicant** is a role played by the end user, usually a PC. It requests for the access to network services and acknowledges the request packets from the authenticator. The supplicant must run the IEEE 802.1x client. Currently, the most popular one is the IEEE802.1x client carried by Windows XP. In addition, we have also launched the STAR Supplicant software compliant of this standard.

- **Authenticator:**

The **authenticator** is usually an access device like the switch. The responsibility of the device is to control the connection status between client and the network according to the current authentication status of that client. Between the client and server, this device plays



the role of a mediator, which requests the client for username, verifies the authentication information from the server, and forwards it to the client. Therefore, the switch acts as both the IEEE802.1x authenticator and the RADIUS Client, so it is referred to as the network access server (NAS). It encapsulates the acknowledgement received from the client into the RADIUS format packets and forwards them to the RADIUS Server, while resolving the information received from the RADIUS Server and forwards the information to the client.

The device acting as the authenticator has two types of ports: controlled Port and uncontrolled Port. The users connected to a controlled port can only access network resources after passing the authentication, while those connected to a uncontrolled port can directly access network resources without authentication. We can control users by simply connecting them to an controlled port. On the other hand, the uncontrolled port is used to connect the authentication server, for ensuring normal communication between the server and switch.

■ Authentication server:

The **authentication server** is usually an **RADIUS** server, which works with the authenticator to provide users with authentication services. The authentication server saves the user name and password and related authorization information. One server can provide authentication services for multiple authenticators, thus allowing centralized management of users. The authentication server also manages the accounting data from the authenticator. Our 802.1x device is fully compatible with the standard Radius Server, for example, the Radius Server carried on Win2000 Server and the Free Radius Server on Linux.

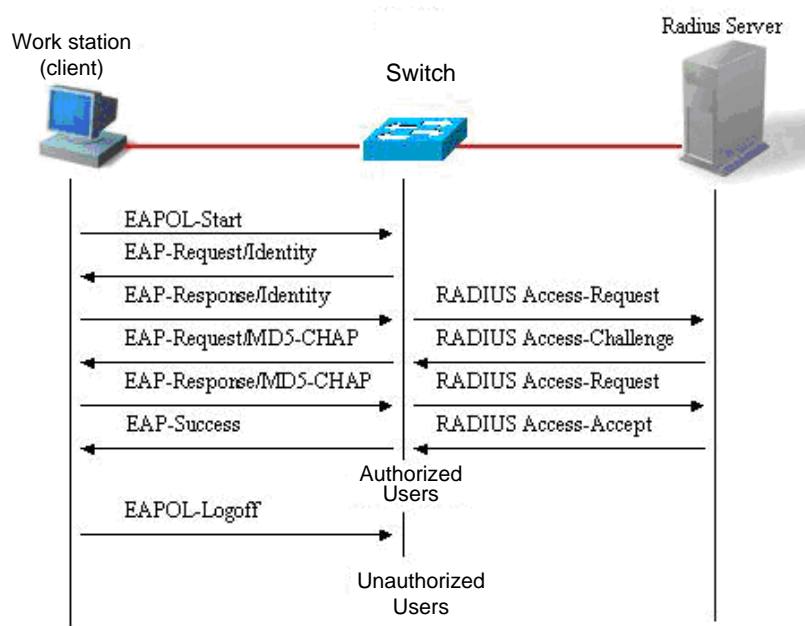
#### 40.1.2 Authentication Initiation and Packet Interaction During Authentication

---

The supplicant and the authenticator exchange information by EAPOL protocol, while the authenticator and authentication server exchange information by RADIUS protocol, completing the authentication process with such a conversion. The EAPOL protocol is encapsulated on the MAC layer, with the type number of 0x888E. In addition, the standard has required for an MAC address (01-80-C2-00-00-03) for the protocol for packet exchange during the initial authentication process.

The following diagram shows a typical authentication process, during which the three role devices exchange packets with one another.



**Figure 40-2**

This is a typical authentication process initiated by users (in some special cases, the switch can actively initiate authentication request, whose process is the same as that shown in the diagram, except that it does not contain the step where the user actively initiates the request).

### 40.1.3 States of Authorized Users and Unauthorized Users

The 802.1x determines whether the users on the port are allowed to access the network according to the authentication status of the port. Since we expand the 802.1X based on users, we determine whether a user is allowed to access network resources according to the authentication status of that user under a port. All users under an uncontrolled port can use network resources, while those under a controlled port can access network resources only if they are authorized. When a user just initiates an authentication request, its status is unauthorized, in which case it cannot access the network. When the authentication is passed, its status changes to be authorized, in which case it can use the network resources.

If the workstation does not support 802.1x while the machine is connected with the controlled port, when the equipment requests the username of the user, the workstation will not respond to the request due to no support. This means that the user is still unauthorized and cannot access the network resources.

On the contrary, if the client supports 802.1x, while the connected switch does not: The EAPOL-START frames from the user are not responded, and the user deems it connected port as an uncontrolled port and directly uses network resources, when the user fails to receive any response after it sends the specified number of EAPOL-START frames.



On a 802.1x-enabled device, all ports are uncontrolled ports by default. We can set a port as a controlled port, to impose authentication over all the users under that port.

When a user has passed authentication (the switch has received success packets from the RADIUS Server), the user is authorized and therefore can freely use network resources. If the user fails in the authentication and remains in the unauthenticated status, it is possible to initiate authentication once again. If the communication between the switch and the RADIUS server is faulty, the user is still unauthorized and therefore still cannot use the network.

When the user sends the EAPOL-LOGOFF packets, its status changes from authorized to unauthorized.

When a port of the switch changes to the LINK-DOWN status, all the users on the port change to the unauthorized status.

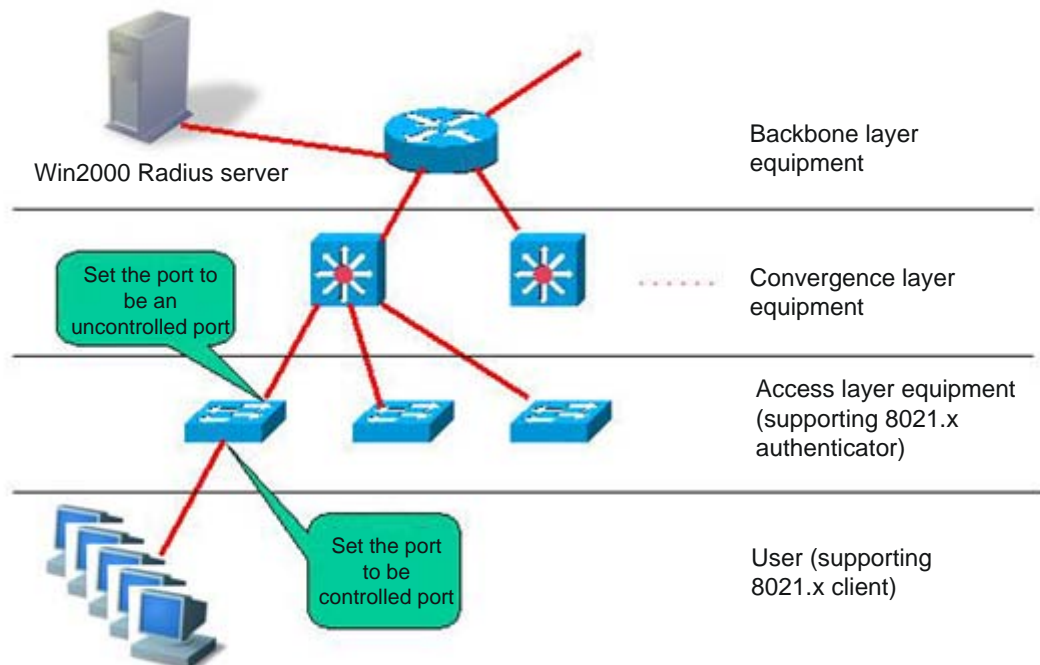
When the device restarts, all users on the device turn into the unauthorized status.

To force a user to pass the authentication, you can add a static MAC address.

#### 40.1.4 Topologies of Typical Applications

A. The 802.1x-enabled device is used as the access layer device

Figure 40-3





This solution is described as below:

■ Requirements of this solution:

1. The user supports 802.1x. That is, it is installed with the 802.1x client (Windows XP carried, Star-suppliant or other IEEE802.1x compliant client software).
2. The access layer device supports IEEE 802.1x.
3. One or multiple RADIUS compliant servers are available as the authentication server.

■ Key points for configuration of this solution:

1. The ports connected to the Radius Server and the uplink ports are configured as **uncontrolled ports**, so that the switch can normally communicate with the server and the authorized users can access network resources through the uplink interface.
2. The ports connected to the user must be set as **controlled ports** to control the accessed users, and the users cannot access network resources unless they first pass the authentication.

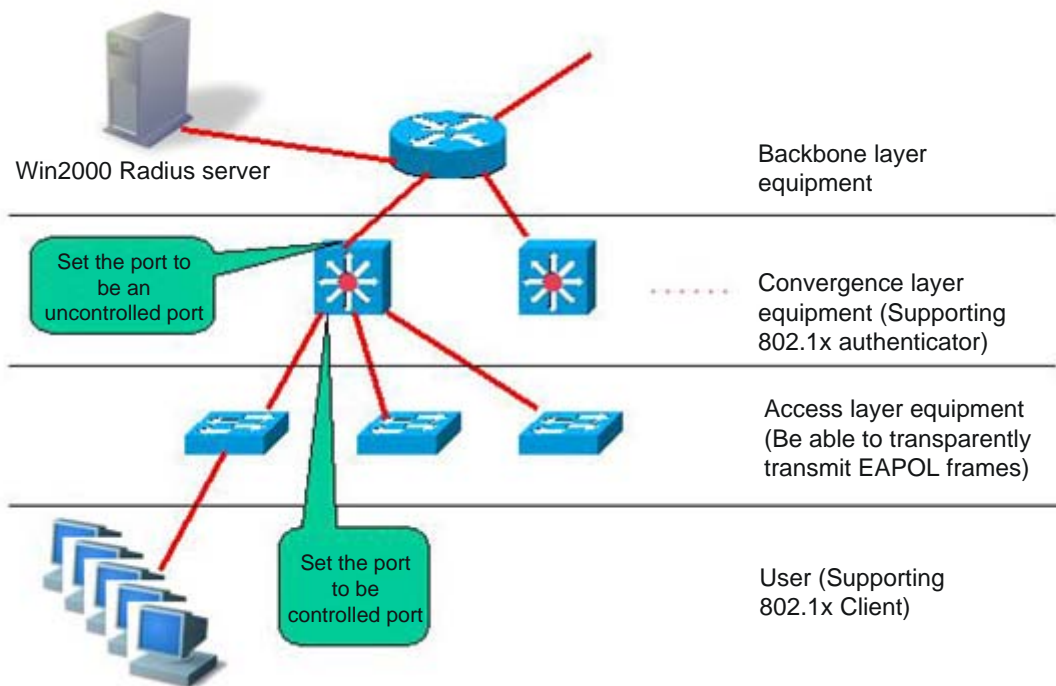
■ Characteristics of this solution:

1. Each 802.1x-enabled switch is responsible for a small number of clients, thus offering higher speed. The devices are mutually independent, and the restart operation of the device does not affect the users connected with other devices.
2. User management is performed on the Radius Server in a centralized manner. The administrator does not have to know which switch a user is connected to, making management much easier.
3. The administrator can manage the device on the access layer through the network.



## B. The 802.1x-enabled device is used as the convergence layer device

Figure 40-4



This solution is described as below:

■ Requirements of this solution:

1. The user supports 802.1x. That is, it is installed with the 802.1x client (Windows XP carried, Star-suppliant or other IEEE802.1x compliant client software).
2. The access layer device should be able to transparently transmit IEEE 802.1x frames (EAPOL)
3. The convergence layer device supports 802.1x (playing the role of the authenticator)
4. One or multiple RADIUS compliant servers are available as the authentication server.

■ Key points for configuration of this solution:

1. The ports connected to the Radius Server and the uplink ports are configured as **uncontrolled ports**, so that the switch can normally communicate with the server and the authorized users can access network resources through the uplink interface.
2. The ports connected to the access layer switches must be set as **controlled ports** to control the accessed users, and the users cannot access network resources unless they first pass the authentication.



- Characteristics of this solution:
  1. The convergence layer device must be of high quality since the network is large and numerous users are connected, since any of its fault may cause the failures of many users to normally access the network.
  2. User management is performed on the Radius Server in a centralized manner. The administrator does not have to know which switch a user is connected to, making management much easier.
  3. The access layer device can be the less expensive non-NM switches (as long as they support transparent transmission of EAPOL frames).
  4. The administrator cannot manage the device on the access layer through the network.

## 40.2 Configuring 802.1x

---

The following sections describe how to configure 802.1x.

- Default Configuration of 802.1x
- Precautions for Configuring 802.1x
- Configuring the communication between the device and Radius server
- Setting the 802.1X Authentication Switch
- Enabling/Disabling the Authentication of a Port
- Enabling Timed Re-authentication
- Changing the QUIET Time
- Setting the Packet Retransmission Interval
- Setting the Maximum Number of Requests
- Setting the Maximum Number of Re-authentications
- Setting the Server-timeout
- Configuring the device to initiate the 802.1x authentication proactively
- Configuring 802.1x Accounting
- Configuring the IP authorization mode
- Releasing Advertisement
- List of Authenticable Hosts under a Port
- Authorization
- Configuring the Authentication Mode
- Configure the backup authentication server.
- Configuring and Managing Online Users
- Implementing User-IP Binding
- Port-based Traffic Charging
- Implementing Automatic Switching and Control of VLAN
- Implementing GUEST VLAN



- Shielding Proxy Server and Dial-up
- Configuring On-line Client Probe
- Configuring the Option Flag for EAPOL Frames to Carry TAG
- Configuring Port-based User Authentication
- Configuring Port-based Single User Authentication
- Configuring Dynamic ACL Assignment

### 40.2.1 Default Configuration of 802.1x

The following table lists some defaults of the 802.1x

Item	Default
Authentication	DISABLE
Accounting	DISABLE
Radius Server	
*ServerIp	*No default
*Authentication UDP port	*1812
*Key	*No default
Accounting Server	
*ServerIp	*No default
*Accounting UDP port	*1813
All port types	Uncontrolled port (all ports can perform communication directly without authentication)
Timed re-authentication	Off
Timed reauth_period	3,600 seconds
Interval between two authentication requests	10 seconds
Retransmission interval	3 seconds
Maximum retransmissions	3
Client timeout period	3 seconds, if within which no response is received from the client, the communication is deemed as a failure
Server timeout period	5 seconds, if within which no response is received from the server, the communication is deemed as a failure
Lists of authenticable hosts under a port	No default



### 40.2.2 Precautions for Configuring 802.1x

---

- You can perform the following configuration only to the products that support 802.1x.
- The 802.1x can run on both L2 device and L3 device.
- It is required to configure the IP address of the authentication server before the Radius-server authentication mode can operate normally.
- You cannot enable 1X authentication for ports with safety feature enabled.
- You cannot enable 1X authentication for Aggregate Port.
- If the 1x function is enabled on only one port of a switch, all the port will send the 1x protocol packets to the CPU.

### 40.2.3 Configuring the communication between the device and Radius server

---

The Radius Server maintains the information of all users: user name, password, authorization information and accounting information. All users are managed on the Radius Server in a centralized manner, without being distributed over various switches, making easier management for the administrator.

In order for the switch to normally communicate with the RADIUS SERVER, you must set the following parameters:

Radius Server end: You must register a Radius Client. At registration, you must supply the Radius Server switch's IP address, authentication UDP port (add the accounting UDP port, if needed), and the agreed key for communication between the switch and Radius Server, and select EAP support for the Client. The procedure for registering one Radius Client on the Radius Server varies with different software settings. Please refer to the appropriate document.

Device end: The following settings are necessary at the device end to ensure the communication between the device and the server: Configure the IP address of the Radius Server, authentication (accounting) UDP port and the agreed password for the communication with the server.

In the privileged mode, you can set the communication between the switch and the Radius Server via the following steps:

Command	Function
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
<b>aaa new-model</b>	Turn on the AAA switch.



Command	Function
<b>radius-server host</b> <i>ip-address</i> [ <b>auth-port</b> <i>port</i> ] [ <b>acct-port</b> <i>port</i> ]	Configure the RADIUS server
<b>Radius-server key</b> <i>string</i>	Configure RADIUS Key.
<b>end</b>	Return to the privileged mode.
<b>write</b>	Save the configuration.
<b>show radius server</b>	Show the RADIUS server.

You can use the **no radius-server host** *ip-address* **auth-port** command to restore the authentication UDP port of the Radius Server to its default. You can use the **no radius-server key** command to delete the authentication key of the Radius Server. The following example sets the Server IP as 192.168.4.12, authentication UDP port as 600, and the key as agreed password:

```
DES-7200# configure terminal
DES-7200(config)# radius-server host 192.168.4.12
DES-7200(config)# radius-server host 192.168.4.12 auth-port 600
DES-7200(config)# radius-server key MsdadShaAdasdj878dajL6g6ga
DES-7200(config)# end
```

- The officially agreed authentication UDP port is 1812.
- The officially agreed accounting UDP port is 1813.
- No less than 16 characters are recommended for the agreed password between the device and the Radius Server.
- The port of the device to connect the Radius Server shall be configured as uncontrolled port.

#### 40.2.4 Setting the 802.1X Authentication Switch

When the 802.1x authentication is enabled, the switch will impose authentication over the host connected to the controlled port, and the hosts that fail the authentication are not allowed to access the network.

In the privileged mode, you can enable the 1x authentication by performing the following steps:

Command	Function
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
<b>aaa new-model</b>	Turn on the AAA switch.



Command	Function
<b>radius-server host</b> <i>ip-address</i> [ <b>auth-port</b> <i>port</i> ] [ <b>acct-port</b> <i>port</i> ]	Configure the RADIUS server
<b>Radius-server key string</b>	Configure RADIUS Key.
<b>aaa authentication dot1x auth group radius</b>	Configure the dot1x authentication method list
<b>dot1x authentication auth</b>	dot1x applies authentication method list
<b>end</b>	Return to the privileged mode.
<b>write</b>	Save the configuration.
<b>show running-config</b>	Show the configuration.

The following example enables 802.1x authentication:

```
DES-7200# configure terminal
DES-7200(config)# aaa new-model
DES-7200(config)# radius-server host 192.168.217.64
DES-7200(config)# radius-server key starnet
DES-7200(config)# aaa authentication dot1x authen group radius
DES-7200(config)# dot1x authentication authen
DES-7200(config)# end
DES-7200# show running-config
!
aaa new-model
!
aaa authentication dot1x authen group radius
!
username D-Link password 0 starnet
!
radius-server host 192.168.217.64
radius-server key 7 072d172e071c2211
!
!
!
dot1x authentication authen
!
interface VLAN 1
 ip address 192.168.217.222 255.255.255.0
 no shutdown
!
!
line con 0
line vty 0 4
!
end
```

To apply the RADIUS authentication method in the 802.1x, configure the IP address of the Radius Server and make sure normal communication between the device and the Radius



Server. Without the coordination of the Radius Server, the switch cannot perform authentication. For how to set the communication between the Radius Server and the switch, please see the previous section.

#### 40.2.5 Enabling/Disabling the Authentication of a Port

If you enable authentication for a port when the 802.1x is enabled, the port becomes a controlled port, and the users under the port must first pass authentication before they can access the network. However, the users under the uncontrolled port can directly access the network.

In the privileged mode, you can set authentication for a port by performing the following steps:

Command	Function
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
<b>interface</b> <i>interface</i>	Enter the interface configuration mode and specify the Interface to configure.
<b>dot1x port-control auto</b>	Set the port to be a controlled port (enable interface authentication). You can use the <b>no</b> option of the command to disable the authentication of the interface.
<b>end</b>	Return to the privileged mode.
<b>write</b>	Save the configuration.
<b>show dot1x port-control</b>	View the authentication configuration of the 802.1x interface.

You can use the **no dot1x port-control** command to disable the authentication of the interface. The following example sets Ethernet interface 1/1 to be a controlled interface:

```
DES-7200# configure terminal
DES-7200(config)# interface f 1/1
DES-7200(config-if)# dot1x port-control auto
DES-7200(config)# end
```

When a port is set as a controlled port, only the EAP packets are allowed to pass; the packets to the CPU are also under control.



#### Caution

If you hope that cpu can not receive non-EAP packet from any controlled port, you can separate management vlan from user vlan.



### 40.2.6 Enabling Timed Re-authentication

The 802.1x can ask users for re-authentication at periodical intervals, to prevent authorized users from being used by other users. This can also detect disconnection, making more accurate charging. In addition to the re-authentication switch, you can also define the re-authentication interval, which is 3600 seconds by default. In the case of charging based on duration, you should determine the re-authentication interval according to the specific network size, which should be sufficient while as accurate as possible.

In the privileged mode, you can enable/disable re-authentication and set the re-authentication interval by performing the following steps.

Command	Function
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
<b>dot1x re-authentication</b>	Enable timed re-authentication.
<b>dot1x timeout re-authperiod <i>seconds</i></b>	Set the re-authentication interval.
<b>End</b>	Return to the privileged mode.
<b>Write</b>	Save the configuration.
<b>show dot1x</b>	Show the dot1x configurations.

You can use the **no dot1x re-authentication** command to disable timed re-authentication, and use the **no dot1x timeout re-authperiod** command to restore the re-authentication interval to the default.

The following example enables re-authentication and sets the re-authentication interval as 1000 seconds.

```
DES-7200# configure terminal
DES-7200(config)# dot1x re-authentication
DES-7200(config)# dot1x timeout re-authperiod 1000
DES-7200(config)# end
DES-7200# show dot1x
802.1X Status:           Disabled
Authentication Mode:     EAP-MD5
Authed User Number:      0
Re-authen Enabled:       Enabled
Re-authen Period:        1000 sec
Quiet Timer Period:      10 sec
Tx Timer Period:         3 sec
Supplicant Timeout:      3 sec
Server Timeout:          5 sec
Re-authen Max:           3 times
Maximum Request:         3 times
Client Online Probe:     Disabled
Eapol Tag Enable:        Disabled
Authorization Mode:       Disabled
```



If re-authentication is enabled, please pay attention to the reasonableness of the re-authentication interval, which must be set according to the specific network size.

### 40.2.7 Changing the QUIET Time

When the user authentication fails, the switch does not allow that user to re-authenticate until a specified period, which is referred to as Quiet Period. This value functions to protect the device from malicious attacks. The default interval for Quiet Period is 5 seconds.

A shorter Quiet Period may speed up re-authentication for the users.

In the privileged mode, you can set the Quiet Period by performing the following steps:

Command	Function
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
<b>dot1x timeout quiet-period seconds</b>	Set the Quiet Period.
<b>end</b>	Return to the privileged mode.
<b>write</b>	Save the configuration.
<b>show dot1x</b>	Show the dot1x configurations.

You can use the **no dot1x timeout quiet-period command** to restore the Quiet Period to its default. In the example below the QuietPeriod value is set as 500 seconds:

```
DES-7200# configure terminal
DES-7200(config)# dot1x timeout quiet-period 500
DES-7200(config)# end
```

### 40.2.8 Setting the Packet Retransmission Interval

After the device sends the EAP-request/identity, it resends that message if no response is received from the user within a certain period. By default, this value is 3 seconds. You should modify this value to suit the specific network size.

In the privileged mode, you can set the packet retransmission interval by performing the following steps:

Command	Function
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
<b>dot1x timeout tx-period seconds</b>	Setting the Packet Retransmission Interval
<b>end</b>	Return to the privileged mode.
<b>write</b>	Save the configuration.
<b>show dot1x</b>	Show the dot1x configurations.



You can use the **no dot1x timeout tx-period** to restore the packet re-transmission interval to its default. The following example sets the packet retransmission interval as 100 seconds:

```
DES-7200# configure terminal
DES-7200(config)# dot1x timeout tx-period 100
DES-7200(config)# end
```

### 40.2.9 Setting the Maximum Number of Requests

If the switch does not receive response within the ServerTimeout after it sends an authentication request to the RadiusServer, it will retransmit the packets. The maximum number of requests are the maximum retransmission requests of the device, and the authentication fails if this number is exceeded. By default, this value is 3. You should modify this value to suit the specific network size.

In the privileged mode, you can set the maximum number of retransmissions by performing the following steps:

Command	Function
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
<b>dot1x max-req count</b>	Set the maximum number of packet re-transmissions.
<b>end</b>	Return to the privileged mode.
<b>write</b>	Save the configuration.
<b>show dot1x</b>	Show the dot1x configurations.

```
DES-7200#show dot1x
```

You can use the **no dot1x max-req** command to restore the maximum number of packet re-transmissions to its default. The following example sets the maximum number of packet retransmissions to 5:

```
DES-7200# configure terminal
DES-7200(config)# dot1x max-req 5
DES-7200(config)# end
```

### 40.2.10 Setting the Maximum Number of Re-authentications

When the user authentication fails, the device attempts to perform authentication for the user once again. When the number of attempts exceeds the maximum number of authentications, the switch believes that this user is already disconnected, and ends the authentication process accordingly. By default, the number is 3. However, you can modify this value.



In the privileged mode, you can set the maximum number of re-authentications by performing the following steps:

Command	Function
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
<b>dot1x reauth-max <i>count</i></b>	Setting the Maximum Number of Re-authentications
<b>end</b>	Return to the privileged mode.
<b>write</b>	Save the configuration.
<b>show dot1x</b>	Show the dot1x configurations.

You can use the **no dot1x reauth-max** command to restore the maximum number of re-authentications to its default. The following example sets the maximum number of re-authentications to 3:

```
DES-7200# configure terminal
DES-7200(config)# dot1x reauth-max 3
DES-7200(config)# end
DES-7200#
```

#### 40.2.11 Setting the Server-timeout

This value indicates the maximum response time of the Radius Server. If the switch does not receive the response from the Radius Server within this period, it deems the authentication as a failure.

In the privileged mode, you can set the Server-timeout and restore it to its default by performing the following steps:

Command	Function
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
<b>dot1x timeout server-timeout <i>seconds</i></b>	Set the maximum response time of the Radius Server. You can use the no option of the command to restore it to its default.
<b>end</b>	Return to the privileged mode.
<b>write</b>	Save the configuration.
<b>show dot1x</b>	Show the dot1x configurations.

#### 40.2.12 Configuring the device to initiate the 802.1x authentication proactively

The 802.1x is secure access authentication based on port. Users must first undergo authentication before they can access the network. In most cases, authentication is initiated by the user end through EAPOL-START packets. For the information about packet



interaction during the authentication process, please see “Authentication Initiation and Packet Interaction During Authentication”.

However, authentication needs to be initiated by the switch in some cases. For example, when the switch is reset and the status of the authentication port changes from linkdown to linkup, the switch needs to automatically initiate authentication to ensure that the authenticated users can continue to use the network. In addition, if you use a 802.1x client that does not actively initiate authentication requests (for example, the Windows XP 802.1x client), the switch should be able to actively initiate authentication. The switch forcedly asks all the users under the authentication port to authenticate by sending the EAP-request/identity multicast packets.

The following section describes how to configure the switch to actively initiate 802.1x authentication and how you should configure appropriately in different application environments.

Turn on/off the switch for the proactive authentication initiation of the device

When this function is disabled, the switch can only initiate an authentication request at resetting or when the status of the authentication port is changed. This ensures that the on-line users can continue to use the network. The switch will not actively initiate an authentication request in any other cases. When this function is enabled, you can configure the times of automatic authentication initiation, authentication request interval, and whether to stop sending requests when the users pass the authentication.

In the privileged mode, you can enable automatic authentication by performing the following steps:

Command	Function
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
<b>dot1x auto-req</b>	Enable automatic authentication. It is disabled by default.
<b>end</b>	Return to the privileged mode.
<b>write</b>	Save the configuration.
<b>show dot1x</b>	Show the dot1x configurations.

The **no** option of the command turns off the function. Only when the function is enabled, the following settings take effect. The user can set the number of proactive authentication requests initiated by the device, which can be determined according to the actual network environment.

In the privileged mode, you can set the number of automatic authentication requests by performing the following steps:

Command	Function
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.



Command	Function
<b>dot1x auto-req packet-num</b> <i>num</i>	The device proactively initiates num 802.1x authentication request messages. If num is equal to 0, the device will continually send that message. The default is 0 (infinite).
<b>end</b>	Return to the privileged mode.
<b>write</b>	Save the configuration.
<b>show dot1x auto-req</b>	Show the configuration.

The **no** option of the command restores the value to its default. The following contents introduce how to configure the message sending interval.

In the privileged mode, you can set the packet sending interval by performing the following steps:

Command	Function
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
<b>dot1x auto-req req-interval</b> <i>interval</i>	Setting the Packet Sending Interval
<b>end</b>	Return to the privileged mode.
<b>write</b>	Save the configuration.
<b>show dot1x auto-req</b>	Show the configuration.

The **no** option of the command restores the value to its default. Since sending the authentication request multicast message will cause re-authentication for all users under the authentication interface, the sending interval shall not be too small lest the authentication efficiency is affected.

It is possible to set whether to stop sending the request messages when the user authentication passes. In some applications (only one user under a port, for example), we can stop sending authentication requests to the related port when the device finds the user authentication passes. If the user gets offline, the request is sent continually.

In the privileged mode, you can set this function by performing the following steps:

Command	Function
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
<b>dot1x auto-req user-detect</b>	Stop sending the messages when there is some authentication user under the port. This function is enabled by default.
<b>end</b>	Return to the privileged mode.
<b>write</b>	Save the configuration.
<b>show dot1x auto-req</b>	Show the configuration.



The **no** option of the command disables the function. Before setting this function, take careful considerations on the current network application environment.

The above three commands provide you with flexible application strategies. You can select the appropriate configuration command according to the specific network application environment. To help you configure easily, the following configuration table is provided for your reference:

	<b>Solution 1</b>	<b>Solution 2</b>	<b>Solution 3</b>
User environment	One port for any user	One port for one user	One port for multiple users
Whether the DES-7200 supplicant should be used as the authentication client	Yes	No	No
Configuration command recommended	Not necessary to enable the dot1x auto-req function	<b>dot1x auto-req</b>  <b>dot1x auto-req packet-num</b> <i>num</i>  <b>dot1x auto-req req-interval</b> <i>interval</i>  <b>dot1x auto-req user-detect</b>	<b>dot1x auto-req</b>  <b>dot1x auto-req packet-num</b> <i>0</i>  <b>dot1x auto-req req-interval</b> <i>interval</i>  <b>no dot1x auto-req user-detect</b>

### 40.2.13 Configuring 802.1x Accounting

Our 802.1x has implemented the accounting function. Accounting is based on interval. In other words, the 802.1x records the length of the period between the first successful authentication of the user and the user's logoff or when the switch detects user disconnection.

After the first successful user authentication, the switch sends an accounting start request to the server. When the user gets off-line or the switch finds that the user has got off line or when the physical connection of the user is broken, the switch sends an accounting end request to the server. The server group records this information in the database of the server group. Based on such information, the NMS can provide the basis for accounting.

Our 802.1x stresses the reliability of accounting, and it specially supports the backup accounting server to avoid failures of the accounting server. When a server can no longer provide the accounting service due to various reasons, the switch will automatically forward



the accounting information to another backup server. This greatly improves the reliability of accounting.

When a user exits by itself, the accounting duration is accurate. When the connection of the user is broken by accident, the accounting accuracy depends on the re-authentication interval (the switch detects the disconnection of a user by using the re-authentication mechanism).

To enable the accounting function of the device, the following settings are necessary on the device:

1. On the Radius Server, register the switch as a Radius Client, like the authentication operation.
2. Set the IP address of the accounting server.
3. Set the accounting UDP port.
4. Enable the accounting service on the precondition that the 802.1x has been enabled.

In the privileged mode, you can set the accounting service by performing the following steps:

Command	Function
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
<b>aaa new-model</b>	Enable the AAA function
<b>aaa group server radius gs</b>	Configure the accounting server group.
<b>server 192.168.4.12 acct-port 11</b>	Add a server to the server group.
<b>exit</b>	Return to the global configuration mode.
<b>aaa accounting network acct start-stop group gs</b>	Configure the accounting method list.
<b>dot1x accounting acct</b>	Apply the accounting method list for the 802.1X.
<b>end</b>	Return to the privileged mode.
<b>write</b>	Save the configuration.
<b>show running-config</b>	Show the configuration.

The **no aaa accounting network** command deletes the accounting method list. The **no dot1x accounting** command restores the default dot1x accounting method. The following example sets the IP address of the accounting server to 192.1.1.1, that of the backup accounting server to 192.1.1.2, and the UDP port of the accounting server to 1200, and enables 802.1x accounting:

```
DES-7200# configure terminal
DES-7200(config)# aaa new-model
DES-7200(config)# aaa group server radius acct-use
DES-7200(config-gs-radius)# server 192.168.4.12 acct-port 1200
DES-7200(config-gs-radius)# server 192.168.4.13 acct-port 1200
DES-7200(config-gs-radius)# exit
DES-7200(config)# aaa accounting network acct-list start-stop group acct-use
```



```
DES-7200(config)# dot1x accounting acct-list
DES-7200(config)# end
DES-7200# write memory
DES-7200# show running-config
```

**Caution**

1. The agreed accounting key must be the same as that of the Radius Server and authentication.
2. The accounting function cannot be enabled unless the AAA is enabled.
3. The accounting is impossible unless the 802.1X authentication passes.
4. By default, the accounting function of the 802.1x is disabled.
5. For the database format of accounting, see the related Radius Server documentation.

Also, the account update is supported. After the account update interval is set on the NAS device, the NAS device will send account update packets to the Radius Server at periodical intervals. On the Radius Server, you can define the number of periods before which the account update packet of a user is not received from the NAS device, the NAS or user will be regarded as off-line. Then, the Radius Server can stop the accounting of the user, and delete the user from the on-line user table.

In the privileged mode, you can set the account update function by performing the following steps:

Command	Function
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
<b>aaa new-model</b>	Enable the AAA function
<b>aaa accounting update</b>	Set the account update function.
<b>end</b>	Return to the privileged mode.
<b>write</b>	Save the configuration.
<b>show running-config</b>	Show the configuration.

You can disable the account update service by using the **no aaa accounting update** command.

```
DES-7200# configure terminal
DES-7200(config)# aaa accounting update
DES-7200(config)# end
DES-7200# write memory
DES-7200# show running-config
```

The following chapters introduce the propriety features of DES-7200 series products:

To make it easy for broadband operators and to accommodate use in special environments, our 802.1x has been expanded on the basis of the account (such expansion is completely based on the standard, and has totally compatible with IEEE 802.1x).

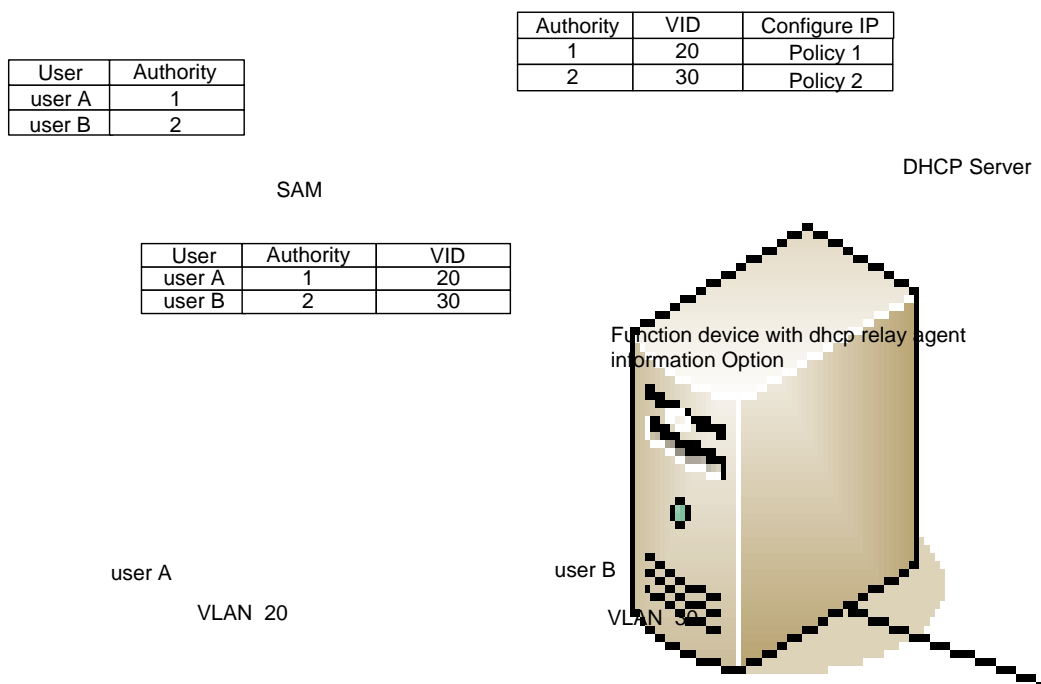


### 40.2.14 Configuring the IP authorization mode

The 802.1x implemented by DES-7200 series can force the authenticated users to use fixed IP. By configuring the IP authorization mode, the administrator can limit the way the user gets IP address. There are four IP authorization modes: DISABLE, DHCP SERVER, RADIUS SERVER and SUPPLICANT. They are detailed below respectively:

**DHCP SERVER mode:** The user IP is obtained via specified DHCP SERVER, and only the IP allocated by the specified DHCP SERVER is considered legal. For the DHCP mode, it is possible to use DHCP relay option82 to implement a more flexible IP allocation policy with the 802.1X. Here is a typical diagram for the plan:

**Figure 40-5**



The user initiates IP requests via the DHCP Client. The network device with dhcp relay option82 converges the user authority on the SAM server to construct the option82 field and encapsulate it in the DHCP request message. That option82 field consists of “vid + permission”. The DHCP Server chooses different allocation policies by using the option82 field.

In this mode, it is required to configure the DHCP Relay and the related option82. If the DHCP relay function is enabled and the option82 policy is selected, see the DHCP Relay Configuration Guide and Command References for the configurations.



**RADIUS SERVER mode:** The user IP is specified by the RADIUS SERVER. The user can only use the IP specified by the RADIUS SERVER to be able to access the network.

**SUPPLICANT mode:** The IP bound to the user is the IP of the PC during the SUPPLICANT's authentication. After the authentication, the user can only use that IP to be able to access the network.

The application models in the four modes are as follows:

- **DISABLE mode:** Suitable for the environment with no limits for the users. The user can access the network once he/she passes the authentication.
- **DHCP SERVER mode:** The user PC gets the IP address via DHCP. The administrator configures the DHCP RELAY of the device to limit the DHCP SERVER that the users can access. In this way, only the IPs allocated by the specified DHCP SERVER are legal.
- **RADIUS SERVER mode:** The user PC uses fixed IP. The RADIUS SERVER is configured with <user-IP> mapping relations that are notified to the device via the Framed-IP-Address attributes of the device. The user has to use that IP to be able to access the network.
- **SUPPLICANT mode:** The user PC uses fixed IP. The SUPPLICANT notifies the information to the device. The user has to use the IP at authentication to be able to access the network.



#### Caution

When the user switches modes, it will cause all authenticated users to get offline. So, it is recommended to configure the authentication mode before the use.

In the privileged mode, configure the IP authorization mode as follows:

Command	Function
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
<b>aaa new-model</b>	Enable the AAA function
<b>aaa authorization ip-auth-mode {disabled   dhcp-server   radius-server   supplicant }</b>	Configure the IP authorization mode
<b>end</b>	Return to the privileged mode.
<b>write</b>	Save the configuration.
<b>show running-config</b>	Show the configuration.

The example below configures the IP authorization mode as the RADIUS-SERVER mode:

```
DES-7200# configure terminal
DES-7200(config)# aaa authorization ip-auth-mode radius-server
DES-7200(config)# end
DES-7200# show running-config
!
aaa new-model
```



```
!  
aaa authorization ip-auth-mode radius-server  
!  
DES-7200# write memory
```

### 40.2.15 Releasing Advertisement

Our 802.1x allows you to configure the Reply-Message field on the Radius Server. When authentication succeeds, the information of the field is shown on our 802.1x client of Star-Supplicant, by which the operators can release some information.

Such information is shown at the first user authorization, but not at re-authentication. This avoids frequently disturbing the user.

The window for showing the advertisement information supports html, which converts the http://XXX.XXX.XX in the message into links capable of direct switching, for easier browsing.

Releasing of the advertising information:

1. The operator configures the Reply Message attribute on the Radius Server end.
2. Only our Star-suppliant client supports such information (free for the users of our switch), while other clients cannot see the information, which however does not affect their normal use.
3. No setting is required at the device end.

### 40.2.16 List of Authenticable Hosts under a Port

For enhanced security of the 802.1x, we have made expansion without affecting the IEEE 802.1x, allowing the NM to restrict the list of hosts authenticated of a port. If the list of hosts authenticated of a port is empty, any user can be authenticated. If the list is not empty, only the hosts in the list can be authenticated. The hosts that can be authenticated are identified by using the MAC addresses.

The following example adds/deletes the hosts that can be authenticated under a port.

Command	Function
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
<b>dot1x auth-address-table address</b> <i>mac-addr interface interface</i>	Set the list of the hosts that can be authenticated.
<b>end</b>	Return to the privileged mode.
<b>write</b>	Save the configuration.
<b>show running-config</b>	Show the configuration.





**Caution**

If the list of the host is empty, the port allows any host to be authenticated.

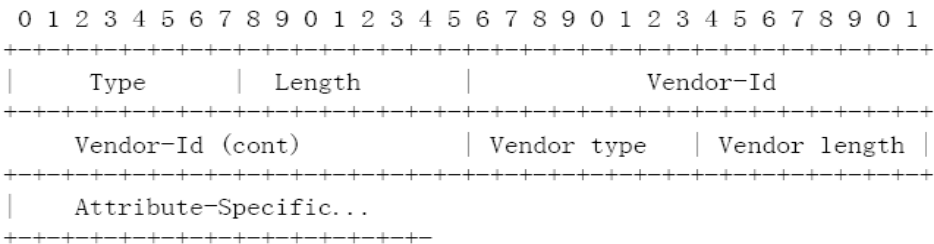
**40.2.17 Authorization**

To make it easier for operators, our products can provide services of different qualities for different types of services, for example, offering different maximum bandwidths. Such information is all stored on the Radius Server, and the administrator does not need to configure every switch.

Since the Radius has no standard attribute to represent the maximum data rate, we can only transfer the authorization information by the manufacturer customized attribute.

The general format of the definition is as follows:

**Figure 40-6**



For the maximum data rate, you need to fill in the following values:

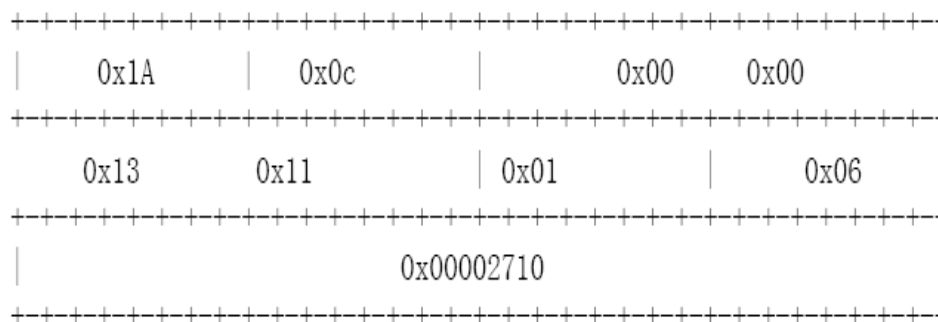
**Figure 40-7**



The unit of the maximum data rate is kbps.

For users with the maximum data rate of 10M, you need to fill in the following values:



**Figure 40-8**

For the customized header, follow those provided above. The maximum data rate is 10M, that is, 10000kbps, and makes 0x00002710 in the Hex system. You only need to fill in the corresponding field.

This function calls for no settings on the device end, and works as long as the device end supports authorization.

#### 40.2.18 Configuring the Authentication Mode

In the standard, the 802.1x implements authentication through the EAP-MD5. The 802.1X designed by DES7200 can perform authentication through both the EAP-MD5 (default) mode and the CHAP and PAP mode. The advantage of the CHAP is that it reduces the communication between the switch and the RADIUS SERVER, thus alleviating the pressure on the RADIUS SERVER. Same as the CHAP mode, the communication between the PAP and RADIUS SERVER occurs only once. Although the PAP mode is not recommended for its poor security, it can meet the special needs of the user in some cases. For example, when the security server used only supports the PAP authentication mode, this mode can be selected to fully exploit the existing resources, protecting the existing investment.

In the privileged mode, you can set the authentication mode of the 802.1x by performing the following steps:

Command	Function
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
<b>dot1x auth-mode mode</b>	Configure the authentication mode
<b>end</b>	Return to the privileged mode.
<b>write</b>	Save the configuration.
<b>show dot1x</b>	Show the configuration.

The following example configures the authentication mode to the CHAP mode:

```

DES-7200# configure terminal
DES-7200(config)# dot1x auth-mode CHAP

```



```

DES-7200(config)# end
DES-7200# show dot1x
802.1X Status:          Disabled
Authentication Mode:    CHAP
Authenticated User Number: 0
Re-authen Enabled:      Disabled
Re-authen Period:       3600 sec
Quiet Timer Period:     10 sec
Tx Timer Period:        3 sec
Supplicant Timeout:     3 sec
Server Timeout:         5 sec
Re-authen Max:          3 times
Maximum Request:        3 times
Client Online Probe:    Disabled
Eapol Tag Enable:       Disabled
Authorization Mode:      Group Server

```

#### 40.2.19 Configure the backup authentication server.

Our 802.1x-based authentication system can support the backup server. When the master server is down due to various reasons, the device automatically issues a server submission authentication request to the method list server group.

In the privileged mode, you can set the backup authentication server by performing the following steps:

Command	Function
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
<b>aaa new-model</b>	Turn on the AAA switch.
<b>aaa group server radius <i>gs-name</i></b>	Configure the server group.
<b>server sever</b>	Configure the server.
<b>server server-backup</b>	Configure the backup server.
<b>end</b>	Return to the privileged mode.
<b>write</b>	Save the configuration.
<b>show dot1x</b>	Show the configuration.

The following example configures 192.168.4.12 to be the backup server:

```

DES-7200# configure terminal
DES-7200# aaa new-model
DES-7200(config)# aaa group server radius auth-11
DES-7200(config-gs-radius)# server 192.168.4.1
DES-7200(config-gs-radius)# server 192.168.4.12
DES-7200(config-gs-radius)# end
DES-7200#

```



### 40.2.20 Configuring and Managing Online Users

---

DES-7200's devices provide management for authenticated users via SNMP. The administrator can view the information of the authorized users via SNMP, and forcedly log off a user. The user forcedly logged off must pass the authentication again before it can use network resources.

This function calls for no configuration on the device.

### 40.2.21 Implementing User-IP Binding

---

With our clients and by correctly configuring the Radius Server, you can implement unique user-IP binding. A user must undergo authentication by using the IP address allocated by the administrator. Otherwise, authentication will fail.

For this function, you do not need to configure the switch. The user needs to use our client and the administrator needs to configure the Radius Server.

### 40.2.22 Port-based Traffic Charging

---

In addition to the duration-based billing, DES-7200 series provide the traffic-based billing function in case each port of the equipment has only one user access.

This function calls for no configuration on the device but need the support of the Radius server.

### 40.2.23 Implementing Automatic Switching and Control of VLAN

---

If the user's "down VLAN" is set on the Radius server, the Radius server will notify the device via the manufacturer customized attribution of D-Link. DES-7200 series automatically jumps the VLAN of the port connected with the user into the VID configured on the Radius server, and the administrator need not any manual configuration on the device. You can view the real VLAN of the user by using the **show dot1x summary** command.



#### Caution

Our product support vlan auto-jump on the port. It is no need to enable network authorization.

Follow these steps to configure a port to allow dynamic VLAN jump or not:



Command	Function
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
<b>interface</b> <i>interface</i>	Enter the interface configuration mode.
<b>[no] dot1x dynamic-vlan enable</b>	Configure whether to allow dynamic vlan jumping, which is disabled by default.
<b>end</b>	Return to the privileged mode.
<b>write</b>	Save the configuration.
<b>show dot1x</b>	Show the configuration.

#### 40.2.24 Implementing GUEST VLAN Function

If **guest vlan** is set on the switch, then when the port sends the authentication requests of certain quantity proactively but receives no corresponding reply or **eapol** packet, you can add the port to **guest vlan**. Use **show running-config** to view the configuration and **show valn** to check whether the port jumps to guest vlan or not .

Follow these steps to configure a port to allow **GUEST VLAN** jump or not:

Command	Function
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
<b>interface</b> <i>interface</i>	Enter the interface configuration mode.
<b>dot1x dynamic-vlan enable</b>	Allow Vlan jump on the interface.
<b>[no] dot1x guest-vlan</b> <i>vid</i>	Configure whether to enable guest vlan, which is disabled by default.
<b>end</b>	Return to the privileged mode.
<b>write</b>	Save the configuration.
<b>Show running-config</b>	Show the configuration.



**Caution**

1. **Guest vlan** takes effect unless you configure **dot1x dynamic-vlan enable**.
2. It is better not to configure L2 attributes when configuring **guest vlan**, especially not to set **vlan** on the port manually.
3. Exiting **guest vlan** when there is **eapol** packet on the port and the port is **linkdown**. If you configure **guest vlan**, it will check **guest vlan** exchange conditions again when the port is **linkup**.

### 40.2.25 Shielding Proxy Server and Dial-up

The two major potential threats to network security are: The user sets its own proxy server and the user makes dial-up to access the network after authentication. Star switches provide the function to shield proxy servers and dial-up connections.

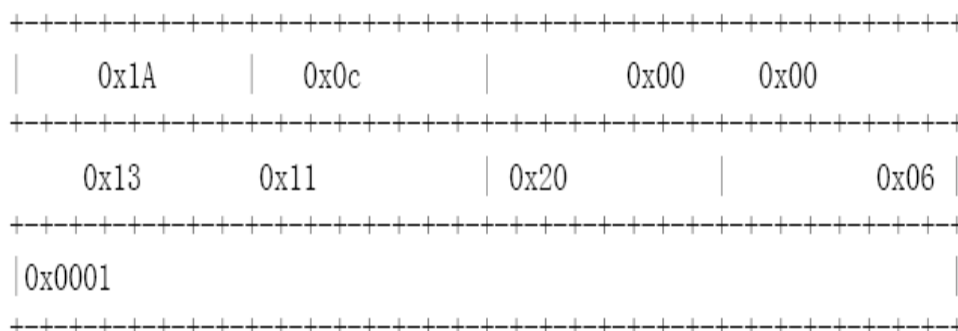
To implement this function needs no settings on the device end and needs only the corresponding attributes configured on the Radius server end. Since the Radius has no standard attributes to indicate the maximum data rate, we can transfer the authorization information only through the manufacturer custom attributes. For the general format defined, see the Authorization section.

The proxy server shielding function defines the Vendor type of 0x20, and the dial-up shielding function defines the Vendor type of 0x21.

The Attribute-Specific field is a 4-byte manufacturer defined attribute, which defines the actions taken against proxy server access and dial-up access. 0x0000 means normal connection, without shielding detection. 0x0001 means shielding detection.

To shield the access via the proxy server, you should fill in the following information:

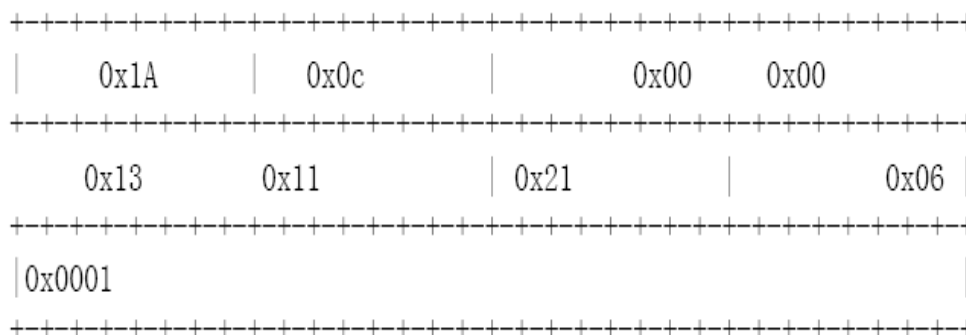
**Figure 40-9**



To shield the access via the dial-up connection, you should fill in the following information:



Figure 40-10



#### 40.2.26 Configuring On-line Probe on Client End

To ensure accurate charging, an on-line probe mechanism is needed to detect whether a user is on-line within a short period. The re-authentication mechanism specified in the standard can meet such needs, but it needs the participation of the RADIUS server. Accurate user probe will occupy enormous resources of the switch and RADIUS server. To meet the need to implement accurate charging with few resources occupied, we use a new client on-line probe mechanism. Such mechanism only needs interaction between the switch and client and occupies little network traffic, and it implements minute-level charging accuracy (you can set the charging accuracy).



#### Caution

To implement on-line client monitoring, the client software must support this function.

The following two timers affect the performance and accuracy of on-line probe:

- Hello Interval: It is the interval at which the client sends advertisement.
- Alive Interval: Client online interval. If the device has not received the client advertisement during this interval, it actively disconnects the client and notifies the billing server. The interval must be greater than the Hello Interval.

In the privileged mode, you can configure the on-line probe function of the client by performing the following steps:

Command	Function
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
<b>dot1x client-probe enable</b>	Enable the on-line probe function of the client
<b>dot1x probe-timer interval</b> <i>interval</i>	Configure the Hello Interval
<b>dot1x probe-timer alive interval</b>	Configure the Alive Interval of the device.
<b>end</b>	Return to the privileged mode.
<b>write</b>	Save the configuration.



Command	Function
<b>show dot1x</b>	Show the configuration.

#### 40.2.27 Configuring the Option Flag for EAPOL Frames to Carry TAG

In accordance with IEEE 802.1x, the EAPOL packets cannot be added with vlan TAG. However, based on the possible application requirements, the selection flag is provided. When the flag is turned on, tags can be outputted according to the related output rule of the trunk ports.

The typical application environment is to enable 802.1x authentication on the convergence layer. For more information, see “Topologies of Typical Applications”.

In the privileged mode, you can configure the flag for EAPOL frames to carry TAG by performing the following steps:

Command	Function
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
<b>dot1x eapol-tag</b>	Enable the flag for EAPOL frames to carry TAG. By default, the function is disabled.
<b>end</b>	Return to the privileged mode.
<b>write</b>	Save the configuration.
<b>show dot1x</b>	Show the configuration.

You can disable this function by using the **no dot1x eapol-tag** command.

#### 40.2.28 Configuring Port-based Authentication

The 802.1x controls users on the basis of their MAC addresses by default. Only the authenticated user can use the network. With port-based authentication, the port is authenticated as long as a user is authenticated on a port. Consequently, all users connecting to this port can access the network.

To configure port-based control mode, execute the following commands in the privileged mode.

Command	Function
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
<b>interface &lt;interface-id&gt;</b>	Enter the interface mode
<b>dot1x port-control auto</b>	Enable the function being controlled.



Command	Function
<b>dot1x port-control-mode</b> <i>{mac-based port-based}</i>	Select the controlled mode.
<b>End</b>	Return to the privileged mode.
<b>Write</b>	Save the configuration.
<b>show dot1x port-control</b>	Show the configuration of port 802.1X.

You can run **no dot1x port-control-mode** to restore the settings to the default control mode.

Following example shows how to configure the authentication mode of a port.

```
DES-7200(config)#
DES-7200#configure terminal
DES-7200(config)# interface <interface-id>
DES-7200(config-if)#dot1x port-control-mode port-base
```



#### Caution

In the port-based authentication mode, a port can be connected with only one authenticated user.

Port-based authentication mode can enable or disable dynamic users to migrate among multiple authenticated ports. By default, the migration is allowed. To prohibit the migration, run the following commands one by one in the privileged mode.

Command	Function
configure terminal	Enter the global configuration mode.
dot1x stationarity enable	Disable the migration among ports.
End	Exit to the privileged mode.
Write	Save the configuration.

### 40.2.29 Configuring Port-based Single-user Authentication

By default, 802.1x controls on the basis of user MAC. Only the authenticated users can use the network, while other users connected to the same port is not able to use the network. In the port-based control mode, the port is authenticated when there is an authenticated user on the port. All the users connected to the authenticated port are able to use the network normally.

However, in the port-based control mode, the port-based single-user authentication controls only one authenticated user. The port is authenticated when it allows only one authenticated user who is enable to use the network normally. Then, if you find other users on the port, you should clear all the users on the port and reauthenticate.



From the privileged mode, follow the steps below to configure port-based single-user control mode on the port.

Command	Function
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
<b>interface</b> <interface-id>	Enter the interface configuration mode.
<b>dot1x port-control auto</b>	Enable control function.
<b>dot1x port-control-mode port-based single-host</b>	Port-based single-user control mode.
<b>End</b>	Return to the privileged mode.
<b>Write</b>	Save the configuration.
<b>show dot1x port-control</b>	Show 802.1x configuration.
<b>show running-config</b>	Show all configurations.

You can run **no dot1x port-control-mode** to restore the settings to the default control mode.

Following example shows how to configure the authentication mode of a port.

```
DES-7200(config)#
DES-7200#configure terminal
DES-7200(config)#interface <interface-id>
DES-7200(config-if)#dot1x port-control-mode port-base single-host
```



#### Caution

1. In the port-based authentication mode, every port only can receive one authentication user.
2. Single-host is port-based single-user 802.1x access control. Use **show dot1x port-control** to display port-based and use **show running-config** to display dot1x port-control-mode port-based single-host.
3. Since single-host only supports the single-user form, setting default-user-limit on the port manually does not take effect in single-host mode. If you set default-user-limit on the port after setting single-host, only one user can be permitted to use the network still.



In the port-based authentication mode, you can permit or deny dynamic users to migrate among multiple authentication ports, which is permitted by default. If you want to deny the migration of dynamic users, follow the steps below from the privileged mode.

Commnd	Function
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enters the global configuration mode.
<b>dot1x stationarity enable</b>	Prohibites migration between ports.
<b>end</b>	Returns to the privileged mode.
<b>Write</b>	Saves the configuration.

#### 40.2.30 Configuring Dynamic Acl Assignment

802.1x supports ACL assignment from server and dynamic installation of the assigned ACL. Our product support installing acl by default. They will install acl dynamically on condition that the allowed acl is set on the server and is assigned after the successful user authentication.

To implement dynamic acl assignment, you need to set the port as mac-based authentication mode or port-based single-user authentication mode. For the configuration, please refer to the related command configuration manual.



#### Caution

1. In single-host authentication mode, it supports to renew acl when reauthenticating. That is, acl takes effect when the authenticated user sets acl on the server and reauthenticates.
2. Supported acl type: extension type which can explain acl function on our switch.
3. Execute the following command if you need to support dynamic acl assignment on the server which is not authenticated by our company.

```
DES-7200#configure terminal
DES-7200(config)# radius vendor-specific extend
```



## 40.3 Viewing the Configuration and Current Statistics of the 802.1x

---

Our 802.1X provides a full range of state machine information, which is very useful for network management and can be used by the administrator to monitor user status in real time and make easy troubleshooting.

- Viewing the Radius Authentication and Accounting Configuration
- Viewing the Number of Current Users
- Viewing the List of the Addresses Authenticable
- Viewing the User Authentication Status Information
- Showing the 1x Client Probe Time Configuration

### 40.3.1 Viewing the Radius Authentication and Accounting Configuration

---

Run the **show radius server** command to check the related configuration of the Radius Sever, and run the **show aaa user** command to view the user-related information.

```
DES-7200# sh radius server
Server IP:      192.168.5.11
Accounting Port: 1813
Authen Port:    1812
Server State:   Ready
```

### 40.3.2 Viewing the Number of Current Users

---

Our 802.1X allows you to view the numbers of two types of users: one is the number of current users, and the other is that of the authorized users. The number of current users refers to the total number of users authenticated (whether successfully or unsuccessfully), while the number of authorized users means the total number of users authorized.

In the privileged mode, run the **show dot1x** command to check the current number of users and authenticated users, 1x configuration, including the current number of users and authenticated users.

The following example shows the 802.1x configuration:

```
DES-7200# show dot1x
802.1X Status:      Disabled
Authentication Mode: EAP-MD5
Authed User Number: 0
Re-authen Enabled:  Disabled
Re-authen Period:   3600 sec
Quiet Timer Period:  10 sec
Tx Timer Period:     3 sec
```



```

Supplicant Timeout: 3 sec
Server Timeout: 5 sec
Re-authen Max: 3 times
Maximum Request: 3 times
Client Oline Probe: Disabled
Eapol Tag Enable: Disabled
Authorization Mode: Disabled

```

### 40.3.3 Viewing the Authenticable Address Table

Our 802.1x has expanded functions that allow you to set the hosts that can be authenticated on a particular port. This function allows the administrator to view the currently available settings.

In the privileged mode, you can view the list of hosts authenticable by performing the following steps:

Command	Function
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
<b>dot1x auth-address-table address</b> <i>mac-addr interface interface</i>	Set the list of the hosts that can be authenticated.
<b>end</b>	Return to the privileged mode.
<b>write</b>	Save the configuration.
<b>show dot1x auth-address-table</b>	Show the list of the hosts that can be authenticated.

Use the **no dot1x auth-address-table address** command to delete the specified authenticable host list. The following example shows the list of the hosts that can be authenticated.

```

DES-7200# show dot1x auth-address-table
interface:g3/1
-----
mac addr: 00D0.F800.0001

```

### 40.3.4 Viewing the User Authentication Status Information

The administrator can view the authentication status of the current users of the switch for easier troubleshooting.

In the privileged mode, you can view the user authentication status information by performing the following steps:



Command	Function
<b>show dot1x summary</b>	Viewing the User Authentication Status Information

The following example shows the user authentication status information.

```
DES-7200# show dot1x summary
ID   MAC           Interface  VLAN  Auth-State  Backend-State  Port-Status
-----
1    00d0f8000001  Gi3/1     1     Authenticated  IDLE           Authed
```

### 40.3.5 Showing the 1x Client Probe Time Configuration

In the privileged mode, you can view the 1x timer setting by performing the following steps:

Command	Function
<b>show dot1x probe-timer</b>	Show the 1X timer setting

The following example shows the 1.1x timer setting:

```
DES-7200# show dot1x probe-timer
Hello Interval: 20 Seconds
Hello Alive: 250 Seconds
DES-7200#
```

### 40.3.6 Other Precautions for Configuring 802.1x

1. When there is no IP authorization mode, each device supports 10,000 authenticated users.
2. Concurrent use of 1X and ACL

In the non-IP authorization mode, if you enable the 802.1x authentication function of a port and at the same time associate one ACL with a interface, the ACL takes effect on the basis of the MAC address. In other words, only the packets from the source MAC addresses of the authenticated users can pass ACL filtering, and the packets from other source MAC addresses will be discarded. The ACL can only work on the basis of the MAC address.

For example, if the authenticated MAC address is 00d0.f800.0001, then all the packets from the source MAC address of 00d0.f800.0001 can be switched. If the port is associated with an ACL, the ACL will further filter these packets that can be switched, for example, rejecting the ICMP packets from the source MAC address of 00d0.f800.0001.

In the IP authorization mode, you are recommended not to set the ACL on the controlled interface, since the ACL has a higher priority than the authentication user, and so the authenticated IP+MAC binding will not take effect. At a port, the following users are authenticated:



User 1: mac: 00d0.f800.0001 ip: 192.168.65.100

User 2: mac: 00d0.f800.0002 ip: 192.168.65.101

Then, set one ACL on the interface as follows:

```
ip access-list extended ip_acl:
```

```
deny icmp any any
```

The original purpose is to allow the communication of authenticated users and forbid sending ICMP messages. However, the ACL has a higher priority than the authenticated IP + MAC and the last default ACE of the ACL is “deny any any”, so the authenticated users cannot communicate.

If you add permit any any to IP\_acl,, then any authenticated users can still communicate after changing its IP address, but the IP + MAC one-to-one binding is not achieved. Therefore, IP authentication + ACL is not recommended.

3. The hardware entries for user authentication and the other applications (for example, ACL, port IP security address) share the filtering entries and filtering domain templates in the IP authentication mode. If other applications exhaust the hardware resources, the user authentication may fail in the IP authorization mode, or though success, but the users cannot communicate, for the filtering domain templates in particular, at least one should be available for user authentication in the IP authentication mode.



# 41

## AAA Configuration

The access control is used to control which people can access the network server and which services can be accessed by the users on the network. The authentication, authorization and accounting (AAA) is a key security mechanism for access control.

### 41.1 Basic AAA Principles

---

Authentication, Authorization and Accounting (shortened as AAA) provide a consistence framework for configuring the authentication, authorization and accounting functions, which are supported by DES-7200 series products.

The AAA provides the following services in a modular manner:

- **Authentication:** It verifies whether a user can access, where the Radius protocol or Local can be used. The authentication is the method to identify a user before his/her access to the network and network services. The AAA is configured by the definition of a naming list for authentication method and application of it on every interface. The method list defines the authentication type and execution order. Before a defined authentication is executed, the method list must be applied on a specific interface. The default method list is exceptional. If no other method list is defined, the default method list will automatically apply on all interfaces. The defined method list overwrites the default method list. All authentication methods other than the local, line password and allowing authentication must be defined with AAA.
- **Authorization:** This means authorizing the user with services. The AAA authorization is implemented through the definition of series attributes that describe the operations on the user by the authorization. These attributes can be stored on the network device or the RADIUS security server remotely. All authorization methods must be defined with AAA. When the AAA authorization is enabled, it is automatically applied on all interfaces of the network device.
- **Accounting:** This means recording the user's usage of network resources. When the AAA accounting is enabled, the network access server starts to send the user's network resource usages to the Radius security server through statistics records. Every accounting record is composed of attribute pairs and stored in the security server. These records can be read for analysis by special software to implement the accounting, statistics and tracing for the user's network resource usage. All accounting methods must be defined with AAA. When the AAA accounting is enabled, it is automatically applied on all interfaces of the network device.



**Note**

The AAA of some products only provides the authentication function. For all problems with product specifications, contact the market or technical support personnel of D-Link Networks.

Although the AAA is the primary access control method, our product also provides simple control accesses out of the range of AAA, such as the local username authentication, line password authentication and more. The difference lies in the degree of their network protection, and the AAA provides the security protection of a higher level.

The AAA has the following advantages:

- Powerful flexibility and controllability
- Expandability
- Standardized authentication
- Multiple backup systems

#### **41.1.1 Basic AAA Principles**

The AAA can configure dynamically authentication, authorization and accounting for a single user (line) or server. It defines the authentication, authorization and accounting by means of creating method lists and then applies them on specific services or interfaces.

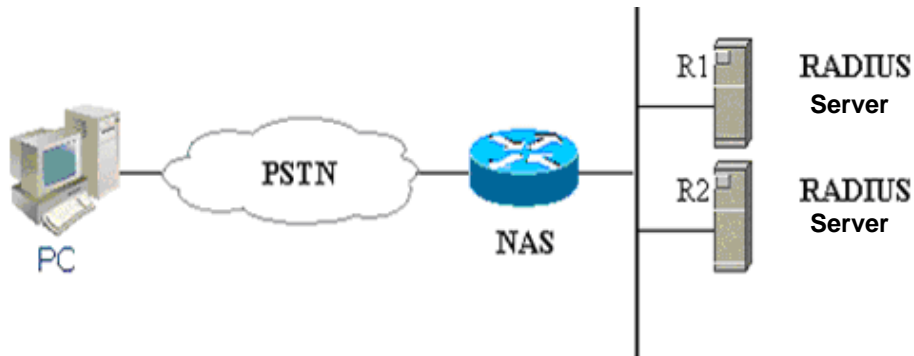
#### **41.1.2 Method List**

Since the authentication for users can be implemented in a variety of ways, you need to use the method list to define the sequence of using different method to perform authentication for the users. The method list can define one or more security protocols for authentication, so that there are backup systems available for the authentication in case of the failure of the first method. Our product works with the first method in the method list for user authentication, and then selects the next method in the method list in case of no reply from that method. This process goes on till an authentication method listed successfully allows communication or all methods listed are used up. If all methods listed are used up but the communication is not allowed, it declares failure of authentication.

**Caution**

Only when there is no reply from a method, our product will attempt the next method. During the authentication, if the user access is refused by a method, the authentication process ends and no other methods will be attempted.



**Figure 41-1** A typical AAA network configuration

The figure above illustrates a typical AAA network configuration, including two security servers: R1 and R2 are both RADIUS servers.

Supposed the system administrator has defined a method list, R1 is used first to capture the identity information, then R2, and finally the local username database on the NAS. If a remote PC user attempts to access the network via dialup, the NAS first queries the authentication information from R1. If the user passes the authentication on R1, R1 sends a SUCCESS reply to the NAS, and thus the user's access to the network is allowed. If R1 returns FAIL reply, the user's access is refused and the disconnected. If R1 has no reply, the NAS regards it as ERROR and queries authentication information from R2. This process continues for the remaining methods till the user passes the authentication, is refused or the session is terminated. If ERROR is returned for all methods, the authentication fails and the user is disconnected.

**Caution**

The REJECT response is not the same as the TIMEOUT response. REJECT means the user fails to comply with the standard in the available authentication database and does not pass the authentication, thus the access request will be refused. TIMEOUT means there is no reply from the security server to the authentication. When an ERROR is detected, the AAA selects the next authentication method in the method list to continue the authentication process.

## **41.2 Basic AAA Configuration Steps**

First you shall decide to choose which security solution, evaluate the potential security risks in the specific network and select the proper measures to prevent unauthorized accesses. For the security risk evaluation and the possible security solutions, see Chapter 2, Security Overview. We recommend the use of AAA as much as possible to guarantee the network security.



### 41.2.1 Overview of AAA Configuration Steps

The AAA configuration may become simple when the basic operation process of AAA is understood. On DES-7200 series devices, the AAA is configured through the following steps:

1. Enable AAA by using the global configuration command **aaa new-model**.
2. Configure the security protocol parameters if you decide to use the security server, such as RADIUS.
3. Define the authentication method list by using the **aaa authentication** command.
4. Apply the method list on specific interface or line, if necessary.



#### Caution

When the specific method list is applied, if no named method list is clearly specified, the default authentication method list will apply.

As a result, if you do not want to use the default authentication method list, you shall specify a specific method list.

For complete descriptions of the commands mentioned in this chapter, see the related chapters in the *Security Configuration Command Reference*.

### 41.2.2 Enabling AAA

It is required to enable AAA first to be able to use the AAA security features.

To enable AAA, execute the following command in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>aaa new-model</b>	Enable AAA

### 41.2.3 Disabling AAA

To disable AAA, execute the following command in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>no aaa new-model</b>	Disable AAA

### 41.2.4 Sequential Configuration Steps

After the AAA is enabled, it is time to configure the other parts related with the selected security solutions. Following table lists the possible configuration tasks and their description chapters.

Methods of AAA access control security solution



Configuration task	Step	Chapter
Configuring Local Login Authentication	3	Configuring Authentication
Defining AAA Authentication Method List	3	Configuring Authentication
Applying Method List on Specific Interface or Line	4	Configuring Authentication
Configuring Radius Security Protocol Parameters	2	Configuring Radius
Enabling Radius Authorization	5	Configuring Authorization

If you are not using AAA for authentication, see Configuring Authentication.

## 41.3 Configuring Authentication

The authentication allows the user's identity verification before the user of network resources. In most cases, the authentication is implemented with the AAA security features. We recommend the use of AAA as much as possible.

### 41.3.1 Defining AAA Authentication Method List

To configure the AAA authentication, the first step is to define a named list of the authentication method, and then the applications use the defined list for authentication. The method list defines the authentication type and execution order. The defined authentication methods must be applied on specific interfaces before they can be executed. The default method list is exceptional. When not configured, all applications will use the default method list.

The method list is just a list to define the authentication method to be queried in turn to verify the user identity. The method list can define one or more security protocols for authentication, so that there are backup systems available for the authentication in case of the failure of the first method. Our product works with the first method in the method list for user authentication, and then selects the next method in the method list in case of no reply from that method. This process goes on till an authentication method listed successfully allows communication or all methods listed are used up. If all methods listed are used up but the communication is not allowed, it declares failure of authentication.



#### Caution

Only when there is no reply from a method, our product will attempt the next method. During the authentication, if the user access is refused by a method, the authentication process ends and no other methods will be attempted.



### 41.3.2 Example of Method List

In a typical AAA network configuration, there are two servers: R1 and R2 are both RADIUS servers. Suppose the network administrator has chosen a security solution, and the NAS authentication uses an authentication method to authenticate the Telnet connection: First, R1 is used for the user authentication. In case of no reply, R2 will be used. In case there is no reply from both R1 and R2, the local database of the access server will perform the authentication. To configure the above authentication list, run the following commands:

Command	Function
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
<b>aaa authentication login default group radius local</b>	Configure a default authentication method list, where "default" is the name of the method list. The protocols included in this method list are listed behind the name in the order by which they will be queried. The default method list is applied on all applications.

If the system administrator hopes to apply this method list on a specific *Login connection*, he/she must create a named method list and then apply it on the specific connection. The example below shows how to apply the authentication method list on line 2 only.

Command	Function
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
<b>aaa new-model</b>	Turn on the AAA switch.
<b>aaa authentication login test group radius local</b>	Define a method list named "test" in the global configuration mode.
DES-7200(config)# <b>line vty 2</b>	Enter the configuration layer of line 2
DES-7200(config-line)# <b>login authentication test</b>	In the line configuration mode, apply the method list named "test" on the line.

If a remote PC user attempts to Telnet the network access server(NAS), the NAS first queries the authentication information from R1. If the user passes the authentication on R1, R1 sends a ACCEPT reply to the NAS, and thus the user's access to the network is allowed. If R1 returns the REJECT reply, the user's access is refused and then disconnected. If R1 does not respond, NAS considers TIMEOUT and queries the authentication information to R2. This process continues for the remaining methods till the user passes the authentication, is refused or the session is terminated. If all servers (R1 and R2) returns TIMEOUT, the authentication will be performed by the NAS local database.



**Caution**

The REJECT response is not the same as the TIMEOUT response. REJECT means the user fails to comply with the standard in the available authentication database and does not pass the authentication, thus the access request will be refused. TIMEOUT means there is no reply from the security server to the authentication. When an TIMEOUT is detected, the AAA selects the next authentication method in the method list to continue the authentication process.

### 41.3.3 General Steps in Configuring AAA Authentication

The following tasks are common for the configuration of AAA authentication.

- Enable AAA by using the global configuration command **aaa new-model**.
- Configure the security protocol parameters if you decide to use the security server, such as RADIUS. See Configuring Radius for details.
- Define the authentication method list by using the **aaa authentication** command.
- Applying method list on a specific interface or line, if possible.

### 41.3.4 Configuring the AAA Line Authentication

This section deals with how to configure the AAA authentication methods supported by our product:

**Caution**

Only after the AAA is enabled through the command **aaa new-model** in the global configuration mode, the AAA security features are available for your configuration. For the details, see AAA Overview.

In many cases, the user needs to Telnet the network access server (NAS). Once such a connection is set up, it is possible to configure NAS remotely. To prevent unauthorized accesses to the network, it is required to perform authentication on the user identity.

The AAA security services make it easy for the network devices to perform line-based authentication. No matter which line authentication method you decide to use, you just need to execute the **aaa authentication login** command to define one or more authentication method list and apply it on the specific line that need the line authentication.

To configure the AAA PPP authentication, execute the following command in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
<b>configure</b>	terminal
<b>aaa new-model</b>	Enable AAA.



Command	Function
<b>aaa authentication login</b> {default  list-name} method1 [method2...]	Define an accounting method list, or repeat this command to define more.
<b>line vty</b> line-num	Enter the line that needs to apply the AAA authentication.
<b>login authentication</b> {default list-name}	Apply the method list on the line.

The keyword "list-name" is used to name the created authentication method list, which can be any string. The keyword "method" means the actual algorithm for authentication. Only when the current method returns ERROR (no reply), the next authentication method will be attempted. If the current method returns FAIL, no authentication method will be used any more. To make the authentication return successfully, even if no specified methods reply, it is possible to specific "none" as the last authentication method.

In the example below, it is possible to pass the identity authentication even if the Radius server returns TIMEOUT. **aaa authentication login default group radius none**



#### Caution

Since the keyword "none" enables any dialup user can pass the authentication even if the security server has no reply, it is only used as the backup authentication method. We suggest not using the "none" identity authentication in general cases. In special case when all possible dialup users are trustful, and no delay due to system fault is allowed for the user's work, it is possible to use "none" as the last identity authentication method in case the security server has no reply. And we recommend adding the local authentication method before the "none" authentication method.

Keyword	Description
<b>local</b>	Use the local username database for authentication
<b>none</b>	Do not perform authentication
<b>group radius</b>	Use Radius for authentication

The table above lists the AAA line authentication methods supported by our product.

#### 41.3.4.1 Using the local username database for PPP authentication

To configure the line authentication with local database, it is required to configure the local database first. Our product supports authentication based on the local database. To establish the username authentication, run the following commands in the global configuration mode:



Command	Function
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
<b>username</b> <i>name</i> [ <b>password</b> <i>password</i> ] or <b>username</b> <i>name</i> [ <b>access-class</b> <i>number</i> ]	Establish the user authentication by using password or access list.
<b>username</b> <i>name</i> [ <b>privilege</b> <i>level</i> ]	Set the privilege level for the user (optional).
<b>username</b> <i>name</i> [ <b>autocommand</b> <i>command</i> ]	Set the automatic command execution after user login (optional)
<b>end</b>	Return to the privileged mode.
<b>show running-config</b>	Confirm the configuration.

To define the local authentication method list and apply it, run the following commands:

Command	Function
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
<b>aaa new-model</b>	Turn on the AAA switch.
<b>aaa authentication login</b> { <b>default</b>   <i>list-name</i> } <b>local</b>	Define the local method list.
<b>end</b>	Return to the privileged mode.
<b>show aaa method-list</b>	Confirm the configured method list.
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
<b>line vty</b> <i>line-num</i>	Enter the line configuration mode
<b>login authentication</b> { <b>default</b>   <i>list-name</i> }	Apply the method list.
<b>end</b>	Return to the privileged mode.
<b>show running-config</b>	Confirm the configuration.

#### 41.3.4.2 Using Radius for line authentication

To configure the use of RADIUS authentication server for line authentication, it is required to first configure the RADIUS server. Our product supports the authentication based on the RADIUS server. To configure the RADIUS server, run the following commands in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
<b>aaa new-model</b>	Turn on the AAA switch.
<b>radius-server host</b> <i>ip-address</i> [ <b>auth-port</b> <i>port</i> ] [ <b>acct-port</b> <i>port</i> ]	Configure the RADIUS server



Command	Function
<b>end</b>	Return to the privileged mode.
<b>show radius server</b>	Show the RADIUS server.

After the RADIUS server is configured, make sure of successful communication with the RADIUS server before configuring the RADIUS for authentication. For details of the RADIUS server configurations, see [Configuring RADIUS](#).

Now it is possible to configure the RADIUS server based method list. Run the following commands:

Command	Function
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
<b>aaa new-model</b>	Turn on the AAA switch.
<b>aaa authentication login</b> <b>{default   list-name} group radius</b>	Define the local method list.
<b>end</b>	Return to the privileged mode.
<b>show aaa method-list</b>	Confirm the configured method list.
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
<b>line vty line-num</b>	Enter the line configuration mode
<b>login authentication {default   list-name}</b>	Apply the method list.
<b>end</b>	Return to the privileged mode.
<b>show running-config</b>	Confirm the configuration.

### 41.3.5 Example of Authentication Configuration

The example below illustrates show to configure the network device to use “Radius + local” for authentication.

```
DES-7200(config)# aaa new-model
DES-7200(config)# username D-Link password starnet
DES-7200(config)# radius-server host 192.168.217.64
DES-7200(config)# aaa authentication login test group radius local
DES-7200(config)# line vty 0
DES-7200(config-line)# login authentication test
DES-7200(config-line)# end
DES-7200# show running-config
!
aaa new-model
!
!
aaa authentication login test group radius local
```



```
username D-Link password 0 starnet
!
radius-server host 192.168.217.64
!
line con 0
line vty 0
login authentication test
line vty 1 4
!
!
```

In the example above, the access server uses the Radius server (IP 192.168.217.64) to perform authentication for the login users. If the Radius server has no reply, the local database will be used for the identity authentication.

## 41.4 Configuring Authorization

The AAA authorization enables the administrator to control the user's use of the services. After the AAA authorization service is enabled, the network device configures the user sessions by using the user configuration file stored locally or in the server. After the authorization is completed, the user can only use the services allowed in the profile.

Our product supports the network authorization for such networks as PPP and SLIP network connections. It supports the following two authorization methods:

- Radius authorization method – The network access server requests the authorization information from the Radius security server. The Radius security server stores the user-specific right attribute pair.
- Local authorization method – The network access server accesses the local database (as defined with the username) and then grants the user with specific rights. In the local database, only limited functions can be defined for the users, which is applicable for simple authorization for the users.



### Caution

Now the configuration does support the 802.1X AAA authorization, while the 802.1X is implemented by using other commands.

### 41.4.1 Preparations for Authorization

The following tasks must be completed before the AAA authorization is configured:

- Enable the AAA server. For the details, see AAA Overview.
- Configure the AAA authentication. The authorization is generally done after the user passes the authentication and depends on the normal operation of the authentication. For details of the AAA authentication, see Configuring Authentication.



- (Optional) configure security protocol parameters. If the security protocol is required for authorization, it is required to configure the security protocol parameters. Our product supports RADIUS. For details of the RADIUS, see Configuring RADIUS.
- (Optional) if the local authorization is required, it is required to use the **username** command to define the user rights.

#### 41.4.2 Configuring Authorization List

To enable AAA authorization, execute the following command in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
<b>aaa new-model</b>	Turn on the AAA switch.
<b>aaa authorization network</b> {default   <i>list-name</i> } <i>method1</i> [ <i>method2</i> ...]	Enable the AAA authorization and define the authorization method.

#### 41.4.3 RADIUS Authorization

To use the Radius security server to authorize the users, the **aaa authorization** command with the keyword "Radius" can be used. See how to configure the Radius.

Command	Function
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
<b>aaa new-model</b>	Turn on the AAA switch.
<b>radius-server host</b> <i>ip-address</i> [ <b>auth-port</b> <i>port</i> ] [ <b>acct-port</b> <i>port</i> ]	Configure the RADIUS server
<b>end</b>	Return to the privileged mode.
<b>show radius server</b>	Show the RADIUS server.
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
<b>aaa authorization network</b> { <b>default</b>   <i>list-name</i> } <b>group radius</b>	Define the Radius authorization method.

#### 41.4.4 Local Authorization

To use the local authorization, the **aaa authorization** command with keyword "local" can be used. If the local authorization is selected, the network access server queries the local user database to determine the functions allowed for the users. The global configuration command **username** is used to define the functions related with local authorization.



Command	Function
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
<b>aaa new-model</b>	Turn on the AAA switch.
<b>username <i>name</i> privilege <i>level</i></b>	Set the privilege level for the user
<b>end</b>	Return to the privileged mode.
<b>show running-config</b>	Confirm the configuration.
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
<b>aaa authorization network</b> <b>{default   <i>list-name</i>} local</b>	Define the local authorization method.

#### 41.4.5 None Authorization

To enable no authorization for the user, the **aaa authorization** command with keyword "none" can be used.

Command	Function
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
<b>aaa new-model</b>	Turn on the AAA switch.
<b>aaa authorization network</b> <b>{default   <i>list-name</i>} none</b>	Define the none authorization.

#### 41.4.6 Example of Configuring Network Authorization

The example below illustrates how to perform network authorization.

```
DES-7200# configure terminal
DES-7200(config)# aaa new-model
DES-7200(config)# radius-server host 192.168.217.64
DES-7200(config)# username D-Link privilege 6
DES-7200(config)# aaa authorization network test group radius local none
DES-7200(config)# end
DES-7200# show running-config
aaa new-model
!
aaa authorization network test group radius local none
!
username D-Link password 0 starnet
username D-Link privilege 6
!
radius-server host 192.168.217.64
```



## 41.5 Configuring Accounting

The AAA accounting function enables you to trace the services and network resources used by the user. After the accounting function is enabled, the network access server or router sends the user's network accesses to the Radius security server by means of attribute pair. You may use some analysis software to analyze these data to implement the billing, audition and tracing function for the user's activities.

### 41.5.1 Accounting Types

Our product currently supports the following accounting types:

- Network Accounting

### 41.5.2 Network Accounting

The network accounting provides the accounting information about user session, including the packet number, bytes, IP address and username.

**Note**

The format of Radius accounting information varies with the Radius security server. The contents of the account records may also vary with our product version.

### 41.5.3 Preparations for Accounting

The following tasks must be completed before the AAA accounting is configured:

- Enable the AAA security server. For the details, see *AAA Overview*.
- Define the security protocol parameters. Our product supports the Radius security protocol. For details of the RADIUS, see *Configuring RADIUS*.

### 41.5.4 Configuring Accounting

To configure the AAA accounting function, execute the following command in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
<b>aaa new-model</b>	Turn on the AAA switch.
<b>radius-server host</b> <i>ip-address</i> [ <b>auth-port</b> <i>port</i> ] [ <b>acct-port</b> <i>port</i> ]	Configure the RADIUS server
<b>end</b>	Return to the privileged mode.



Command	Function
<b>show radius server</b>	Show the RADIUS server.
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
<b>aaa accounting network acct start-stop group radius</b>	Configure the AAA network accounting function.

**Note**

The keyword "start-stop" is used for the network access server to send the accounting information at the start and end of the network service to the security server.

### 41.5.5 Monitoring AAA users

To view the information of the current login users, run the following commands in the privileged user mode:

Command	Function
<b>show aaa user { id   all }</b>	View the information of the current AAA user.

### 41.5.6 Example of Configuring Accounting

Below is an example to use the Radius for accounting:

```
DES-7200# config
DES-7200(config)# aaa new-model
DES-7200(config)# radius-server host 192.168.217.64
DES-7200(config)# aaa accounting network acct start-stop group radius
DES-7200(config)# end
DES-7200# show running-config
!
aaa new-model
!
aaa accounting network acct start-stop group radius
!
username D-Link password 0 starnet
username D-Link privilege 6
!
radius-server host 192.168.217.64
```

**Note**

For the information on how to configure the accounting method list command, see the related command reference manual.



## 41.6 Configuring Failed Authentication Lockout of Login User

To prevent login user from decoding password, use command to limit the attempt times. If you has attempted more than the limited times, you will not login during the lockout.

In the global configuration mode, use the following command to configure login parameters:

Command	Function
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
<b>aaa new-model</b>	Turn on the AAA switch.
<b>aaa local authentication attempts</b> <b>&lt;1-2147483647&gt;</b>	Configure attempt times of login user.
<b>aaa local authentication</b> <b>lockout-time&lt;1-2147483647&gt;</b>	Configure lockout-time(hour) when the user has attempted more than the limited times.
<b>show aaa user lockout {all  </b> <b>user-name &lt;word&gt;}</b>	Display current lockout user list.
<b>clear aaa local user lockout {all  </b> <b>user-name &lt;word&gt;}</b>	Clear lockout user list.
<b>end</b>	



### Note

By default, login attempt times is 3 and the lockout time is restricted to be 15 hours.



# 42

## Configuring Radius

### 42.1 Radius Overview

---

The Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service (Radius) is a distributed client/server system that works with the AAA to perform authentication for the users who are attempting to make connection and prevent unauthorized access. In the implementation of our product, the RADIUS client runs on the router or the network access server (NAS) to send the authentication requests to the central RADIUS server. The central center includes all information of user authentication and network services.

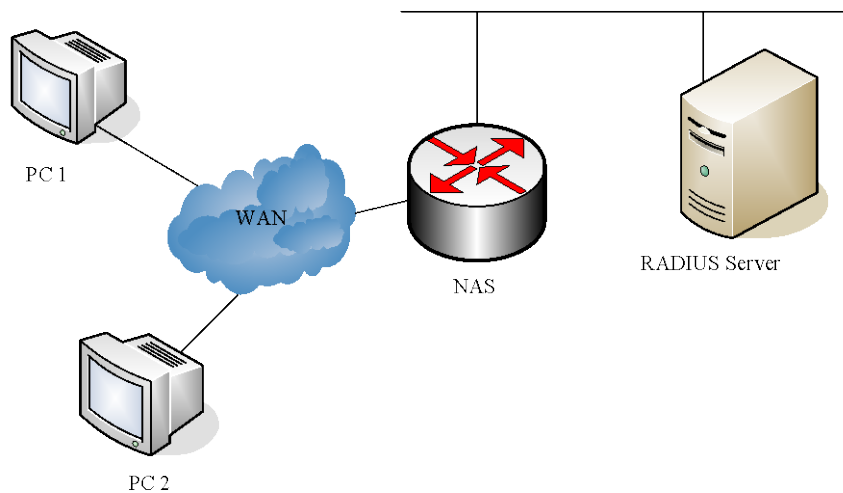
Since the RADIUS is a completely-open protocol, it has become a component and been installed in such systems as UNIX and WINDOWS 2000, so it is the security server most widely used for the time being.

The running process of the RADIUS is as follows:

- Prompt the user to enter username and password.
- The username and the encrypted password are sent to the RADIUS server via the network.
- The RADIUS returns one of the following responses:
  - The user authentication passes.
  - The user authentication fails and it prompts to reenter the username and password.
  - The RADIUS server sends the challenge request to gather more authentication information from the user.
- The user authorization information is included in the ACCEPT response.

Here is a typical RADIUS topology:



**Figure 42-1** Typical RADIUS network configuration

## 42.2 RADIUS Configuration Tasks

To configure Radius on the network device, perform the following tasks first:

- Enable AAA. For the details, see *AAA Overview*.
- Define the RADIUS authentication method list by using the **aaa authentication** command. For details about how to use "aaa authentication" to define the authentication method list, see *Configuring Authentication*.
- Apply the defined authentication list on the specific line; otherwise the default authentication list will be used for authentication. For more details, see *Configuring Authentication*.

After the configuration is completed, you may start to configure the RADIUS. The configuration of the RADIUS consists of the following parts:

- Configuring Radius Protocol Parameters
- Specify the RADIUS authentication.

### 42.2.1 Configuring Radius Protocol Parameters

Before configuring the Radius on the network device, the network communication shall operate perfectly on the Radius server. To configure RADIUS protocol parameters, run the following commands:

Command	Function
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
<b>radius-server host</b> <i>ip-address</i> [ <b>auth-port</b> <i>port</i> ] [ <b>acct-port</b> <i>port</i> ]	Configure the IP address or hostname of the remote Radius security server and specify the authentication port and accounting port.



Command	Function
<b>radius-server key</b> <i>string</i>	Configure the sharing password for the communication between the device and Radius server
<b>radius-server retransmit</b> <i>retries</i>	Specify the times of sending requests before the router confirms Radius invalid (3 by default)
<b>radius-server timeout</b> <i>seconds</i>	Specify the waiting time before the router resend request (2 s by default)
<b>radius-server deadtime</b> <i>minutes</i>	Specify the waiting time before the server is considered dead in case of no response to the request sent by the device (5 minutes by default).

**Caution**

To configure the RADIUS, it is necessary to configure the RADIUS Key. The sharing password on the network device and the sharing password on the Radius server must be the same.

### 42.2.2 Specifying the Radius Authentication

This means defining the authentication method list for the Radius after the Radius server is specified and the Radius authentication sharing password is defined. Since the RADIUS authentication is done via AAA, it is required to execute the **aaa authentication** command to define the authentication method list and specify the authentication method as RADIUS. For more details, see AAA Configurations.

### 42.2.3 Specify Radius Private Attribute Type

The contents in this section enable configuring freely the type of private attributes. The default configurations are as follows:

Default configurations of our product private attribute recognition:

ID	Function	TYPE
1	max down-rate	1
2	qos	2
3	user ip	3
4	vlan id	4
5	version to client	5
6	net ip	6
7	user name	7



ID	Function	TYPE
8	password	8
9	file-diractory	9
10	file-count	10
11	file-name-0	11
12	file-name-1	12
13	file-name-2	13
14	file-name-3	14
15	file-name-4	15
16	max up-rate	16
17	version to server	17
18	flux-max-high32	18
19	flux-max-low32	19
20	proxy-avoid	20
21	dailup-avoid	21
22	ip privilege	22
23	login privilege	42
24	limit to user number	50

Extended manufacturer ID default configuration:

ID	Function	TYPE
1	max down-rate	76
2	qos	77
3	user ip	3
4	vlan id	4
5	version to client	5
6	net ip	6
7	user name	7
8	password	8
9	file-diractory	9
10	file-count	10
11	file-name-0	11
12	file-name-1	12
13	file-name-2	13



ID	Function	TYPE
14	file-name-3	14
15	file-name-4	15
16	max up-rate	75
17	version to server	17
18	flux-max-high32	18
19	flux-max-low32	19
20	proxy-avoid	20
21	dailup-avoid	21
22	ip privilege	22
23	login privilege	42
24	limit to user number	50



Two functions cannot be configured with the same type number.

#### Note

Here is an example on how to configure the private type for network device:

```
RedGiant# show radius vendor-specific
```

```

id      vendor-specific      type-value
----  -
1      max down-rate              76
2      qos                       77
3      user ip                   3
4      vlan id                   4
5      version to client        5
6      net ip                   6
7      user name                 7
8      password                 8
9      file-diractory           9
10     file-count               10
11     file-name-0              11
12     file-name-1              12
13     file-name-2              13
14     file-name-3              14
15     file-name-4              15
16     max up-rate              75
17     version to server        17
18     flux-max-high32          18
19     flux-max-low32           19
20     proxy-avoid              20
21     dailup-avoid             21
22     ip privilege              22

```



```

23  login privilege      42
24  limit to user number 50
RedGiant# configure
RedGiant(config)# radius attribute 24 vendor-type 67
RedGiant(config)# show radius vendor-specific
id      vendor-specific      type-value
----  -
1      max down-rate         76
2      qos                   77
3      user ip                3
4      vlan id                4
5      version to client      5
6      net ip                 6
7      user name              7
8      password               8
9      file-diractory         9
10     file-count             10
11     file-name-0            11
12     file-name-1            12
13     file-name-2            13
14     file-name-3            14
15     file-name-4            15
16     max up-rate            75
17     version to server      17
18     flux-max-high32        18
19     flux-max-low32         19
20     proxy-avoid            20
21     dailup-avoid           21
22     ip privilege           22
23     login privilege        42
24     limit to user number   50
RedGiant(config)#
RedGiant(config)#

```

### 42.3 Monitoring RADIUS

To monitor the RADIUS, execute the following commands in the privileged user mode:

Command	Function
<b>debug radius event</b>	Turn on the Radius debug switch to view the Radius debug information

### 42.4 Radius Configuration Example

In a typical Radius network configuration diagram, the RADIUS server performs authentication for the visiting users, enables the accounting function for the visiting users and records the network usage of the users.



**Note**

The RADIUS server can be a component that comes with the Windows 2000/2003 server (IAS) or the UNIX system, or the special server software of some manufacturers.

Here is an example on how to configure the Radius for network device:

```
DES-7200# configure terminal
DES-7200(config)# aaa new-model
DES-7200(config)# radius-server host 192.168.12.219
auth-port 1645 acct-port 1646
DES-7200(config)# radius-server key aaa
DES-7200(config)# aaa authentication login test group radius
DES-7200(config)# end
DES-7200# show radius server
Server IP:      192.168.12.219
Accounting Port: 1646
Authen Port:    1645
Server State:    Ready
DES-7200#configure terminal
DES-7200(config)#line vty 0
DES-7200(config-line)#login authentication test
DES-7200(config-line)#end
DES-7200#show running-config
!
aaa new-model
!
!
aaa authentication login test group radius
!
username D-Link password 0 starnet
!
radius-server host 192.168.12.219 auth-port 1645 acct-port 1646
!
line con 0
line vty 0
login authentication test
line vty 1
```







# 43 TACACS+ Configuration

## 43.1 TACACS+ Overview

TACACS+ is a security protocol with more powerful function on the basis of TACACS(RFC 1492 Terminal Access Controller Access Control System). It implements AAA function of multi-users by Client-Server mode and TACACS server communication. It needs to configure the related contents of TACACS+ server before using TACACS+ server.

TACACS+ supports user authentication, authorization and accounting analysis. That is, we can use one server to authenticate, another one to authorize and the third one to account at the same time. Each server has its own user data information, being antagonistic to authenticate, authorize and account.

The table below shows TACACS+ packet format:

4	8	16	24	32 bit
Major	Minor	Packet type	Sequence no.	Flags
Session ID				
Length				

Figure 1

- Major Version — Major TACACS+ Version number;
- Minor Version — Minor TACACS+ Version number;
- Packet Type — the value may include:  
TAC\_PLUS\_AUTHEN: = 0x01 (Authenticatiacation);  
TAC\_PLUS\_AUTHOR:= 0x02 (Authorization);  
TAC\_PLUS\_ACCT:= 0x03 (Accounting).
- Sequence Number — packet sequence number in current session. The first TACACS+ packet sequence number in the session must be 1 and every packet sequence number followed is added by 1 gradually. Therefore, the client only sends the packet with odd sequence number, while TACACS+ Daemon only sends the packet with even sequence number.
- Flags — this field includes flag with various bitmap format. The Flag value indicates whether the packet is encrypted or not.



- Session ID — ID in the TACACS+ session.
- Length —body length of TACACS+ packet (excluding head). All the packets are transmitted in the network in the encrypted form.

## 43.2 TACACS+ Application

The typical application of TACACS+ is the login management control of terminal users. TACACS+ client sends user name and password to TACACS+ server for authentication. After authentication and authorization, you can login to the switch for operation, which is shown as figure 2:

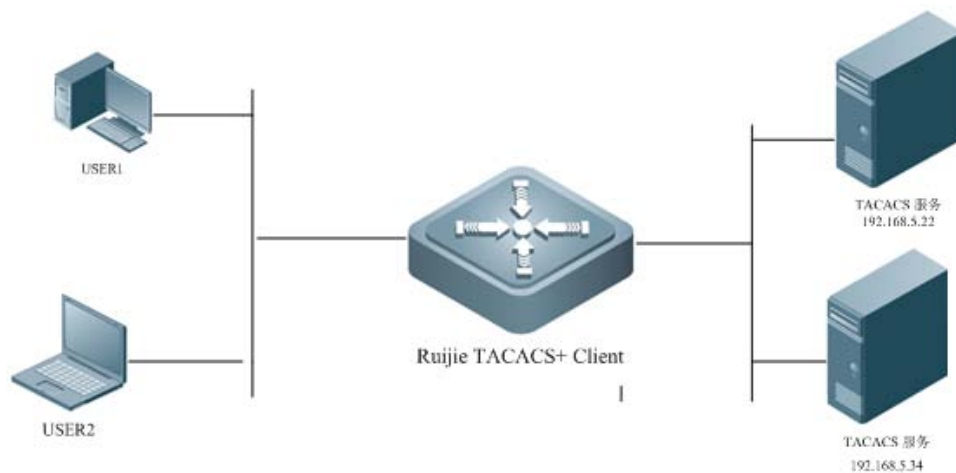


Figure 2

Figure 3 describes the interaction of the packets running in TACACS+ by login AAA:



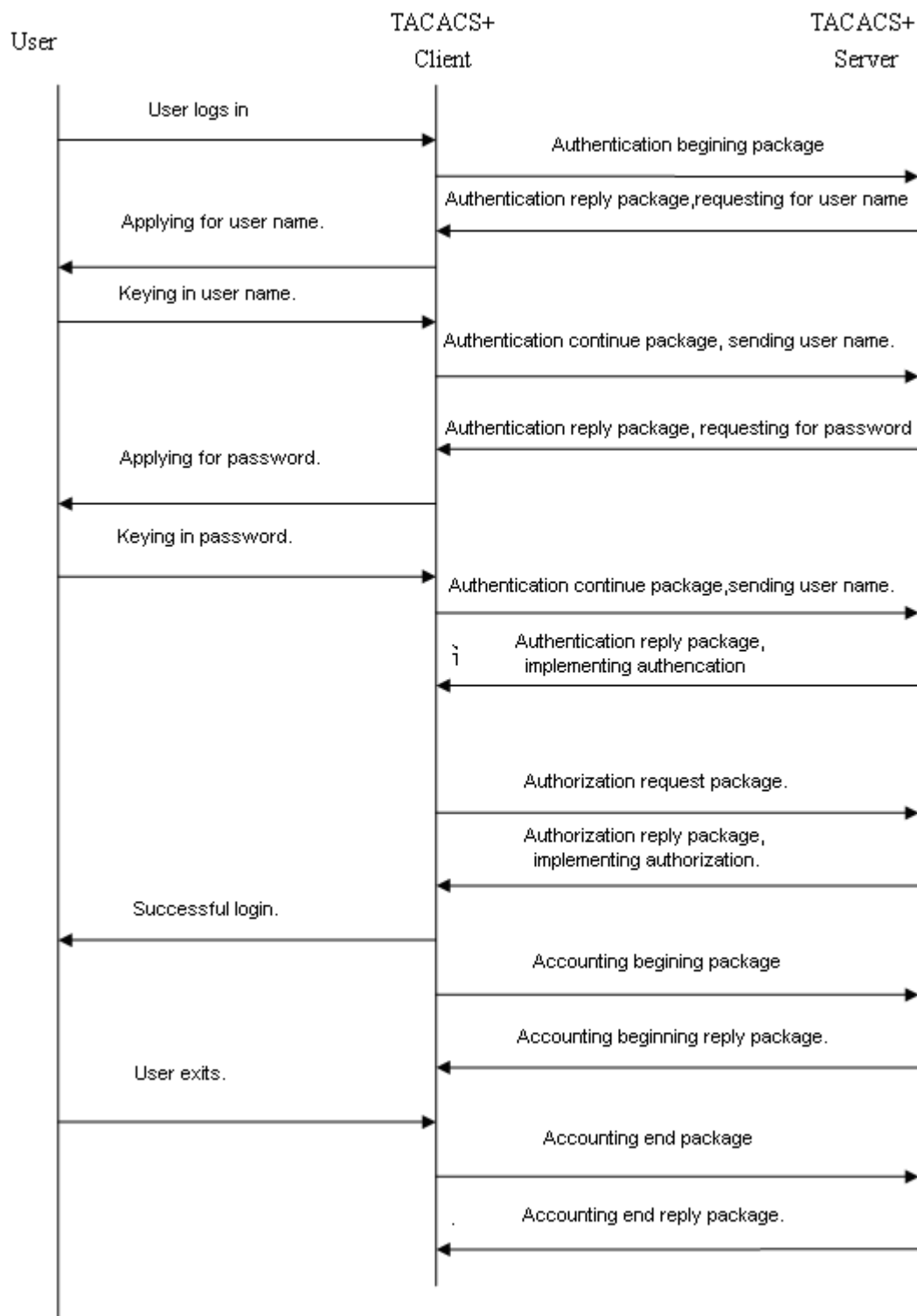


Figure 3

The whole process of basic information interaction is divided into three parts:

**1. Authentication process includes:**

- a) User requests for logging in to the switch;



- b) After receiving the request, TACACS+ Client sends the authentication beginning message to TACACS+ server;
- c) TACACS+ server sends the authentication reply message, requesting for the user name;
- d) TACACS+ Client asks user for user name.
- e) The user keys in the login user name;
- f) After receiving the user name, TACACS+ Client sends the authentication continue message including user name to TACACS+ server;
- g) TACACS+ server sends authentication reply message, requesting for login password;
- h) TACACS+ Client receives the login password;
- i) The user keys in the login password;
- j) After receiving the login password, TACACS+ Client sends authentication continue message including login password to TACACS+ server;
- k) TACACS+ server sends authentication reply message, indicating that user has been authenticated.

**2,Authorization process includes:**

- a) TACACS+ Client sends authorization request message to TACACS+ server.
- b) TACACS+ server sends authorization reply message, indicating that user has been authenticated;
- c) TACACS+ Client receives successful authorization reply message, outputting the configuration interface of switch to the user.

**3,Accounting process includes:**

- a) TACACS+ Client sends the accounting beginning message to TACACS+ server;
- b) TACACS+ server sends accounting beginning reply message, indicating that it has received the accounting beginning message;
- c) The user exits;
- d) TACACS+ Client sends the accounting end message to TACACS+ server;
- e) TACACS+ server sends accounting end reply message, indicating that it has received the accounting end message.

### **43.3 TACACS+ Configuration Task**

---

The following tasks must be executed before configuring TACACS+ on the network device:

- Use **aaa new-mode** to enable AAA. AAA must be enabled before using TACACS+; for the



information how to enable **aaa new-mode**, please refer to *AAA Overview*.

- Use **tacacs-server host** to configure one or multiple tacacs+ servers.
- Use **tacacs-server key** to specify server and NAS shared key.
- Use **tacacs-server timeout** to specify timeout time waiting for the server reply;
- Use **tacacs-server directed-request** to enable the function of supporting the user to specify authentication server.
- If you need to authenticate, use **aaa authentication** to define using TACACS+ identity authentication method list. For the detailed information, please refer to authentication configuration.
- If you need to authorize, use **aaa authorization** to define using TACACS+ authorization method list. For the detailed information, please refer to authorization configuration.
- If you need to account, use **aaa accounting** to define using TACACS+ accounting method list. For the detailed information, please refer to accounting configuration.
- You shall use the defined authentication list in the specified line, or you use the list by default.

### 43.3.1 Configuring TACACS+ Protocol Parameter

You need to ensure that the network communication of TACACS+ server runs well before configuring TACACS+ on the network device. Use the following commands to configure TACACS+ protocol parameters:

Command	Function
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
<b>aaa group server tacacs+ <i>group-name</i></b>	Configure TACACS+ group server, dividing different TACACS+ server into different groups.
<b>server <i>ip-address</i></b>	Configure the server addresses in TACACS+ group server.
<b>ip vrf forwarding <i>vrf-name</i></b>	Configure vrf name used in TACACS+ group server (this command exists on the device supporting VRF.)



<b>tacacs-server host</b> <i>ip-address</i> [ <b>port</b> <i>integer</i> ] [ <b>timeout</b> <i>integer</i> ] <b>key</b> <i>string</i> []	<p>Configure IP address of remote TACACS+ security server; configures different parameters on this server by different parameter combination:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>ip-address</b> :configures server address;</li> <li>● <b>port</b> <i>integer</i> [optional] :determines the port used by the server; By default , the port number is 49 with the range from 1 to 65535.</li> <li>● <b>timeout</b> <i>integer</i> [optional] :configures server timeout time; By default, the timeout time is 5s with the range from 1 to 1000s.</li> <li>● <b>key</b> <i>string</i> [optional]:configures the key shared with the server of corresponding ip.</li> </ul>
<b>tacacs-server key</b> <i>string</i>	<p>Configure the shared key used to communicate between the device and TACACS+ server. If the corresponding host does not set key by itself, you should set it globally.</p>
<b>tacacs-server timeout</b> <i>seconds</i>	<p>Specify the waiting time before the device resends request. By default, it is 5s. if the specified host does not set the specified timeout time, you should set the time globally.</p>
<b>tacacs-server directed-request</b> [ <b>restricted</b> ] [ <b>no-truncate</b> ]	<p>Configure the function of supporting the user specified authentication server. The default configuration is enabled.</p>
<b>ip</b> <b>tacacs</b> <b>source-interface</b> <i>interface</i>	<p>Specify to send tacacs+ request to the source IP used by the server. By default, it does not specify.</p>



### Caution

You must configure TACACS+ Key before configuring TACACS+. The shared passwords on the network device and TACACS+ server must be consistent.



## 43.4 Configuration Examples of Using TACACS+ to Authenticate, Authorize and Account

---

In the typical TACACS+ network configuration figure, TACACS+ server authenticates, authorizes and accounts the access users. The following shows the examples of how to configure TACACS+ to authenticate, authorize and account by login authentication, authorization and accounting.

### 43.4.1 Configuration Example of Using TACACS+ by Login Authentication

---

1. Enables aaa first:

```
DES-7200# configure terminal
DES-7200(config)# aaa new-model
```

2. Then configures tacacs+ server information:

```
DES-7200(config)# tacacs-server host 192.168.12.219
DES-7200(config)# tacacs-server key aaa
```

3. Configures authentication method of using tacacs+:

```
DES-7200(config)# aaa authentication login test group tacacs+
```

4. Applies the authentication method on the interface:

```
DES-7200(config)# line vty 0 4
DES-7200(config-line)# login authentication test
```

Through the above configuration, you implement to configure login tacacs+ authentication. The configuration is shown as follows;

```
DES-7200#show running-config
!
aaa new-model
!
aaa authentication login test group tacacs+
!
tacacs-server host 192.168.12.219
tacacs-server key aaa
!
line con 0
line vty 0
login authentication test
line vty 1 4
login authentication test
!
```



### 43.4.2 Configuration Example of Using TACACS+ by ENABLE Authentication

1. Enables aaa first:

```
DES-7200# configure terminal
DES-7200(config)# aaa new-model
```

2. Then configures tacacs+ server information:

```
DES-7200(config)# tacacs-server host 192.168.12.219
DES-7200(config)# tacacs-server host 192.168.12.218
DES-7200(config)# tacacs-server host 192.168.12.217
DES-7200(config)# tacacs-server key aaa
```

Configures tacacs+ server group, using a part of the servers in the server list:

```
DES-7200(config)#aaa group server tacacs+ tacgroup1
DES-7200(config-gs-tacacs)#server 192.168.12.219
DES-7200(config-gs-tacacs)#server 192.168.12.218
```

3. Configures authentication method of using tacgroup1:

```
DES-7200(config)# aaa authentication enable default group tacgroup1
```

Through the above configuration, you implement to configure enable authentication of some tacacs+ servers. The configuration is shown as follows;

```
DES-7200#show running-config
!
aaa new-model
!
!
aaa group server tacacs+ tacgroup1
server 192.168.12.219
server 192.168.12.218
!
aaa authentication enable default group tacgroup1
!
!
tacacs-server host 192.168.12.219
tacacs-server host 192.168.12.218
tacacs-server host 192.168.12.217
tacacs-server key aaa
!
line con 0
line vty 0
line vty 1 4
!
```



### 43.4.3 Configuration Example of Using TACACS+ by Login Authorization

---

1. Enables aaa first:

```
DES-7200# configure terminal
DES-7200(config)# aaa new-model
```

2. Then configures tacacs+ server information:

```
DES-7200(config)# tacacs-server host 192.168.12.219
DES-7200(config)# tacacs-server key aaa
```

3. Configures the authorization method of using tacacs+:

```
DES-7200(config)# aaa authorization exec test group tacacs+
```

4. Applies the authorization on the interface:

```
DES-7200(config)# line vty 0 4
DES-7200(config-line)#authorization exec test
```

Through the above configuration, you implement to configure to use tacacs+ by login authorization. The configuration is shown as follows:

```
DES-7200#show running-config
!
aaa new-model
!
!
aaa authorization exec test group tacacs+
!
tacacs-server host 192.168.12.219
tacacs-server key aaa
!
line con 0
line vty 0
authorization exec test
line vty 1 4
authorization exec test
!
```

### 43.4.4 Configuration Example of Using TACACS+ by Level 15 Command Audit

---

1. Enables aaa first:

```
DES-7200# configure terminal
```



```
DES-7200(config)# aaa new-model
```

**2. Then configures tacacs+ server information:**

```
DES-7200(config)# tacacs-server host 192.168.12.219
```

```
DES-7200(config)# tacacs-server key aaa
```

**3. Configures command audit method of using tacacs+:**

```
DES-7200(config)# aaa accounting commands 15 default group tacacs+
```

**4. Applies the authorization on the interface:**

```
DES-7200(config)# line vty 0 4
```

```
DES-7200(config-line)#accounting commands 15 default
```

Through the above configuration, you implement to configure enable authentication of some tacacs+ servers. The configuration is shown as follows;

```
DES-7200#show running-config
!
aaa new-model
!
!
aaa accounting commands 15 default group tacacs+
!
!
tacacs-server host 192.168.12.219
tacacs-server key aaa
!
line con 0
line vty 0
accounting commands 15 default
line vty 1 4
accounting commands 15 default
!
```



# 44

## SSH Terminal Service

### 44.1 About SSH

SSH is the shortened form of Secure Shell. The SSH connection functions like a Telnet connection, except that all transmissions based on the connection are encrypted. When the user logs onto the device via a network environment where security cannot be guaranteed, the SSH feature provides safe information guarantee and powerful authentication function to protect the devices from IP address fraud, plain password interception and other kinds of attacks.

### 44.2 SSH Support Algorithms

Support algorithm	SSH1	SSH2
Signature authentication algorithm	RSA	RSA, DSA
Key exchanging algorithm	RSA public key encryption based key exchanging algorithm	KEX_DH_GEX_SHA1 KEX_DH_GRP1_SHA1 KEX_DH_GRP14_SHA1
Encryption algorithm	DES, 3DES, Blowfish	DES, 3DES, AES-128, AES-192, AES-256
User authentication algorithm	User password based authentication method	User password based authentication method
Message authentication algorithm	Not supported	MD5, SHA1, SHA1-96, MD5-96
Compression algorithm	NONE (uncompressed)	NONE (uncompressed)

### 44.3 SSH Supports



#### Caution

The products of DES-7200 series support only the SSH server (compatible with the SSHv1 and SSHv2) but do not support the SSH client.



## 44.4 SSH Configuration

### 44.4.1 Default SSH Configurations

Item	Default value
SSH service end status	Off
SSH version	Compatible mode (supporting versions 1 and 2)
SSH user authentication timeout period	120s
SSH user re-authentication times	3

### 44.4.2 User Authentication Configuration

1. For the consideration of the SSH connection security, the login without authentication is forbidden. Therefore, in the login authentication of the users, the login authentication mode must have password configured (no-authentication login allowed for telnet).
2. The username and password entered every time must have lengths greater than zero. If the current authentication mode does not need the username, the username can be entered randomly but the entry length must be greater than zero.

### 44.4.3 Enabling SSH SERVER

The SSH SERVER is disabled by default. To enable the SSH Server, run the **enable service ssh-server** command in the global configuration mode while generating SSH key.

Command	Description
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
<b>Crypto key generate {rsa dsa}enable service ssh-server</b>	Enable SSH Server.
<b>crypto key generate {rsa dsa}</b>	Generate the key



To delete the key, use the **crypto key zeroize** command rather than the [no] **crypto key generate** command.



#### 44.4.4 Disabling SSH SERVER

When the SSH Server is enabled, if the public key on the server is deleted, the SSH Server is automatically closed. To delete the public key, run **no enable service ssh-server** in the global configuration mode to disable the SSH Server.

Command	Description
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode
<b>Crypto key Zeroize {rsa dsa}no enable service ssh-server</b>	Delete the key to disable SSH Server.

#### 44.4.5 Configuring SSH User Authentication Timeout

By default, the user authentication timeout period of the SSH SERVER is 120 seconds. Run the following commands to configure the SSH user authentication timeout period.

Command	Description
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the configuration mode
<b>ip ssh time-out <i>time</i></b>	Configure the SSH timeout period (1-120sec)
<b>no ip ssh time-out</b>	Restore the SSH default user authentication timeout period 120 seconds.

#### 44.4.6 Configuring SSH Re-authentication Times

This command is used to set the authentication attempts for SSH user requesting connections to prevent illegal actions such as malicious guesswork. The authentication attempts are 3 for the SSH Server by default. In other words, it allows the user to enter the username and password for three times to attempt the authentication. Run the following commands to configure the SSH re-authentication times:

Command	Description
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the configuration mode
<b>ip ssh authentication-retries <i>retry times</i></b>	Configure SSH re-authentication times (range 0-5)
<b>no ip ssh authentication-retries</b>	Restore the default SSH re-authentication times as 3.



#### Note

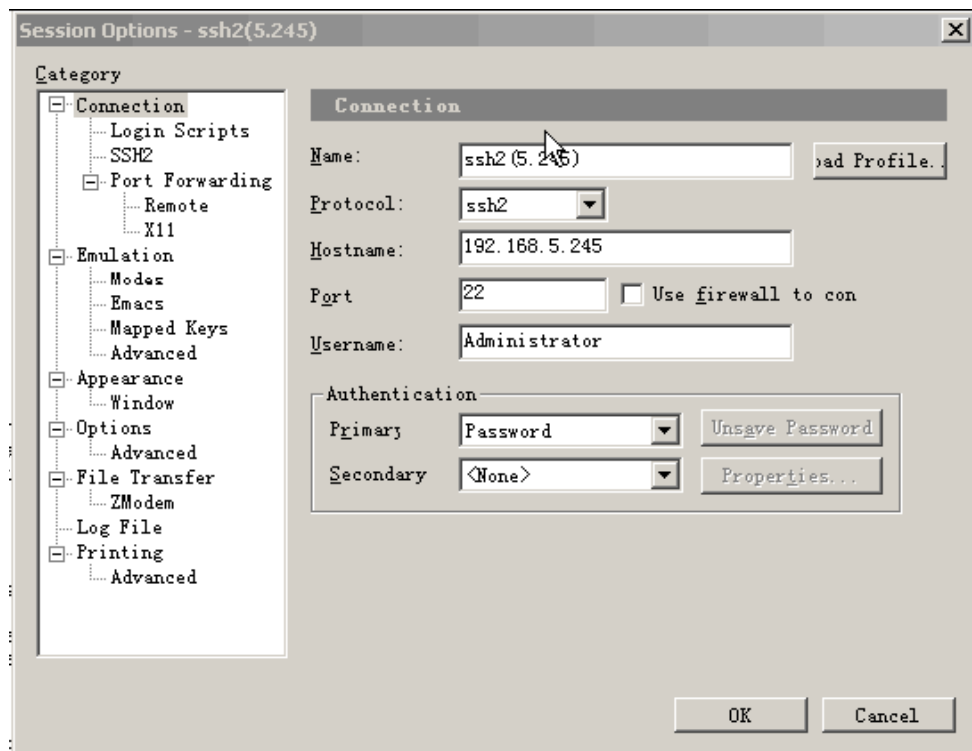
For details of the above commands, see *SSH Command Reference Manual*.



## 44.5 Using SSH for Device Management

You may use the SSH for device management by first enabling the SSH Server function that is disabled by default. Since the Telnet that comes with the Windows does not support SSH, third-party client software has to be used. Currently, the clients with sound forward compatibility include Putty, Linux and SecureCRT. With the client software SecureCRT as an example, the SSH client configuration is described as follows (see the UI below):

Figure 44-1

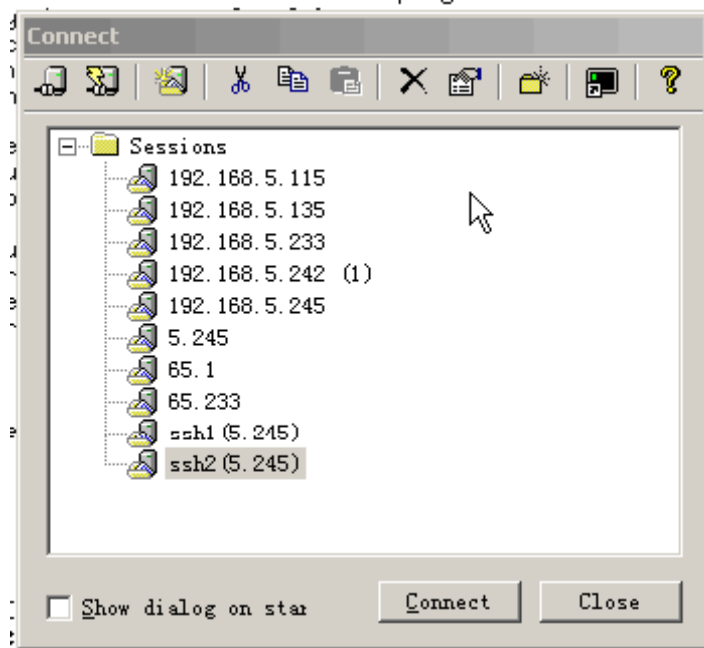


As shown in Figure 41-1, protocol 2 is used for login, so SSH2 is chosen in “Protocol”. “Hostname” indicates the IP address of the host that will log in, 192.168.5.245. Port 22 is the default number of the port for SSH listening. “Username” indicates the username, and does not take effect when the device only requires password. “Authentication” indicates the authentication mode, and the username/password authentication is supported here. The used password is the same as the Telnet password.

Click “OK” to pop up the following dialog:

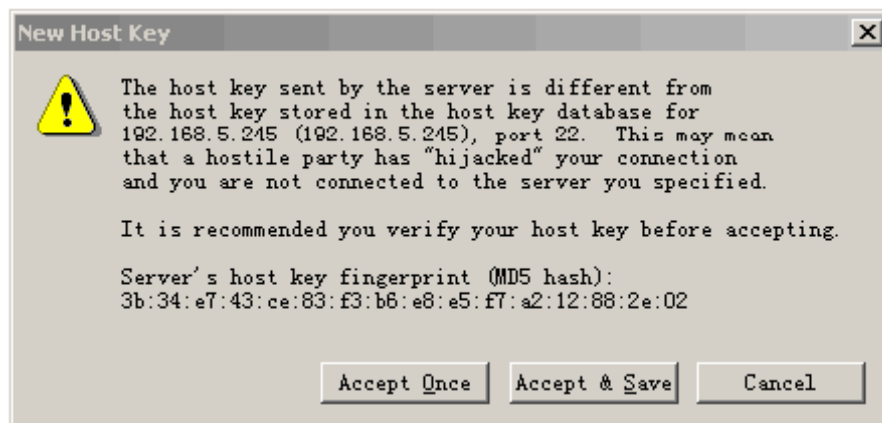


Figure 44-2



Click “Connect” to log into the host just configured, as shown below:

Figure 44-3

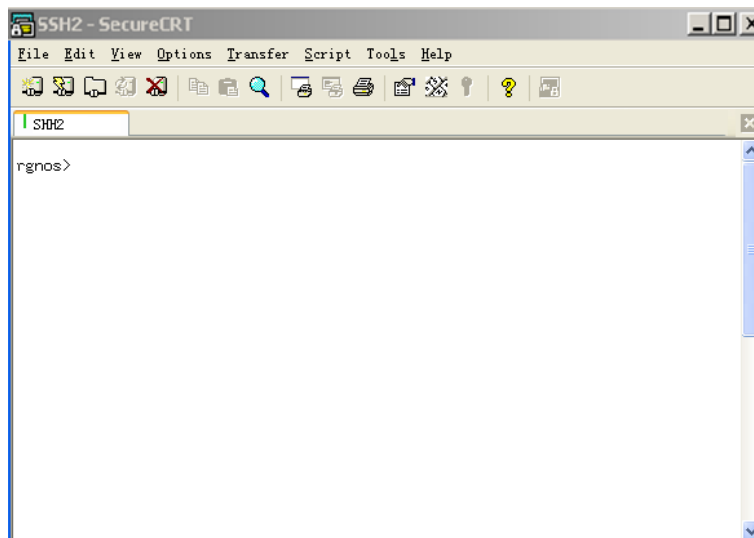


Ask the machine that is logging into the host 192.168.5.245 to see whether the key from the server end is received or not. Select “Accept & Save” or “Accept Once” to enter the password confirmation dialog box, as shown below:



**Figure 44-4**

Enter the Telnet login password to enter the UI that is the same as the Telnet. See the diagram below:

**Figure 44-5**



# 45

## CPU Protection Configuration

### 45.1 Overview

---

#### 45.1.1 Function of CPU Protect

---

Malicious attacks often occur in the network environment, and such attacks will overload our switches. Sometimes when the management packets in the network overload the switches, this may cause too high CPU utilization on the switch and abnormal operation of it.

For this reason, our L3 switches provide the CPP feature to reduce the CPU load of the switch and protect the normal processing capability of the switch. When a switching card is under attack, the CLI management interface for the card can still allow normal management operations, without too high CPU utilization. The management packets from other switching cards can be timely processed by the switch.

Our switches allow you to configure the CPP on the switching card or management card to adjust the appropriate throttles for the most detailed management on the part of the administrators.



#### Caution

The CPP (CPU Protect Policy) is a means to enhance switch security. With the CPP, the processor and channel bandwidth resource of the switch are protected to ensure the normal forwarding of the packets and normal running of the protocols.

#### 45.1.2 Operating Principles of CPU Protect

---

The packets to be sent to the CPU of the management board are classified according to their L2, L3 and L4 information into: ARP, BPDU, DHCP, IGMP, RIP, OSPF, PIM, GVRP, VRRP, TTL-1 IPv4 packets, IPv6 multicast packets, unknown ipv4 broadcast packets.

The CPU ports have eight priority queues. You can configure the queue for each type of packet and the hardware can automatically send the packets of the type to the specified queue according to your configuration.

The CPU port sorts the packet queue sequence by strict priority algorithm. With this algorithm, each queue has a different priority, where queue 7 has the highest priority, queue 6 a lower priority, and queue 0 the lowest priority. The packets of the high priority queue are always transmitted earlier than those in the low priority queue. Thus, you can map each type



of packet to a different priority queue according to its importance to ensure the most important packets are transmitted first.

The switch provides a protection method to control the bandwidth and priority for each type of packets sent to the CPU. You can configure the maximum rate and priority for each type of packet sent to the CPU port in packets per second (PPS).

## 45.2 Configuring CPU Protect

The following sections describe how to configure CPU Protect.

- CPU Protect Default value
- Configuring the Bandwidth for Each Type of Packet
- Configuring the Priority for Each Type of Packet

### 45.2.1 CPU Protect Default value

Each type of packet has the default maximum bandwidth of 1000pps, with the priority of 0.

The following lists the recommended factory settings of the maximum bandwidth and priority of each type of packet.

Type	Defaulted maximum bandwidth (pps)	Defaulted priority
TP-Guard	128	0
ARP	500	0
BPDU	128	6
DHCPS	128	0
DOT1X	128	0
GVRP	128	0
IPV6-MC	128	0
DVMRP	128	3
IGMP	128	3
OSPF	128	3
PIM	128	3
RERP	128	6
RIP	128	0
RLDP	128	6
VRRP	128	6
Unknown-IPMC	128	0
Err-TTL	128	0



Type	Defaulted maximum bandwidth (pps)	Defaulted priority
DHCP_RELAY_CLIENT	128	0
DHCP_RELAY_SERVER	128	0
DHCP_OPTION82	128	0
UDP_HELPER	128	0

Through executing the command `no cpu-protected type`, the maximum bandwidth and priority setting of the packet can be restored to defaulted value. The defaulted maximum bandwidth is 1000pps, priority is 0.

### 45.2.2 Configuring the Bandwidth for Each Type of Packet

In the configuration mode, configure the queue of each type of packet by performing the following steps:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>cpu-protect type {arp   bpdu   dhcp   ipv6mc   igmp   rip   ospf   vrrp   pim   err-ttl   unknown-ipmc   dvmrp} pps pps_vaule</b>	Set the queue for the packets in PPS, which is an integer.
DES-7200# <b>end</b>	Return to the privileged mode.

This example shows the profile configuration process:

```
DES-7200(config)#cpu-protect type bpdu pps 200
Set packet type bpdu pps 100.
```

### 45.2.3 Configuring the Priority for Each Type of Packet

In the configuration mode, configure the queue of each type of packet by performing the following steps:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>cpu-protec type {arp   bpdu   dhcp   ipv6mc   igmp   rip   ospf   vrrp   pim   err-ttl   unknown-ipmc} pri pri_vaule</b>	Set the queue for the packets in PPS, which is an integer.
DES-7200# <b>end</b>	Return to the privileged mode.

This example shows the profile configuration process:



```
DES-7200(config)# cpu-protect type bpdu pri 7
Set packet type bpdu priority 7.
```

## 45.3 Viewing CPU Protect Information

On the switch, it is possible to view the following information about the CPU Protect:

- View the statistics of the packets received by the CPU of the management board
- View the statistics of the packets received by the CPU of the line card
- View the statistics of the packets received of a specific type

### 45.3.1 Showing the Statistics of the Packets Received by the CPU of the Management Board

In the privileged mode, show the CPP information of the management board by using the following commands:

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>show cpu-protect mboard</b>	Show the statistics of the packets received by the CPU of the management board

The following example shows how to show the CPP information of the management board:

```
DES-7200#show cpu-protect mboard
```

Type	Pps	Total	Drop
arp	500	19	0
bpdu	200	24	0
dhcp	0	0	0
gvrp	0	0	0
ipv6-mc	0	0	0
dvmrp	0	0	0
igmp	0	0	0
ospf	0	0	0
pim	0	0	0
rip	0	0	0
vrrp	0	0	0
unknow-ipmc	0	0	0
err-ttl	0	0	0

### 45.3.2 Showing the Statistics of the Packets Received by the CPU of the Line Card

In the privileged mode, show the statistics of the packets received by the CPU of a specific line card by using the following commands:



Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>show cpu-protect slot</b> <i>slot_id</i>	Show the packets received by the CPU of a specific line card. <i>slot_id</i> : slot ID

The following example shows the CPU protection information of the line card in slot 2.

```
DES-7200(config)# show cpu-protect slot 2
```

Type	Pps	Total	Drop
arp	200	200	15
bpdu	200	8	0
dhcp	200	0	0
gvrp	200	0	0
ipv6-mc	200	0	0
dvmrp	200	0	0
igmp	200	0	0
ospf	200	0	0
pim	200	0	0
rip	200	0	0
vrrp	200	0	0
unknow-ipmc	200	0	0
err-ttl	20	3	0

### 45.3.3 Showing the Statistics of the Packets Received by a specific type

In the privileged mode, show the priority and bandwidth of each type of packet by using the following commands:

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>show cpu-protect type</b> <i>arp   bpdu   dhcp   ipv6mc   igmp   rip   ospf   vrrp   pim   ttl1   unknown-ipmc   dvmrp</i>	Show the statistics of the packets received by each type

The following example shows the statistics of the arp packets by using the **show cpu-protect type arp** command:

```
DES-7200(config)# show cpu-protect type arp
```

Slot	Type	Pps	Total	Drop
MainBoard	arp	200	15	0
Slot-2	arp	200	15	0



#### Caution

1. Packet speed restriction is measured by the software, so a slight number deviation of packets is normal.
2. The actual information printed may be different from the example.







# 46

## Anti-attack System Guard Configuration

### 46.1 Overview

---

It is known that many attacks of hackers and invasion of network virus start with scanning the hosts connecting to the network. The great amount of scanning packet consumes network bandwidth significantly and causes abnormal operation of the network communication.

For this reason, the layer 3 devices of DES-7200 provides the anti-scanning function to prevent the hacker scanning and the Worm.Blaster-like attacks, and reduce the CPU load of the layer 3 devices.

At present, two types of scanning attacks are detected:

1. The scanning of the change for the destination IP address is referred to as the scan dest ip attack. This scanning is the most serious threaten to the network for it consumes the network bandwidth and adds the load of the switches, so it becomes the primary means of most hacker attacks.
2. The destination IP address doesn't exist, while a large number of packet is sent continuously, which is referred to as the same dest ip attack. This attack is mainly designed to reduce the CPU load for the devices. For the layer 3 switches, if the destination IP address exists, the packet will be forwarded directly by the switching chip and doesn't occupy the CPU resource for the switches. If the destination IP address doesn't exist, the CPU of the switches will attempt to connect periodically. Furthermore, if there are a large number of such attacks, they will consume the CPU resource. Of course, the hazard of this attack is much weaker than the first one.

For the above two kinds of attacks, it is possible to adjust the corresponding attack throttle, attack host interval of time and more parameters on the interfaces of DES-7200's device to relieve the burden of the network or devices. The administrator can tune the administration configuration of the device according to the network conditions. If the configuration of each interface is identical, administrators can set a batch of ports by the **interface range** function.



## 46.2 Anti-attack System Guard Configuration

---

The anti-attack system guard is completed in the global mode of the router. It is required to enter into the global configuration mode first to make anti-attack system guard configuration.

### 46.2.1 IP anti-scanning configuration task list

---

- Enable the anti-attack system guard function of the interface
- Set the isolation period for illegal attacking IP
- Set the threshold to judge illegal attacking IP
- Set the maximum monitored IPs
- Set exceptional IPs free from monitoring
- Clear the isolation status of isolated IPs
- View Related Information of System Guard

### 46.2.2 Enabling the Anti-attack System Guard on the Interface

---

You can enable the system guard in the interface mode. The system guard only supports physical ports.

Command	Meaning
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
<b>interface</b> <i>interface-id</i>	Enter the configuration mode of this interface. Legal interfaces include physical interfaces.
<b>system-guard enable</b>	Enable the system guard function.
<b>end</b>	Return to the privileged mode.
<b>show system-guard</b>	Check the configuration entities.
<b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Save the configuration.

If you want to disable the system guard on this interface, use the **no system-guard** to set in the interface mode.



### 46.2.3 Setting the Isolation Period for Illegal IP Address

The isolated time of unauthorized attack IP is port-based. You may configure the isolated time of unauthorized attack user in the interface mode. This IP will restore the communication automatically after it is isolated for a period of time.

Command	Meaning
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
<b>interface</b> <i>interface-id</i>	Enter the configuration mode of this interface. Legal interfaces include physical interfaces.
<b>system-guard isolate-time</b> <i>seconds</i>	Configure the Isolated Time of Unauthorized Users. Its value range is 30s – 3600s, 120s by default.
<b>end</b>	Return to the privileged mode.
<b>show system-guard</b>	Check the configuration entities.
<b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Save the configuration.

If you want to restore the default value of the isolated time, use the **no system-guard isolation-time** to set in the interface mode.

In addition, when the unauthorized user is isolated, we will send a LOG record to the log system for the query of administrators. Furthermore, it will send another LOG notification when the unauthorized isolation is released.

### 46.2.4 Setting the Threshold to Judge Illegal IP Address

There are two attack methods that may affect the device performance.

1. Scan a batch of IP network segment.
2. The attack to some IP that doesn't exist by sending the IP packet continuously.

Our switches carry out above limits. Among a batch of messages sent by the users, once any one of above limits exceeds the packet limit controlled by the administrator, this user will be considered to be an unauthorized attacker and be isolated. The judging threshold of illegal attacking IP is also port-based. You may configure it in the interface mode.

Command	Meaning
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
<b>interface</b> <i>interface-id</i>	Enter the configuration mode of this interface. Legal interfaces include physical interfaces.



Command	Meaning
<b>system-guard</b> <b>same-dest-ip-attack-packets</b> <i>number</i>	The maximum threshold of the attack that some IP which doesn't exist sends the IP packet continuously. The value range is 1 – 2000 packets per second, 20 by default. Setting to 0 indicates this attack is not monitored.
<b>system-guard</b> <b>scan-dest-ip-attack-packets</b> <i>number</i>	Configure the maximum threshold of the attack for scanning a batch of IP network segment. The value range is 1 – 1000 packets per second, 10 by default. Setting to 0 indicates this attack is not monitored.
<b>end</b>	Return to the privileged mode.
<b>show system-guard</b>	Check the configuration entities.
<b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Save the configuration.

**Caution**

The less the threshold is set, the poorer the accuracy of the judging for the attacked host is. It is easy to isolate the normal host online incorrectly. It is recommended that administrators to configure corresponding threshold according to the security degree of the actual network environment.

Since the hardware of DES-7200 series L3 switch can filter excrescent attack packet automatically, the switch can not check the second attack generally. However, Sys-Guard function still takes effect. In the extreme circumstance like full capacity hardware, when the switch can not filter the attack packets automatically, Sys-Guard function will breakthrough the second defense line of the switch, preventing switch CPU from attacking.

If you want to restore the default value of corresponding parameters, use the **no system-guard same-dest-ip-attack-packets** and **no system-guard scan-dest-ip-attack-packets** to set in the interface mode.

#### 46.2.5 Setting the Maximum Monitored IPs

You can set the maximum quantity of the attacked hosts monitored by the devices. In general, this quantity should be maintained as the quantity of the actual operated hosts divided by 20. However, if you detect that the isolated hosts reach or approach to the maximum quantity of the monitored hosts, the quantity of the monitored hosts can be enlarged to meet the requirement for better system guard.

You can set the maximum quantity of the attacked host by the following steps:

Command	Meaning
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.



Command	Meaning
<b>system-guard detect-maxnum</b> <i>number</i>	Set the maximum number of monitored hosts. This value is based on line card. Its value range is 1-500, 100 by default.
<b>end</b>	Return to the privileged mode.
<b>show system-guard</b>	Check the configuration entities.
<b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Save the configuration.

**Caution**

If you change the quantity of the monitored hosts to be less than original quantity, it will clear the data of current monitored host. It may display the "chip resource full" in the isolate reason for the switch has isolated many users, which causes the hardware chip resource of the switch is full (This quantity is about 100-120 IP addresses is isolated for each port according to the actual switch operation and the ACL setting). However these users are not isolated actually, so it is necessary for administrators to take other measures to process these attackers.

If you want to restore the default value of the maximum quantity for the monitored hosts, use the "**no system-guard detect-maxnum**" in the global configuration mode.

#### 46.2.6 Setting the Exceptional IP Addresses Free from Monitoring

You may set the exceptional IPs that is out of the monitoring. Packets that meet the exceptional IPs are allowed to be sent to the CPU.

Command	Meaning
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
<b>system-guard exception-ip</b> ip mask	Add the exceptional IP mask for anti-attack function. Up to 255 exceptional IP entries are supported.
<b>end</b>	Return to the privileged mode.
<b>show system-guard exception-ip</b>	Show all exceptional IP entries.
<b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Save the configuration.

In the global configuration mode, the **no** option of this command deletes an exceptional IP entry. The **no** and **all-eip** options of this command will delete all exceptional IP entries.

For example, to delete all exceptional IPs:

```
DES-7200(config)# no system-guard exception-ip all-eip
```



Or to delete a single exceptional IP:

```
DES-7200(config)# no system-guard exception-ip 192.168.5.145 255.255.255.0/32
```



For the IP isolated, it will be isolated before they are aged even if it is configured as an exceptional IP. To allow the IP messages to be sent to the CPU, you may execute the **clear system-guard** command to cancel the isolation of the IP.

### 46.2.7 Clearing the Isolation Status of Isolated IP Addresses

The user isolated will automatically recover after a period of isolation. To clear the user manually, execute the following command in the privileged mode:

Command	Meaning
<b>clear system-guard</b> [ <i>interface interface-id</i> ] [ <i>ip-address ip-address</i> ]]	Clear Isolated Users.  Where, “ <b>clear system-guard</b> ” indicates clearing all isolated users;  “ <b>clear system-guard interface interface-id</b> ” indicates clearing all users under that port;  “ <b>clear system-guard interface interface-id ip-address ip-address</b> ” indicates clearing the specified IP user under the interface.

### 46.2.8 View Related Information of System Guard

#### 46.2.8.1 Viewing system guard information

Use **show system-guard** to view the configuration parameters of the system guard:

Command	Meaning
<b>show system-guard</b> [ <i>interface interface-id</i> ]	View the configuration parameter of the system guard.

Let's consider an example:

```
DES-7200# show system-guard
detect-maxnum number   : 100  ----- The maximum quantity of the hosts monitored by the
device
isolated host number    : 11   ----- The quantity of the hosts isolated by the device
interface state isolate time same-attack-pkts scan-attack-pkts
-----
Fa 0/1   ENABLE    120           20           10
Fa 0/2   DISABLE   110           21           11
```



.....

```
DES-7200# show system-guard interface Fa 0/1
```

```
detect-maxnum number : 100 ----- The maximum quantity of the hosts monitored by the
device
```

```
isolated host number : 11 ----- The quantity of the hosts isolated by the device
```

```
intefacestate solate time ame-attack-pkts scan-attack-pkts
```

```
-----
```

```
Fa 0/1 ENABLE 120 20 10
```

#### 46.2.8.2 Checking the information of isolated IPs for system guard

Command	Meaning
<b>show system-guard isolate-ip</b> [interface <i>interface-id</i> ]	Check the information of isolated IPs of the ports for anti-scanning system guard

```
DES-7200# show system-guard isolated-ip
```

```
interface ip-address isolate reason remain-time(second)
```

```
-----
```

```
Fa 0/1 192.168.5.119 scan ip attack 110
```

```
Fa 0/1 192.168.5.109 same ip attack 61
```

Above column indicates respectively the port on which the isolated IP address displays, the isolated IP address, the isolated reason and the remaining isolated time.

#### 46.2.8.3 Viewing the IP address monitored

Command	Meaning
<b>show system-guard detect-ip</b> [interface <i>interface-id</i> ]	View the IP address that is being monitored.

```
DES-7200# show system-guard detect-ip
```

```
interface ip-address ame ip attack packets scan ip attack packets
```

```
-----
```

```
Fa 0/1 192.168.5.118 0 8
```

```
Fa 0/1 192.168.5.108 12 2
```

#### 46.2.8.4 Show exceptional IP addresses s free from monitoring

To show the exceptional IPs that allow device access in the anti-attack function:

Command	Meaning
<b>show system-guard exception-ip</b>	Check all exceptional IPs.



```
DES-7200# show system-guard exception-ip
Exception IP Address      Exception Mask
-----
192.168.5.145             255.255.255.0
192.168.4.11              255.255.255.0
```



# 47

## Dynamic ARP Inspection Configuration

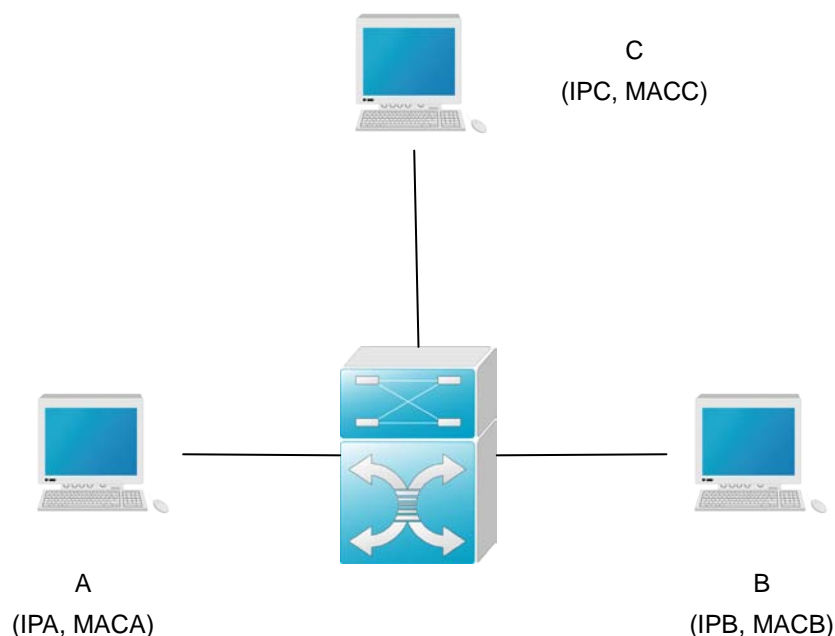
### 47.1 Understanding DAI

DAI, an acronym of Dynamic ARP Inspection, refers to validity inspection of received ARP packets. Illegal ARP packets will be discarded.

#### 47.1.1 Understanding ARP Spoofing Attack

ARP itself does not check the validity of incoming ARP packets, a drawback of ARP. In this way, attackers can launch ARP spoofing attacks easily by exploiting the drawback of the protocol. The most typical one is the man in the middle attack, which is described as follows:

Figure 47-1



As shown in the diagram, devices A, B and C are connected to DES-7200 series device and located in the same subnet. Their IP and MAC addresses are respectively represented by (IPA, MACA), (IPB, MACB) and (IPC, MACC). When device A needs to communicate with device B in the network layer, device A broadcasts an ARP request in the subnet to query



the MAC value of device B. Upon receiving this ARP request packet, device B updates its ARP buffer using IPA and MACA, and sends an ARP response. Upon receiving this response, device A updates its ARP buffer using IPB and MACB.

With this model, device C will cause the corresponding relationship of ARP entries in device A and device B incorrect. The policy is to broadcast ARP response to the network continuously. The IP address in this response is IPA/IPB, and the MAC address is MACC. Then, ARP entries (IPB and MACC) will exist in device A, and ARP entries (IPA and MACC) exist in device B. Communication between device A and device B is changed to communication with device C, which is unknown to devices A and B. Device C acts as an intermediary and it just modifies the received packets appropriately and forwards to another device. This is the well-known man in the middle attack.

### 47.1.2 Understanding DAI and ARP Spoofing Attacks

---

DAI ensures that only legal ARP packets are forwarded by the device. It mainly performs the following operations:

- Intercept all the ARP request and response packets at the untrusted port that corresponds to VLAN with the DAI inspection function enabled.
- Check the validity of the intercepted ARP packets according to the setting of DHCP database before further processing.
- Release the packets that do not pass the inspection.
- Appropriately process the packets that pass the inspection and send them to the destinations.

According to the DHCP snooping binding database, whether ARP packets is valid or not can be checked . For details, refer to *DHCP Snooping Configuration*.

### 47.1.3 Understanding DAI Global Switch

---

Generally, the packets are forwarded by hardware, while the DAI function must be implemented by software. Therefore, for ARP packets:

- When the DAI global switch is turned on, all the ARP packets are processed by software, and cannot be forwarded by hardware.
- When the DAI global switch is turned off, the hardware, instead of the software, forwards ARP packets within VLAN, and DAI inspection is not performed on the ARP packets sent to the local system.

Note that the global switch only determines whether to check the incoming and outgoing ARP packets.

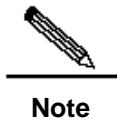
For specific configuration commands, refer to *ip arp inspection*.



### 47.1.4 Interface Trust Status and Network Security

ARP packets are checked according to the trust status of each port on the device. DAI check is ignored for the packets that are received through trust ports and are considered as legal ARP packets. DAI check will be performed strictly for the ARP packets that are received through untrust ports.

In a typical network configuration, layer 2 port connected to the network device should be set as a trust port, and layer 2 port connected to the host device should be set as an untrust port.



Incorrectly configuring a layer 2 port as an untrusted port may affect normal communication of the network.

For specific configuration commands, refer to *ip arp inspection trust*, *show ip arp inspection interface*.

## 47.2 Configuring DAI

**DAI** is an **ARP**-based security filtering technology. A series of filtering policies are configured, so that validity of ARP packets that pass the device is checked more effectively.

To use the functions of DAI, selectively perform the following tasks:

- Enabling Global DAI Function (required)
- Enabling DAI Packet Check Function for Specified VLAN (required)
- Set Trust Status of Port (optional)
- Set Maximum Receiving Rate of ARP Packets for a Port (optional)
- Related Configuration of DHCP Snooping Database (optional)

### 47.2.1 Enabling Global DAI Function

This feature is disabled by default.

DAI-related security check will be performed against ARP packets only when the global DAI function is enabled.

If this global switch is enabled, the words **ip arp inspection** can be seen using **show running-config**.

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>ip arp inspection</b>	Enable the global DAI function
DES-7200(config)# <b>no ip arp inspection</b>	Disable the global DAI function



### 47.2.2 Enabling DAI Packet Check Function for Specified VLAN

By default, the DAI packet check function is disabled for all VLANs.

If no DAI packet check function has enabled VLAN vid, DAI-related security check will be skipped for the ARP packets with vlan-id = vid (ARP packet rate restriction is not skipped).

**Show ip arp inspection vlan** can be used to check whether the DAI packet check function has been enabled for all VLANs.

To configure the DAI packet check function for VLAN, execute the following commands in the interface configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>ip arp inspection vlan</b> <i>vlan-id</i>	Turn on the DAI packet check function switch for VLAN <i>vlan-id</i>
DES-7200(config)# <b>no ip arp inspection vlan</b> [ <i>vlan-id</i> ]	Turn off the DAI packet check function switch for VLAN <i>vlan-id</i> Disable the DAI packet check function for all VLANs if <i>vlan-id</i> is ignored

### 47.2.3 Setting the Trust Status of Port

This command is used in the layer 2 interface configuration mode, and this layer 2 interface is a member port of SVI.

All the layer 2 ports are untrusted by default.

If the port is trusted, ARP packets will not be check further. Otherwise, the validity of the current ARP packet will be checked using information in the DHCP snooping database.

To set the trust status of a port, execute the following commands in the interface configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>ip arp inspection trust</b>	Set the port as a trust port
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>no ip arp inspection trust</b>	Set the port as an untrusted port

### 47.2.4 Related Configuration of DHCP Snooping Database

Refer to *DHCP Snooping Configuration*.



If DHCP Snooping database is not configured, all the ARP packets pass inspection.

## 47.3 Showing DAI Configuration

### 47.3.1 Showing Whether DAI Function Is Enabled for VLAN

To show the enabling status of VLAN, execute the following command in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>show ip arp inspection vlan</b>	Show the enabling status of each VLAN

### 47.3.2 Showing DAI Configuration Status of Each Layer 2 Interface

To show the DAI configuration status of each layer 2 interface, execute the following command in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>show ip arp inspection interface</b>	Show the DAI configuration of each layer 2 interface (including trust status and rate restriction)







# 48

## IP Source Guard Configuration

### 48.1 Brief Introduction of IP Source Guard

#### 48.1.1 Understanding DHCP

In the typical DHCP-enabled network, DHCP server is responsible for managing and allocating the addresses. If the host wants to use the network resources, it must apply for the legal network address from DHCP server. Only the client which has obtained the legal address can use the network normally.

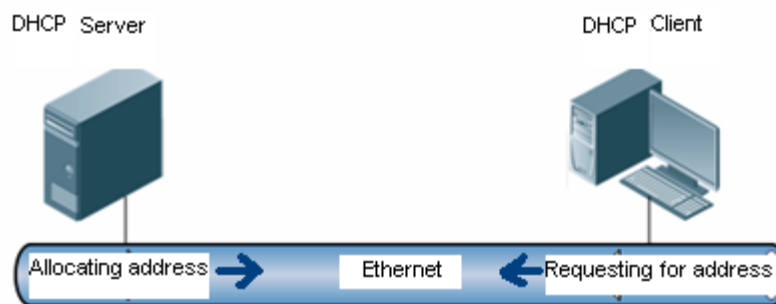


Figure 1 Normal DHCP Address Allocation

However, it can not guarantee the effective management of the network address resources and the security of address management, if you only depend on server/client mode. The traditional DHCP mode is required to have higher security characters because of the illegal packet attack from client and various feigned servers in the network.

DHCP Snooping solves the problem. Most of the security problems of the traditional DHCP mode can be solved by enabling DHCP Snooping on the device connecting DHCP server with client. DHCP Snooping divides the network into two parts: client network ( untrusted network) checks the security of the request from the client; server network (trusted network) forwards the request received from legal client to the configured trusted server network which allocates the address management. In that way, DHCP Snooping solves some typical security problems of traditional DHCP mode.



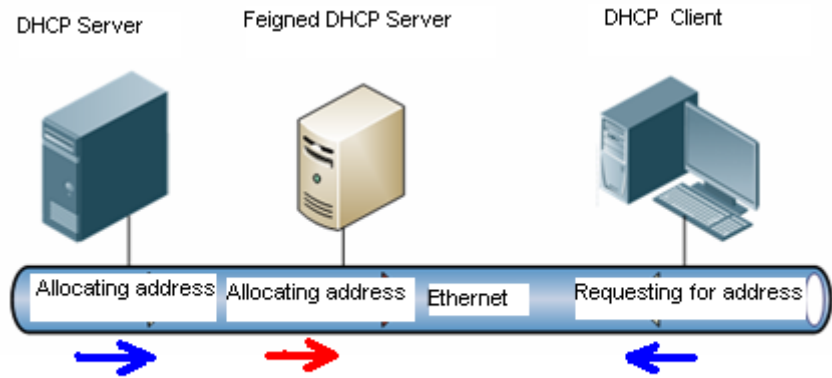


Figure 2 Network with feigned DHCP server

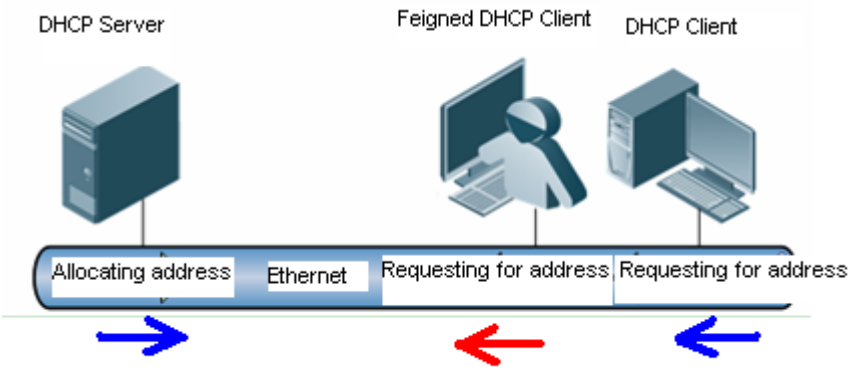
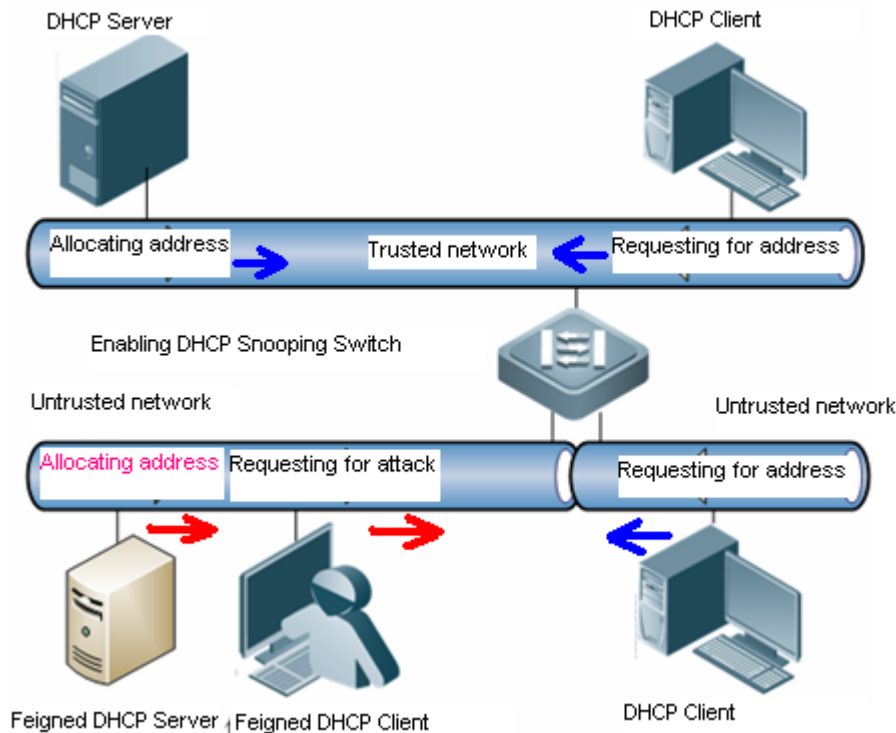


Figure 3 Network with feigned DHCP client attack





**Figure 4 Network protected by DHCP Snooping**

Although DHCP Snooping has filtered the attacks from client to the maximum and removed the feigned servers, it can not effectively limit non-DHCP client in the client network for it can not detect the client with private IP, which is unacceptable in DHCP-enabled network application. You can enable IP Source Guard on the device connecting server with client to prevent the client with private IP in DHCP network. DHCP Snooping-based IP Source Guard ensures that DHCP client can use the network normally.

### **48.1.2 Understanding IP Source Guard**

IP Source Guard maintains a binding database of IP source address. IP Source Guard is able to filter the packets based on the source IP and source MAC on the corresponding interface, which ensures that the hosts in the IP source address binding database can use the network normally.

IP source address binding database determines the effective security control of IP Source Guard. IP Source Guard will bind the legal users in DHCP Snooping binding database and synchronize them with those that in the IP source address binding database of IP Source Guard. Then, IP Source Guard can enable DHCP Snooping and filter the client restrictly.

By default, the port will filter all non-DHCP IP packets when enabling IP Source Guard. Only when the client obtains the legal IP from serve by DHCP or the administrator sets static IP source address binding, can the port allow the IP packet matching with this client to pass.

IP Source Guard supports MAC-based or IP-based filtering. If you enable MAC-based filtering, IP Source Guard will detect MAC+IP of all packets and only allow those packets



whose users are in IP address binding list to pass. But if you enable IP-based filtering, IP Source Guard will detect Source IP address of the packet.

The related filtering functions of IP Source Guard are implemented based on the hardware. You can understand IP Source Guard filtering rule on the interface as port-based ACL which can be changed dynamically.

### 48.1.3 Other Precautions of Configuring IP Source Guard

The application of IP Source Guard is combined with DHCP Snooping. That is to say, port-based IP Source Guard only takes effect on untrusted port within DHCP Snooping control range.

## 48.2 IP Source Guard Configuration

### 48.2.1 Configuring IP Source Guard on the Interface

By default, IP Source Guard on the interface is disabled and all the users connecting to the interface can use the network. After enabling IP Source Guard on the interface, it will filter the client connecting to the interface according to the IP source address binding database.

Command	Description
DES-7200(config)# <b>interface interface</b>	Enter the interface configuration mode.
DES-7200(config)# <b>[no] ip verify source</b> <i>[port-security]</i>	Enable IP Source Guard on the interface. Use port-security to set MAC-based filtering.

The following example shows how to enable IP Source Guard on interface1:

```
DES-7200(config)# interface FastEthernet 0/1
DES-7200(config-if)# ip verify source
DES-7200(config-if)# end
```



#### Caution

The application of IP Source Guard is combined with DHCP Snooping. That is to say, port-based IP Source Guard only takes effect on untrusted port within DHCP Snooping control range.



## 48.2.2 Configuring Static IP Source Address Binding User

In some application environment, users on some ports hope to use IP statically, which can be implemented by adding static user information to IP source address binding database.

Command	Description
DES-7200# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
DES-7200(config)# <b>[no] ip source binding mac-addresses vlan <i>vlan_id</i> ip-address interface <i>interface-id</i></b>	Configure users of static IP source address binding to database.

The following example shows how to add a static user to port 9 of the device:

```
DES-7200# configure terminal
DES-7200(config)# ip source binding 00d0.f801.0101 vlan 1 192.168.4.243 interface
FastEthernet 0/9
```

## 48.3 Displaying IP Source Guard Configuration

### 48.3.1 Displaying IP Source Guard Filtering Entry

Use this command to show IP Source Guard filtering entry.

Command	Description
DES-7200# <b>show ip verify source [interface <i>interface</i>]</b>	Show IP Source Guard filtering entry.

For example:

```
DES-7200# show ip verify source
Interface  Filter-type  Filter-mode  Ip-address  Mac-address  VLAN
-----
FastEthernet  0/1    ip    active    192.168.4.243    00d0.f801.0101  1
```



### 48.3.2 Displaying the Information of IP Source Address Binding Database

Use this command to show the related information of IP source address database.

Command	Description
DES-7200# <b>show ip source binding</b>  [ <i>ip-address</i> ] [ <i>mac-address</i> ] [ <i>dhcp-snooping</i> ] [ <i>static</i> ] [ <b>vlan</b> <i>vlan-id</i> ] [ <b>interface</b> <i>interface-id</i> ]	View IP source address binding database.

For example:

```
DES-7200# sh ip source binding
MacAddress   IpAddress   Lease(sec)  Type   VLAN
Interface
-----
00d0.f801.0101 192.168.4.243 infinite   static   1
FastEthernet 0/1
Total number of bindings: 1
```



# 49

## Access Control List

### 49.1 Overview

---

As part of the our product security solution, DES-7200 SERIES uses access control lists to provide a powerful data flow filtering function. At present, our product supports the following access lists:

- Standard IP access control list
- Extended IP access control list
- MAC extended access control list
- Expert extended access control list
- IPV6 extended access control list

Depending on the conditions of networks, you can choose different access control lists to control data flows. You can select different ACLs for the control of data flows according to the actual network conditions. The source port check in the IGMP Snooping needs the masks. For the detailed definition of masks, see *ACL Configuration*. The applications of address binding, source port check, and ACL share the masks. The total number of available masks depends on different products.

The IGMP Snooping source port check needs to use filtering domain (Masks). For detailed definition of filtering domain masks, please see the chapter “*Configuration of Security Access Control Lists*”. The three applications of the address binding, source port check and ACL share the same filtering domain masks. The total number of available masks depends on different products.

#### 49.1.1 Access Control List Introduction

---

ACLs is the shortened form of Access Control Lists, or Access Lists. It is also popularly called firewall, or packet filtering in some documentation. ACLs controls the messages on the device interface by defining some rules: Permit or Deny. According to usage ranges, they can be divided into ACLs and QoS ACLs.

By filtering the data streams, you can restrict the communication data types in the network and restrict the users of the network and the device they can use. When data streams pass the switch, ACLs classify and filter them, that is, check the data streams input from the specified interface and determine whether to permit or deny them according to the matching conditions.



To sum up, the security ACLs is used to control which dataflow is allowed to pass through the network device. The QoS policy performs priority classification and processing for the dataflow.

ACLs consist of a series of entries, known as Access Control Entry (ACE). Each entry specifies its matching condition and behavior.

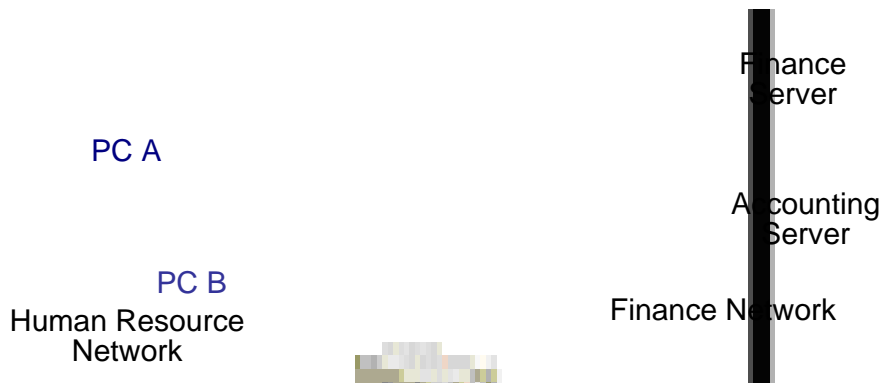
Access list rules can be about the source addresses, destination addresses, upper layer protocols, time-ranges or other information of data flows.

### 49.1.2 Why to Configure Access Lists

There are many reasons why we need configure access lists. Some of them are as follows:

- Restrict route updating: Control where to send and receive the route updating information.
- Restrict network access: To ensure network security, by defining rules, make users unable to access some services. (When a user only need access the WWW and E-mail services, then other services like TELNET are disabled). Or, allow users to access services only during a given period or only allow some hosts to access networks. Figure 45-1 is a case. In the case, only host A is allowed to access Finance Network, while Host B is disallowed to do so. See Figure 45-1.

**Figure 49-1** Using Access List to Control Network Access



### 49.1.3 When to Configure Access Lists

Depending on your requirements, you can select the basic access list or dynamic access list. In general, the basic access list can meet the security requirement. However, experienced hackers may use some software spoof source address and cheat the devices so as to gain accesses. Before the user can access the network, the dynamic access list requires the pass of authentication so that the hackers are difficult to invade the network. So, in some sensitive areas the dynamic access list can be used to ensure the network security.



**Note**

A inherent problem of all access lists is electric spoofing, the behavior of providing spoof source addresses to deceive switches. Even you use the dynamic list, a spoofing problem occurs. During the valid access period of an authenticated user, a hacker may use a counterfeit user address and accesses the network. There are two methods to resolve the problem. One method is to set free time for a user to access the network as little as possible, making it hard for a hacker to attack the network. Another method is to use the IPSEC encryption protocol to encrypt network data, ensuring that all the data entering switches are encrypted.

Access lists are usually configured in the following locations of network devices:

- Devices between the inside network and outside network (such as the Internet)
- Devices at the borders of two parts in a network
- Devices on the access control port

The execution of the ACL statements must follow the order in the table strictly. Starting from the first statement, once the header of a packet matches a conditional judge statement in the table, the sequential statements are ignored.

#### 49.1.4 Input/Output ACL, Filtering Domain Template and Rule

When a device interface receives a message, the input ACL checks whether the message matches an ACE of the ACL input on the interface. When a device interface is ready to output a message, the output ACL checks whether the message matches an ACE of the ACL output on the interface.

When detailed filtering rules are formulated, all or some of the above eight items may be used. As long as the message matches one ACE, the ACL processes the message as the ACE defined (permit or deny). The ACE of an ACL identifies Ethernet messages according to some fields of Ethernet messages. The fields include the following:

**Layer-2 fields:**

- 48-bit source MAC address (all the 48 bits must be declared)
- 48-bit destination MAC address (all the 48 bits must be declared)
- 16-bit layer-2 type field

**Layer 3 fields:**

- Source IP address field (you can specify all the 32 bits of the IP address, or specify a type of streams of the defined subnet)
- Destination IP address field (you can specify all the 32 bits of the IP address, or specify a type of streams of the defined subnet)



- Protocol type fields

#### Layer-4 fields:

- You can specify one UDP source port, destination port, or both
- You can specify one UDP source port, destination port, or both

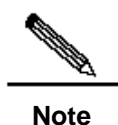
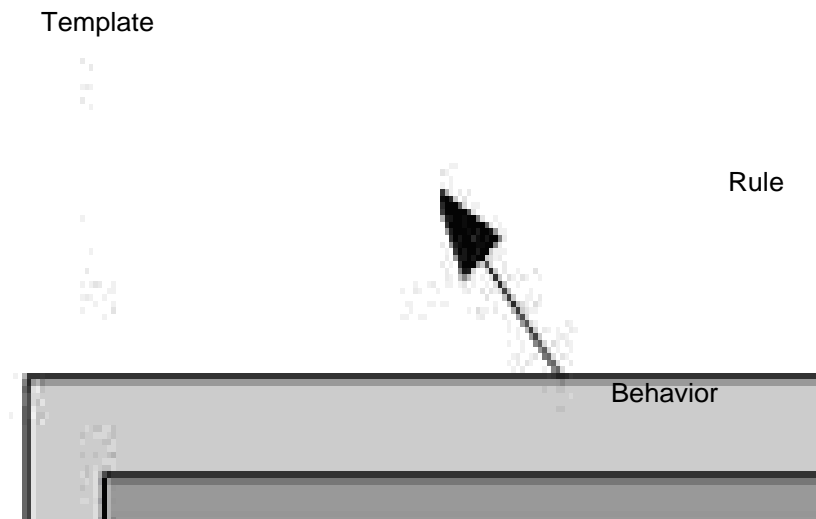
The filtering domain consists of the fields in the packets based on which the packets are identified and classified when you create an ACE. A filtering domain template is the definition formed by these field. For example, when one ACE is generated, you want to identify and classify messages according to the destination IP field of a message. When another ACE is generated, you want to identify and classify messages according to the source IP address field of a message and the source port field of UDP. In this way, these two ACEs use different filtering domain templates.

Rules refer to the values of the ACE mask. For example, one ACE is:

- **permit tcp host 192.168.12.2 any eq telnet**

In this ACE, the filtering domain template is a collection of the following fields: Source IP Address Fields, IP Protocol Fields and Destination TCP Port Fields. Corresponding values (rules) are respectively as follows: Source IP Address=host 192.168.12.2; IP Protocol=tcp; TCP Destination Port=telnet.

**Figure 49-2** Analysis of the ACE: permit tcp host 192.168.12.2 any eq telnet



#### Note

A filtering domain template can be the collection of L3 fields (Layer 3 Field) and L4 fields (Layer 4 Field) or the collection of multiple L2 fields (Layer 2 Field). However, the filtering domain templates of a standard and extended ACL cannot be the collection of L2 and L3, L2 and 4, L2 and L3, or L4 fields. To use the combination of L2, L3 and L4 fields, it is possible to apply the Expert ACLs.



## 49.2 Configuring IP Access List

To configure access lists on a device, you must specify unique names or numbers for the access lists of a protocol to uniquely identifying each access list inside the protocol. The following table lists the protocols that can use numbers to specify access lists and the number ranges of access lists that can be used by each protocol.

Protocol	Number Range
Standard IP	1-99, 1300 - 1999
Extended IP	100-199, 2000 - 2699

### 49.2.1 Guide to configure IP Access List

When you create an access list, defined rules will be applied to all packet messages on a switch. The switch decides whether to forward or block a packet messages by judging whether the packet matches a rule.

Basic Access Lists include standard access lists and extended access lists. The typical rules defined in access lists are the following:

- Source address
- Destination address
- Upper layer protocol
- Time range

Standard IP access lists (1 – 99, 1300 – 1999) forward or block packets according to source addresses. Extended IP access lists (100 – 199, 2000 – 2699) use the above four combinations to forward or block packets. Other types of access lists forward or block packets according to related codes.

A single access list can use multiple separate access list sentences to define multiple rules. Where, all sentences use a same number or name to bind these sentences to a same access list. However, the more the used sentences, the more difficult to read and understand an access list.

#### 49.2.1.1 Implicating “Deny Any Data Flow” Rule Sentence

The ending part of each access list implicates a “Deny any data flow” rule sentence. Therefore, if a packet matches no rule, then it is denied.

as shown in the following example:

```
access-list 1 permit host 192.168.4.12
```



This list allows only the message of host 192.168.4.12 and denies any other host. This is because the list contains the following rule statement at the end: **access-list 1 deny any**

Here is another example:

```
Access-list 1 deny host 192.168.4.12
```

If the list contains the only statement above, the messages from any host will be denied on the port.

**Caution**

It is required to consider the routing update message when defining the access list. Since the end of the access list “denies all dataflow”, this may cause all routing update messages blocked.

---

#### 49.2.1.2 Order to Input Rule Sentences

---

Each added rule is appended to the access list. If a sentence is created, then you cannot delete it separately and can only delete the whole access list. Therefore, the order of access list sentences is very important. When deciding whether to forward or block packets, a switch compares packets and sentences in the order of sentence creation. After finding a matching sentence, it will not check other rule sentences.

If you have created a sentence and it allows all data flows to pass, then the following sentences will not be checked.

as shown in the following example:

```
access-list 101 deny ip any any
access-list 101 permit tcp 192.168.12.0 0.0.0.255 eq telnet any
```

Because the first rule sentence denies all IP messages, the host telnet message of the 192.168.12.0/24 network will be denied. Because the switch discover that the messages match the first rule sentence, it will not check other rule sentences.

#### 49.2.2 Configuring IP Access List

---

The configuration of the basic access list includes the following steps:

1. Define a basic access list
2. Apply the access list to a specific interface.

There are two methods to configure a basic access list.

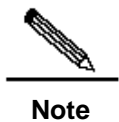
Method 1: Run the following command in the global configuration mode:



Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# access-list id {deny   permit} {src src-wildcard   host src   any   interface idx} [time-range tm-rng-name]	Define an access list
DES-7200(config)# <b>interface</b> <i>interface</i>	Select the interface to which the access list is to be applied.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>ip access-group</b> id { <b>in</b>   <b>out</b> }	Apply the access list to the specific interface

Method 2: Run the following command in the ACL configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>ip access-list</b> { <b>standard</b>   <b>extended</b> } { <i>id</i>   <i>name</i> }	Enter the access list configuration mode
DES-7200(config-xxx-nacl)# [sn] { permit   deny } {src src-wildcard   host src   any } [time-range tm-rng-name]	Add table entries for ACL. For details, please see command reference.
DES-7200(config-xxx-nacl)# <b>exit</b> DES-7200(config)# <b>interface</b> <i>interface</i>	Exit from the access control list mode and select the interface to which the access list is to be applied.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>ip access-group</b> id { <b>in</b>   <b>out</b> }	Apply the access list to the specific interface



Method 1 only configures the numerical value ACL. Method 2 can configure names and numerical value ACL and specify the priorities of table entries (in the devices that support ACE priority levels).

### 49.2.3 Showing IP Address-based Access Control List

To monitor access lists, run the following command in privileged user mode:

```
DES-7200# show access-lists [ id | name ]
```

This command can be used to view the basic access list.

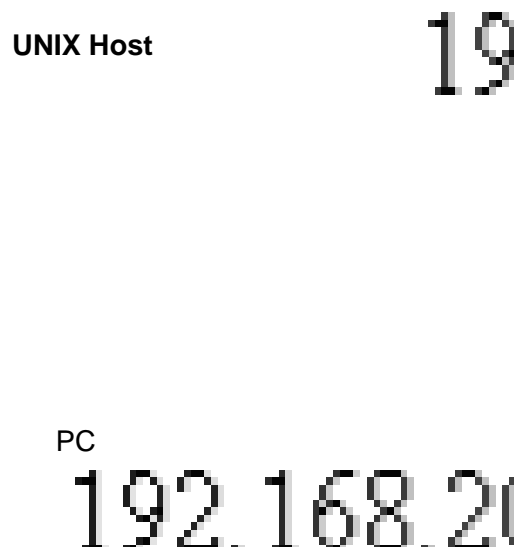
### 49.2.4 IP Address-based Access Control List Example

#### ■ Configuration requirements:



There are two devices Switch A and Switch B, as shown in Figure 45-3:

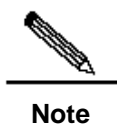
**Figure 49-3** Basic Access List Example



It is required to implement the following security functions by configuring access lists on Switch B:

Hosts at the 192.168.12.0/24 network section can only access the remote UNIX host TELNET service during the normal working time period and deny the PING service.

On the Switch B console, access to any of the services of hosts at the 192.168.202.0/24 network section is denied.



**Note**

The above case simplifies the application in the bank system. Namely, it only allows the hosts on the Local Area Network of branches or savings agencies to access the central host and disallows accessing the central host on the device.

## ■ Equipment Configuration

Switch B configuration:

```
DES-7200(config)# interface GigabitEthernet 0/1
DES-7200(config-if)# ip address 192.168.12.1 255.255.255.0
DES-7200(config-if)# exit
DES-7200(config)# interface GigabitEthernet 0/2
DES-7200(config-if)# ip address 2.2.2.2 255.255.255.0
DES-7200(config-if)# ip access-group 101 in
DES-7200(config-if)# ip access-group 101 out
```

According to requirements, configure an extended access list numbered 101

```
access-list 101 permit tcp 192.168.12.0 0.0.0.255 any eq telnet time-range check
DES-7200(config)# access-list 101 deny icmp 192.168.12.0 0.0.0.255 any
```



```
DES-7200(config)# access-list 101 deny ip 2.2.2.0 0.0.0.255 any
DES-7200(config)# access-list 101 deny ip any any
```

Configure the time-range time range

```
DES-7200(config)# time-range check
DES-7200(config-time-range)# periodic weekdays 8:30 to 17:30
```

**Note**

For access list 101, the last rule sentence "access-list 101 deny ip any any" is not needed, for the ending part of the access list implicates a "deny any" rule sentence.

The extended IP ACL of DES-7200 does not support the neq matching of TCP/UDP at L4 port.

Switch A configuration:

```
DES-7200(config)# hostname D-Link
DES-7200(config)# interface GigabitEthernet 0/1
DES-7200(config-if)# ip address 192.168.202.1 255.255.255.0
DES-7200(config)# interface GigabitEthernet 0/2
DES-7200(config-if)# ip address 2.2.2.1 255.255.255.0
```

## 49.3 Configuring Extended MAC Address-based Access Control List

To configure MAC address-based access control lists on a device, you must specify unique names or numbers for the access lists of a protocol to uniquely identifying each access list inside the protocol. The following table lists the range of the numbers that can be used to specify MAC access lists.

Protocol	Number Range
MAC Extended Access List	700-799

### 49.3.1 Configuration Guide of Extended MAC Address-based Access Control List

When you create an expert access list, defined rules will be applied to all packet messages on a switch. The switch decides whether to forward or block a packet messages by judging whether the packet matches a rule.

The typical rules defined in MAC access lists are the following:

- Source MAC address



- Destination MAC address
- Ethernet protocol type
- Time-range

The MAC extended access list (number 700 – 799) forwards or blocks the packets based on the source and destination MAC addresses, and can also match the Ethernet protocol type.

A single MAC access list can use multiple separate access list sentences to define multiple rules. Where, all sentences use a same number or name to bind these sentences to a same access list.

### 49.3.2 Configuring Extended MAC Address-based Access Control List

The configuration of an MAC access list includes the following steps:

1. Define an MAC access list
2. Apply the access list to a specific interface

There are two methods to configure an MAC access list.

Method 1: Run the following command in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>access-list</b> id { <b>deny</b>   <b>permit</b> }{ <b>any</b>   <b>host</b> <i>src-mac-addr</i> } { <b>any</b>   <b>host</b> <i>dst-mac-addr</i> } [ <i>ethernet-type</i> ] [ <b>cos</b> <i>cos</i> ]	Define an access list. For details about commands, please see command reference.
DES-7200(config)# <b>interface</b> <i>interface</i>	Select the interface to which the access list is to be applied.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>mac access-group</b> <i>id</i> { <b>in</b>   <b>out</b> }	Apply the access list to the specific interface

Method 2: Run the following command in the ACL configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>mac access-list extended</b> { <i>id</i>   <i>name</i> }	Enter the access list configuration mode
DES-7200(config-mac-nacl)# [ <i>sn</i> ] { <b>permit</b>   <b>deny</b> }{ <b>any</b>   <b>host</b> <i>src-mac-addr</i> } { <b>any</b>   <b>host</b> <i>dst-mac-addr</i> } [ <i>ethernet-type</i> ] [ <b>cos</b> <i>cos</i> ]	Add table entries for ACL. For details about commands, please see command reference.



Command	Function
DES-7200(config-mac-nacl)# <b>exit</b> DES-7200(config)# <b>interface</b> <i>interface</i>	Exit from the access control list mode and select the interface to which the access list is to be applied.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>mac access-group</b> <i>{id   name}</i> <b>{ in   out }</b>	Apply the access list to the specific interface

**Note**

Method 1 only configures the numerical value ACL. Method 2 can configure names and numerical value ACL and specify the priorities of table entries (they support priority ACE products and are supported on DES-7200 series switches).

### 49.3.3 Showing Configuration of MAC Extended Access List

To monitor access lists, please run the following command the in privileged mode:

```
DES-7200# show access-lists [ id / name ]
```

You can view basic access lists

### 49.3.4 MAC Extended Access List Example

It is required to implement the following security functions by configuring MAC access lists:

The 0013.2049.8272 host using the ipx protocol cannot access the giga 0/1 port of a device.

It can access other ports.

Configure an Ethernet port, apply the access list 101 on the Ethernet port and check all the messages passing in and out on the port.

```
DES-7200> enable
DES-7200# configure terminal
DES-7200(config)# mac access-list extended mac-list
DES-7200(config-mac-nacl)# deny host 0013.2049.8272 any ipx
DES-7200(config-mac-nacl)# permit any any
DES-7200(config-mac-nacl)# exit
DES-7200(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 0/1
DES-7200(config-if)# mac access-group mac-list in
DES-7200(config-if)# end
DES-7200# show access-lists
mac access-list extended mac-list
deny host 0013.2049.8272 any ipx
permit any any
```



DES-7200#

**Note**

For access lists, "permit any any" cannot be discarded, for the ending part of an access list implicates a "deny any" rule sentence.

## 49.4 Configuring Expert Extended Access List

To configure expert extended access lists on a device, you must specify unique names or numbers for the access lists of a protocol to uniquely identifying each access list inside the protocol. The table below lists the number range of the Expert access list.

Protocol	Number Range
Expert extended access list	2700-2899

### 49.4.1 Configuration Guide of Expert Extended Access List

When you create an expert extended access list, defined rules will be applied to all packet messages on a switch. The switch decides whether to forward or block a packet messages by judging whether the packet matches a rule.

The typical rules defined in expert access lists are the following:

1. All information in basic access lists and MAC extended access lists
2. VLAN ID
3. Expert extended access lists (2700 – 2899) are the syntheses of basic access lists and MAC extended access lists and can filter VLAN IDs.

A single expert access list can use multiple separate access list sentences to define multiple rules. Where, all sentences use a same number or name to bind these sentences to a same access list.

### 49.4.2 Configuring Expert Extended Access List

The configuration of an expert access list includes the following steps:

1. Define an expert access list
2. Apply the access list to a specific interface (application particular case)

There are two methods to configure an expert access list.



Method 1: Run the following command in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>access-list</b> <i>id</i> { <b>deny</b>   <b>permit</b> } [ <i>prot</i>   {[ <i>ethernet-type</i> ] [ <b>cos</b> <i>cos</i> ]}] [ <b>VID</b> <i>vid</i> ] { <b>src</b> <i>src-wildcard</i>   <b>host</b> <i>src</i>   <b>interface</b> <i>idx</i> } { <b>host</b> <i>src-mac-addr</i>   <b>any</b> } { <b>dst</b> <i>dst-wildcard</i>   <b>host</b> <i>dst</i>   <b>any</b> } { <b>host</b> <i>dst-mac-addr</i>   <b>any</b> } [ <b>precedence</b> <i>precedence</i> ] [ <b>tos</b> <i>tos</i> ] [ <b>dscp</b> <i>dscp</i> ] [ <b>fragment</b> ] [ <b>time-range</b> <i>tm-rng-name</i> ]	Define an access list. For details about commands, please see command reference.
DES-7200(config)# <b>interface</b> <i>interface</i>	Select the interface to which the access list is to be applied.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>expert access-group</b> <i>id</i> { <b>in</b>   <b>out</b> }	Apply the access list to the specific interface

Method 2: Run the following command in the ACL configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>expert access-list</b> <b>extended</b> { <i>id</i>   <i>name</i> }	Enter the access list configuration mode
DES-7200(config-exp-nacl)# [ <i>sn</i> ]{ <b>permit</b>   <b>deny</b> } [ <i>prot</i>   {[ <i>ethernet-type</i> ] [ <b>cos</b> <i>cos</i> ]}] [ <b>VID</b> <i>vid</i> ] { <b>src</b> <i>src-wildcard</i>   <b>host</b> <i>src</i>   <b>interface</b> <i>idx</i> } { <b>host</b> <i>src-mac-addr</i>   <b>any</b> } { <b>dst</b> <i>dst-wildcard</i>   <b>host</b> <i>dst</i>   <b>any</b> } { <b>host</b> <i>dst-mac-addr</i>   <b>any</b> } [ <b>precedence</b> <i>precedence</i> ] [ <b>tos</b> <i>tos</i> ] [ <b>dscp</b> <i>dscp</i> ] [ <b>time-range</b> <i>tm-rng-name</i> ]	Add table entries for ACL. For details about commands, please see command reference.
DES-7200(config-exp-nacl)# <b>exit</b> DES-7200(config)# <b>interface</b> <i>interface</i>	Exit from the access control list mode and select the interface to which the access list is to be applied.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>expert access-group</b> { <i>id</i>   <i>name</i> } { <b>in</b>   <b>out</b> }	Apply the access list to the specific interface



**Note**

Method 1 only configures the numerical value ACL. Method 2 can configure names and the numerical value ACL. In a version supporting priority table entries, method 2 can also specify the priorities of table entries (the [sn] option in a command).

The extended Expert ACL of DES-7200 does not support the neq matching of TCP/UDP at L4 port.

### 49.4.3 Showing Configuration of ExpertExtended Access List

To monitor access lists, please run the following command the in privileged user mode:

```
DES-7200# show access-lists [id | name]
```

You can view expert access lists

### 49.4.4 Expert Extended Access List Example

It is required to implement the following security functions by configuring expert access lists:

The 0013.2049.8272 host using vlan 20 cannot access the giga 0/1 port of a device.

It cannot access other ports.

```
DES-7200> enable
DES-7200# config terminal
DES-7200(config)# expert access-list extended expert-list
DES-7200(config-exp-nacl)# permit ip vid 20 any host 0013.2049.8272 any any
DES-7200(config-exp-nacl)# deny any any any any
DES-7200(config-exp-nacl)# exit
DES-7200(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 0/1
DES-7200(config-if)# expert access-group expert-list in
DES-7200(config-if)# end
DES-7200# show access-lists
expert access-list extended expert-list
petmit ip vid 20 any host 0013.2049.8272 any any
deny any any
```

## 49.5 Configuring IPv6-based Extended Access List

### 49.5.1 Configuring IPv6 Extended Access List

The configuration of an IPv6-based access list includes the following steps:

1. Define an IPv6 access list



## 2. Apply the access list to a specific interface (application particular case)

There is the following method to configure a basic access list. Run the following command in the ACL configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>ipv6 access-list</b> <i>name</i>	Enter the access list configuration mode
DES-7200(config-ipv6-nacl)# [sn] <b>{permit   deny}</b> prot {src-ipv6-prefix/prefix-len   <b>host</b> <i>src-ipv6-addr</i>   <b>any</b> } { <i>dst-ipv6-pfx/pfx-len</i>   <b>any</b>   <b>host</b> <i>dst-ipv6-addr</i> } [ <b>dscp</b> <i>dscp</i> ] [ <b>flow-label</b> <i>flow-label</i> ] [ <b>time-range</b> <i>tm-rng-name</i> ]	Add table entries for ACL. For details about commands, please see command reference.
DES-7200(config-exp-nacl)# <b>exit</b> DES-7200(config)# <b>interface</b> <i>interface</i>	Exit from the access control list mode and select the interface to which the access list is to be applied.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>ipv6</b> <b>traffic-filter</b> <i>name</i> { <b>in</b>   <b>out</b> }	Apply the access list to the specific interface

### 49.5.2 Showing Configuration of IPv6Extended Access List

To monitor access lists, please run the following command the in privileged user mode:

```
DES-7200# show access-lists [name]
```

This command can be used to view the basic access list.

### 49.5.3 IPv6 Extended Access List Example

It is required to implement the following security functions by configuring access lists:

The 192.168.4.12 host can access the gi 0/1 port of a device.

It cannot access other ports.

```
DES-7200> enable
DES-7200# config terminal
DES-7200(config)# ipv6 access-list v6-list
DES-7200(config-ipv6-nacl)# permit ipv6 ::192:68:4:12/24 any
DES-7200(config-ipv6-nacl)# deny ipv6 any any
DES-7200(config-ipv6-nacl)# exit
DES-7200(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 0/1
```



```
DES-7200(config-if)# ipv6 traffic-filter v6-list in
DES-7200(config-if)# end
DES-7200# show access-lists
ipv6 access-list extended v6-list
permit ipv6 ::192.168.4.12 any
deny any any
DES-7200#
```

---

DES-7200 Ipv6 acl can support matched area is as below:

Protocol, sip, l4\_src,dip, l4\_dst, dip, dscp, flow\_label.

An IPv6 ACL supports any one of the following three matching domains:

sip, dip

protocol, sip, l4\_src, l4\_dst, dscp, flow\_label

protocol, dip, l4\_src, l4\_dst, dscp, flow\_label

An ACL cannot match all the above domains. Besides, the IPv6 ACL does not support the fragment matching.

Besides, when an ACL match sip and dip at the same time, it can not support the matching of type code of icmp or source and destination port.

---



#### Caution

## 49.6 Configuring ACL80

---

The ACL80 is also call the custom access list, which means matching the first 80 bytes of the message to filter the messages. A message consists of a series of byte flows. The ACL80 enables the user to perform match filtering by bits in the specified 16 bytes of the first 80 bytes in the message.



#### Note

---

The randomly specified 16 bytes does not contain the following fields:

Packet SMAC, DMAC,SIP, DIP,ETYPE,PROTOCOL,L4\_SPORT, L4\_DPORT,VID.

In other words, you can select to match the above fields or other 16 bytes.

---

For any 16-byte field, it is possible to compare or not the configured value by bits. In other words, it allows setting any bit of those 16 bytes as 0 or 1. There are two factors in filtering any byte: filtering rule and filter domain template. The bits of the both are one-to-one corresponding. The filtering rule specifies the value of the field to be filtered. The filter domain template specifies whether to filter the related fields in the filtering rule ("1" indicates matching the bit in the corresponding filtering rule, 0 for not). Therefore, when it is time to match a bit, it is required to set 1 for the corresponding bit in the filter domain template. If the filter domain template bit is set as 0, no match will be done no matter what the corresponding bit is in the filtering rule.

For example,



```
DES-7200(config)# expert access-list advanced name
DES-7200(config-exp-dacl)# permit 00d0f8123456 ffffffff 0
DES-7200(config-exp-dacl)# deny 00d0f8654321 ffffffff 6
```

The user custom access control list matches any byte of the first 80 bytes in the layer-2 data frames according to the user definitions, and then performs corresponding processing for the messages. To use the user custom access control list correctly, it is necessary to have in-depth knowledge about the structure of layer-2 data frame. The following illustrates the first 64 bytes in a layer-2 data frame (each letter indicates a hexadecimal number, and each two letters indicate a byte).

AA AA AA AA AA AA BB BB BB BB BB BB CC CC DD DD

DD DD EE FF GG HH HH HH II II JJ KK LL LL MM MM

NN NN OO PP QQ QQ RR RR RR RR SS SS SS SS TT TT

UU UU VV VV VV VV WW WW WW WW XY ZZ aa aa bb bb

In the figure above, the meaning of each letter and the value of offset are shown below:

Letter	Meaning	Offset	Letter	Meaning	Offset
A	Destination MAC	0	O	TTL field	34
B	Source MAC	6	P	Protocol ID	35
C	VLAN tag field	12	Q	IP checksum	36
D	Data frame length field	14	R	Source IP address	38
E	DSAP field	18	S	Destination IP address	42
F	SSAP field	19	T	TCP source port	46
G	Ctrl field	20	U	TCP destination port	48
H	Org Code field	21	V	Sequential number	50
I	Encapsulated data type	24	W	Confirmation field	54
J	IP version No.	26	XY	IP header length and reservation bits	58
K	TOS field	27	Z	Reservation bit and flags bit	59
L	IP packet length	28	a	Windows size field	60
M	ID	30	b	Others	62
N	Flags field	32			

As shown in the above table, the offset of each field is its offset in the SNAP+tag 802.3 data frame. In the user custom access control list, the user can use two parameters, the rule mask and offset, to abstract any byte from the first 80 bytes of the data frame, and then compare it with the user defined rule to filter the matched data frame for corresponding processing. The user defined rule can be some fixed attributes of the data. For example, the

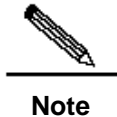


user wants to filter all the TCP messages by defining the rule as “06”, rule mask as “FF” and offset as 35. Here, the rule mask and offset work together to abstract the contents of the TCP protocol ID field in the received data frame, and compare it with the rule to filter all TCP messages.

DES-7200 support ACL80, including matching against Ethernet packets, 803.3 SNAP packets, and 802.311c packets. If the value for matching DSAP to the cnt1 field is set to AAAA03, it indicates to match the 803.3 SNAP packets. If the value is set to E0E003, it indicates to match the 803.311c packets. This field cannot be set to match Ethernet packets.

**Note:**

For DES-7200 series, to match 803.3 SNAP packets, set to match AAAA03, except for the remaining bytes. When you use a non-7200-24GE line card and match the SNAP packet, the packet will be discarded if the first byte of the org code field is 0. The packet is matched only when the first byte of the org code field is not 0. More attentions should be paid to this point when you use this function.



**Configuration note:**

The AC180 has only 16 bytes for matching. If the 16 bytes are used, no fields other than the 16 bytes can be matched. For example:

```
DES-7200(config)# expert access-list advanced name
DES-7200(config-exp-dacl)#permit 11223344556677889900aabbcccd
deeff ffffffffffffffffffffffffffffffffff 50
```

If you use the following command to add another ACE:

```
DES-7200(config-exp-dacl)#permit 11223344556677889900aabbcccd
deeff ffffffffffffffffffffffffffffffffff 54
```

The configuration will fail because the 16 bytes are used by the first ACE. To match the second ACE, you must firstly delete the first ACE.

## 49.7 Configuring TCP Flag Filtering Control

The TCP Flag filtering feature provides a flexible mechanism. At present, TCP Flag filtering control supports the match-all option. Namely, when the TCP Flags in a received message exactly match those defined in the ACL table entry, the message will be checked by the ACL rule. A user can define any combination of TCP Flags to filter some messages with specific TCP Flags.

For example,

```
permit tcp any any match-all rst
```

Allow the messages with a TCP Flag RST set and 0 in other positions to pass



**Note**

When the protocol number of the naming ACL and numerical value configuration is TCP, you can select to configure this filtering feature. MAC extended and IP standard ones do not have this function.

Please configure a TCP Flag by following these steps:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>ip access-list extended</b> { id   name }	Enter the access list configuration mode
DES-7200(config-ext-nacl)# [sn] [permit   deny] <b>tcp source</b> source-wildcard [ <b>operator port</b> [port] ] <b>destination</b> destination-wildcard [ <b>operator port</b> [ port ]] [ <b>match-all</b> flag-name][ <b>precedence</b> precedence]	Add table entries for ACL. For details about commands, please see command reference.
DES-7200(config-ext-nacl)# <b>exit</b> DES-7200(config)# <b>interface</b> interface	Exit from the access control list mode and select the interface to which the access list is to be applied.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>ip access-group</b> {id   name} {in   out}	Apply the access list to the specific interface

The following example explains how to configure a TCP Flag

1. Enable permission and password

```
DES-7200> enable
DES-7200#
```

2. Enter the global configuration mode.

```
DES-7200# configure terminal
```

3. Enter the ACL configuration mode.

```
DES-7200(config)# ip access-list extended test-tcp-flag
```

4. Add an ACL entry

```
DES-7200(config-ext-nacl)# permit tcp any any match-all rst
```

5. Add a deny entry

```
DES-7200(config-ext-nacl)# deny tcp any any match-all fin
```

6. Adding/delete entries repeatedly.

7. end

```
DES-7200(config-ext-nacl)# end
```

8. Show

```
DES-7200# show access-list test-tcp-flag
ip access-lists extended test-tcp-flag
```



```
10 permit tcp any any match-all rst
20 deny tcp any any match-all fin
```

## 49.8 Configuring ACL Entries by Priority

---

To embody the ACE priority, there are standards for each ACL to normalize the ACE arranging method under the ACL by using the numbered start point – increment mode, as detailed below:

- ACE is sorted in the ascend order in the chain table by the sequential numbers
- Starting from the start point number, if no number is specified, it increases by step on the basis of the previous ACE number.
- To specify number, the ACE is inserted in sorting mode, and the increment ensures new ACE can be inserted between two adjacent ACEs.
- The ACL specifies the start point number and the number increment.

The **ip access-list resequence** {*acl-id*| *acl-name*} *sn-start* *sn-inc* command is available, with details in the related command reference.

Whenever the above command is run, the ACEs will be re-sorted under the ACL list. For example, the ACE numbers under the ACL named *tst\_acl* is as follows:

In the beginning

```
ace1: 10
ace2: 20
ace3: 30
```

The ACE numbers are as follows after “ip access-list resequence *tst\_acl* 100 3” is run:

```
DES-7200(config)# ip access-list resequence tst_acl 100 3
ace1: 100
ace2: 103
ace3: 106
```

When adding *ace4* without entering *sn-num*, the numbers are as follows:

```
DES-7200(config-std-nacl)# permit ...
ace1: 100
ace2: 103
ace3: 106
ace4: 109
```

When adding *ace5* by entering *seq-num* = 105, the numbers are as follows:

```
DES-7200(config-std-nacl)# 105 permit ...
ace1: 100
ace2: 103
ace5: 105
ace3: 106
ace4: 109
```



The reference of the numbers is to implement the priority adding ace mode in step 4.

#### Delete ACE

```
DES-7200(config-std-nacl)# no 106
ace1: 100
ace2: 103
ace5: 105
ace4: 109
```

The above numbers can also facilitate deleting ACE.

## 49.9 Configuring ACL Based on Time-range

You can run the ACLs based on time, for example, make the ACL take effect during certain periods in a week. For this purpose, you must first set a Time-Range.

Time-Range implementation depends on the system clock. If you want to use this function, you must assure that the system has a reliable clock.

In the privileged configuration mode, you can create a time-range by performing the following steps:

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
DES-7200(config)# <b>time-range</b> <i>time-range-name</i>	Identify a time-range by using a meaningful display character string as its name
DES-7200(config-time-range)# <b>absolute</b> [start time <i>date</i> ] end time <i>date</i>	Set the absolute time range (optional). For details, see the configuration guide of time-range.
DES-7200(config-time-range)# <b>periodic</b> <b>day-of-the-week time to</b> [ <i>day-of-the-week</i> ] <b>time</b>	Set the periodic time range (optional). For details, see the configuration guide of time-range.
DES-7200# <b>show time-range</b>	Verify the configurations.
DES-7200# <b>copy running-config</b> <b>startup-config</b>	Save the configuration.
DES-7200(config)# <b>ip access-list</b> <b>extended 101</b>	Enter the ACL configuration mode.
DES-7200(config-ext-nacl)# <b>permit ip</b> <b>any any time-range</b> <i>time-range-name</i>	Configure the ACE of a time-range.



**Note**

The length of the name should be 1-32 characters, which should not include any space.

You can set one absolute time range at most. The application based on time-ranges will be valid only in this time range.

You can set one or more periodic intervals. If you have already set a running time range for the **time-range**, the application takes effect at periodic intervals in that time range.

The following example shows how to deny HTTP data streams during the working hours in a week by using the ACLs as example:

```
DES-7200(config)# time-range no-http
DES-7200(config-time-range)# periodic weekdays 8:00 to 18:00
DES-7200(config)# end
DES-7200(config)# ip access-list extended limit-udp
DES-7200(config-ext-nacl)# deny tcp any any eq www time-range no-http
DES-7200(config-ext-nacl)# exit
DES-7200(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 0/1
DES-7200(config-if)# ip access-group no-http in
DES-7200(config)# end
```

Example of displaying time range:

```
DES-7200# show time-range
time-range entry: no-http(inactive)
periodic Weekdays 8:00 to 18:00
time-range entry: no-udp
periodic Tuesday 15:30 to 16:30
```

## 49.10 Configuration Examples

### 49.10.1 Configuring Unidirectional TCP Connection

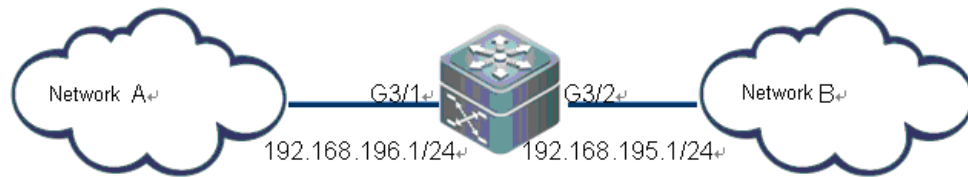
Configure TCP Flag filtering to enable unidirectional ACL.

### 49.10.2 Configuration Requirements

For the security of network A, the hosts in network A are allowed to originate the TCP connection request to the hosts in network B. However, the hosts of network B are not allowed to originate the TCP communication requests to network A.



### 49.10.3 Topology View



As shown in the above figure, two networks are connected through a layer 3 switch. Network A connects to the G3/1 port of the switch and network B connects to the G3/2 port of the switch.

### 49.10.4 Analysis

By filtering the packets of TCP connection request originated by network B on the G3/2 port of the switch, you can block the TCP connection request from hosts in network B to network A. According to the analysis of TCP connection, the SYN of the flag field in the TCP header of the initial TCP request packet is reset and the ACK is set to 0. Therefore, to enable network A to access network B in the one-way direction, configure the Match-all option of the extended ACL to set the SYN of the TCP header to 1 and ACK to 0 on the inbound direction of the G3/2 port.

### 49.10.5 Configuration Procedure:

1. Define an Access Control List (ACL)

# Enter the configuration mode of the switch

```
DES-7200# configure terminal
```

# Create the extended ACL101 in the configuration mode

```
DES-7200(config)# ip access-list extended 101
```

# Deny the packets whose SYN is 1 and permit other packets whose SYN is 0 (including ACK)

```
DES-7200(config-ext-nacl)# deny tcp any any match-all SYN
```

# Permit other IP packets

```
DES-7200(config-ext-nacl)# permit ip any any
```

2. Apply the ACL at the interface

# Exit ACL mode

```
DES-7200(config-ext-nacl)# exit
```



```
DES-7200(config)# interface vlan 1
DES-7200(config)# ip address 1.1.1.1 255.255.255.0
DES-7200(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 0/1
DES-7200(config-if)# ip access-group ifaddr in
```

# Enter the G3/2 port on which the ACL is applied

```
DES-7200(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 3/2
```

# Apply ACL 101 to the packet filtering at the inlet of G3/2

```
DES-7200(config-if)# ip access-group 101 in
```

### 3. Show the configuration of ACL

# In the privileged mode, use the **Show** command to display related configuration of ACL

```
DES-7200# show access-lists 101
ip access-list extended 101
 10 deny tcp any any match-all syn
 20 permit ip any any
```

## 49.11 Acl Configuration of Different Line Cards

The following description is applicable for version 10.3(1)later.

7200-24GE can provide 3838 entries for acl in incoming direction and 512 entries for acl in outgoing direction since their hardware resources have been increased.

Acl out has two processing methods: 1.When all the line cards online is 7200-24GE, acl out can associate the outgoing port and takes effect for any packet, supporting associating svi, l3ap and router port with the outgoing port. 2. When there are other line cards among the line cards online, which is not 7200-24GE, acl out takes effect only for known unicast packets and does not support router port and l3ap on L3. This principle is also appropriate for hot plugging/unplugging line cards, which prompts the users to reset line cards.

If acl out is implemented on the exit port, then ip extension acl and expert acl will not support port matching. Besides, expert acl only supports ip packet matching, not other L2 packets, IPV6 does not support flow\_label, dscp and fragment matching.

If acl out is processed in the original way, then associating acl out with svi has lots of restrictions:

- 1) Changes the priority of in and out direction; the acl used in out direction is higher than that used in in direction.
- 2) When associating acl with svi in out direction, there is no **deny any any** option by default. But there is **deny any any** option in other acl application.
- 3) Associating acl with svi in Out direction can support ip standard, ip extension, mac extension, acl application of expert extension.



- 4) There are some restrictions for matching destination ip and destination mac in acl when associating acl with svi in Out direction. If you want to match destination mac in mac extension and expert acl and applicate the acl in out direction of svi, the entry will be set and not take effect.
- 5) The set acl will not take effect if you want to match destination ip, which is not within the subnet ip range of associated svi, in ip standard, ip extension and expert acl . For example, the address of vlan 1 is 192.168.64.1 255.255.255.0. And now, if you create an ip extended acl with ace deny udp any 192.168.65.1 0.0.0.255 eq 255, it will not take effect when applicating this acl to the exit port of vlan 1, for the destination ip is not within the subnet ip range of vlan 1; but it will take effenct if the ace is deny udp any 192.168.64.1 0.0.0.255 eq 255, for the destination ip is up to sepecification.
- 6) The priority of associating acl with svi in out direction is higher than that of all the other acl application.
- 7) Acl out does not support user-defined acl type.







# 50 VACL Configuration

## 50.1 Overview

The implementation method of ACL is directly applying ACL on port svi in VLAN, which is the same as applying ACL on physical port. While VLAN Access Control(VACL), which is also named as VLAN Access Mapping List, has different implementation method. VACL is used in all communication flow in VLAN, supports ETHERTYPE-based and MAC-based filtering and prevents unauthorized data flow from entering VLAN. There are three actions supporting VACL: forward, drop and redirect.

## 50.2 VACL Configuration

### 50.2.1 Creating Vlan access map

In the global configuration mode, use the following commands to create **vlan access map**:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>vlan access-map</b> <i>map_name</i> [ <i>map_sn</i> ]	Create a submap with map_sn range from 0 to 65535.
DES-7200(config)# <b>no vlan access-map</b> <i>map_name</i> [ <i>map_sn</i> ]	Delete a submap with map_sn range from 0 to 65535.
DES-7200(config)# <b>no vlan access-map</b> <i>map_name</i>	Delete a hostmap.

It will enter the **config-access-map** mode after creating **vlan access map** successfully.



**Vlan access map** has 2 keywords. *map\_name* is the major keyword and indispensable, while *map\_sn* is the minor one which can be omitted. We define the collection of one or multiple submap(s) with the same name as hostmap.



#### Caution

1. In fact, creating **vlan access map** is creating a submap. When *map\_sn* is not specified, it will add 10 before the submap and on the basis of *map\_sn* of the submap which belongs to the same hostmap.

2. When *map\_sn* is not specified, deleting **vlan access map**, all *Map\_name* with the same *map\_name* will be deleted, that is to say, the hostmap is deleted.

3. When *map\_sn* is not specified, deleting **vlan access map** will delete the specified submap. When the hostmap to which the specified submap belongs does not include submaps, then the hostmap will be deleted automatically; and vice versa.

4. One hostmap includes 6553 submaps at most.

### 50.2.2 Configuring match Content of vlan access map

Execute the following commands in **config-access-map** mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config-access-map)# <b>match ip address</b> {1 –199   1300 – 2699   <i>acl_name</i> }	Associate ip acl with specified submap.
DES-7200(config-access-map)# <b>match mac address</b> {700 –799   <i>acl_name</i> }	Associate mac acl with specified submap.
DES-7200(config-access-map)# <b>no match ip address</b> {1 –199   1300 – 2699   <i>acl_name</i> }	Remove the association between ip acl and specified submap.
DES-7200(config-access-map)# <b>no match mac address</b> {700 –799   <i>acl_name</i> }	Remove the association between mac acl and specified submap.



1. Now, a submap can only be associated with ip acl or map acl. You can not associate a submap with both ip acl and map acl.

2. One submap can only be associated with at most 8 acls.

3. One submap can not be associated with an unexistent acl.



#### Caution

4. One submap can not be associated with acl without ace, which is null acl.

5. When a submap has been associated with ip acl (mac acl), you need to configure to associate ip acl (mac acl) again. And ip acl (mac acl) later configured is after the one first configured.

6. When a submap has been associated with ip acl (mac acl), you need to configure to associate mac acl (ip acl) again and delete the configured ip acl (mac acl) automatically first and then configure mac acl (ip acl).

### 50.2.3 Configuring actions Content of vlan access map

Execute the following commands in **config-access-map** mode(or in **vACL** mode):

Command	Function
DES-7200(config-access-map)# <b>action drop</b>	Configure drop action of the specified submap.
DES-7200(config-access-map)# <b>action forward</b>	Configure forward action of the specified submap.
DES-7200(config-access-map)# <b>action redirect {gigabitEthernet   FastEthernet   Aggregateport } { port_number}</b>	Configure redirect action of the specified submap.
DES-7200(config-access-map)# <b>no action drop</b>	Delete drop action of the specified submap.
DES-7200(config-access-map)# <b>no action forward</b>	Delete forward action of the specified submap.



DES-7200(config-access-map)# <b>no action</b>  <b>redirect</b> {gigabitEthernet  FastEthernet    <b>Aggregateport</b> }{ <i>port_number</i> }	Delete redirect action of the specified submap.
---	---

**Caution**

1. One submap only has one action. That is, you choose one action from drop, forward and redirect;
2. Redirect action specifies only one port to redirect;
3. By default, the action is forward;
4. When a submap is associated with ip acl, by default, the action is forward for L2 packets and drop for L3 packets which do not match any ip acl;
5. When a submap is associated with mac acl, by default, the action is forward for L3 packets and drop for L2 packets which do not match any mac acl;

#### 50.2.4 Application of vlan access map

In the global configuration mode, execute the following commands to create **vlan access map**:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>vlan</b>  <b>filter</b> { <i>map_name</i> } <b>vlan-list</b> { <i>vlan_id</i> }	Applicate vlan access map in the specified vlan .
DES-7200(config)# <b>no vlan filter</b>  { <i>map_name</i> } <b>vlan-list</b> { <i>vlan_id</i> }	Delete the application of vlan access map in the specified vlan .

**Caution**

1. Hostmap is the unit of vlan access map application. In other words, map-sn can not be input;
2. One hostmap can be used in 8 vlans at most.



### 50.2.5 Displaying vlan access map

---

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>show vlan access-map</b> <i>[map_name]</i>	Show the information of vlan access map.
DES-7200# <b>show vlan filter</b>	Show the application of all vlan access maps in vlan.
DES-7200# <b>show vlan filter</b> <b>access-map</b> <i>map_name</i>	Show the application of the specified vlan access map in vlan.
DES-7200# <b>show vlan filter vlan</b> <i>vlan_id</i>	Show the application of vlan access map in the specified vlan.



# 51

## QoS Configuration

### 51.1 QoS Overview

---

The fast development of the Internet results in more and more demands for multimedia streams. Generally, people have different service quality requirements for different multimedia, which requires the network to be able to allocate and dispatch resources according to the user demands. As a result, the traditional "best effort" forwarding mechanism cannot meet the user demands. So the QoS emerges.

The QoS (Quality of Service) is used to evaluate the ability for the service provider to meet the customer demands. In the Internet, the QoS mechanism is introduced to improve the network service quality, where the QoS is used to evaluate the ability of the network to deliver packets. The commonly-mentioned QoS is an evaluation on the service ability for the delay, jitter, packet loss and more core demands.

#### 51.1.1 Basic Framework of QoS

---

The devices that have no QoS function cannot provide the capability of transmission quality service, and will not ensure special forwarding priority for certain dataflow. When bandwidth is abundant, all the traffic can be well processed. But when congestion occurs, all traffic could be discarded. This kind of forwarding policy is otherwise called the service of best effort, since the device now is exerting its performance of data forwarding and the use of its switching bandwidth is maximized.

The device of this module features the QoS function to provide transmission quality service. This makes it possible to select specific network traffic, prioritize it according to its relative importance, and use congestion-management and congestion-avoidance techniques to provide preferential treatment. The network environment with QoS configured is added with predictability of network performance and allocates network bandwidth more effectively to maximize the use of network resources.

The QoS of this device is based on the DiffServ (Differentiated Service Mode) of the IETF Internet Engineering Task Force. According to the definitions in the DiffServ architecture, every transmission message is classified into a category in the network, and the classification information is included in the IP packet header. The first 6 bits in the ToS (Type



of Service) field for IPv4 packet header or the Traffic Class field for Ipv6 packet header carry the classification information of the message. The classification information can also be carried in the Link layer packet header. Below shows the special bits in the packet:

- Carried by the first 3 bits in the Tag Control Information of 802.1Q frame header, which contains the priority information of one of the 8 categories. These three bits are generally called User Priority bits.
- Carried by the first 3 bits of the ToS field for IPv4 packet header or Traffic Class field for IPv6 packet header, called IP precedence value; or carried by the first 6 bits of the ToS field for IPv4 packet header or Traffic Class field for IPv6 packet header, called Differentiated Services Code Point (DSCP) value.

In a DiffServ-compliant network, every device has the same transmission service policy for the messages with the same classification information, and vice versa. The class information in the packet can be assigned by all the systems along the way, such as hosts, devices, or other network devices. It's based on a policy set by a manager, or contents in the packet, or both. The assignment of class information in order to identify packets usually consumes enormous resources of the network device. To reduce the processing overhead on the backbone network, such assignment is often used on the network edge. Based on the class information, the devices can provide different priorities for different traffic, or limit the amount of resources allocated per traffic class, or appropriately discard the packets of less important, or perform other operations as appropriate. This behavior of these independent devices is call per-hop behavior in the DiffServ architecture.

If all devices in the network are providing consistent per-hop behavior, this network forms the end-to-end QoS solution for the DiffServ architecture.

## **51.1.2 QoS processing flow**

### **51.1.2.1 Classifying**

The process of classifying involves putting the messages to the dataflow indicated with CoS value according to the trust policy or the analysis of the message contents. As a result, the core task of classifying is to determine the CoS value of a message. It happens when the port is receiving the inbound messages. When a port is associated with a policy-map that represents a QoS policy, the classification will take effect and be applied on all the messages input through that port.

For general non-IP messages, the switch classifies the messages according to the following criteria:

- If the message itself does not contain any QoS information, which means the layer-2 packet header has no User Priority bits, it gets the QoS information of the message by using the default CoS value of the message input port. Like the User Priority bits of the message, the default CoS value of the port ranges 0~7.



- If the message itself contains QoS information, which means the layer-2 packet header has User Priority bits, it gets the CoS information directly from the message.

**Note**

The above criteria take effect only when the QoS trust mode of the port is enabled. Enabling the QoS trust mode of a port does not mean getting the QoS information directly from the message or the input port of the message without analyzing the message contents.

- If the policy-map associated with the port is using the ACL classifying based on the mac access-list extended, the associated ACLs will be matched by getting the source MAC address, destination MAC address and Ethertype domain of the message on that port, to determine the DSCP value of the message. Note that, if a port is associated with a policy-map but has no DSCP value set for it, the switch will assign the priority for the messages of this classification by performing the default behavior: following the priority information contained in the layer-2 packet header of the message or the default priority of the port.

**Note**

The above three criteria may apply simultaneously on the same port. In this case, they will take effect according to the sequence 3, then 2 and then 1. In other words, the ACLs work first for the classifying operation. When it fails, the criteria 2 will be used, and so on. Here, if the QoS trust mode of the port is enabled, criteria 2 and 1 will be used to get the QoS information directly from the message or the port; otherwise, default DSCP value 0 will be assigned for the messages failing the classifying operation.

For IP messages, the switch classifies the messages according to the following criteria:

- If the port trust mode is Trust ip-precedence, it extracts from the ip precedence field (3 bits) of the IP message and fills the CoS field (3 bits) of the output message.
- If the port trust mode is Trust cos, it extracts directly the CoS field (3 bits) of the message and overwrite the ip precedence field (3 bits) of the message. There are the following two cases. Case 1 is that the layer-2 packet header does not contain User Priority bits, and now the CoS value is got from the default CoS value of the message input port. Case 2 is that the layer-2 packet header contains User Priority bits, and now the CoS is got directly from the packet header.
- If the Policy-map associated with the port is using the ACLs classifying based on the ip access-list (extended), the associated ACLs will be matched by getting the source IP address, destination IP address, Protocol field and layer-4 TCP/UDP port field of the message, to determine the DSCP value of the message, and the CoS value is determined according to the mapping from DSCP to CoS. Note that, if a port is associated with a policy-map but has no DSCP value set for it, the switch will use the above criteria 1 and 2 to determine the priority.



Just like the criteria for non-IP message classifying, the above classifying criteria can apply on the same port at the same time. In this case, they will take effect according to the sequence 3, then 2 and then 1.

For the details of the CoS-to-DSCP map and IP-precedence-to-DSCP map, see the descriptions below.

#### **51.1.2.2 Policing**

---

The Policing action happens after the data classifying is completed. It is used to constrain the transmission bandwidth occupied by the classified dataflow. The Policing action will check every message in the classified dataflow. If the message is occupying more bandwidth as allowed by the police that applies on that dataflow, the message will be treated specially, either to be discarded or assigned with another DSCP value.

In the QoS processing flow, the Policing action is optional. If no Policing action is enabled, the DSCP value of messages in the classified dataflow will remain unchanged, and no message will be discarded before the message is sent for the Marking action.

#### **51.1.2.3 Marking**

---

After the Classifying and Policing actions, the Marking action will write the QoS information for the message to ensure the DSCP value of the classified message can be transferred to the next hop device in the network. Here, the QoS ACLs can be used to change the QoS information of the message, or the QoS information is reserved in the Trust mode. For example, the Trust DSCP can be selected to reserve the DSCP information in the IP packet header.

#### **51.1.2.4 Queuing**

---

The Queuing action is responsible for transferring the messages in the dataflow to an output queue of the port. The messages in different output queues will have transmission service policies of different levels and qualities.

Each port has 8 output queues. The two mapping tables DSCP-to-CoS Map and Cos-to-Queue Map configured on the switch convert the DSCP value of the message into output queue number so as to determine which output queue to transfer the messages into.

#### **51.1.2.5 Scheduling**

---

The Scheduling action is the last cycle in the QoS process. After the messages are transferring into different output queues of the port, the switch works with WRR or another algorithm to transmit the messages in those 8 queues.

It is possible to set the weight in the WRR algorithm to configure the amount of messages to be transmitted in every cycle of message output, thus affecting the transmission bandwidth. Alternatively, it is possible to set the weight in the DRR algorithm to configure the amount of



message bytes to be transmitted in every cycle of message output, thus affecting the transmission bandwidth.

## 51.2 QoS Configuration

### 51.2.1 Default QoS configuration

Make clear the following points of QoS before starting the configuration:

- One interface can be associated with at most one policy-map.
- One policy-map can have multiple class-maps.
- One class-map can be associated at most one ACL, and all ACEs in that ACL must have the same filter domain template.
- The amount of ACEs associated with one interface meets the constraint described in the section "Configuring secure ACL".

By default, the QoS function is disabled. That is, the device treats all messages equally. When you associate a Policy Map with a port and set the trust mode of the port, the QoS function of that port is enabled. To disable the QoS function of a port, you may remove the Policy Map setting and set the trust mode of the port as Off. Below is the default QoS configuration:

<b>Default CoS value</b>	0
<b>Number of Queues</b>	8
<b>Queue Scheduling</b>	WRR
<b>QueueWeight</b>	1:1:1:1:1:1:1:1
<b>WRR Weight Range</b>	1:15
<b>DRR Weight Range</b>	1:15
<b>Trust mode</b>	No Trust

Default mapping table from CoS value to queue

<b>CoS Value</b>	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
<b>Queue</b>	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8

Default mapping table from CoS to DSCP

<b>CoS Value</b>	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
<b>DSCP value</b>	0	8	16	24	32	40	48	56

Default mapping table from IP-Precedence to DSC

<b>IP-Precedence</b>	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
<b>DSCP</b>	0	8	16	24	32	40	48	56



Default mapping table from DSCP to CoS

DSCP	0	8	16	24	32	40	48	56
CoS	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7

### 51.2.2 Configure the QoS trust mode of the interface

By default, the QoS trust mode of an interface is disabled.

Command	Description
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the configuration mode
<b>interface interface</b>	Enter the interface configuration mode.
<b>mls qos trust {cos   ip-precedence   dscp}</b>	Configure the QoS trust mode of the interface CoS, dscp or ip-precedence
<b>no mls qos trust</b>	Restore the QoS trust mode of the interface to default

The command below set the trust mode of interface gigabitEthernet 0/4 to DSCP:

```
DES-7200(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 0/4
DES-7200(config-if)# mls qos trust dscp
DES-7200(config-if)# end
DES-7200# show mls qos interface g0/4
Interface GigabitEthernet 0/4
Attached input policy-map:
Default COS: trust dscp
Default COS: 0
DES-7200#
```

### 51.2.3 Configuring the Default CoS Value of an Interface

You may configure the default CoS value for every interface through the following steps.

By default, the CoS value of an interface 0.

Command	Description
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the configuration mode
<b>interface interface</b>	Enter the interface configuration mode.
<b>mls qos cos default-cos</b>	Configure the default CoS value of the interface, where default-cos is the desired default CoS value, ranging 0~7.
<b>no mls qos cos</b>	Default CoS value

The example below set the default CoS value of interface g0/4 to 6:

```
DES-7200# configure terminal
```



```

DES-7200(config)# interface g 0/4
DES-7200(config-if)# mls qos cos 6
DES-7200(config-if)# end
DES-7200# show mls qos interface g 0/4
Interface GigabitEthernet 0/4
Attached input policy-map:
Default COS: trust dscp
Default COS: 6
DES-7200#

```

### 51.2.4 Configuring Class Maps

You may create and configure Class Maps through the following steps:

Command	Description
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the configuration mode
<b>ip access-list extended</b> {id name} ... <b>ip access-list standard</b> {id name} ... <b>mac access-list extended</b> {id name} ... <b>expert access-list extended</b> {id name} ... <b>ipv6 access-list extended name</b> ... <b>access-list id[...]</b>	Create ACL Please refer to the chapter of ACL
<b>[no] class-map class-map-name</b>	Create and enter into the class map configuration mode, where class-map-name is the name of the class map to be created. The no option will delete an existing class map
<b>[no] match access-group</b> {acl-num   acl-name }	Set the matching ACL, where acl-name is the name of the created ACL, acl-num is the ID of the created ACL; the no option delete that match.

For example, the following steps creates a class-map named class1, which is associated with a ACL:acl\_1. This class-map will classify all TCP messages with port 80.

```

DES-7200(config)# ip access-list extended acl_1
DES-7200(config-ext-nacl)# permit tcp any any eq 80
DES-7200(config-ext-nacl)# exit
DES-7200(config)# class-map class1
DES-7200(config-cmap)# match access-group acl_1

```



```
DES-7200(config-cmap)# end
```

### 51.2.5 Configuring Policy Maps

You may create and configure Policy Maps through the following steps:

Command	Description
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the configuration mode
<b>[no] policy-map</b> <i>policy-map-name</i>	Create and enter into the policy map configuration mode, where <i>policy-map-name</i> is the name of the policy map to be created.  The <b>no</b> option will delete an existing policy map
<b>[no] class</b> <i>class-map-name</i>	Create and enter into the data classifying configuration mode, where <i>class-map-name</i> is the name of the class map to be created.  The <b>no</b> option deletes that data classification
<b>[no]set ip dscp</b> <i>new-dscp</i>	Set new ip dscp value for the IP messages in the dataflow; it does not take effect for non-IP messages.  <i>new-dscp</i> is the new DSCP value to be set, whose range varies with the specific product.
<b>police</b> <i>rate-bps burst-byte</i> <b>[exceed-action {drop   dscp</b> <i>dscp-value}][no police</i>	Limit the bandwidth of the dataflow and specify the action for the excessive bandwidth part, where <i>rate-bps</i> is the limited bandwidth per second (kbps), <i>burst-byte</i> is the limited burst bandwidth (Kbyte), <b>drop</b> means dropping the message of the excessive bandwidth part, <b>dscp</b> <i>dscp-value</i> means changing the DSCP value of the message in excessive bandwidth part, and <i>dscp-value</i> value range varies with specific products. The effective range of the burst-byte is 4 to 2097152.

For example, the following steps create a policy-map named policy1 and associate it with interface Gigabitethernet 1/1.

```
DES-7200(config)# policy-map policy1
DES-7200(config-pmap)# class class1
DES-7200(config-pmap-c)# set ip dscp 48
DES-7200(config-pmap-c)# exit
Router(config-pmap)# exit
DES-7200(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/1
DES-7200(config-if)# switchport mode trunk
DES-7200(config-if)# mls qos trust cos
DES-7200(config-if)# service-policy input policy1
```



### 51.2.6 Applying Policy Maps on the Interface

You may apply the Policy Maps to a port through the following steps:

Command	Description
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the configuration mode
<b>interface</b> <i>interface</i>	Enter the interface configuration mode.
<b>[no] service-policy input</b> <i>policy-map-name</i>	Apply the created policy map to the interface, where the <i>policy-map-name</i> is the name of the created policy map, input is the input rate limit.



#### Note

Now, DES-7200 Series switch supports applying policy map in out direction. However, the policy map takes effect only for 7200-24GE line cards, not other line cards. All restrictions of ACL configuration apply to QoS for the class map needs to associate with ACL. For details, refer to ACL Configuration Manual.

### 51.2.7 Configuring the Output Queue Scheduling Algorithm

You may schedule the algorithms for the output queue of a port: WRR, SP, RR and DRR. By default, the output queue algorithm is WRR (Weighted Round-Robin).

You may set the port priority queue scheduling method through the following steps. For details of the algorithm, see the overview of QoS.

Command	Description
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the configuration mode
<b>mls qos scheduler</b> {sp   rr   wrr   drr}	Set the port priority queue scheduling method, where sp is absolute priority scheduling, rr is round-robin, wrr is weighted round-robin with frame quantity, and drr weighted round-robin with frame length
<b>no mls qos scheduler</b>	Restore the default wrr scheduling

For example, the following steps set the port output algorithm to SP:

```
DES-7200# configure terminal
DES-7200(config)# mls qos scheduler sp
DES-7200(config)# end
DES-7200# show mls qos scheduler
Global Multi-Layer Switching scheduling
```



```
Strict Priority
DES-7200#
```

### 51.2.8 Configuring Output Round-Robin Weight

You may set the output round-robin weight through the following steps:

Command	Description
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the configuration mode
<b>{wrr-queue   drr-queue} bandwidth weight1...weightn</b>	weight1...weightn are the weight values specified for the output queues. For the count and value range, see the default QoS settings
<b>no {wrr-queue   drr-queue} bandwidth</b>	The no option restores the default weight value.

The example below sets the wrr scheduling weight as 1:2:3:4:5:6:7:8

```
DES-7200# configure terminal
DES-7200(config)# wrr-queue bandwidth 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8
DES-7200(config)# end
DES-7200# show mls qos queueing
Cos-queue map:
cos qid
--- ---
0 1
1 2
2 3
3 4
4 5
5 6
6 7
7 8
wrr bandwidth weights:
qid weights
--- -----
0 1
1 2
2 3
3 4
4 5
5 6
6 7
7 8
DES-7200(config)#
```



### 51.2.9 Configuring Cos-Map

You may set cos-map to change which queue to select for the messages in output. The default value of cos-map is provided in the default QoS configuration section.

Command	Description
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the configuration mode
<b>priority-queue Cos-Map qid cos0 [cos1 [cos2 [cos3 [cos4 [cos5 [cos6 [cos7]]]]]]]</b>	<i>qid</i> is the queue id; <i>cos0..cos7</i> are the CoS values associated with that queue.
<b>no priority-queue cos-map</b>	Restore default of cos-map

Below is the example of configuring CoS Map

```
DES-7200# configure terminal
DES-7200(config)# priority-queue Cos-Map 1 2 4 6 7 5
DES-7200(config)# end
DES-7200# show mls qos queueing
Cos-queue map:
cos qid
--- ---
0 1
1 2
2 1
3 4
4 1
5 1
6 1
7 1

wrr bandwidth weights:
qid weights
--- -----
0 1
1 2
2 3
3 4
4 5
5 6
6 7
7 8
```



### 51.2.10 Configuring CoS-to-DSCP Map

CoS-to-DSCP Map is used to map the CoS value to internal DSCP value. You may follow these steps to set CoS-to-DSCP Map. The default value of CoS-to-DSCP is provided in the default QoS configuration section.

Command	Description
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the configuration mode
<b>mls qos map cos-dscp</b> <i>dscp1...dscp8</i> <b>no mls qos map cos-dscp</b>	Change the CoS-to-DSCP Map settings, where dscp1...dscp8 are the DSCP values corresponding to CoS values 0 ~ 7. The DSCP value range varies with specific products.

For Example:

```
DES-7200# configure terminal
DES-7200(config)# mls qos map cos-dscp 56 48 46 40 34 32 26 24
DES-7200(config)# end
DES-7200# show mls qos maps cos-dscp
cos dscp
--- ----
0   56
1   48
2   46
3   40
4   34
5   32
6   26
7   24
```

### 51.2.11 Configuring DSCP-to-CoS Map

DSCP-to-CoS is used to map internal DSCP value to CoS value so that it is possible to select output queue for messages.

The default value of DSCP-to-CoS Map is provided in the default QoS configuration section. You may follow these steps to set DSCP-to-CoS Map:

Command	Description
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the configuration mode
<b>mls qos map dscp-cos</b> <i>dscp-list to cos</i>	Set DSCP to COS Map, where dscp-list is the list of DSCP values to be set, DSCP values delimited by spaces, value range varying with specific products, cos means the CoS values corresponding to the DSCP values, ranging 0~7



Command	Description
<b>no mls qos map dscp-cos</b>	Restore default

For example, the following steps set the DSCP values 0, 32 and 56 to map 6:

```
DES-7200# configure terminal
DES-7200(config)# mls qos map dscp-cos 0 32 56 to 6
DES-7200(config)# show mls qos maps dscp-cos
```

dscp cos	dscp cos	dscp cos	dscp cos
-----	-----	-----	-----
0 6	1 0	2 0	3 0
4 0	5 0	6 0	7 0
8 1	9 1	10 1	11 1
12 1	13 1	14 1	15 1
16 2	17 2	18 2	19 2
20 2	21 2	22 2	23 2
24 3	25 3	26 3	27 3
28 3	29 3	30 3	31 3
32 6	33 4	34 4	35 4
36 4	37 4	38 4	39 4
40 5	41 5	42 5	43 5
44 5	45 5	46 5	47 5
48 6	49 6	50 6	51 6
52 6	53 6	54 6	55 6
56 6	57 7	58 7	59 7
60 7	61 7	62 7	63 7

### 51.2.12 Configuring Port Rate Limiting

You may follow these steps to limit the port rate:

Command	Description
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the configuration mode
<b>interface <i>interface</i></b>	Enter the interface configuration mode.
<b>rate-limit output bps burst-size</b>	Port rate limit, where output is the output rate limit, bps is the bandwidth limit per second (kbps), and burst-size is the burst bandwidth limit (Kbyte)
<b>no rate-limit</b>	Cancel port rate limiting

```
DES-7200# configure terminal
DES-7200(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 0/4
DES-7200(config-if)# rate-limit input 100 100
DES-7200(config-if)# end
DES-7200#
```



### 51.2.13 Configuring IPpre to DSCP Map

IPpre-to-Dscp is used to map the IPpre values of message to internal DSCP values. The default settings of IPpre-to-DSCP Map are provided in the default QoS configuration section. you may follow these steps to configure IPpre-to-Dscp Map:

Command	Description
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the configuration mode
<b>mls qos map ip-prec-dscp</b> <i>dscp1...dscp8</i>	Modify the setting of IP-Precedence-to-Dscp Map, where dscp1...dscp8 are the DSCP values corresponding to IP-Precedence values 0~7
<b>no mls qos map ip-prec-dscp</b>	

For Example:

```
DES-7200# configure terminal
DES-7200(config)# mls qos map ip-precedence-dscp 56 48 46 40 34 32 26 24
DES-7200(config)# end
DES-7200# show mls qos maps ip-prec-dscp
ip-precedence dscp
-----
0      56
1      48
2      46
3      40
4      34
5      32
6      26
7      24
```

## 51.3 QoS Displaying

### 51.3.1 Showing class-map

You may show the contents of class-map through the following steps:

Command	Description
<b>show class-map</b> [ <i>class-name</i> ]	Show the contents of the class map entity

For example,

```
DES-7200# show class-map
Class Map cc
Match access-group 1
DES-7200#
```



### 51.3.2 Showing policy-map

You may show the contents of policy-map through the following steps:

Command	Description
<b>show policy-map</b> [ <i>policy-name</i> ] [ <b>class</b> <i>class-name</i> ]	Show QoS policy map, <i>policy-name</i> is the selected name of policy map, specified as <b>class</b> Show the class map bound with the policy map in case of <i>class-name</i>

For example,

```
DES-7200# show policy-map
Policy Map pp
Class cc
DES-7200#
```

### 51.3.3 Showing mls qos interface

You may show the QoS information of all ports through the following steps:

Command	Description
<b>show mls qos interface</b> [ <i>interface</i> ] <i>policers</i>	Show the QoS information of the interface, The <b>Policers</b> option shows the policy map applied on the interface.

For example,

```
DES-7200# show mls qos interface gigabitEthernet 0/4
Interface GigabitEthernet 0/4
Attached input policy-map: pp
Default COS: trust dscp
Default COS: 6
DES-7200#show mls qos interface policers
Interface: GigabitEthernet 0/4
Attached input policy-map: pp
DES-7200#
```

### 51.3.4 Showing mls qos queueing

You may show the QoS queue information through the following steps:

Command	Description
<b>show mls qos queueing</b>	Show the QoS queue information, CoS-to-queue map, wrr weight and drr weight;



For example:

```
DES-7200# show mls qos queueing
Cos-queue map:
cos qid
--- ---
0 1
1 2
2 1
3 4
4 1
5 1
6 1
7 1
wrr bandwidth weights:
qid weights
--- -----
0 1
1 2
2 3
3 4
4 5
5 6
6 7
7 8
```

### 51.3.5 Showing mls qos scheduler

You may show the QoS scheduling method through the following steps:

Command	Description
<b>show mls qos scheduler</b>	Show the port priority queue scheduling method.

For example:

```
DES-7200# show mls qos scheduler
Global Multi-Layer Switching scheduling
Strict Priority
DES-7200#
```

### 51.3.6 Showing mls qos maps

You may show the mls qos maps table through the following steps:

Command	Description
<b>show mls qos maps</b>	Show dscp-cos maps
<b>[cos-dscp   dscp-cos  </b>	dscp-cos maps
<b>ip-prec-dscp]</b>	ip-prec-dscp maps



For example:

```
DES-7200# show mls qos maps cos-dscp
cos dscp
-----
0    0
1    8
2   16
3   24
4   32
5   40
6   48
7   56

DES-7200# show mls qos maps dscp-cos
dscp cos    dscp cos    dscp cos    dscp cos
-----
0    6      1    0      2    0      3    0
4    0      5    0      6    0      7    0
8    1      9    1     10    1     11    1
12   1     13    1     14    1     15    1
16   2     17    2     18    2     19    2
20   2     21    2     22    2     23    2
24   3     25    3     26    3     27    3
28   3     29    3     30    3     31    3
32   6     33    4     34    4     35    4
36   4     37    4     38    4     39    4
40   5     41    5     42    5     43    5
44   5     45    5     46    5     47    5
48   6     49    6     50    6     51    6
52   6     53    6     54    6     55    6
56   6     57    7     58    7     59    7
60   7     61    7     62    7     63    7

DES-7200# show mls qos maps ip-prec-dscp
ip-precedence dscp
-----
0        56
1        48
2        46
3        40
4        34
5        32
6        26
7        24
```

### 51.3.7 Showing mls qos rate-limit

You may show the port rate limiting information through the following steps:

Command	Description
<b>show mls qos rate-limit [interface interface]</b>	Show the rate limit of [port]



```
DES-7200# show mls qos rate-limit
Interface GigabitEthernet 0/4
rate limit input bps = 100 burst = 100
```

### 51.3.8 Showing show policy-map interface

---

You can show the configuration of port policymap by performing following steps

Command	Function
<b>show policy-map interface</b> <i>interface]</i>	Showing the configuration of (port) policymap

```
DES-7200#show policy-map interface f0/1
```

```
FastEthernet 0/1 input (tc policy): pp
  Class cc
    set ip dscp 22
    mark count 0
```



The device currently does not support the statistic of mark count.

---

#### Note

---







# 52

## VRRP Configuration

### 52.1 Overview

---

The Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol (VRRP) is designed to work in the active/standby mode to ensure that the standby router can take over the work without affecting internal and external data communication and modifying the parameters of internal networks when the master router fails. Multiple devices within a VRRP group are mapped to a virtual device. The VRRP ensures one and only one device to send packets on behalf of the virtual device at one time, while the host sends messages to that virtual device. The device that forwards packets is elected as the master device. If that device cannot work due to some reason, the one in standby status will be selected to replace it and become the active device. With VRRP, the hosts in the LAN seem to use only one router. The route connectivity is also guaranteed even when the currently-used first-hop router fails.

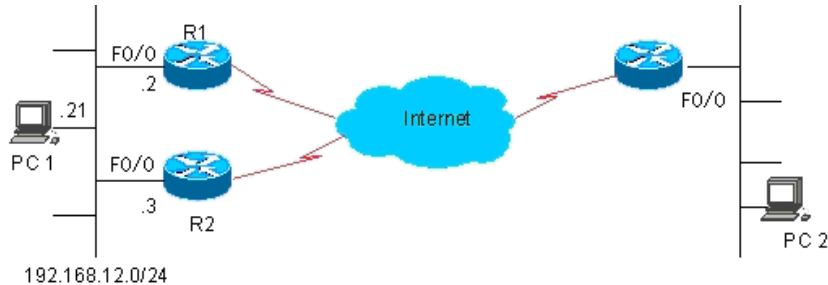
RFC 2338 defines the IP packet format in VRRP type and its working mechanism. The VRRP message means a kind of multicast message with specified destination address, which is sent by the master router by schedule to indicate its operation and are also used to elect the master router. The VRRP allows another router to automatically take over the operations when the router that undertaking route forwarding function in the IP LAN fails, thus implementing the hot-backup and error-tolerance of IP routing and ensuring the continuity and reliability of host communication in the LAN. Redundancy is implemented for a VRRP application group through multiple devices, but only one device acts as the master device at any time to undertake the route forwarding function. The others are in the backup roles. Inter-router switching in the VRRP application group is fully transparent for the host in the LAN. The RFC 2338 defines the router switching rules:

1. The VRRP protocol adopts the preemption method to select the master router. First, it compares the VRRP priorities that are set for the interfaces of the routers a VRRP group. The one with the highest priority becomes the master router and its status will become Master. If the priority of the routers is identical, compare the master IP addresses of the network interfaces, the one with larger IP address will become the master router to forward packets.
2. After the master device is elected, the others are in the standby status and monitor the status of the master device through the VRRP message sent by the master device. In normal operation, the master router sends a VRRP message at an interval, called advertised message, to notify the standby devices. The master device is in the normal working status. If the standby device within the group doesn't receive the message



from the master device for a long time, it becomes the master. If more than one device within the group become master, repeat the preempt process in step 1. In this process, the device with the maximum priority will be selected as the master router to execute the VRRP backup function.

**Figure 52-1** VRRP working principles



Once a master device is elected in a VRRP backup group, the hosts in the LAN will execute route forwarding through that master device. The communication process is illustrated in Figure 47-1.

As you can see, R1 and R2 are connected with LAN 192.168.12.0/24 through the VRRP-enabled Ethernet interface Fa0/0. All hosts in the LAN use the IP address of the virtual router of the VRRP group as the default gateway. The hosts in the LAN only know the virtual router of the VRRP group, while the master router in the VRRP which is implementing the forwarding function is transparent to them. For example, if host PC 1 in the LAN is communicating with host PC 2 in another network, PC 1 will use the virtual router as the default gateway to send packets to PC 2. After receiving the packets, the master router in the VRRP group forwards them to PC 2. In this communication process, PC 1 only feels the virtual device but does not know whether R1 or R2 works. The master router is elected between R1 and R2 in the VRRP group. Once the master router fails, the other router automatically becomes the master.

## 52.2 VRRP Applications

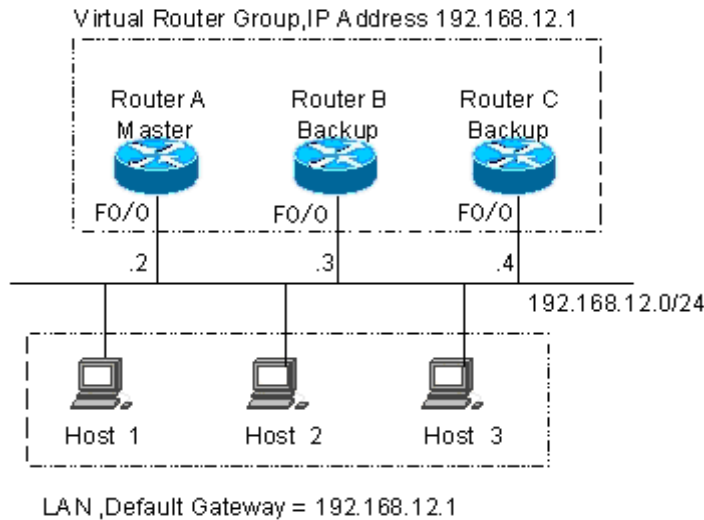
There are two VRRP application modes: basic and advanced. In basic applications, simple redundancy is implemented with a single backup group, while in advanced applications multiple backup groups are used to implement both route redundancy and load balancing.



### 52.2.1 Route Redundancy

The basic VRRP applications are illustrated in Figure 47-2.

**Figure 52-2** Basic VRRP applications

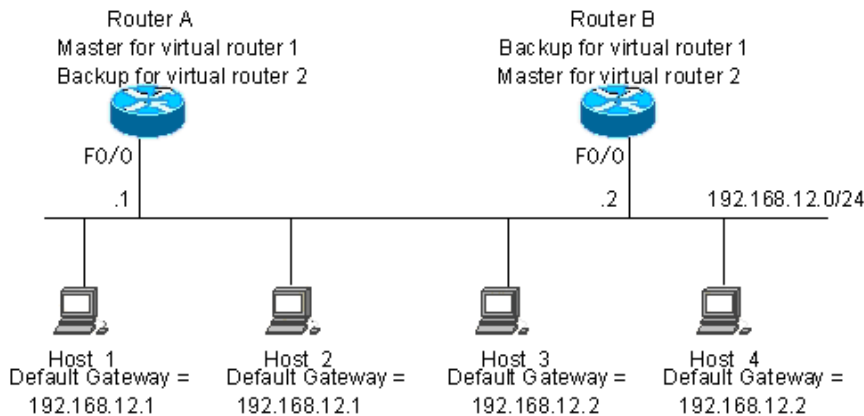


As shown in Figure 47-2, routers A, B and C are connected with the LAN through an VRRP-enabled Ethernet interface. They are in the same VRRP group with virtual IP address 192.168.12.1. Router A is elected as the master router of the VRRP, and routers B and C are standby routers. Hosts 1, 2 and 3 in the LAN use the IP address of the virtual router 192.168.12.1 as the gateway. The packets from the hosts in the LAN to other networks will be forwarded by the master router (router A in Figure 47-2). Once router A fails, the master router preempted between routers B and C undertakes the route forwarding function of the virtual device, resulting in a simply route redundancy.

### 52.2.2 Load Balancing

The advanced VRRP applications are illustrated in Figure 47-3.

**Figure 52-3** Advanced VRRP applications





As shown in Figure 47-3, two virtual devices are set. For virtual router 1, router A uses the IP address of Ethernet interface Fa0/0 192.168.12.1 as the IP address of the virtual router, and thus router A becomes the master router and router B becomes the backup. For virtual router 2, router B uses the IP address of Ethernet interface Fa0/0 192.168.12.2 as the IP address of the virtual router, and thus router B becomes the master router and router A becomes the backup. In the LAN, hosts 1 and 2 use the IP address of virtual router 1 192.168.12.1 as the default gateway, while hosts 3 and 4 use the IP address of virtual router 2 192.168.12.2 as the default gateway. In this VRRP application, router A and router B provide the route redundancy to share the traffic from the LAN, that is, load balancing.

## 52.3 VRRP Configuration

### 52.3.1 VRRP Configuration Task List

The VRRP is applicable for the multicast or broadcast LANs, such as Ethernet. The configuration of the VRRP is concentrated on the Ethernet interfaces. The configuration tasks are as follows:

- Enable VRRP backup function (mandatory)
- Set the authentication string of the VRRP backup group (optional)
- Set the advertisement interval of the VRRP backup group (optional)
- Set the preemption mode of the router in the VRRP backup group (optional)
- Set the priority of the router in the VRRP backup group (optional)
- Set the interface to be monitored by the VRRP backup group (optional)
- Set the learning function of the VRRP advertisement timer device (optional)
- Set the description string of the router in the VRRP backup group (optional)

Not all of the tasks are required here. Tasks that are required for a VRRP backup group depend on user requirements.

### 52.3.2 Enabling VRRP Backup Function

By specifying the backup group number and virtual IP address, you may add a backup in the specified LAN network segment to enable the VRRP backup function of the related Ethernet interfaces.

Command	Purpose
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>vrrp group ip ipaddress [secondary]</b>	Enable VRRP.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>no vrrp group ip ipaddress [secondary]</b>	Disable VRRP.



The backup group number is in the range of 1 to 255. If the virtual IP address *ipaddress* is not specified, the router will not participate in the VRRP backup group. If the **secondary** parameter is not used, the IP address set here will become the master IP address of the virtual router.

**Note**

If the virtual IP address (Primary or Secondary) of the VRRP group is the same as the IP address (Primary or Secondary) of the Ethernet interface, it is considered that the VRRP group occupies the actual IP address of the Ethernet interface, and the priority of the VRRP group is 255. If the corresponding Ethernet interface is available, the VRRP group will become the Master status automatically.

Each port of the NMX-2GEH line card supports 14 VRRP backup groups. If the number of configured VRRP groups exceeds 14, the system will prompt error message.

### 52.3.3 Setting the Authentication String for the VRRP Backup Group

The VRRP supports plaintext password authentication mode and no authentication mode. When the authentication string is set for the VRRP backup group, it is also required to set the VRRP group to be in the plaintext password authentication mode. The members in the VRRP group must be in the same authentication mode for normal communication. In the plaintext authentication mode, the routers in the same VRRP group must have the same authentication password configured. The plaintext authentication password cannot provide security. It aims only to prevent/prompt the incorrect VRRP configuration.

Command	Purpose
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>vrrp group authentication</b> <i>string</i>	Set the authentication string of the VRRP.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>no vrrp group authentication</b>	Set no authentication for VRRP.

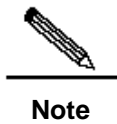
By default, the VRRP is in the no authentication mode. For the plaintext password authentication mode, the length of the plaintext authentication mode cannot be greater than 8 bytes.



### 52.3.4 Setting the Advertisement Interval of the VRRP Backup Group

Command	Purpose
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>vrrp group timers advertise</b> <i>interval</i>	Set the master device VRRP advertisement interval.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>no vrrp group timers advertise</b> [ <i>interval</i> ]	Restore the VRRP advertisement interval of the master device to the default value.

If the current device becomes the master in the VRRP group, it will notify its VRRP status, priority and more information by sending VRRP advertisements at the specified interval. By default, this interval is 1 second.



When the VRRP timer learning function is not configured, the routers in a VRRP group should be configured with the same VRRP advertisement interval; otherwise, the routers in the standby status will drop the received VRRP advertisement

### 52.3.5 Setting the Preemption Mode of the Router in the VRRP Backup Group

If the VRRP group is working in the preemption mode, once it finds its priority is higher than the Master priority, it will preempt to become the master of the VRRP group. If the VRRP group is not working in the preemption mode, even if a device finds its priority is higher than the Master priority, it will not preempt to become the master of the VRRP group. In case the VRRP group is using the Ethernet interface IP address, the setting of the preemption mode does not make sense, because this VRRP group has the highest priority and thus it automatically become the master in the VRRP group.

Command	Purpose
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>vrrp group preempt</b> [ <i>delay seconds</i> ]	Set VRRP backup group to work in the preemption mode
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>no vrrp group preempt</b> [ <i>delay</i> ]	Set VRRP backup group to work in the preemption mode

The optional parameter **delay seconds** defines the delay for the VRRP router prepares to declare its Master identify, 0 seconds by default. Once the VRRP function is enabled, the VRRP group will work in the preemption mode by default.



### 52.3.6 Setting the Priority of the Router in the VRRP Backup Group

The VRRP protocol provides that the priority parameter of the device determines its position in the backup group. The device that has the highest priority in the preempt mode and has the virtual IP address becomes the active (or master) device in the backup group. Other devices of lower priority in the same group become the backup (or monitoring) devices. Once the VRRP function is enabled, the VRRP group has 100 as its default priority.

Command	Purpose
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>vrrp group priority level</b>	Set the priority of the VRRP backup group.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>no vrrp group priority</b>	Restore the default of the VRRP priority

The priority level range is 1~254. If the VRRP virtual IP address is the same as the actual IP of the Ethernet interface, the priority of the corresponding VRRP group is 255. Now no matter whether the VRRP group in the preemption mode, the corresponding VRRP group will be in the Master status automatically (as long as the corresponding Ethernet interface is available).

### 52.3.7 Setting the Interface to be Monitored by the VRRP Backup Group

After the interface to be monitored by the VRRP backup group is configured, the system will dynamically adjust the priority of the router according to the monitored interface. Once the status of the monitored interface becomes unavailable, the priority of the router in the VRRP backup group will be decreased according to the preset value. At the same time, another router in the backup group which has a more stable interface status or higher priority will become the active (master) router of the VRRP backup group.

Command	Purpose
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>vrrp group track</b> <i>interface-type number</i> [ <i>interface -priority</i> ]	Set the interface to be monitored by the VRRP backup group
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>no vrrp group track</b> <i>interface-type number</i>	Cancel setting of the interface to be monitored by the VRRP backup group

By default, there is no interface configured to be monitored by the VRRP backup group. The parameter *interface -priority* ranges 1~255. If the parameter *interface -priority* is default, the system will use the default value 10.



**Note**

The monitored interface only is layer-3 routable logical interfaces (such as Routed Port, SVI, Loopback and Tunnel).

### 52.3.8 Setting the Learning

#### Function of VRRP Advertisement

#### Timer Device

Once the timer learning function is enabled, if the current router is VRRP backup router, after setting the timer learning function, the router will learn VRRP advertisement sending interval from VRRP advertisement of the master router and calculate the failure judgment interval of master router. It does not calculate by VRRP advertisement sending interval set locally. Use this command to synchronize the VRRP advertisement timer between the backup router and master router.

Command	Function
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>vrrp group timers learn</b>	Set the timer learning function.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>no vrrp group timers learn</b>	Delete the timer learning function.

By default, the VRRP group timer learning function is not set.

**Note**

In case the advertisement sending interval in VRRP advertisement received by VRRP backup router is inconsistent with the advertisement interval set locally, if the timer learning function is not configured on the VRRP backup router, the VRRP backup router will drop the VRRP advertisement; otherwise, it will receive the VRRP advertisement and calculate failure judgment interval of VRRP Master router by the advertisement interval.

### 50.3.11 Setting the Description

#### String of the Router in the VRRP

#### Backup Group

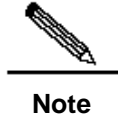
This command will set the descriptor for the VRRP group to facilitate identifying the VRRP group.

Command	Purpose
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>vrrp group description</b> <i>text</i>	Set the description string of the VRRP group.



Command	Purpose
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>no vrrp group description</b>	Cancel the description string of the VRRP group.

By default, the VRRP backup group has no description string configured. The length of the VRRP backup group description string is 80 by maximum.



If blanks are contained in the description string of the VRRP backup group, quotation marks (") must be used to identify the description string.

## 52.4 Monitoring and Maintaining VRRP

Our products provide the **show vrrp** and **debug vrrp** commands to monitor and maintain VRRP. The **show vrrp** command is used to check the VRRP status of a local router; the **debug vrrp** command is used to check the information on the VRRP group status, received/sent VRRP advertisement and VRRP events.

### 52.4.1 show vrrp

Our product provides the following **show vrrp** commands to check the VRRP status of the local router.

Command	Purpose
DES-7200# <b>show vrrp [brief   group]</b>	Check the current VRRP status
DES-7200# <b>show vrrp interface type number [brief]</b>	Show the VRRP status of the specified network interface

Here are some examples of the command:

#### 1. show vrrp command

```
DES-7200# show vrrp
GigabitEthernetFastEthernet 0/10 - Group 1
State is Backup
Virtual IP address is 192.168.201.1 configured
Virtual MAC address is 0000.5e00.0101
Advertisement interval is 3 sec
Preemption is enabled
min delay is 0 sec
Priority is 100
Master Router is 192.168.201.213 , priority is 120
Master Advertisement interval is 3 sec
Master Down interval is 9 sec
GigabitEthernetFastEthernet 0/20 - Group 2
```



```

State is Master
Virtual IP address is 192.168.201.2 configured
Virtual MAC address is 0000.5e00.0102
Advertisement interval is 3 sec
Preemption is enabled
min delay is 0 sec
Priority is 120
Master Router is 192.168.201.217 (local), priority is 120
Master Advertisement interval is 3 sec
Master Down interval is 9 sec

```

The displayed messages above include the Ethernet name, VRRP backup group number configured on the interface, status, priority, preemption mode, VRRP advertisement interval, virtual IP address, virtual MAC address, Master router IP address, Master router priority, Master router advertisement interval, Master router failure judgement interval, current interface monitored by the VRRP backup group and corresponding priority change scale.

The current interface monitored by the VRRP backup group and the corresponding priority change metrics can be shown only after the monitoring interface function is enabled.

## 2. **show vrrp brief** command

```

DES-7200# show vrrp brief
Interface      Grp Pri Time Own Pre State  Master addr  Group addr
GigabitEthernet0FastEthernet0/0 1 100 3- - P Backup 192.168.201.213
192.168.201.1
GigabitEthernet0FastEthernet0/0 2 120 - - P Master 192.168.201.217
192.168.201.2

```

The information displayed above includes the Ethernet interface name, VRRP group number, priority, timeout period for backup turning into master, same as the interface IP address or not, preemption mode, master device IP address, and VRRP group IP address.

## 3. **show vrrp interface** command

```

DES-7200# show vrrp interface GigabitEthernetFastEthernet 0/0
GigabitEthernetFastEthernet 0/0 - Group 1
State is Backup
Virtual IP address is 192.168.201.1 configured
Virtual MAC address is 0000.5e00.0101
Advertisement interval is 3 sec
Preemption is enabled
min delay is 0 sec
Priority is 100
Master Router is 192.168.201.213 , pritority is 120
Master Advertisement interval is 3 sec
Master Down interval is 9 sec
GigabitEthernetFastEthernet 0/0 - Group 2
State is Master
Virtual IP address is 192.168.201.2 configured
Virtual MAC address is 0000.5e00.0102
Advertisement interval is 3 sec
Preemption is enabled
min delay is 0 sec

```



```

Priority is 120
Master Router is 192.168.201.217 (local), priority is 120
Master Advertisement interval is 3 sec
Master Down interval is 9 sec
DES-7200#

```

The displayed messages above include the specified Ethernet name, VRRP backup group number configured on the interface, status, priority, preemption mode, VRRP advertisement interval, virtual IP address, virtual MAC address, Master router IP address, Master router priority, Master router advertisement interval, Master router failure judgment interval, current interface monitored by the VRRP backup group and corresponding priority change scale.

### 52.4.2 debug vrrp

Our produce has the following **debug vrrp** commands to provide the VRRP status debugging information of the local router.

Command	Purpose
DES-7200# <b>debug vrrp errors</b>	Turn on the VRRP error prompt debug switch
DES-7200# <b>no debug vrrp errors</b>	Turn off the VRRP error prompt debug switch
DES-7200# <b>debug vrrp events</b>	Turn on the VRRP event debug switch
DES-7200# <b>no debug vrrp events</b>	Turn off the VRRP event debug switch
DES-7200# <b>debug vrrp packets</b>	Turn on the VRRP packet Debug switch
DES-7200# <b>no debug vrrp packets</b>	Turn off the VRRP packet debug switch
DES-7200# <b>debug vrrp state</b>	Turn on the VRRP state debug switch
DES-7200# <b>no debug vrrp state</b>	Turn off the VRRP status debug switch
DES-7200# <b>debug vrrp</b>	Turn on the VRRP debug switch
DES-7200# <b>no debug vrrp</b>	Turn off the VRRP debug switch

Here are some examples of the command:

#### 1. debug vrrp command

```

DES-7200# debug vrrp
DES-7200#
VRRP: Grp 1 Advertisement priority 120, ipaddr 192.168.201.213
VRRP: Grp 1 Event - Advert higher or equal priority
%VRRP-6-STATECHANGE: GigabitEthernetFastEthernet 0/0 Grp 1 state Master -> Backup
VRRP: Grp 1 Advertisement from 192.168.201.213 has invalid virtual address 192.168.1.1
%VRRP-6-STATECHANGE: GigabitEthernetFastEthernet 0/0 Grp 1 state Backup -> Master
DES-7200#

```

The **debug vrrp** command is equivalent to the joint execution of **debug vrrp errors**, **debug vrrp events**, **debug vrrp packets** and **debug vrrp state**.

#### 2. debug vrrp errors command

```

DES-7200# debug vrrp errors

```



```
DES-7200#
VRRP: Grp 1 Advertisement from 192.168.201.213 has invalid virtual address 192.168.1.1
VRRP: Grp 1 Advertisement from 192.168.201.213 has invalid virtual address 192.168.1.1
VRRP: Grp 1 Advertisement from 192.168.201.213 has invalid virtual address 192.168.1.1
```

The above displayed information indicates the VRRP advertisement comes from 192.168.201.213 for VRRP group 1. The virtual IP address 192.168.1.1 in the advertisement is not in local VRRP group 1.

### 3. debug vrrp events command

```
DES-7200# debug vrrp events
DES-7200#
VRRP: Grp 1 Event - Advert higher or equal priority
VRRP: Grp 1 Event - Advert higher or equal priority
VRRP: Grp 1 Event - Advert higher or equal priority
DES-7200#
```

The above displayed information indicates the priority in the VRRP advertisement received by the local VRRP group is not lower than the local priority.

### 4. debug vrrp packets command

```
DES-7200# debug vrrp packets
DES-7200#
VRRP: Grp 2 sending Advertisement checksum DD4D
VRRP: Grp 2 sending Advertisement checksum DD4D
VRRP: Grp 2 sending Advertisement checksum DD4D
```

The above displayed information indicates the local VRRP group 2 is sending VRRP advertisement, whose VRRP checksum is 0xDD4D.

```
DES-7200# debug vrrp packets
DES-7200#
VRRP: Grp 1 Advertisement priority 120, ipaddr 192.168.201.213
VRRP: Grp 1 Advertisement priority 120, ipaddr 192.168.201.213
VRRP: Grp 1 Advertisement priority 120, ipaddr 192.168.201.213
```

The above displayed information indicates the VRRP advertisement is received from 192.168.201.213 for VRRP group 1, whose priority is 120.

### 5. debug vrrp state command

```
DES-7200# debug vrrp state
VRRP State debugging is on
DES-7200#
%VRRP-6-STATECHANGE: GigabitEthernetFastEthernet 0/0 Grp 2 state Master -> Backup
%VRRP-6-STATECHANGE: GigabitEthernetFastEthernet 0/0 Grp 2 state Backup -> Master
DES-7200# config terminal
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
DES-7200(config)# interface GigabitEthernetfastethernet 0/0
DES-7200(config-if)# no shutdown
DES-7200(config-if)# end
DES-7200#
%VRRP-6-STATECHANGE: GigabitEthernetFastEthernet 0/0 Grp 2 state Master -> Init
DES-7200#
```

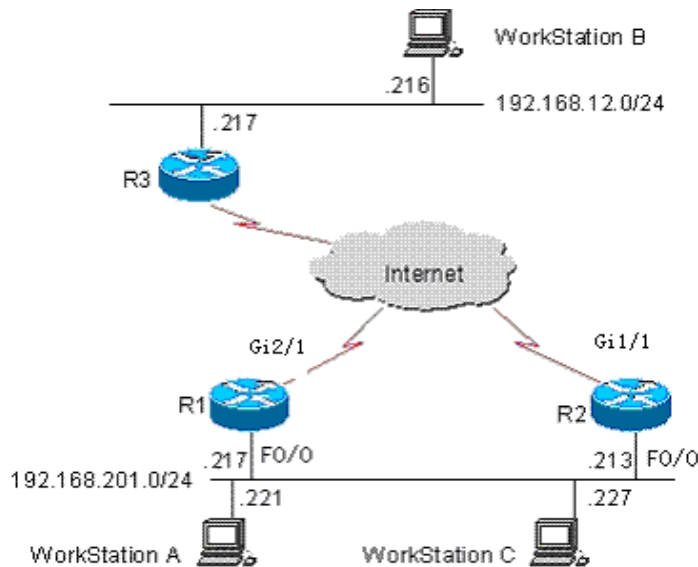


The above displayed information indicates the VRRP group status on GigabitEthernet 0/0 is shifting among Master, Backup and Init.

## 52.5 Example of Typical VRRP Configuration

As shown in Figure 47-4, the VRRP backup group is configured on R1 and R2 to provide VRRP services for 192.168.201.0 /24. R3 is not configured with VRRP but just common routing functions. The following shows the VRRP configuration of R1 and R2.

**Figure 52-4** Network connection with VRRP



In the configuration example below, the configurations of device R3 remain unchanged, The configuration on device R3 is shown below:

```
DES-7200# configure terminal
DES-7200(config)# !
!
hostname "R3"
!
!
!
interface gigabitEthernetFastEthernet 0/0
DES-7200(config-if)# no switchport
DES-7200(config-if)# ip address 192.168.12.217 255.255.255.0
DES-7200(config-if)# exit
DES-7200(config)# !
interface GigabitEthernet 1/1
DES-7200(config-if)# no switchport
DES-7200(config-if)# ip address 60.154.101.5 255.255.255.0
DES-7200(config-if)# exit
DES-7200(config)# interface GigabitEthernet 2/1
DES-7200(config-if)# no switchport
DES-7200(config-if)# ip address 202.101.90.61 255.255.255.0
```



```

DES-7200(config-if)# exit!
DES-7200(config)# router ospf 1
DES-7200(config-router)# network 202.101.90.0 0.0.0.255 area 10
DES-7200(config-router)# network 192.168.12.0 0.0.0.255 area 10
DES-7200(config-router)# network 60.154.101.0 0.0.0.255 area 10
DES-7200(config-router)# !
!
end

```

### 52.5.1 Example of Single VRRP Backup Group Configuration

Establish the connections according to Figure 47-4. In this configuration example, user workstation group (192.168.201.0/24) uses the backup group that is composed of routers R1 and R2, and points its gateway to the virtual router IP address 192.168.201.1 of the backup group. The remote user workstation group (in network 192.168.12.0 /24) is accessed via the virtual router 192.168.201.1. Here router R1 is set as the VRRP Master device. In normal cases, device R1 is the active router to function as the gateway (192.168.201.). When device R1 becomes unreachable due to power-off or failure, device R2 takes its place to function as the gateway (192.168.201.1). The configurations for devices R1 and R2 are described as follows.

Configurations on device R1:

```
DES-7200# configure terminal
```

DES-7200(config)# Configurations on router device R1:

```

!
!
hostname "R1"
!
!
interface gigabitEthernetFastEthernet 0/0
DES-7200(config-if)# no switchport
DES-7200(config-if)# ip address 192.168.201.217 255.255.255.0
DES-7200(config-if)# vrrp 1 priority 120
DES-7200(config-if)# vrrp 1 timers advertise 3
DES-7200(config-if)# vrrp 1 ip 192.168.201.1
DES-7200(config-if)# exit!
DES-7200(config)# interface GigabitEthernet 2/1
DES-7200(config-if)# no switchport
DES-7200(config-if)# ip address 202.101.90.63 255.255.255.0
DES-7200(config-if)# exit !
DES-7200(config)# router ospf 1
DES-7200(config-router)# network 202.101.90.0 0.0.0.255 area 10
DES-7200(config-router)# network 192.168.201.0 0.0.0.255 area 10

```

Configurations on device R2:



```
DES-7200# configure terminal
DES-7200(config)# !
```

#### Configurations on router device R2:

```
!
hostname "R2"
!
interface GigabitEthernetFastEthernet 0/0
DES-7200(config-if)# no switchport
DES-7200(config-if)# ip address 192.168.201.213 255.255.255.0
DES-7200(config-if)# vrrp 1 ip 192.168.201.1
DES-7200(config-if)# vrrp 1 timers advertise 3
DES-7200(config-if)# exit
DES-7200(config)# !
interface GigabitEthernet 1/1
DES-7200(config-if)# no switchport
DES-7200(config-if)# ip address 60.154.101.3 255.255.255.0
DES-7200(config-if)# exit!
DES-7200(config)# !
router ospf 1
DES-7200(config-router)# network 60.154.101.0 0.0.0.255 area 10
DES-7200(config-router)# network 192.168.201.0 0.0.0.255 area 10
DES-7200(config-router)# !
!
end
```

As shown above, routers R1 and R2 are in the same VRRP backup group 1, point to the same virtual router IP address (192.168.201.1) and are both in the VRRP preemption mode. Since the VRRP backup group priority of device R1 is 120 but that of R2 is the default value 100, device R1 acts as the VRRP Master in normal cases.

### 52.5.2 Example of configuration to monitor interface with VRRP

Establish the connections according to Figure 47-4. In this configuration example, user workstation group (192.168.201.0/24) uses the backup group that is composed of routers R1 and R2, and points its gateway to the virtual router IP address 192.168.201.1 of the backup group. The remote user workstation group (in network 192.168.12.0 /24) is accessed via the virtual router 192.168.201.1. Here router R1 is set as the VRRP Master device. Different from the above configuration example, router R1 is configured with VRRP to monitor interface GigabitEthernet 2/1. In normal cases, device R1 is the active device to function as the gateway (192.168.201.1). When device R1 becomes unreachable due to power-off or failure, device R2 takes its place to function as the gateway (which is just the virtual device address 192.168.201.1). Especially, when the WAN interface GigabitEthernet 2/1 of device R1 is unavailable, device R1 will decrease its priority in the VRRP backup group so that device R2 has the chance to become active and function as the virtual gateway (192.168.201.1). If the WAN interface GigabitEthernet 2/1 of device R1 resumes normal,



device R1 restores its priority in the VRRP backup group, becomes active and functions as the virtual gateway once again. The configurations for devices R1 and R2 are described as follows.

#### Configurations on device R1:

```
DES-7200# configure terminal
```

#### DES-7200(config)# Configurations on router device R1 :

```
!
!
hostname "R1"
!
!
interface gigabitEthernetFastEthernet 0/0
DES-7200(config-if)# no switchport
DES-7200(config-if)# ip address 192.168.201.217 255.255.255.0
DES-7200(config-if)# vrrp 1 priority 120
DES-7200(config-if)# vrrp 1 timers advertise 3
DES-7200(config-if)# vrrp 1 ip 192.168.201.1
DES-7200(config-if)# vrrp 1 track GigabitEthernet 2/1 30
DES-7200(config-if)# exit
DES-7200(config)# !

interface GigabitEthernet 2/1
DES-7200(config-if)# no switchport
DES-7200(config-if)# ip address 202.101.90.63 255.255.255.0
DES-7200(config-if)# exit !
DES-7200(config)# router ospf 1
DES-7200(config-router)# network 202.101.90.0 0.0.0.255 area 10
DES-7200(config-router)# network 192.168.201.0 0.0.0.255 area 10
DES-7200(config-router)# !
!
end
```

#### Configurations on device R2:

```
DES-7200# configure terminal
```

```
DES-7200(config)# !
```

```
!
```

```
hostname "R2"
```

```
!
```

```
interface gigabitEthernetFastEthernet 0/0
DES-7200(config-if)# no switchport
DES-7200(config-if)# ip address 192.168.201.213 255.255.255.0
DES-7200(config-if)# vrrp 1 ip 192.168.201.1
DES-7200(config-if)# vrrp 1 timers advertise 3
DES-7200(config-if)# exit
DES-7200(config)# !

interface GigabitEthernet 1/1
DES-7200(config-if)# no switchport
DES-7200(config-if)# ip address 60.154.101.3 255.255.255.0
DES-7200(config-if)# exit !
```



```

DES-7200(config)# router ospf 1
DES-7200(config-router)# network 60.154.101.0 0.0.0.255 area 10
DES-7200(config-router)# network 192.168.201.0 0.0.0.255 area 10
DES-7200(config-router)# !
!
end

```

As shown above, devices R1 and R2 are in the same VRRP backup group 1, use the same VRRP backup group authentication mode (no authentication), point to the same virtual IP address (192.168.201.1) and are both in the VRRP preemption mode. The VRRP Advertisement interval for devices R1 and R2 are 3 seconds. In normal cases, since the VRRP backup group priority of device R1 is 120 but that of R2 is the default value 100, device R1 acts as the VRRP Master in normal cases. If device R1 in the Master status finds its WAN interface GigabitEthernet 2/1 is unavailable, device R1 decreases its priority in the VRRP backup group from 90 to 30, so that device R2 can become the Master. If router R1 finds its WAN interface GigabitEthernet 2/1 becomes available later, it increases its priority in VRRP backup group from 30 to 120, so that device R1 becomes the master once again.

### 52.5.3 Example of Multiple VRRP Backup Groups

In addition to the single backup group, the DES-7200 SERIES also allows multiple VRRP backup groups configured on the same Ethernet interface. There are obvious benefits for the use of multiple backup groups. It is possible to implement load balancing yet mutual backup to offer more stable and reliable network services.

Establish the connections according to Figure 47-4. In this configuration example, user workstation group (192.168.201.0/24) is using the backup group that is composed of routers R1 and R2. Some user workstations (such as A) point its gateway to the virtual IP address 192.168.201.1 of backup group 1, while the others (such as C) point its gateway to the virtual IP address 192.168.201.2 of backup group 2. Device 1 acts as the master in backup group 1 and standby in backup group 1; device 2 acts as the standby in backup group 2 and master in backup group 1. The configurations for devices R1 and R2 are described as follows.

Configurations on device R1:

```
DES-7200# configure terminal
```

```
DES-7200(config)# configuration of router device R1 :
```

```

!
!
hostname "R1"
!
interface gigabitEthernetFastEthernet 0/0
DES-7200(config-if)# no switchport
DES-7200(config-if)# ip address 192.168.201.217 255.255.255.0
DES-7200(config-if)# vrrp 1 timers advertise 3
DES-7200(config-if)# vrrp 1 ip 192.168.201.1

```



```

DES-7200(config-if)# vrrp 2 priority 120
DES-7200(config-if)# vrrp 2 timers advertise 3
DES-7200(config-if)# vrrp 2 ip 192.168.201.2
DES-7200(config-if)# vrrp 2 track GigabitEthernet 2/1 30
DES-7200(config-if)# exit
DES-7200(config)# !
interface GigabitEthernet 2/1
DES-7200(config-if)# no switchport
DES-7200(config-if)# ip address 202.101.90.63 255.255.255.0
DES-7200(config-if)# exit !
DES-7200(config-router)# router ospf
DES-7200(config-router)# network 202.101.90.0 0.0.0.255 area 10
DES-7200(config-router)# network 192.168.201.0 0.0.0.255 area 10
DES-7200(config-router)# !
!
end

```

### Configurations on device R2:

```
DES-7200# configure terminal
```

### DES-7200(config)# Configurations on device R2

```

!
!
hostname "R2"
!
!
interface Loopback 0
DES-7200(config-if)# ip address 20.20.20.5 255.255.255.0
DES-7200(config-if)# exit
DES-7200(config)# !
interface GigabitEthernetFastEthernet 0/0
DES-7200(config-if)# no switchport
DES-7200(config-if)# ip address 192.168.201.213 255.255.255.0
DES-7200(config-if)# vrrp 1 ip 192.168.201.1
DES-7200(config-if)# vrrp 1 timers advertise 3
DES-7200(config-if)# vrrp 1 priority 120
DES-7200(config-if)# vrrp 2 ip 192.168.201.2
DES-7200(config-if)# vrrp 2 timers advertise 3
DES-7200(config-if)# exit!
DES-7200(config)# interface GigabitEthernet 1/1
DES-7200(config-if)# no switchport
DES-7200(config-if)# ip address 60.154.101.3 255.255.255.0
DES-7200(config-if)# exit!
DES-7200(config)# router ospf
DES-7200(config-router)# network 60.154.101.0 0.0.0.255 area 10
DES-7200(config-router)# network 192.168.201.0 0.0.0.255 area 10
DES-7200(config-router)# !
!
!

```



It is shown that devices R1 and R2 are mutual backup, and the two are acting as the master devices in VRRP backup groups 1 and 2 respectively to provide different virtual gateway functions.

## 52.6 Diagnosing and Troubleshooting VRRP

---

You can troubleshoot VRRP failures by viewing configuration and debugging information. Here is analysis of some common faults.

Symptom: Unable to ping the virtual IP address

Analysis:

- Ensure at least one router in the backup group is active.
- If it is possible to ping the virtual IP address from other network devices, the causes may be the VRRP status changing needs some time (although brief). Execute the `show vrrp` command to check the VRRP information and confirm this.
- If the local network device is in the same network segment of the virtual router, check whether ARP table of the local network device contains the APP entry for the IP virtual address. If no, check the network lines.
- If the local network device is not in the same network segment of the virtual router, make sure the local network device has a router to the virtual IP address.

Symptom: multiple master devices in the same VRRP backup group

Analysis:

- In the same VRRP backup group, the Ethernet interfaces of those routers are in different VRRP group authentication modes.
- In the same VRRP backup group, the Ethernet interfaces of those routers are in the plaintext password VRRP group authentication mode, but the authentication strings are not the same.
- In the same VRRP backup group, the cables the Ethernet interfaces of some routers may be disconnected, since the routers fail to detect that.
- In the same VRRP backup group, the VRRP advertisement interval is inconsistent and the timer learning function is not configured.
- In the same VRRP backup group, the virtual IP address for the routers are not the same.







# 53

## RERP Configuration

### 53.1 RERP Overview

---

#### 53.1.1 Understanding RERP

---

For the loop blocking and link recovery in core ring network, currently the OSPF and BGP4 are mostly used for the implementation. For complex network, the link recovery may take tens of seconds. If MSTP is used for loop blocking in the link layer, the STP needs to advertise level by level by the spanning tree, the network convergence may take rather long time in case of complicated network.

The Rapid Ethernet Ring Protection Protocol (RERP) is a special layer-2 link redundancy backup protocol designed for core Ethernet. The loop blocking and link recovery for the RERP are centrally implemented on the master device and the non-master devices directly report their link conditions to the master device without additional processing on the non-master devices; however the STP works with the spanning tree to advertise level by level by the spanning tree and determine the final link status through level-by-level calculations. So, the loop block and recovery with the RERP are faster than those with the STP. Based on the above difference, the link recovery of RERP in ideal environment may be completed in several microseconds.

The RERP involves the following key concepts: ring, Region, Master, Backup, Transit, Primary Port, Secondary Port, and control vlan. They are explained through the following typical applications.

**Note**

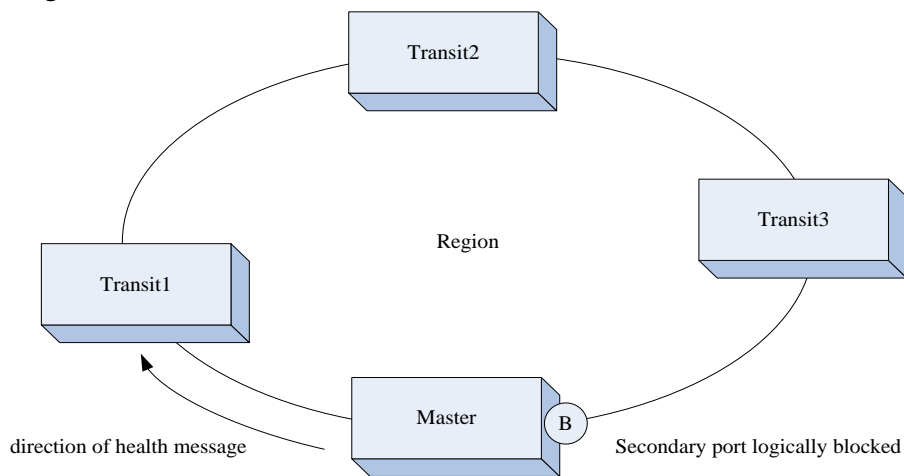
As an alternative of STP in the core ring network, the RERP cannot be turned on at the same time with the STP in the actual configurations. Otherwise, unexpected results may produce.

---



### 53.1.2 Typical Applications

Figure 53-1



As shown above, the four devices are all core Ethernet devices and form a ring core network. In such a topology, each device has two and only two interface to be connected with the ring. This type of ring is called a RERP region, identified uniquely with an integer. Each RERP region can have only one Master and one Backup specified. The others are all Transit. Each device must be specified with the region and configured with the master/backup port.

#### Master:

The link is a TRUNK connection. The ring has an independent VLAN as the control VLAN, which is specially used to transmit various control messages defined by the RERP. The other VLANs are the data VLANs and used for the transmission of dataflow.

The two ports of the master connected to the ring are called the primary port and secondary port respectively, whether the primary port sends the Hello message outside on regular basis.

#### Loop blocking:

In normal cases, the master device prevents the generation of layer-2 loop in the whole ring by blocking the secondary port.

#### Link interruption:

When a link fails in the Ethernet ring (the link between Transit1 and Transit2 is broken, for example), both Transit1 and Transit2 may recognize this condition in the link, and advertise a LINK DOWN message via the control VLAN to the master. When the master receives it, it clears the layer-2 forwarding table information related with its data VLAN, and sends the FLUSH NOW message to notify all control devices to clear all data VLAN related layer-2 forwarding information. At the same time, the BLOCK status turns into the FORWARDING status.



**Link recovery:**

When the interrupted link recovers in the Ethernet (the one between Transit1 and Transit2 recovers normal, for example), Transit1 and Transit2 recognize the link recovery information, and make the ports of the recovery link ends in the BLOCK status, to forbid forwarding any messages. Then, they send the LINK UP advertisement to the master. The master receives it and turns the secondary interface in the BLOCK status, and then sends FLUSH NOW message to notify all controlled device to clear all data VLAN related layer-2 address table information. When Transit1 and Transit2 find the link recovery devices receive the FLUSH NOW message, they clear the layer-2 address table information in all data VLAN and then change the ports in BLOCK status into the FORWARDING status.

**Device abnormality detection:**

When the primary port of the master sends the HELLO message on regular basis (at an adjustable time interval, in 100 ms), if the secondary interface of the master does not receive the HELLO message from the primary port of the master, it considers the devices on the ring abnormal. Now, the master clears the data VLAN related layer-2 forwarding table information and sends the FLUSH NOW message to notify all controlled device to clear the DATA VLAN layer-2 forwarding table information, and then changes the BLOCK status of the secondary port into the FORWARDING status.

When the secondary port of the master receives the HELLO message from the primary interface, it immediately turns the secondary port to the BLOCK status, and then sends the FLUSH NOW message to notify the controlled devices to clear the layer-2 address table information in all data VLANs.

**Master failure detection:**

The user can specify a secondary device as the backup master. When the backup master does not detect the HELLO message sent from the master, it considers failure of the master and escalates itself to the master.

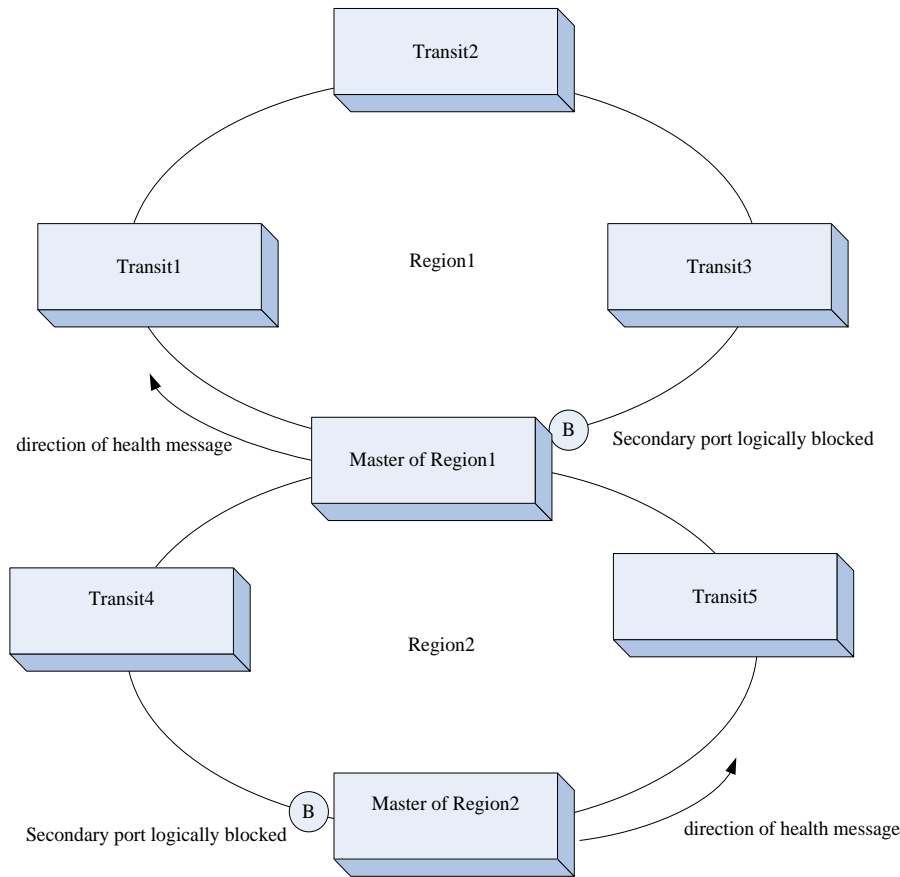
After the backup master switches to the master device, if it receives the message from the original master, it transfers the control to the original master and degrades again to the backup master.

The RERP supports tangent multiple rings. In other words, it allows multiple rings to share one device but does not support intersection of multiple rings.

Because the intersection of multiple rings may cause rings among adjacent devices, the user shall pay attention to the topology planning in deploying the RERP.



Figure 53-2



Configuring RERP

The following sections describe how to configure CPU Protect.

- RERP defaults
- Configure global RERP
- Configure RERP detection interval
- Configure RERP detection failure period
- Configure RERP region
- Configure RERP region role
- Configure RERP region control VLAN
- Configure RERP primary/secondary port

53.1.3 Default RERP Configuration

Global RERP status	DISABLE
RERP detection interval	1S
RERP failure time	3S



Precautions before Configuration:

- The RERP and STP are exclusive. In other words, if the RERP is configured, the STP shall be turned off.
- The refresh failure waiting time and the detection failure time are always the same and equal to the failure time.
- If the Transit and Backup do not receive the HELLO message from the Master, they will use the detection interval and detection failure interval that are configured on the local machine. If the HELLO message is received from the master, the master configurations will be used to keep consistent protocol operations on the ring network.
- The RERP control VLAN does not include vlan 1 and vlan 4094.
- Each RERP region must have one and only one master and at the same time at most one backup.

### 53.1.4 Configuring RERP Globally

The protocol messages can be processed normally when the global RERP is enabled.

In the global configuration mode, follow these steps to enable RERP:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>rerp enable</b>	Turn on the global RERP function switch.
DES-7200(config)# <b>end</b>	Return to the privileged mode.

The **no** option of the command turns off the global RERP.



#### Note

After setting master-slave port, the port forwarding status is controlled no matter whether RERP global switch is turned on. For example, when RERP is disabled, the slave port of master will still in the blocked status to prevent the rings due to parameter configuration error.

### 53.1.5 Configuring RERP Detection Interval

The Master needs to send the RERP detection message on regular basis to check the health conditions of the loop. In the configuration mode, follows these steps to set the RERP detection interval:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>rerp hello-interval</b> <i>interval</i>	Configure the detection interval within the range 1-6s, 1s by default.



Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>end</b>	Return to the privileged mode.

The **no** option of the command restores the value to its default.

### 53.1.6 Configuring RERP Failure Time

If the secondary port of the master does not receive the detection message from the primary port in a certain period, it considers the fault of the loop, and then the master forces the secondary port to enter the learning forwarding status. In addition, the address refresh waiting time of the Transit and Backup is also that value.

In the global configuration mode, follow these steps to configure the RERP failure time:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>rerp fail-interval</b> <i>num</i>	Configure the failure interval within the range 3-18s, 3 s by default.
DES-7200(config)# <b>end</b>	Return to the privileged mode.

The **no** option of the command restores the value to its default.



#### Note

The failure interval must be greater than the detection interval.

### 53.1.7 Configuring RERP Region

An RERP region is uniquely identified with an integer, and up to 64 regions can be configured on a machine. While the RERP region is configured, it also specifies the device to support the region and enter the RERP region configuration mode.

In the privileged mode, follow these steps to configure the RERP region:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>RERP region</b> <i>num</i>	Create an RERP region and enter the RERP region configuration mode. The range for "num" is 1-64.

### 53.1.8 Configuring RERP Region Role

Each device can play only one role in an RERP region, and each RERP region allows the configuration of only one master.



In the global configuration mode, follow these steps to configure the RERP region role:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>RERP region</b> <i>num</i>	Create an RERP region and enter the RERP domain configuration mode at the same time.
DES-7200(config-rerp)# <b>role</b> [ <b>master</b>   <b>backup</b>   <b>transit</b> ]	Configure the role of the device in the RERP domain.

### 53.1.9 Configuring RERP Region Control VLAN

Each RERP can have one and only one control VLAN specified. This VLAN can be used to transmit the RERP messages only, and is not used too transmit data messages.

In the global configuration mode, follow these steps to configure the RERP region control VLAN:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>RERP region</b> <i>num</i>	Create an RERP region and enter the RERP domain configuration mode at the same time.
DES-7200(config-rerp)# <b>ctrl-vlan</b> <i>vid</i>	Configure the control VLAN with VID range 2-4,094.



#### Note

Since the RERP only blocks the Ethernet frame of data VLAN, please do not configure SVI for the control VLAN; otherwise, it may lead to the broadcast storm of the control VLAN.

In addition, the VLAN that has been created cannot be configured as the control VLAN, and the VLAN that is configured as the control VLAN cannot be created.

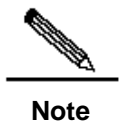
### 53.1.10 Configuring RERP Primary/Secondary Port

Each device must have one and only one primary port and secondary port in an RERP region. Ports cannot be shared between different RERP regions on the same device.

In the global configuration mode, follow these steps to configure the RERP primary/secondary port:



Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>rerp region</b> <i>num</i>	Create an RERP region and enter the RERP domain configuration mode at the same time.
DES-7200(config-rerp)# <b>port primary-port interface</b> <i>interface-id</i> <b>secondary-port interface</b> <i>interface-id</i>	Specify the primary/secondary port of the device in the RERP domain.

**Note**

The RERP primary/secondary port does not support layer-3 interface or the member interface of the aggregate port. In addition, if the user configures the primary/secondary port and then configure it as the routing interface or aggregate member port, this may delete the primary/secondary member port.

## 53.2 Viewing RERP Information

The following RERP-related information can be viewed:

- View the RERP configuration and status of the device

### 53.2.1 Viewing the RERP Configuration and Status of the Device

In the privileged mode, run the following command to view the RERP configuration and status of the device:

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>show rerp</b>	View the RERP configuration and status of the device

In the example below, the **show rerp** command is used to view the RERP configuration and status of the device.

```
DES-7200# show rerp
rerp state           : disable
rerp hello interval : 1
rerp fail interval  : 18
rerp local bridge    : 00d0.f822.89b2
-----
region 64
region master        : none
ctrl-vlan            : 4001
role                 : transit
primary-port         : GigabitEthernet 3/12(down)
secondary-port       : GigabitEthernet 3/8(down)
```



# 54

## RLDP Configuration

### 54.1 RLDP Overview

#### 54.1.1 Understanding RLDP

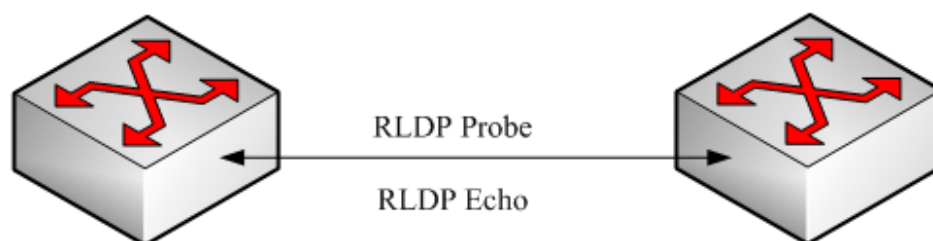
The Rapid Link Detection Protocol (RLDP) is one of D-Link's proprietary link protocol designed to detect Ethernet link fault quickly.

General Ethernet link detection mechanism only makes use of the status of the physical connections and detects the connectivity of the link via the auto-negotiation of the physical layer. This detection mechanism has restrictions and sometimes cannot provide reliable link detection information for the user. For example, if the optical fiber receiving line pair on the optical interface is misconnected, due to the existence of the optical converter, the related port of the device is "linkup" physically but actually the corresponding layer-2 link cannot work for communications. Here is another example. There is an intermediate network between two Ethernet devices. Due to the existence of the network transmission relay devices, the same problem may occur if those relay devices are faulty.

The RLDP enables easy detection of Ethernet device link fault, including the one-way link fault, two-way link fault and loop link fault.

The RLDP implements the detection by exchanging the RLDP messages at the two ends of the link, as shown below:

Figure 54-1



The RLDP defines two protocol messages: Probe message and Echo message. The RLDP sends the Probe message of this port to the port with RLDP configured and in linkup status on regular basis, and waits for the Echo message from the neighbor port and waits for the Probe message sent by the neighbor ports. If a link is correct both physically and logically, a



port shall be able to receive the Echo message of the neighbor port as well as the Probe message of the neighbor port. Otherwise, the link is considered abnormal.

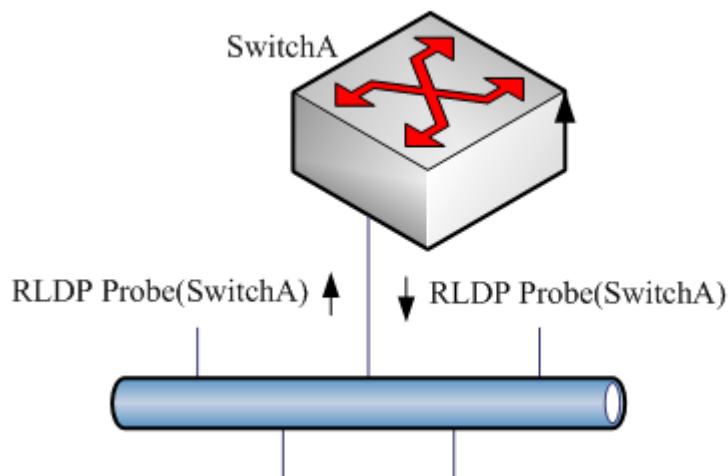
**Note**

To make use of the one-way detection and two-way detection functions of the RLDP, it is necessary to ensure the RLDP is enabled on the ports at both ends of the link. And, it is not allowed for a port with RLDP enabled to connect multiple neighbor ports. Otherwise, the RLDP cannot detect the health conditions of every neighbor link.

### 54.1.2 Typical Application

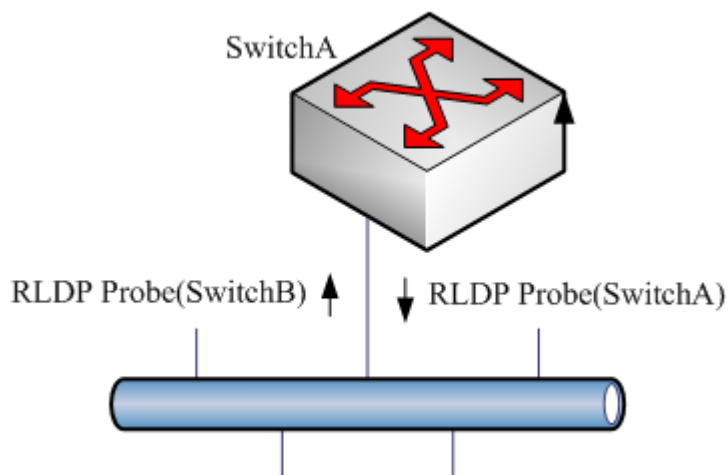
**Loop detection:**

Figure 54-2 Loop detection

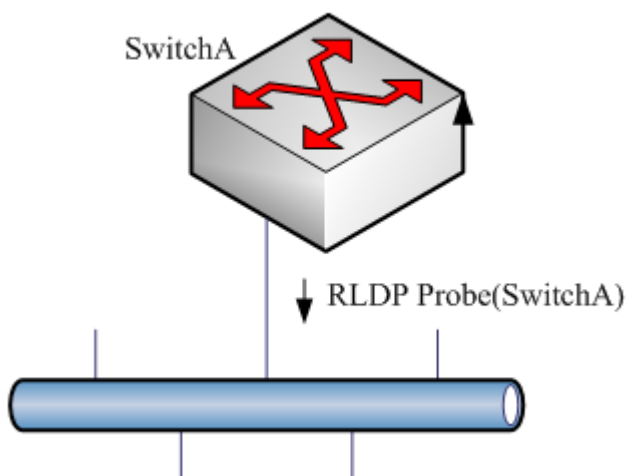


The so-called loop fault means that a loop appears on the links connected with the port. As shown above, on a port the RLDP receives the RLDP message sent from its machine, so the port is considered as loop fault. So, the RLDP deals with the fault according to the user configurations, including alarming, setting port violation, turning off the SVI with that port, turning off the port learning forwarding, and more.



**One-way link detection:****Figure 54-3** One-way link detection

The so-called one-way link detection means the link connected with the port can receive message only or send messages only (due to misconnection of the optical receiving line pair, for example). As shown above, the RLDP only receives the detection message from the neighbor port on a port, so it is considered one-way link fault. So, the RLDP deals with the fault accordingly according to the user configurations. In addition, if the port cannot receive any RLDP detection message, it is also considered one-way link fault.

**Two-way link detection:****Figure 54-4** Two-way link detection



This means that fault occurs at the frame transmission/receiving at both ends of the link. As shown above, the port of the device sends the RLDP probe message but has never received the Echo message or the Probe message from the neighbors. So, it is considered two-way link fault. From the nature of the fault, the two-way fault actually includes the one-way fault.

**Note**

If the party at one of the two link ends has not enabled the RLDP, the diagnosis also shows two-way or one-way link fault. So, in configuring two-way link detection or one-way link detection, the administrator shall make sure that the RLDP is enabled at both ends to avoid the incorrect diagnosis information.

## 54.2 Configuring RLDP

The following sections describe how to configure CPU Protect.

- RLDP defaults
- Configure global RLDP
- Configure port RLDP
- Configure RLDP detection interval
- Configure the RLDP maximum detection times
- Restore the RLDP status of the port

### 54.2.1 RLDP defaults

Global RLDP status	DISABLE
Port RLDP status	DISABLE
Detection interval	2S
Maximum detection times	3

**Caution**

- The RLDP can be configured only on the basis of the switching interface (including AP) and the routing interface.
- All RLDP frames are untagged.
- In the RLDP fault processing type, the block function and the STP are mutually exclusive. In other words, if the fault processing type configured on the port is "block", it is recommended to disable STP; otherwise, since the STP cannot recognize one-way link, possibly the STP allows port forwarding but the RLDP is configured with port blocking.



### 54.2.2 Configuring RLDLP Globally

The RLDLP works on the port only when the global RLDLP is enabled.

In the global configuration mode, follow these steps to enable RLDLP:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>rldp enable</b>	Turn on the global RLDLP function switch.
DES-7200(config)# <b>end</b>	Return to the privileged mode.

The **no** option of the command turns off the global *RLDLP*.

### 54.2.3 Configuring RLDLP on the Port

The RLDLP operation is port-based, so the user needs to explicitly configure which ports shall run RLDLP. In configuring the port RLDLP, it is required to specify the diagnosis type and the troubleshooting method for the port at the same time. The diagnosis types include unidirection-detect, bidirection-detect and loop-detect. The troubleshooting methods include warning, block, shutdown-port, and shutdown-svi.

In the configuration mode, follow these steps to configure the RLDLP on the port:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>interface</b> <i>interface-id</i>	Enter the interface mode.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>rldp port</b> <b>{unidirection-detect   bidirection-detect</b> <b>  loop-detect }</b> <b>{warning   shutdown-svi   shutdown-port</b> <b>  block}</b>	Enable the RLDLP on the port and configure the diagnosis type and troubleshooting method at the same time.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>end</b>	Return to the privileged mode.

The **no** option of the command disables the RLDLP on the port and the configured detection types one by one.

In the example below, the RLDLP is configured on GigabitEthernet 0/5, and multiple diagnosis types and troubleshooting methods are specified:

```
DES-7200# configure terminal
DES-7200(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 0/5
DES-7200(config-if)# rldp port unidirection-detect
shutdown-svi
DES-7200(config-if)# rldp port bidirection-detect warning
DES-7200(config-if)# rldp port loop-detect block
DES-7200(config-if)# end
DES-7200# show rldp interface gigabitEthernet 0/5
```



```

port state      : normal
local bridge    : 00d0.f822.33ac
neighbor bridge : 0000.0000.0000
neighbor port   :
unidirection detect information:
action : shutdown svi
state  : normal
bidirection detect information :
action : warnning
state  : normal
loop detect information      :
action : block
state  : normal

```

Several precautions in configuring port detection:

- The routing interface does not support the shutdown-svi error handling method, so this method is not executed in case of the occurring of detection error.
- In configuring loop detection, the neighbor devices downward connected with the port cannot enable the RLDP detection; otherwise, the port cannot have correct detection.
- If the block method is configured on the aggregated port and the link detection error happens, do not change the member port relations of the aggregate port before the port reset detection; otherwise, the forwarding status of the member interface may have unexpected effects of forwarding status.
- If the RLDP detects link error, alarm information will be given. The user can send the alarm information to the log server by configuring the log function. At least 3 levels of log shall be ensured.

#### 54.2.4 Configuring RLDP Detection Interval

The port with the RLDP function enabled will send the RLDP Probe messages on a regular basis.

In the global configuration mode, follow these steps to configure the RLDP detection interval:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>rldp detect-interval</b> interval	Configure the detection interval within the range 2-15s, 3s by default.
DES-7200(config)# <b>end</b>	Return to the privileged mode.

The **no** option of the command restores the value to its default.



### 54.2.5 Configuring the Maximum RLDP Detection Times

If the port with RLDP enabled cannot receive messages from neighbors in the maximum detection period (maximum detection times X detection interval), that port will be diagnosed as faulty. See the Overview for details of the fault types.

In the global configuration mode, follow these steps to configure the RERP maximum detection times:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>rdp detect-max</b> Num	Configure the maximum detection times, num range 2-10, 2 by default.
DES-7200(config)# <b>end</b>	Return to the privileged mode.

The **no** option of the command restores the value to its default.

**Note**

The maximum detection times only take effect in the unidirectional link detection and bidirectional link detection, and will not take effect if only loop detection is enabled on a port.

### 54.2.6 Restoring the RLDP Status of the Port

The port with shutdown-port troubleshooting method configured cannot resume the RLDP detection actively after a fault occurs. If the user confirms the fault removed, run the recovery command to restart the RLDP on the shutdown port. This command sometimes may make the other ports with detection errors resume.

In the privileged mode, follow these steps to resume the RLDP detection of the port:

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>rdp reset</b>	Make any port with RLDP detection failure resume the detection.

**Note**

The **errdisable recover** command can be used in the global configuration mode to restart, instantly or at fixed time, the RLDP detection of the port that is set violation by RLP. It is worth mentioning that when there are some relay devices between rldp ports, if you use errdisable recover interval to restore the fault timely, you need to set the value of rldp detection time greater than that of errdisable recover interval, that is, the value of detect-interval\* detect-max total time is greater than that of errdisable recover interval to prevent error judgment.



## 54.3 Viewing RLDP Information

The following RLDP-related information can be viewed:

- View the RLDP status of all ports
- View the RLDP status of the specified port

### 54.3.1 Viewing the RLDP Status of All Ports

In the privileged mode, run the following commands to view the RLDP global configuration and the port detection information with RLDP detection configured:

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>show rldp</b>	View the RLDP global configuration and the port detection information with RLDP detection configured

In the example below, the **show rldp** command is used to view the detection information of all RLDP ports:

```
DES-7200# show rldp
rldp state           : enable
rldp hello interval  : 2
rldp max hello       : 3
rldp local bridge    : 00d0.f8a6.0134
-----
interface GigabitEthernet 0/1
port state:normal
neighbor bridge      : 00d0.f800.41b0
neighbor port        : GigabitEthernet 0/2
unidirection detect information:
action               : shutdown svi
state                : normal

interface GigabitEthernet 0/24
port state:error
neighbor bridge      : 0000.0000.0000
neighbor port        :
bidirection detect information :
action               : warnning
state                : error
```

As shown above, port GigabitEthernet 0/1 is configured with unidirection detection. No error is detected now, and the port status is normal. Port GigabitEthernet 0/24 is configured with bidirection detection, and bidirection fault is detected.



### 54.3.2 Viewing the RLDP Status of the Specified Port

In the privileged mode, run the following command to view the RLDP detection information of the specified port:

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>show rldp interface</b> interface-id	View the RLDP detection information of interface-id.

In the example below, the **show rldp interface GigabitEthernet 0/1** command is used to view the RLDP detection information of port fas0/1:

```
DES-7200# show rldp int GigabitEthernet 0/1
port state      :error
local bridge    : 00d0.f8a6.0134
neighbor bridge : 00d0.f822.57b0
neighbor port   : GigabitEthernet 0/1
unidirection detect information:
action: shutdown svi
state : normal
bidirection detect information :
action : warnning
state : normal
loop detect information  :
action: shutdown svi
state : error
```

As shown above, the port GigabitEthernet 0/1 is configured with three detection types: unidirection detection, bidirection detection and loop detection. The troubleshooting methods are shutdown-svi and warning. Error is found in loop detection so the current port status is error. Accordingly, the SVI of the port is shutdown.







# 55

## TPP Configuratuin

### 55.1 TPP Overview

---

The Topology Protection Protocol (TPP) is a topology stability protection protocol. The network topology is rather fragile. Illegal attacks in the network may cause abnormal CPU utilization on network devices, frame path blocked, etc. These are apt to cause network topology turbulence. The topology protection aims to stabilize the network topology by detecting the abnormalities (high CPU utilization, frame buffer abnormal, etc.) and detecting the abnormalities of neighbor devices. The interaction with neighbor devices is implemented by sending specific abnormality advertisement. This function has rather high priority and can effectively prevent network topology turbulence.

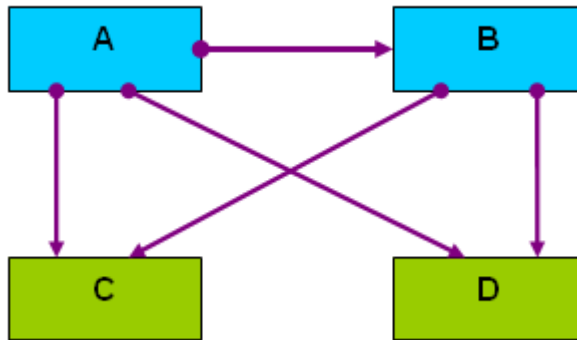
### 55.2 TPP Application

---

The topology protection is generated to address the network topology turbulence that may be caused in the MSTP or VRRP and other distributed network protocol. The MSTP, VRRP and other protocols work with the message notification mechanism to automatically maintain the network topological structure and automatically adapt to the topological change in the network. This on the other hand results in the aptness to attacks. When malicious network attacks arrive, transient interruption of timed messages may be caused due to high CPU utilization or frame path blocking, causing error fluctuation of the network topology and great harm to the normal communication in the network. The topology protection function minimizes such unnecessary fluctuations. It works with the other distributed protocols (MSTP, VRRP, etc.) to make the network more stable and reliable.



Figure 55-1



As shown in the above dual-core topology, A and B are the L3 convergence devices, and C and D are the L2 access devices. A is the MSTP root bridge. The topology protection functions of all the devices are enabled.

The CPU of the L3 convergence device A is extremely busy due to network attack, resulting in that the BPDU packets cannot be sent. The topology protection function detects the exception and sends the exception advertisement packet to its neighbors. B, C, and D all receive the advertisement and adopt the anti-vibration measures.

he CPU of B is extremely busy under the attack of a large number of packets and cannot send or receive packets normally. After detecting the exception, B sends the exception advertisement to all its neighbors. A receives the exception advertisement but does not process it further because B finds the exception has not effect on B according to its source. The downstream C and D receive the exception advertisement and perform further defense activities to ensure the reliability of the network topology, because they find the exception will affect the topology calculation.

### 55.3 TPP Configuration

Configuring TPP involves global function configuration and port function configuration. The global function configuration is used to enable the topology protection function of the device. By default, the global topology protection function is enabled. Here, it will detect the running conditions of the local and neighbor devices and perform treatment for the abnormalities that occur. However, it does not notify the local running conditions to neighbor devices. The port function configuration is used to enable the topology protection function of the port. When the topology protection function is enabled on the port, it indicates that the opposite neighbor device is concerning about the running conditions of this machine. When the local device becomes abnormal, this will be notified to the opposite neighbor device of the port. By default, the topology protection function is disabled on all ports.



**Note**

The topology protection function is suitable for the point-to-point link network, and adjacent network devices must enable the topology protection function. Besides, during the TPP configuration, you often need to use `cpu topology-limit` to configure the threshold for CPU utilization detection. When the CPU utilization exceeds the threshold, the system generates the topology protection advertisement. We suggest a middle to high value, such as 50–70, so that the TPP can judge the network conditions more accurately. If the value is too small, the network topology may not switch when it should to switch due to TPP alarm. If the value is too large, the system may be too busy to generate the TPP alarm, causing the TPP invalid.

### 55.3.1 Configuring Topology Protection Globally

The global topology protection function is enabled by default. The **no** option of the command disables the global topology protection.

The configuration commands are as follows:

Command	Function
DES-7200> <b>enable</b>	Enter the privileged mode.
DES-7200# <b>config terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
DES-7200(config)# <b>topology guard</b>	Enable the global topology protection
DES-7200(config)# <b>end</b>	Exit to the privileged mode.
DES-7200# <b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Save the configuration.

The **no topology guard** command disables the global topology protection function on the device.

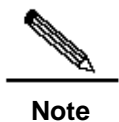
### 55.3.2 Configuring Topology Protection on the Port

The configuration commands are as follows:

Command	Function
DES-7200> <b>enable</b>	Enter the privileged mode.
DES-7200# <b>config terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
DES-7200(config)# <b>interface gi 0/1</b>	Enter the interface configuration mode.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>tp-guard port enable</b>	Enable the port topology protection function.
DES-7200(config-if)# <b>end</b>	Exit to the privileged mode.



The **no tp-guard port enable** command disables the topology protection on the port. This command is suitable only on layer-2 switching ports and routing ports. It is inapplicable to AP member ports.

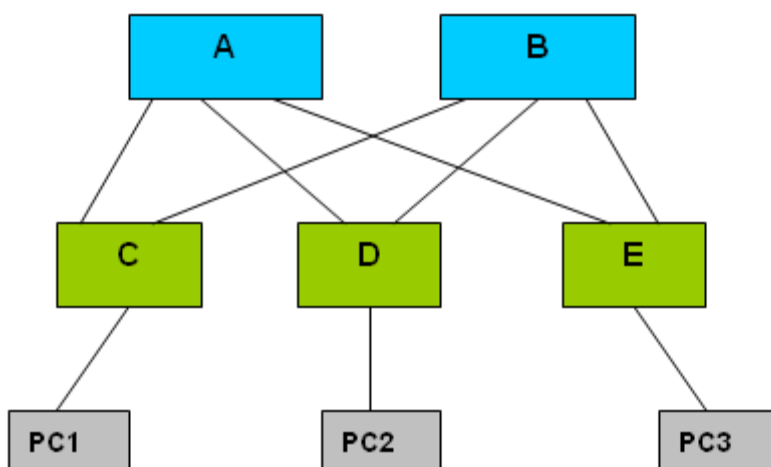
**Note**

The global topology protection is the global switch for the topology protection. When it is enabled, the device detects the running parameters of its own and monitors the running parameters of neighbor devices at the same time. When abnormality appears locally, it sends abnormality notification messages to the neighbor devices. When the port topology protection function is enabled, if abnormality occurs locally, it sends abnormality notification message to neighbor devices.

## 55.4 Typical TPP Configuration Examples

The figure below shows a dual-core networking topology:

Figure 55-2



As shown in the figure, A and B are L3 convergence devices, while C, D and E are L2 access devices.

The MSTP enabled on A, B, C, D, and E, and VRRP enabled on A and B. The topology protection function enables the MSTP and VRRP to operate more reliable, avoiding unnecessary vibration of the network topology.

The global topology protection function is enabled on A, B, C, D, and E, and the topology protection function is enabled on all the ports..



## 55.5 View TPP information

---

The following TPP-related information can be viewed:

View the TPP configuration and status of the device

### 55.5.1 Viewing the TPP configuration and status of the device

---

In the privileged mode, run the following command to view the TPP configuration and status of the device:

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>show tpp</b>	View the TPP configuration and status of the device

```
DES-7200#show tpp
tpp state          : enable
tpp local bridge   : 00d0.f822.35ad
-----
```







# 56

## Management Board Redundancy Configuration

This chapter describes how to configure management board redundancy to implement nonstop forwarding(NSF) and the system file management method of the management board.

This chapter includes:

- Understanding redundant NSF of management board
- NSF configuration

### 56.1 Understanding Redundant NSF of Management Board

---

#### 56.1.1 Overview

---

NSF means that in the network device with the structure of separating control side from forward side, the control side is planned to shut down(such as software upgrade) or not planned to shut down(such as software and hardware defect) while the forward side goes on forwarding and there is no forward halt or topology fluctuation during the reboot of control side. NSF is an important part of High Availability Architecture



#### Caution

DES-7200 series switch that support hot-plugging/unplugging of management board implements NSF in the method of management board redundancy.

In the machine which is installed with dual management boards, the master management board is used normally while the other backup one is slave management board which is a substitute for the master one when the master one is broken off or requires for the switchover. It not only enlarges exchanging capacity but also offers management redundancy to improve the stability of device. In the running process of the device, if the master management board does not work well, the device will switch to the slave one automatically without losing user's corresponding configuration, which ensures that the network runs well. Generally, slave management board does not join in the switch management but monitors the status of master one. These events below will trigger management board switchover:



- System suspend or reset due to hardware fault of master management board
- No heartbeat between two management board
- Manual switchover

---

When booting dual management boards at the same time or hot-plugging another when one board is enabled, they will do some batch synchronization configuration before they are in Active/Standby Hot status. At this time, if disturbance sources are configured, slave management board will reboot and the dual ones are in Active/Boot Hot status. If all disturbance sources are cleared in Active/Boot Hot status, the slave one will reboot too and the dual ones are in Active/Standby Hot status. If new disturbance sources are configured in Active/Boot Hot status, it will influence nothing and the dual ones are still in Active/Boot Hot status.

Now, the disturbance sources include the following entities:



#### Caution

- GVRP: GARP VLAN Registration Protocol, an application of the relationship between dynamic configuration and extended VLAN member .
- SVLAN: Super VLAN, also named as VLAN Aggregation which is a kind of management technology for optimizing IP address.
- PVLAN: Private VLAN.
- MCAST: Multicast.
- DOT1X: 802.1x, which is used to control the authentication of user network access and provide authorization and accounting function.
- PTLVLAN: Protocol VLAN, VLAN classification technology based on package protocol type. It can divide the null VLAN ID of a protocol typet to a same VLAN.

Postscript: the dual managemetn panels are in Boot Cold/Boot Cold status if the system detects the in consistency of the software version of the dual ones when starting up. In other words, they can detect the other side respectively, but they are not in Active/Standby Hot status untill the automatic upgrade is finished and the slave one is reset. Finally, the software version of the dual management boards is consistent.

---

### 56.1.2 NSF Advantages and Limitation

---

The advantages of NSF technology implementation in network service are:



1) Improving the network availability:

NSF technology maintains the information of data forwarding and user session status in the process of device change.

2) Preventing the neighbour from detecting link flap:

The forwarding side does not reboot during the switchover, so the neighbour can not detect the link status change from Down to Up.

3) Preventing routing flaps:

The forwarding side maintains to forward and communicate during the switchover and the control side forms new forwarding list quickly without apparent substitution between the new and old forwarding list, thus preventing routing flaps.

4) User sessions will not be lost:

User sessions built before the switchover will not be lost due to the synchronization in real time.

The limitations of using NSF technology in the switch are:

1) NSF works well on the premise that the software and hardware constitution of the dual management boards are consistent.

2) It should synchronize the master and slave management boards in batch to make them consistent, before which is the window period when NSF can not take effect.

3) Not all the functions related with forwarding are synchronized. The switch function can be classified into the following types according to NSF supporting degree:

a) High availability support function;

b) Real time synchronization of status information between master and slave management board. For example, it synchronizes the control side function directly related with L2 forwarding in real time.

c) High availability compatibility function

d) These features do not support high availability for the status data are not synchronized. However, when enabling high availability, these functions that starts to run from initialization can still be used after switching.

e) High availability incompatibility function



**Caution**

These features do not support high availability for the status data; are not synchronized. When enabling high availability, these functions can not be used, or it may lead to system abnormality. When enabling these functions, the system status is changed from Standby Hot to Boot Hot and the system can only synchronize running-config, such as GRRP.

### 56.1.3 Key Constitution Technology of NSF

The key technologies of implementing NSF include:

- **Status synchronization**

The master management board synchronizes the running status with the slave one in order to enable the slave one to be a substitute for the master one at any time without noticeable changes.

- **Configuration synchronization**

It synchronizes the configurations of the functions that are not associated with NAF directly. The user configuration keeps consistent during the switchover by the synchronization of running-config and startup-config.



Conducting running-config when user configuration returns to the privileged mode from the global mode, while conducting startup-config synchronization when the user executes command write or copy to save the configuration.

It can not synchronize SNMP configuration automatically untill running-config synchronization is triggered by CLI configuration method.

You can configure auto-sync mode as the following steps. In the global configuration mode, execute command **redundancy** first and then **auto-sync { standard | startup-config | running-config }**. To view the current auto-sync mode, use **show redundancy auto-sync** in the privileged mode. To configure the auto-sync interval in an unit of second, execute command **redundancy** first and then **auto-sync time-period valu**.



#### Caution

Auto-sync has three modes:

- standard: synchronizes all the system files. In other words, it synchronizes both startup-config and running-config.
- startup-config: synchronizes startup configuration file.
- running-config: synchronizes configuration file of running time.

The **no** form of the command disables all the modes, making the configuration file out of auto-sync. By default , the mode of auto-sync is standard, which synchronizes both startup-config and running-config.

## 56.2 NSF Configuration



#### Caution

In management board redundancy constitution methods, only master management board supports all CLI commands, while slave management board supports a few commands in user EXEC and privileged EXEC mode.

## 56.3 Configuring Redundant Management

This chapter includes:

- Automatic selection of master management board
- Manual selection of master management board



### **56.3.1 Automatic selection of master management board**

---

You can plug or unplug the management boards while the switch is working. Based on the current conditions, the switch automatically selects an engine for its operation without normal data switching. In case of any conditions below during you use, the master management board will be selected accordingly:

- If only one management board is plugged when the switch is started up, the switch will select it as the master management board no matter whether it is in slot M1 or M2.
- If both management boards are plugged when the switch is started up, by default, the one in slot M1 will be selected as the master and the one in slot M2 as the slave for purpose of redundancy. Related prompt message will be provided.
- If only one management board is plugged when the switch is started up, and the other management board is plugged while the switch is in normal operation, the latter will be regarded as the slave management board for purpose of redundancy, no matter whether it is slot M1 or M2. Related prompt message will be provided.
- If both management boards are plugged when the switch is started up, and one of them is unplugged while the switch is in normal operation (or one becomes abnormal): if the unplugged management board is the slave before it is unplugged (or abnormal), the switch only prompts that the slave management board is unplugged (or becomes abnormal); if the unplugged management board is the master before it is unplugged (or abnormal), the other management board will turn from slave to master, and related prompt will be provided.



**Caution**

During the normal operation of the switch, the parameters must be saved when the configurations are done; otherwise, the configuration will be lost in case of master/slave switchover.

During the startup of the device inserted with two management boards, if the main program of any management board is incomplete or absent, the switch cannot start. The symptom is that the two boards restart repeatedly or suspend during the startup process.

During the startup of the device inserted with one management board, if the management board with incomplete or absent CTRL program or main program is inserted before the success of the startup, the switch also cannot start.

In the above two cases, remove the faulty management boards. If the device is still abnormal, power off the switch and restart it.

During the batch backup of master and slave management board, do not unplug the master one, or it will lead to data flow breakoff due to system reset. If the software of dual management boards is abnormal during the period of batch backup, it will also lead to data flow breakoff due to system reset.

Please unplug one of the dual management boards quickly if you want to unplug one of them when they are working simultaneously. Slow unplugging may make the management board work abnormally. Please make sure that the management board is plugged tightly and the screw is tightened.

### 56.3.2 Manual selection of master management board

The DES-7200 series devices support dual management boards. You may select the master and slave management boards by using the commands available in CLI.

In the privileged user mode, execute the following commands to forcibly switch over the master management board:

Command	Meaning
<b>redundancy force-switchover switch</b>	This command is executed immediately without the necessity for global configuration mode.

For example, the current master management board is the one in slot M1. When the following commands are executed, the management board will be switched over to the slave management board, and the one in slot M2 becomes the master.

```
DES-7200# redundancy force-switchover switch
```



## 56.4 Reliability Configuration

This chapter includes:

- Configure the synchronization mode
- Configure the heart-beat check time
- Reset the management board

### 56.4.1 Configuring the Synchronization Mode

Run the following commands to configure the configuration files to be synchronized:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>redundancy</b>	Enter the redundancy configuration mode
DES-7200(config-rdnd)# <b>auto-sync</b> { <b>standard</b>   <b>running-config</b>   <b>startup-config</b> }	Configure the configuration files to be synchronized.
DES-7200# <b>show running-config</b>	Confirm the hot-backup started.
DES-7200# <b>show redundancy states</b>	Show the current redundancy operation mode.

### 56.4.2 Configuring the Heart-beat Check Time

Run the following command to configure the heart-beat check time between the master and slave management boards.

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>redundancy</b>	Enter the redundancy configuration mode
DES-7200(config-rdnd)# <b>switchover</b> <b>timeout</b> <i>timeout-period</i>	Control the heart-beat check time between the master and slave boards
DES-7200# <b>show running-config</b>	Confirm the hot-backup started.
DES-7200# <b>show redundancy states</b>	Show the current redundancy operation mode.

### 56.4.3 Resetting the Management Board

Run the following command to reset the specified management board or both the master and slave ones.



Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>redundancy reload</b> <b>{peer   shelf}</b>	"peer" indicates resetting the slave management board only. "shelf" indicates resetting both.







# 57

## File System Configuration

### 57.1 Overview

---

The file system is an organization for storing and managing the files on the auxiliary storage devices. The switch provides the serial Flash as the auxiliary storage device to store and manage the NM operating system files and configuration files of the switch.

The file data are stored as logs on the serial Flash and each file has a file header for recording the basic information of the file. When the storage device is full with no more space for other operations, the file system will automatically de-fragment the storage device and recycle the trash. This is for providing the sufficient space for file operations. This is done in a very short period without your perception. To make full use of the limited space, the file system provides the data compression function and the data node index.

### 57.2 Configuring File System

---

The following sections describe how to configure the file system.

- Changing Directories
- Copying Files
- Showing Directories
- Formatting the System
- Creating directories
- Moving Files
- Showing the Current Working Path
- Removing Files
- Deleting Empty Directories

#### 57.2.1 File System Configuration Guide

---

The command keyword is not case sensitive, while the file name is case sensitive, and the maximum size of the file name is 4096.

All the file names and paths do not support the wildcard.



**Caution**

It is highly recommended that the file system can not occupy over 128M on the device with great flash storage space; otherwise, the system will slow down the boot rate evidently and the waiting time of executing command **dir** to view the file for the first time in privileged mode will be increased greatly. Therefore, it is recommended to clear some useless outdated files manually after the file system has been used for some time.

### 57.2.2 Changing Directories

This shifts from the current directory to the specified directory.

In the privileged mode, use this command by performing the following steps:

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>cd</b> <i>directory</i>	Enter the specified directory.
DES-7200# <b>cd</b> <i>../</i>	Enter the higher-level directory
DES-7200# <b>cd</b> <i>/</i>	Enter the current-level directory

The following example enters the document directory in the mnt directory at the root:

```
DES-7200# cd mnt/document
```

After that, the operations will be performed in the mnt/document directory.

### 57.2.3 Copying Files

This copies the files to a directory or a file.

In the privileged mode, copy files to a directory or files by using the **cp** command:

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>cp dest</b> <i>directoryname</i> <b>sour</b> <i>filename</i>	Copy the file to the specified directory
DES-7200# <b>cp dest</b> <i>filename</i> <b>sour</b> <i>directoryname</i>	Copy the file to the specified file

The following example shows how to copy a file to a directory and another file:

```
DES-7200# cp dest ../bak sour config.text
DES-7200# cp dest con_bak.txt sour config.text
```

### 57.2.4 Showing Directories

This shows the contents of the current working directory or specified directory:



Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>dir</b>	Show the contents in the current directory
DES-7200# <b>dir</b> <i>directory</i>	Show the contents in the specified directory

The following example shows the contents of the current directory and specified directory:

```
DES-7200# dir
DES-7200# dir ../bak
```

### 57.2.5 Formating the System

In the privileged mode, format the device to be managed and operated by the file system by using the following command:

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>makefs</b> <b>dev</b> <i>devname</i> <b>fs</b> <i>fs_name</i>	Format the device named <i>dev</i> for the file system named <i>fs_name</i>

The following example formats the first MTD device in the dev directory for use by the jffs2 file system:

```
DES-7200# makefs dev /dev/mtd/mtdblock/1 fs jffs2
```

The above example formats a device in the mtdlbock directory for the jffs2 file system, clearing the data on the device for use by the file system.

### 57.2.6 Creating Directories

In the privileged mode, create the needed directory at the specified location by performing the following steps:

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>mkdir</b> <i>directoryname</i>	Create directories

The following example creates a bak directory in the root directory:

```
DES-7200# mkdir bak
```

### 57.2.7 Moving Files

In the privileged mode, move the specified files to the specified directory:

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>rename</b> <b>flash:</b> <i>old_filename</i> <b>flash:</b> <i>new_filename</i>	Name the file named as <i>old_filename</i> to <i>new_filename</i> .



### 57.2.8 Showing the Current Working Path

---

In the privileged mode, show the current working path by performing the following steps:

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>pwd</b>	Show the current working paths

### 57.2.9 Removing Files

---

In the privileged mode, delete a file permanently by performing the following step:

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>del</b> <i>filename</i>	Delete the specified file.

The following example deletes the temporary file named `large.c` in the `mnt` directory:

```
DES-7200# del mnt/large.c
```

### 57.2.10 Deleting Empty Directories

---

In the privileged mode, delete an empty directory permanently by performing the following step:

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>rmdir</b> <i>directoryname</i>	Delete an empty directory

The above example deletes an empty directory named `MNT`.

```
DES-7200# rmdir mnt
```



# 58

## Log Configuration

### 58.1 Overview

---

During the operation of a device, there are various state changes, such as the link status up/down, and various events occurring, such as receiving abnormal messages and handling abnormalities. Our product provides a mechanism to generate messages of fixed format (log message) in case of status change or event occurring. These messages can be displayed in related windows (console, VTY, etc.) or recorded in related media (memory buffer, FLASH), or sent to a group of log servers in the network for the administrators to analyze and locate problems. Meanwhile, in order to make it easy for administrators to read and manage log messages, these log messages can be labeled time stamps and serial numbers, and is graded according to the priority of log information.

#### 58.1.1 Log Message Format

---

The format of the our log message is as follows:

**<priority> seq no: timestamp sysname: %severity**

**%ModuleName-severity-MNEMONIC: description**

They are: <priority> Sequential number timestamp device name module name-severity  
– information type: abbrev: information contents

Priority value = Device value \*8 + Severity

For example:

```
<189> 226:Mar 5 02:09:10 DES-7200 %SYS-5-CONFIG_I: Configured from console by console
```



**Caution**

The priority field is not attached to the log messages that are printed in the user window. It only appears in the log messages that are sent to the syslog server.



## 58.2 Log Configuration

### 58.2.1 Log Switch

The log switch is turned on by default. If it is turned off, the device will not print log information in the user window, or send log information to the syslog server, or record the log information in the related media (memory buffer, flash).

To turn on or off the log switch, run the following command in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>logging on</b>	Turn on the log switch
DES-7200(config)# <b>no logging on</b>	Turn off the log switch



#### Caution

Do not turn off the log switch in general case. If it prints too much information, you can reduce it by setting different displaying levels for device log information.

### 58.2.2 Configuring the Device Displaying the Log Information

When the log switch is turned on, the log information will be displayed on the console and also sent to different displaying devices. To configure different displaying devices for receiving logs, run the following commands in the global configuration mode or privileged level:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>logging buffered</b> [ <i>buffer-size</i>   <i>level</i> ]	Record log in memory buffer
DES-7200# <b>terminal monitor</b>	Allow log to be displayed on VTY window
DES-7200(config)# <b>logging host</b>	Send log information to the syslog sever in the network
DES-7200(config)# <b>logging file</b> <b>flash:filename</b> [ <i>max-file-size</i> ] [ <i>level</i> ]	Record log on extended FLASH

Logging Buffered will record log information in the memory buffer. The memory buffer for log is used in recycled manner. That is, when it is full, the oldest information will be overwritten. To show the log information in the memory buffer, run **show logging** at the privileged user level. To clear the log information in the memory buffer, run **clear logging** at the privileged user level.



Terminal Monitor allows log information to be displayed on the current VTY (such as the telnet window).

Logging Host specifies the address of the syslog server that will receive the log information. Our product allows the configuration of at most 5 syslog servers. The log information will be sent to all the syslog servers at the same time.



**Caution**

To send the log information to the syslog server, it is required to turn on the timestamp switch or sequential number switch of the log information. Otherwise, log information will not be sent to the syslog server.

Logging File Flash: Record log information in FLASH. The filename for log shall not have any extension to indicate the file type. The extension of the log file is fixed as txt. Any configuration of extension for the filename will be refused.

More flash: filename command shows the contents of the log file in the flash.



**Caution**

Some devices support extended FLASH. If the device has extended FLASH, the log information will be recorded there. If the device has no extended FLASH, the log information will be recorded in the serial FLASH.

### 58.2.3 Enabling the Log Timestamp Switch of Log Information

To add or delete timestamp in log information, run the following command in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>service timestamps</b> <i>message-type</i> [uptime   datetime]	Enable the timestamp in the log information
DES-7200(config)# <b>no service timestamps</b> <i>message-type</i>	Disable the timestamp in the log information

The timestamp are available in two formats: device uptime and device datetime. Select the type of timestamp appropriately.

Message type: log or debug. The "log" type means the log information with severity levels 0-6. The "debug" type means that with severity level 7.



**Caution**

If the current device has no RTC, the configured time is invalid, and the device automatically uses the startup time as the timestamp for the log information.



### 58.2.4 Enabling Switches in Log System

---

By default, the system name is not included in the log information. To add or remove the system name in the log information, perform the following commands in the global configuration mode.

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>no service sysname</b>	Cancel the system name in the log message.
DES-7200(config)# <b>service sysname</b>	Add the system name to the log message.

### 58.2.5 Enabling Log Statistics

---

By default, the log statistics function is disabled. To enable or disable the log statistics function, perform the following commands in the global configuration mode.

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>no logging count</b>	Disable the log statistics function and delete the statistics information
DES-7200(config)# <b>logging count</b>	Enable the log statistics function

### 58.2.6 Enabling the Sequential Number Switch of Log Information

---

By default, the log information has no sequential number. To add or delete sequential number in log information, run the following command in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>no service sequence-numbers</b>	Delete sequential number in the log messages
DES-7200(config)# <b>service sequence-numbers</b>	Add sequential number to the log messages

### 58.2.7 Configuring Synchronization Between User Input and Log Output

---

By default, user input is asynchronous with log output. User input is interrupted if the log is output when the user is keying in characters. Use this command to configure synchronization between user input and log output in the line configuration mode:



Command	Function
DES-7200(config-line)# <b>logging synchronous</b>	Set synchronization between user input and log output.
DES-7200(config)# <b>no logging synchronous</b>	Delete synchronization between user input and log output.

### 58.2.8 Configuring Log Rate Limit

By default, log rate is not limited. Use this command to configure log rate limit in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>logging rate-limit</b> <i>number</i>	Set log rate limit.
DES-7200(config)# <b>no logging rate-limit</b>	Delete the setting of log rate limit.

### 58.2.9 Configuring the Log Information Displaying Level

To limit the number of log messages displayed on different devices, it is possible to set the severity level of log information that is allowed to be displayed on those devices.

To configure the log information displaying level, run the following command in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>logging console</b> <i>level</i>	Set the level of log information that is allowed to be displayed on the console
DES-7200(config)# <b>logging monitor</b> <i>level</i>	Set the level of log information that is allowed to be displayed on the VTY window (such as telnet window)
DES-7200(config)# <b>logging buffered</b> [ <i>buffer-size</i>   <i>level</i> ]	Set the level of log information that is allowed to be recorded in memory buffer



Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>logging file</b> <b>flash:filename</b> [ <i>max-file-size</i> ] [ <i>level</i> ]	Set the level of log information that is allowed to be recorded in extended flash
DES-7200(config)# <b>logging trap</b> <i>level</i>	Set the level of log information that is allowed to be sent to syslog server

The log information of our products is classified into the following 8 levels:

Level Keyword	Level	Description
<b>Emergencies</b>	0	Emergency case, system cannot run normally
<b>Alerts</b>	1	Problems that need immediate remedy
<b>Critical</b>	2	Critical conditions
<b>Errors</b>	3	Error message
<b>Warnings</b>	4	Alarm information
<b>Notifications</b>	5	Information that is normal but needs attention
<b>informational</b>	6	Descriptive information
<b>Debugging</b>	7	Debugging messages

Lower value indicates higher level. That is, level 0 indicates the information of the highest level.

When the level of log information that can be displayed is set for the specified device, the log information that is at or below the set level will be displayed. For example, after the command **logging console 6** is executed, all log information at or below level 6 will be displayed on the console.

By default, the log information that is allowed to be displayed on the console is at level 7.

By default, the log information that is allowed to be displayed on the VTY window is at level 7.

By default, the log information that is allowed to be sent to the syslog server is at level 6.

By default, the log information that is allowed to be recorded in the memory buffer is at level 7.

By default, the log information that is allowed to be recorded in the extended flash is at level 6.

The privileged command **show logging** can be used to show the level of log information allowed to be displayed on different devices.



### 58.2.10 Configuring the log information device value

The device value is one of the parts that form the priority field in the messages sent to the syslog server, indicating the type of device that generates the information.

To configure the log information device value, run the following command in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>logging facility</b> <i>facility-type</i>	Configure the log information device value
DES-7200(config)# <b>no logging facility</b> <i>facility-type</i>	Restore the default of the log information device value

The meanings of various device values are described as below:

Numerical Code	Facility
0	kernel messages
1	user-level messages
2	mail system
3	system daemons
4	security/authorization messages
5	messages generated internally by syslogd
6	line printer subsystem
7	network news subsystem
8	UUCP subsystem
9	clock daemon
10	security/authorization messages
11	FTP daemon
12	NTP subsystem
13	log audit
14	log alert
15	clock daemon
16	local use 0 (local0)
17	local use 1 (local1)
18	local use 2 (local2)
19	local use 3 (local3)
20	local use 4 (local4)
21	local use 5 (local5)
22	local use 6 (local6)
23	local use 7 (local7)

The default device value of our products is 23.



### 58.2.11 Configuring the Source Address of Log Messages

By default, the source address of the log messages sent to the syslog server is the address of the port that sends the messages. It is possible to fix the source address for all log messages through commands.

It is possible to directly set the source IP address of the log messages or the remote port of the log messages.

To configure the source address of the log messages, run the following command in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>logging source interface</b> <i>interface-type interface-number</i>	Configure the source port of log information
DES-7200(config)# <b>logging source ip</b> <i>A.B.C.D</i>	Configure the source IP address of log messages

### 58.2.12 Setting and Sending User Log

By default, no log is output when a user logs in or out and executes configuration commands. To output user login/logoff logs or configuration command logs, execute the following commands in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>logging userinfo</b>	Set user login/logoff log.
DES-7200(config)# <b>logging userinfo command-log</b>	Send a log when a configuration command is executed

## 58.3 Log Monitoring

To monitor log information, run the following commands in the privileged user mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>show logging</b>	View the log messages in memory buffer as well as the statistical information of logs
DES-7200# <b>show logging count</b>	View the statistical information of logs in every modules
DES-7200# <b>clear logging</b>	Clear the log messages in the memory buffer
DES-7200# <b>more flash:filename</b>	View the log files in the extended flash



**Caution**

The format of the timestamp in the output result of **show logging count** is the format in the latest log output.

---

### 58.3.1 Examples of Log Configurations

---

Here is a typical example to enable the logging function:

```
DES-7200(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 0/1
DES-7200(config-if)# ip address 192.168.200.42 255.255.255.0
DES-7200(config-if)# exit
DES-7200(config)# service sequence-numbers           //Enable sequence number
DES-7200(config)# service timestamps debug datetime //Enable debug information
                                                         timestamp, in date format
DES-7200(config)# service timestamps log datetime    //Enable log information timestamp,
                                                         in date format
DES-7200(config)# logging 192.168.200.2             //Specify the syslog server address
logging trap debugging                               //The log information of all levels
                                                         will be sent to syslog server
DES-7200(config)# end
```







# 59

## Module Hot-Plugging/ Unplugging

### 59.1 Overview

---

**Caution**

The DES-7200 series support hot-plugging/unplugging of modules. You may plug and unplug modules while the device is powered on, without affecting the normal system operation or other modules.

---

### 59.2 Module Hot-Plugging/Unplugging Configuration

---

This chapter includes:

- Plugging or Unplugging Modules
- Installing or Uninstalling Modules
- View module information

#### 59.2.1 Plugging or Unplugging Modules

---

You may plug or unplug modules while the device is operating (hot-plugging/unplugging). The operation of the other modules will not be affected. After the module is plugged in the slot, the management software of the device attempts to install its driver.

---

**Caution**

If the slot has been installed with another module driver, it is required to delete the original driver before installing the new module. You may execute the **show version module** command to get the related information.

Please plug the module tightly in the slot and tighten the screw. The module may not work well if it is loosely plugged.

---

You may plug modules while the switch is operating (hot-plugging/unplugging), which will not affect the operation of the other modules. The related configuration will be reserved when the module is unplugged, and it is possible to continue the setting of the module. When the



module is re-plugged, the module will be automatically activated. All the configurations take effect automatically.

### 59.2.2 Installing or Uninstalling Modules

In addition to automatic installation of module driver after the module is plugged, you may also install the module driver manually. After the installation, all configurations for the slot will be done for the type of the installed module. Even if the module is unplugged, you can still configure it without loss of the configuration.

In the global configuration mode, execute the following commands to install a module manually:

Command	Meaning
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
<b>install</b> <i>slot-num moduletype</i>	Install the module of a specified type in a slot
<b>end</b>	Return to the privileged mode.



#### Caution

The installation of driver does not need physical presence of the module. This means that you may "pre-configure" the device. You may use the **Install** command to virtualize the module of a specified type and then configure it. When the module is plugged, all configurations take effect automatically.

You can uninstall an operating module. Once uninstalled, all configurations for it will be lost, and the module is disabled. To restore that module, you may "install" its driver manually, or unplug and then plug it again.

In the global configuration mode, execute the following commands to uninstall a module manually:

Command	Meaning
<b>configure terminal</b>	Enter the global configuration mode.
<b>no install</b> <i>slot-num</i>	Uninstall the module in a slot
<b>end</b>	Return to the privileged mode.

### 59.2.3 Viewing module information

In the privileged user mode, execute the following commands to check the details of a module so as to uninstall it manually:



Command	Meaning
<b>show version module detail</b>	View module information

DES-7200# **show version module detail**

```

Device   : 1
Slot     : 1
User Status:      installed
Software Status:  ok
Online Module :
    Type      : M8606-24SFP/12GT
    Ports     : 24
    Version   : 01-01-05-02
Configured Module :
    Type      : M8606-24SFP/12GT
    Ports     : 24
    Version   : 01-01-05-02

```

```

Device   : 1
Slot     : 2
User Status:      installed
Software Status:  ok
Online Module :
    Type      : M8606-2XFP
    Ports     : 2
    Version   : 01-01-05-02
Configured Module :
    Type      : M8606-2XFP
    Ports     : 2
    Version   : 01-01-05-02

```

```

Device   : 1
Slot     : 3
User Status:      installed
Software Status:  ok
Online Module :
    Type      : M8606-24GT/12SFP
    Ports     : 24
    Version   : 01-01-05-02
Configured Module :
    Type      : M8606-24GT/12SFP
    Ports     : 24
    Version   : 01-01-05-02

```

```

Device   : 1
Slot     : 4
User Status:      installed
Software Status:  none
Online Module :
    Type      :
    Ports     : 0
    Version   :

```



```
Configured Module :  
Type   : M6806-24SFP/12GT  
Ports  : 24  
Version :  
Device : 1  
Slot   : M1  
Status  : master  
Online Module :  
Type    : M8606-CM  
Ports   : 0  
Version : 01-01-05-02
```



# 60

## Configuring LCD

### 60.1 Overview

---

The LCD display is a visual display that features simple and easy operation with buttons. The user can know the running status of the device at a glance even if the user has no knowledge about the CLI commands. When abnormality occurs with the device operation, the displaying immediately notifies the abnormality to the users.

The state information shown by the LCD includes the switch name, duration of work, CPU utilization ratio (Management Board), memory utilization ratio (Management Board), temperature (Management Board and Line Card), fan and the working state of power supplies.

Generally, the device prints the information circularly.

A user can use keys to show desired state information. The LCD provides the following four key:

- Menu key (Menu): Show a menu.
- Selection key (Enter): Select an item.
- Page Up key (Pgup): Page up.
- Page Down key (Pgdn): Page down,

When there is an unexpected condition in a module, for example, the CPU utilization ratio is too high, then the LCD keeps showing the warning information. The information will not disappear from the display until the user pushes the selection key (enter).

#### 60.1.1 LCD Key Introduction

---

When the switch prints state information circularly, each page displays for a fixed period. If a user pushes one of the four keys, then the following condition will occur.

1. Menu: Stop the current displaying and show the main menu. Stops showing the menu and shows the state beginning at this page.
2. Selection key (enter): The key does not work.
3. Page Up key (Pgup): Shows the content of the previous screen. If the information of a state is not fully shown in one screen, then it can be shown in multiple screens. If the first screen is not currently shown, then push the key Pgup to show the previous



screen of the current content. If the first screen is shown, then push the key Pgup to show the last screen of the state information.

4. Page Down key(Pgdn): Shows the content of next screen. If the information of a state is not fully shown in one screen, then it can be shown in multiple screens. If the last screen is not currently shown, then push the key Pgdn to show the next screen of the current content. If the last screen is shown, then push the key Pgdn to show the first screen of the state information.

Press Menu to show the main menu, and the selected line will be highlighted. If there is no button pressing operation, it returns to the circular displaying again and display the next screen since the previous displaying. If a key is pressed, the following condition may occur:

1. Menu: Stop the current displaying and show the main menu.
2. Selection key (enter): Select the currently selected menu item. If there is a submenu in the menu item, then the submenu is shown. If a menu item indicates the information of a state, then the state information is shown.
3. Page Up key (Pgup): Shows the content of the previous screen.

All the menu items of a menu page are circularly organized. The previous item of the first menu item is the last item. The next item of the last item is the first item. If a menu is currently shown and the selected menu is not in the first line of the screen, when you push the Pgup key, the content of the screen will not change, the selected menu item will move up a line and the selected line is still the first line.

The state information that menu items point to are also circularly organized. The previous screen of the first screen is the last screen and the next screen of the last screen is the first screen. If the content of a menu item is currently shown, then Pgup shows the content of the previous screen. When the content of a menu item is shown, push the key enter to return to the menu page.

4. Page Down key(Pgdn): Shows the content of next screen.

If a menu is currently shown and the selected menu is not in the last line of the screen, when you push the Pgdn key, the content of the screen will not change, the selected menu item will move down a line and the selected line is still the last line.

If the content of a menu item is currently shown, then Pgdn shows the content of the next screen. When the content of a menu item is shown, push the key enter to return to the menu page.

If warning messages are required to be shown in the LCD, then the display shows generated warning messages. If a warning message needs being shown in multiple screens, then the display shows the content of the warning message in screens circularly. If multiple warning messages are generated at the same time, then various warning messages are shown in turn and then the content of the newest warning message is shown circularly. The condition will not end until the user types the selection key (enter) to stop showing the warning



message. If you push one of the four keys when a warning is shown, the following condition will occur:

1. Menu key (Menu): Stops showing the warning message and begins to show the main mp
2. Selection key (enter): Stops showing the current warning message. If there is no updated warning message, then returns to the circular display mode. If there is a updated warning message, the new warning message is shown.
3. Page Up key (Pgup): All the warning messages are circularly organized. The previous screen of the first screen is the last screen of the previous warning message. The next screen of the last screen is the first item of the next warning message. Pgup shows the content of the previous screen. If the first screen of the first warning message is currently shown, the shown content will not change.
4. Page Down key (Pgdn): Warning messages are circularly organized. Pgdn shows the content of the next screen. If the last screen of the last warning message is currently shown, the shown content will not change.

## 60.2 LCD Configuration Task List

### 60.2.1 Configuring Warning Information Queue Length

After a warning message is generated, the LCD keeps showing the latest warning message until a user pushes the key Enter. The user can browse history warning messages through menu items after pushing the key Enter. The command can be used to configure the length of a warning message.

The current version of our products saves 100 history warning messages by default. To configure the length of a history warning message, run the following command in the global configuration mode:

Command	Function
DES-7200(config)# <b>lcd trap-number</b> <i>num</i>	Set a new length of a warning message
DES-7200(config)# <b>no lcd trap-number</b>	Restore to the default setting

## 60.3 LCD Configuration Instance

Use the following command to configure the length of a history warning message:

```
lcd trap-number 200 //Configure the length of a warning message to 200
```

Use the following commands to configure the memory thresholds:

```
memory-rate rising-threshold 60
```







# 61

## Using the USB

### 61.1 Overview

---

This chapter introduces the use of the USB storage (mostly the USB disk). The system can recognize the FAT-partitioned USB disk only and cannot recognize the other file systems.

When a USB disk is inserted, the system automatically loads the recognized partitions to the system. The operation on the USB disk is the same as normal directories.

### 61.2 Inserting the Device

---

Just insert the USB device into the USB slot without additional operations. If the system finds the device and loads its driver, the following prompts are printed:

```
0:1:18:57 DES-7200: %5:USB Device Found ..... <USB Mass Storage Device>!
```

```
0:1:18:57 DES-7200: %5:  Auto Mount Disk Partitions:
```

```
0:1:18:57 DES-7200:%5:  * /dev/uba/disc0/part1 --> /mnt/uba      size :  
131072000B(125MB)
```

<USB Mass Storage Device> is the name of the device found. The /dev/uba/disc0/part1 is the device file of the partition. The /mnt/uba is the directory for the partition. The "size" means the partition size. In the example above, the USB disk has free space 125MB.

### 61.3 Using the Device

---

When the partition of the USB disk is loaded to the system, the commands of the file system (dir, copy, del, etc.) can be used to operate the USB disk. The operation below copies the files in the USB disk to the flash.

```
DES-7200# cd /mnt/uba      # Enter the USB disk partition
```

```
DES-7200# copy flash: a.txt flash: /b.txt  # Copy the file a.txt from the USB disk to the root  
directory of the device.
```

Now, run " dir /" to see the file b.txt added into the flash.

Similar to other file operations, the partition of the USB disk is like a directory on the file system.



### 61.3.1 Formating the partition

The system may format the partition by using the **makefs** command.

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>makefs dev dev_file fs fs_name</b>	Format the partition of device file dev_file into a file system named fs_name.

For the above USB disk found, run the following command:

```
DES-7200#makefs dev /dev/uba/disc0/part1 fs vfat
```

Then the partition of the USB disk is reformatting into a FAT32 partition.



#### Caution

A USB disk supports only to be formatted into vfat.

### 61.3.2 Showing USB Device Information

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>show usb</b>	Show the USB device information of the system

In the CLI command mode, use the **show usb** command to view the USB device information of the system. The displayed information is as follows:

```
DES-7200#sh usb
Device: USB Mass Storage Device :
      ID: 778
      Lun 0:
          ID: 0
          Disk Partitions:
          1: /dev/uba/disc0/part1 --> /mnt/uba
          size : 131072000B(125MB)
```

As shown above, "USB Mass Storage Device" is the device name.

"778" is the ID assigned by the system to the device, which is used when the device is to be uninstalled.

"Lun" is the logical unit number of the storage. Some devices have multiple logical units. The following ID is the one assigned by the system for the logical unit.

"Disk Partitions" shows the partition information of the logical unit. In the example above, there is one partition with device name /dev/uba/disc0/part1, loaded directory /mnt/uba, and size 125MB.



### 61.3.3 Unplugging USB Device

Before unplugging the USB device, run the CLI command to unload it first to prevent errors when the device is in use.

Command	Function
DES-7200# <b>usb remove</b> <i>Device_ID</i>	Unload the USB device with ID <i>Device_ID</i>

After executing the unloading command, the system prints:

```
OK, now you can poll out the device 778.
```

```
0:1:1:38 DES-7200: %5:USB Device <USB Mass Storage Device> Removed!
```

Now it is ready to unplug the USB device.

Sometimes the device cannot be unloaded temporarily since it is in use, wait for a while, execute the command and unplug the device.



#### Caution

Be sure to unload the device first and then unplug the device to prevent the system error.

## 61.4 USB Faults

Following information will be printed:

```
0:1:2:34 DES-7200: USB-3-OHCI_ERR: USB1.0 controller is not available now.
```

In this case, the USB 1.0 controller is unavailable, but the U-disk 2.0 is usable. To use the U-disk of version 1.0, you need to reset the device.

Following information will be printed:

```
0:1:3:29 DES-7200: USB-3-EHCI_ERR: USB2.0 controller is not available now.
```

In this case, the USB 2.0 controller is unavailable, but the U-disk 1.0 is usable. To use the U-disk of version 1.0, you need to reset the device.







# 62

## POE Management Configurations

### 62.1 Overview

---

PoE (Power Over Ethernet) is a mechanism that provides 45V~57V DC to the remote PD devices (IP Phone, WLAN AP and Network Camera) via twisted pair cables.

The PSE (Power Sourcing Equipment) can transmit both data and current at the same time via Category 3/5 twisted pair cables (1, 3, 2, 6), with a maximum distance of 100m.

The switch supporting POE can provide the statistics of the power condition each port and the entire device, which can be shown by using a query command. At the same time, it also provides overtemperature protection. When the temperature inside the switch exceeds 80 Celsius degrees, the switch will trigger protection by turning off the PoE power supply to all ports. When the temperature inside the switch is lower than 60 Celsius degrees, the switch will restore the PoE power supply for all ports.



**Caution**

The switches supporting POE include 7200-24P, 7200-48P.

---

### 62.2 POE Configuration Management

---

This section includes:

- Remote power supply configuration
- Enable/disable the remote power supply of the port
- Set the minimum allowed voltage of the POE system
- Set the maximum allowed voltage of the POE system
- Power management mode of the switch
- Disconnection detection mode
- Show the port/system status



### 62.2.1 Remote power supply configuration

The switch supporting POE can automatically detect whether the device connected to a port is a standard PD device and supply power to the standard PD device.

You can enable or turn off the remote power supply of a port, set the minimum allowed voltage of the POE system, set the maximum allowed voltage of the POE system, set the power management mode of the switch, and set the disconnection detection mode by using the command line.

**Table 62-1** Remote Power Supply Configuration

Device	Configuration	Default	Description
Switches supporting PoE	Enable/disable the PoE of the port	Disabled	-
	Set the maximum power of the power supply for the port	15.4w	-
	Set the minimum allowed voltage of the POE system	45v	-
	Set the maximum allowed voltage of the POE system	57v	-
	Power management mode of the switch	Auto	-
	Disconnection detection mode	AC	-
PD device	Correct connection with the electrical interface of the POE device	-	-

### 62.2.2 Enabling/Disabling the PoE of the Port

You can enable or disable the PoE feature of a port as needed by using the following commands. By default, the PoE is disabled. Please do the following configuration in the global mode.

**Table 62-2** Enable/Disable the PoE Feature of a Port

<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure</b>	Enter the configuration mode
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>interface gigabitEthernet</b> <i>interface-id</i>	Select the port, enter the interface configuration mode, and specify the physical port to be configured.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>poe enable   no poe enable</b>	Enable/disable the PoE of a port
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>end</b>	Return to privileged EXEC mode
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>show run</b>	Verify the configuration



<b>Step 6</b>	<b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Save the settings into the parameter file.
---------------	---	--

For example, enable/disable the PoE of port 1 on line card 1:

```
DES-7200#
DES-7200# configure
DES-7200(config)#interface gigabitEthernet 1/1
DES-7200(config-if)# poe enable
DES-7200(config-if)# no poe enable
DES-7200(config-if)# end
DES-7200#
```



By default, the PoE is disabled.

#### Caution

### 62.2.3 Setting the Minimum Allowed Voltage of the POE System

Currently, the Ethernet port of the switch supporting POE can provide the minimum allowed voltage of 45V. You can set the minimum allowed voltage according to the actual need, within the range of 45000 mv to 47000 mv. When the output voltage is lower than the minimum allowed value due to reasons such as power faults, the equipment will automatically turn off the power supply of the devices connected to all ports.

You can use the following commands to set the minimum allowed voltage of the power supply of the port. Please do the following configuration in the global mode.

<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure</b>	Enter the configuration mode
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>poe-power lower <i>lower</i>   no poe-power lower</b>	Set the minimum allowed voltage of the POE system/restore the minimum allowed voltage to the default value
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>end</b>	Return to privileged EXEC mode
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>show run</b>	Verify the configuration
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Save the settings into the parameter file.

By default, the minimum output power of a port is 45v.

For example, set the minimum output power of the system to 46v.

```
DES-7200#
DES-7200# configure
DES-7200(config)#poe-power lower 46
DES-7200(config)# end
```



DES-7200#

### 62.2.4 Setting the Maximum Allowed Voltage of the POE System

The Ethernet port of the switch supporting POE can provide the maximum allowed voltage of 57V. You can set the maximum allowed voltage according to the actual need, within the range of 55000 mv~57000 mv. When the output voltage is higher than the maximum allowed value due to reasons such as power faults, the equipment will automatically turn off the power supply of the devices connected to all ports.

You can use the following commands to set the maximum allowed voltage of the power supply of the port. Please do the following configuration in the global mode.

**Table 62-3** Set the Minimum Allowed Voltage of the POE System

Command	Description
<b>configure</b>	Enter the configuration mode
<b>poe-power upper <i>upper</i>   no poe-power upper</b>	Set the maximum allowed voltage of the POE system/restore the maximum allowed voltage to the default value
<b>end</b>	Return to privileged EXEC mode
<b>show run</b>	Verify the configuration
<b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Save the settings into the parameter file.

By default, the maximum output power of a port is 57v.

For example, set the maximum output power of the system to 56v.

```
DES-7200#
DES-7200# configure
DES-7200(config)#poe-power upper 56
DES-7200(config-if)# end
DES-7200#
```

### 62.2.5 Setting the Power Management Mode of the Switch

The power management mode of the switch is used to allocate the power to the PD devices. When one PD device is connected to the equipment if the current power allocated has not exceeded the no\_connect limit, the equipment will allocate power to the external PD device according to the power supply management mode. (POE has one limit: no\_connect. When the power allocated from the equipment exceeds the no\_connect limit, the equipment will not supply power to any new PD devices.)



Currently, the PoE device uses the auto power management mode.

In the Auto mode, the power is allocated according to the detected port PD type. In the Auto mode, the equipment allocates power to classes 1~3 PD devices as follows: class1~4W, class2~7W, class3~15.4W and class0~15.4W.

This configuration is automatically performed by the switch without any user intervention.

### 62.2.6 Disconnect Detection Mode

The equipment supporting POE checks whether a previously connected device has been disconnected by using disconnect detection. The equipment supports two detection modes: AC and DC. AC detection mode, which deems that the connected PD device is disconnected when the current of a port is smaller than a fixed value for the specified period. DC detection mode, which works by detecting the voltage feature of the port.

You can use the following command to set the disconnect detection mode. Please make the following configuration in the global mode. You can also set this mode for a particular device.

**Table 62-4** Disconnect Detection Mode

Command	Description
<b>configure</b>	Enter the configuration mode
<b>poe disconnect-mode {ac   dc}   no poe disconnect-mode</b>	Set the disconnect detection mode/restore the disconnect detection mode to the default value
<b>end</b>	Return to privileged EXEC mode
<b>show run</b>	Verify the configuration
<b>copy running-config startup-config</b>	Save the settings into the parameter file.

By default, the disconnection detection mode is the AC mode.

For example, set the disconnect detection mode to DC:

```
DES-7200#  
DES-7200# configure  
DES-7200(config)#poe-disconnect-mode dc  
DES-7200(config-if)# end  
DES-7200#
```



### 62.2.7 Showing the Power Supply Status of the Port/System

The equipment supporting POE will scan the ports and the status of the entire POE system at periodical intervals, and save all the status information. You may view interface status by using **show** in privileged EXEC mode.

Command	Description
<b>show poe interfaces</b> <b>gigabitEthernet</b> <i>[interface-id]</i>	Show the power supply status of the specified port
<b>show poe interfaces</b>	Show the power supply status of all POE ports (the 24 ports depending on the power supply of the POE system)
<b>show poe powersupply</b>	Show the power supply status of the entire POE system
<b>show running-config interface</b> <i>[interface-id]</i>	Show the configuration of the current running interface.

For example, show the power status of the gigabitethernet 0/2 port:

```
Interface : Gi0/2
Port power enabled : ENABLE
Port connect status : OFF
Port PD Class : no PD devices
Port max power : 15.4W
Port current power : 0 mW
Port peak power : 0 mW
Port current : 0 mA
Port voltage : 48V
Port trouble cause : normal
```

Note: Port trouble cause means the power-off cause, as below:

Port trouble cause	Description
normal	Normal power supply (LED green); AC/DC detects that the equipment is disconnected (LED off), Disable (LED off)
overload during start-up	Power supply start-up, finding that the current is too large or is disconnected (LED orange)
port off due to overload event	PD device is disconnected due to overload (LED orange)
short circuit event	PD device is disconnected due to short circuit (LED red)
voltage is out of established bounds	Output voltage is turned off due to out of bounds (LED red)
temperature rise too high	Turned off due to high-temperature protection (LED red)
power overload	Turned off due to power management (LED orange)

The following example shows the power supply status of the POE system:

```
Switch#show poe powersupply
```



```
PSE Total Power :1200.0 W
PSE Total Power Consumption : 0 W
PSE Available Power : 1200.0 W
PSE Peak Value : 0 W
PSE Min Allow Voltage : 45 V
PSE Max Allow Voltage : 57 V
PSE Disconnect Sense Mode : acs
```